

PETER V. JONES AND KEITH H. C. SHAWELL

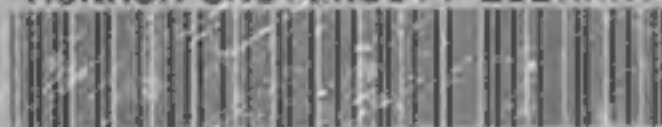
Reading Latin

GRAMMAR, VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

2005
NO RENEWALS
NO HOLDS

\$5 per day fine for late returns

MONASH UNIVERSITY LIBRARY



3 3168 02286087 4



Marble copy of the Clupeus Virtutis of Augustus, found at Arles (see p. xvi and p. 297 ll. 6-8)

PETER V. JONES AND KEITH C. SIDWELL

Reading Latin

GRAMMAR, VOCABULARY
AND EXERCISES

 **CAMBRIDGE**
UNIVERSITY PRESS

PUBLISHED BY THE PRESS SYNDICATE OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE
The Pitt Building, Trumpington Street, Cambridge, United Kingdom

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 2RU, UK
40 West 20th Street, New York, NY 10011-4211, USA
477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia
Ruiz de Alarcón 13, 28014 Madrid, Spain
Dock House, The Waterfront, Cape Town 8001, South Africa

<http://www.cambridge.org>

© Cambridge University Press 1986

This book is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,
no reproduction of any part may take place without
the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 1986

Seventeenth printing 2003

Printed in the United Kingdom at the University Press, Cambridge

Library of Congress catalogue card number, 85-11682

British Library Cataloguing in Publication data

Jones, Peter V.

Reading latin: grammar, vocabulary and exercises.

I. Latin language

I. Title II. Sidwell, Keith C.

470 PA2057

ISBN 0 521 28622 0 paperback

CONTENTS

Note. In Sections 1A–4C the order of items is as follows: Vocabulary (Running, Learning), Grammar and Exercises, *Dēliciae Latinae*. From 4D to 5G there is an additional 'Reading' section before *Dēliciae Latinae*. Sections 6A and 6D have Vocabulary (Running, Learning) and Grammar and Exercises; Sections 6B–C have only Vocabulary; there are no additional 'Reading' sections or *Dēliciae Latinae*.

This list gives the contents of Running Grammar in detail, by Section number, but only general headings for the Reference Grammar. For detailed references to the latter see Index, pp. 602–10.

Preface	xī
Notes to grammar, exercises and vocabulary	xi
Abbreviations	xiii
Pronunciation	xiv
Notes on illustrations	xvi
Glossary of English–Latin grammar	xvii
Grammar, vocabulary and exercises for Sections 1–6	1
Introduction 1 <i>sum</i> present indicative	1
1A 2 <i>amō</i> present indicative active 3 <i>habēō</i> present indicative active 4 Terminology 5 Meaning 6 The cases in Latin 7 Singular and plural, m., f. and n. 8 1st declension <i>serua</i> 9 2nd declension m. <i>seruus</i> 10 Prepositions (<i>in, ad</i>)	7
1B 11 3rd declension (consonant stem) <i>fūr</i> 12 3rd declension (i-stem) <i>aedis</i> 13 Stems and endings of 3rd declension nouns 14 1st/2nd declension adjectives <i>multus</i> 15 2nd declension n. <i>somnium</i> 16 2nd declension irregular <i>deus</i> 17A Vocatives 17B Apposition	18
1C 18 Present imperatives, 1st and 2nd conjugation 19 <i>eō</i>	

	present indicative and imperative 20 <i>meus, tuus</i> 21 <i>miser</i> 22 <i>ego, nū</i> 23 Prepositions (<i>ā/ab</i> and <i>ē/ex</i>)	35
1D	24 <i>dīcō</i> present indicative active, imperative 25 <i>audiō</i> present indicative, imperative 26 3rd declension n. <i>nōmen</i> 27 <i>pulcher</i> 28 2nd declension m. <i>puer, culter, uir</i> 29 <i>quis/</i> <i>quī?</i> 30 <i>domum, domī</i> and <i>domō</i> 31 <i>satis, nimis</i> 32 <i>-que</i>	47
1E	33 <i>capīō</i> present indicative 34 <i>uolō</i> present indicative 35 <i>ferō</i> present indicative active 36 1st–4th (and 3rd/4th) imperatives 37 Irregular imperatives 38 3rd declension n. <i>onus</i> 39 <i>-ne(?)</i> 40 <i>quid + gen.</i>	57
1F	41 Present infinitive active 42 Irregular infinitives 43 <i>nōs,</i> <i>uōs</i> 44 3rd declension adjectives <i>omnis</i> 45 3rd declension adjectives <i>ingēns</i> 46 3rd declension adjectives <i>audāx</i> 47 <i>dīves, pauper</i>	67
1G	48 The dative case 49 Ablative of description	77
2A	50 Future indicative active 51 Future of <i>sum,</i> <i>eō</i> 52 <i>possum, nōlō, mālō</i> present and future indicative 53 <i>noster, uester</i> , 3rd declension adjectives <i>celer, ācer</i> 54 Cardinal numerals (1–10, 100–1000) 55 4th declension <i>manus</i> 56 <i>domus</i> 57 3rd declension monosyllables	85
2B	58 Deponent, present indicative, imperative, infinitive 59 <i>nōlī + infinitive</i> 60 5th declension <i>rēs</i> 61 3rd declension n. <i>caput</i> 62 <i>nūllus, alter</i>	100
2C	63 <i>hic</i> 64 <i>ille</i>	111
2D	65 Perfect indicative active 66 Irregular verbs 67 Ablative of time	120
2E	68 Deponent, future indicative 69 Genitive of value	132
3A	70 <i>is</i> 71 Accusative of time 72 Comparative adjectives <i>longior</i> 73 Superlative adjectives <i>longissimus</i> 74 Irregular comparatives and superlatives	142
3B	75 Deponent, perfect indicative 76 Semi-deponents <i>audeō,</i> <i>fiō</i> 77 Deponent, perfect participle 78 Translation hint 79 Regular and irregular adverbs 80 <i>sē, suus</i>	152
3C	81 Future participles (active and deponent) 82 Perfect participle of active verbs 83 Unpredictable principal parts 84 Ablative of means 85 <i>nōnne?</i> 86 <i>īdem</i> and <i>nēmō</i> 87 Comparative and superlative adverbs	166
3D	88 Datives	180

4A	89 Imperfect indicative active 90 Deponent, imperfect indicative 91 <i>iste</i> 92 <i>quīdam</i> 93 <i>num?</i> 94 Present infinitive (revision) 95 Perfect infinitive active 96 Deponent, perfect infinitive 97 Future infinitive, active and deponent 98 Indirect statements (accusative and infinitive) 99 <i>negō</i>	189
4B	100A Ablative (summary of forms and usages to date) 100B Further uses of the ablative 101 Genitive of description 102 <i>alius, aliquis</i> 103 <i>ipse</i>	209
4C	104 Pluperfect indicative active 105 Deponent, pluperfect indicative 106 Relative pronoun, <i>quī, quae, quod</i> 107 Connecting relative 108 More uses of the ablative 109 Ablative absolute 110 The locative	224
4D	111 The passive 112 Present indicative 113 Future indicative 114 Imperfect indicative 115 Perfect indicative 116 Pluperfect indicative 117 Imperative 118 Present, perfect and future infinitive 119 <i>ferō</i> (present indicative, infinitive, imperative passive), transitive compounds of <i>eō</i> in passive	240
4E	120 Present participles (active and deponent) 121 Pluperfect subjunctive active 122 Pluperfect subjunctive deponent 123 Pluperfect subjunctive passive 124 <i>cum + subjunctive</i> 125 3rd declension n. <i>mare</i> 126 Relative pronoun in the genitive	257
4F	127 Present subjunctive active 128 Present subjunctive deponent 129 Present subjunctive passive 130 Imperfect subjunctive active 131 Imperfect subjunctive deponent 132 Imperfect subjunctive passive 133 Summary of present and imperfect subjunctive 134 Indirect commands (<i>ut/</i> <i>nē + subjunctive</i>) 135 <i>accidit/perficiō ut + subjunctive</i> 136 Present participle (as noun) 137 Relative pronoun (dative and ablative)	272
4G	138 The subjunctive: special usages 139 Conditionals with subjunctive verbs 140 Subjunctive in relative clauses 141 <i>cum, quamvis + subjunctive</i> 142 Subjunctive in reported speech 143 Infinitives without <i>esse</i> in reported speech	288
5A	144 Result clauses 145 Purpose clauses 146 Historic infinitive 147 Ablative of respect	299
	Roman poetry (rhetorical features, word order, metre, hexameter)	313

5B	148 Purpose clauses (<i>quō</i> + comparative + subjunctive) 149 <i>fore ut</i> + subjunctive 150 Ablative absolute (past participle passive) 151 Past participle passive	323
5C	152 Jussive subjunctives 153 Subjunctives expressing wishes and possibility 154 Impersonal verbs (a) active 155 Impersonal verbs (b) passive 156 Future perfect indicative active 157 Future perfect indicative deponent 158 Future perfect indicative passive 159 Cardinal numerals 11–90 and ordinals 1st–10th	334
5D	160 Gerundives 161 Uses of the gerundive 162 Verbs of fearing (<i>nē</i> + subjunctive)	353
5E	163 Passive perfect participles 164 Summary of participles 165 <i>dum, antequam/priusquam</i> 166 <i>utpote</i> <i>quī</i> + subjunctive	369
5F	167 Perfect subjunctive active 168 Perfect subjunctive deponent 169 Perfect subjunctive passive 170 Use of perfect subjunctive 171 Perfect subjunctive: independent usages 172 Indirect (reported) questions 173 Conditional clauses with pluperfect subjunctive 174 <i>quōminus,</i> <i>quān</i> + subjunctive	380
5G	175 Gerunds 176 <i>quisque, quisquam</i> 177 <i>uterque</i> 178 4th declension n. <i>cornū</i> 179 Comparative clauses, correlatives, unreal comparisons	394
6A	180 Hendecasyllables 181 Scazon 182 Sapphic stanza	410
6B		421
6C		431
6D	183 The hexameter in Lucretius 184 Archilochean 185 Elegiac couplet	436
	Reference grammar	448
	A–G Verbs A Active B Passive C Deponent D Semi-deponent E Irregular verbs F Defective verbs, impersonal verbs G Principal parts of irregular verbs	
	H–I Nouns, pronominal nouns/adjectives	
	J–K Adjectives, adverbs and prepositions	
	L–V Constructions L The cases M The infinitive N Gerund O Gerundive P Participles Q Relative	

clauses R Indirect speech S The subjunctive
T Temporal clauses U Causal clauses V Concessive
clauses

W Word-order

Appendix: The Latin language	548
Total Latin–English learning vocabulary	557
Total English–Latin vocabulary for Exercises	578
Additional learning vocabulary	593
Index of grammar	602

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The poem by Giovanni Cotta on p. 76 and that by Elio Giulio Crotti on p. 287 are reproduced from A. Perosa and J. Sparrow, eds., *Renaissance Latin Verse* (Duckworth 1979). 'St Columba subdues the Loch Ness Monster' (p. 270) is reproduced from Sidney Morris, ed., *Fons Perennis* (Harrap 1962). The authors thank the publishers concerned.

PREFACE

ŭsus magister est optimus
(Cicero, *Rab. Post* 4.9.)

This volume accompanies *Reading Latin (Text)*, C.U.P. 1986 and is to be used in conjunction with it. For an introduction to the *Reading Latin* course – its aims, methodology and future development – and our acknowledgements of all the help we have received in its production, please refer to the Introduction of the *Text* volume.

Notes to Grammar, Vocabulary and Exercises

- 1 All dates are B.C., unless otherwise specified.
- 2 The running grammar for each section comes in four parts:
 - (a) Running vocabulary.
 - (b) Learning vocabulary. Words set to be learnt will not be glossed in running vocabularies again, unless they occur in the *Text* with a different meaning. On p. 557 there is a total vocabulary of all words set to be learnt with their full range of meanings given in this course, and a note of where they should have been learnt (teachers should use this information when devising their own tests).
 - (c) Grammar and exercises. It is extremely important to note that the exercises should be regarded as a pool out of which the teacher/students should choose what to do, and whether in or out of class. Some of the simpler exercises we have already split into necessary and optional sections, but this principle should be applied to all of them.
 - (d) *Dēliciae Latīnae* / further reading.
- 3 On p. 448 there is a full reference grammar, based on the running grammar explanations, but in many cases adding further information to that given in the running explanations.

- 4 On p. 548 there is an Appendix on the Latin language.
- 5 On p. 557 there is the total learning vocabulary, and on p. 578 an English-Latin vocabulary for those doing the English-Latin sentence and prose exercises.
- 6 At the end of the book, p. 593, there is a supplementary Latin-English vocabulary, containing important words which have been met, but not learnt in this course. Those who wish to continue with their Latin studies should attempt to learn them.
- 7 In cross-references, superior figures appended to a section number indicate *Notes*, e.g. 139⁴. If the reference is in the form '140.1', the last digit indicates a numbered sub-section.
- 8 Linking devices are used occasionally in passages of original Latin poetry to indicate words that should be taken together. — links words next to each other, □ links words separated from each other. Where such words are glossed, they will be found in separate entries in close proximity to one another. In later sections, a longer linking device ————— shows the limits of a larger phrase.
- 9 The case which follows an adjective or a verb is usually indicated by e.g. '(+acc.)'. But occasionally you will meet e.g. '(x: acc.)'.
- 10 In places where standard beginners' texts print *u* (i.e. consonantal *u*), we have in accordance with early MS practice printed *u*. But in some later Latin texts we have reverted to *u*, which is commonly found in early printed books.
- 11 In learning vocabularies, where a new meaning is listed for a word already learned, the meaning(s) previously met are placed in brackets after the new meaning(s). E.g. at 2A: *bene* good! fine! (well, thoroughly, rightly).
- 12 Bold numbers in pageheads, e.g. 15, refer to sections of the Running Grammar. Where these numbers have an arrow, e.g. ← 15 16 →, the arrow shows the direction to go to find the section indicated.

Peter V. Jones
28 Akenside Terrace,
Newcastle upon Tyne,
NE2 1TN, UK

Keith C. Sidwell
Dept. of Ancient Classics,
University College, Cork,
IRELAND

ABBREVIATIONS

abl.(ative)	perf./pf. (= perfect)
abs.(olute)	pl.(ural)
acc.(usative)	plupf./plup. (= pluperfect)
act.(ive)	p.p. (= principal part)
adj.(ective)	prep.(osition)
adv.(erb)	pres.(ent)
cf. (= <i>cōfer</i> (Latin), 'compare')	prim.(ary)
comp.(arative)	pron.(oun)
conj.(ugation, ugated)	q.(uestion)
dat.(ive)	rel.(ative)
decl.(ension)	s.(ingular)
dep.(onent)	sc.(= <i>scilicet</i> (Latin), 'presumably')
dir.(ect)	sec.(ondary)
f.(eminine)	seq.(uence)
fur.(ure)	sp.(eech)
gen.(itive)	subj.(unctive)
imper.(ative)	sup.(erlative)
impf./imperf. (= imperfect)	trans.(itive)
indecl.(inable)	tr.(anslate)
ind.(icative)	vb (= verb)
indir.(ect)	voc.(ative)
inf.(initive)	1st, 2nd, 3rd refer to persons of the verb, i.e.
intrans.(itive)	1st s. = 'I'
irr.(egular)	2nd s. = 'you'
l(l.) line(s)	3rd s. = 'he', 'she', 'it'
lit.(erally)	1st pl. = 'we'
m.(asculine)	2nd pl. = 'you'
neg.(ative)	3rd pl. = 'they'
n.(euter)	1f., 2m, etc. refer to declension and
nom.(inative)	gender of nouns
part.(iciple)	
pass.(ive)	

PRONUNCIATION

'English' refers throughout to the standard or 'received' pronunciation of southern British English unless otherwise qualified.

a	as English 'cup', or 'aha' (cf. 'cat', or Italian or French 'a-')		'mat', 'camp'); a final 'm' expresses nasalisation of the preceding vowel (cf. French 'parfum')
ā	as English 'father' (roughly)	n	as English
ae	as in English 'high' (roughly)	o	as in English 'pot'
au	as in English 'how'	ō	as in French 'beau'
b	as English	oe	as in English 'boy'
c	as English 'c' in 'cat' (not 'cider', 'cello')	p	as English
ch	as English 'pack-horse'	ph	as in English
d	as English	qu	as in English 'quack'
e	as in English 'pet'	r	as Scottish 'rolled' 'r'
ē	as in 'fiancée' (French pronunciation)	s	as s in English 'sing' (never as in 'roses')
ei	as in English 'day'	t	as t in English 'tin' (cleanly pronounced, with no 'h' sound)
eu	'e-oo' (cf. Cockney 'belt')	th	as in English 'pot-house'
f	as English	u	as in English 'put'
g	as English 'got'; but 'gn' = 'ngn' as in 'hangnail'	ū	as in English 'fool'
h	as English	u	(pronounced as a consonant) as in English 'w' (sometimes written as 'v')
i	as in English 'dip'	x	as English
ī	as in English 'deep'	y	as French 'u'
j	consonant (sometimes written as a 'j'); as English 'you'	z	as English.
k	as English		
l	as English		
m	as English at the beginning and in the middle of words (cf.		

Pronunciation

Rules of word stress (accent)

- 1 A word of two syllables is stressed on the first syllable, e.g. *āmō, amās*.
- 2 A word of more than two syllables is stressed on the penultimate (i.e. second syllable from the end) if that syllable is HEAVY, e.g. *astūtus, audiūtur* (see p. 318 for the terms 'heavy', 'light').
- 3 In all other cases, words of more than two syllables are stressed on the antepenultimate (i.e. third syllable from the end), e.g. *amābitis, pulcherrimus*.
- 4 Words of one syllable (monosyllables) always have the stress, e.g. *nōx*. But prepositions *before* a noun are not accented, e.g. *ad hōminem*.
- 5 Some words, e.g. *-que, -ne* and *-ue*, which are appended to the word which precedes them, cause the stress to fall on the last syllable of that word, e.g. *uirum* but *uirūnque*.

For a clear account of Classical Latin pronunciation see W. S. Allen, *Vox Latina* (2nd edition), Cambridge 1975.

NOTES ON ILLUSTRATIONS

Cover Villa by the sea. Wall-painting from Stabiae; 1st century A.D. Naples, Museo Nazionale 9409. Photo: DAI (R).

Frontispiece The *clupeus aureus* of Augustus. Marble copy of the gold original set up in the senate house (*cūria*): SENATVS POPVLVSQVE ROMANVS IMP(ERATORI) CAESARI DIVI F(ILIO) AVGVSTO CO(N)S(VLI) VIII DEDIT CLVPEVM VIRTVTIS CLEMENTIAE IVSTITIAE PIETATIS ERGA DEOS PATRIAMQVE.

Arles, Musée Lapidaire, Photo: Giraudon.

GLOSSARY OF ENGLISH-LATIN GRAMMAR

This explains the most important terminology of Latin grammar, with examples in English. To make it as practically useful as possible, we provide simple definitions with down-to-earth examples of each term. Students should bear in mind, however, that (1) there is only a limited 'fit' between English grammar and Latin grammar, and (2) brevity and simplicity lead to technical inaccuracy (grammatical terms are notoriously difficult to define). So this index should be regarded as a simplified guide to the subject, for use when you forget the definition of a term used in the grammar or to refresh your memory of grammatical terms before you begin the course.

Before beginning the course, you should be acquainted with the following terms: noun, adjective, pronoun, conjunction, preposition, verb, person, number, tense, gender, case, singular, plural.

ablative: name of a case of the noun, pronoun and adjective. Functions defined at Reference Grammar L.

accidence: grammar which deals with variable forms of words, e.g. declensions, conjugations.

accusative: name of a case of the noun, pronoun or adjective. Function defined at Reference Grammar L.

active: a verb is active when the subject is doing the action, e.g. 'she (subject) runs', 'Thomas Aquinas (subject) reads his book'.

adjective: words which define the quality of a noun or pronoun by describing it, e.g. 'steep hill', 'red house', 'clever me'. There are also adjectival clauses, for which see *relative clauses*. Possessive adjectives are 'my', 'your', 'our', 'his', 'her', 'their'. In Latin adjectives must agree with nouns or pronouns in case, number and gender.

adverb: word which defines the quality of a verb by showing how the action of the verb is carried out, e.g. 'she ran quickly', 'she works enthusiastically'.

- Adverbial clauses* do the same job, e.g. 'she ran as quickly as she was able'.
Adverbs in Latin are indeclinable.
agree(ment): an adjective agrees with a noun when it adopts the same case, number and gender as the noun. E.g. if a noun is nominative singular masculine, an adjective which is to describe it must also be nominative singular masculine.
apposition: nouns or noun-plus-adjective phrases which add further information about a noun already mentioned are said to be 'in apposition' to it, e.g. 'the house, a red-brick building, was placed on the side of a hill' — here 'a red-brick building' is 'in apposition' to 'the house'.
article: the definite article is the word 'the', the indefinite article the word 'a'.
aspect: whether the action of the verb is seen as a simple statement, as continuing or repeated, e.g. 'I run', 'I am running' (or, in English, emphasised 'I do run').
auxiliary (verb): in 'she will love', 'she does love', 'she has loved', the verbs 'will', 'does' and 'have' are auxiliary verbs, brought in to help the verb 'love' (*auxilium* = help), defining its tense and aspect. 'May', 'might', 'would', 'should' are auxiliaries indicating the mood of the verb to which they are attached. Latin only uses auxiliary verbs in the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect deponent and passive.
case: form of the noun, pronoun or adjective which defines the relationship between that word and the rest of the sentence, e.g. a Latin word adopting the form which shows that it is in the nominative case (e.g. *serua*) might show that the word is the subject of its clause; a Latin word adopting the form which shows that it is in the accusative case (e.g. *seruam*) might show that it is the object of the sentence. There are six cases in Latin: nominative, vocative, accusative, genitive, dative and ablative. Most have more than one function.
causal clause: clause expressing the reason why something has happened or will happen, e.g. clauses beginning 'because . . .', 'since . . .'.
clause: part of a sentence containing a subject and finite verb. E.g. main clause 'she had finished', 'she hated it', 'she may succeed'; subordinate clause 'when she had finished', 'which she hated', 'so that she may succeed'. Cf. *phrase*. (See *adjective*, *adverb*, *noun*.)
comparative: form of adjective or adverb which implies a comparison, e.g. 'hotter', 'better', 'more slowly'.
complement: when a subject is said to be something, or to be called, to be thought, or to seem something, the 'something' is the complement of the verb, e.g. 'she is intelligent', 'it seems OK', 'she is thought to be a promising scholar'.
concessive clause: clause introduced by the word 'although', e.g. 'although it is raining, we shall go to the shops'.
conditional clause: clause introduced by the word 'if', e.g. 'If it rains today, I shall not go to the shops.' The technical term for the 'if' clause is 'protasis', and for the main clause 'apodosis' ('pay-off').

- conjugation (conjugate)*: the parts of a verb are its conjugation, e.g. the conjugation of 'I love' in the present indicative active is 'I love, you love, he/she/it loves, we love, you love, they love'.
conjunction: words (indeclinable in Latin) which link clauses or phrases or sentences, e.g. 'When the light was out and she went up to have dinner, the burglar entered and took the piano. But he was not unseen . . .' Co-ordinating conjunctions link together units (i.e. clauses, sentences, phrases) of equal grammatical value e.g. 'He went and stood and laughed out loud; but she sulked and stalked off and had a drink.' Subordinating conjunctions, words like 'when', 'although', 'if', 'because', 'since', 'after', introduce units of different grammatical value compared with the main clause. See *main verb*.
consecutive clause: see *result clause*.
consonant: a letter which is not a vowel, e.g. 'b', 'c', 'd', 'f', 'g', 'h', etc.
dative: name of case of the noun, pronoun and adjective. For function, see Reference Grammar L.
declension (decline): the forms of a noun, pronoun or adjective. To decline a noun is to list all its forms (i.e. nominative, vocative, accusative, genitive, dative, ablative) in both singular and plural.
deponent: a verb whose dictionary form (1st person singular) ends in -or e.g. *minor*, *hortor*, *sequor* etc., and whose meaning is always active.
diphthong: see *vowel*.
direct speech: speech which is quoted in the exact words of the speaker, e.g. 'Give me that book' (cf. *indirect speech*).
final clause: a clause which expresses the idea '(in order) to', i.e. it expresses purpose. E.g. 'in order to swim the river, she took off her shoes', 'to cross the railway, use the bridge'.
finite (verb): a verb which has a defined number and person, e.g. 'she runs' (third person, singular). Contrast 'to run', 'running', which are examples of the infinite verb (cf. *infinitive*).
future perfect tense: a verb form of the type 'I shall have —cd', e.g. 'I shall have tried', 'you will have gone', 'he will have spoken'.
future tense: a verb form of the type 'I shall/will —', e.g. 'I shall go', 'you will be', 'they will run'.
gender: whether a noun, pronoun or adjective is masculine, feminine or neuter.
genitive: a case of the noun, pronoun, or adjective. Function defined at Reference Grammar L.
historic sequence (also called 'secondary sequence'): when the main verb of a sentence is in a past tense ('I have —cd' counts as a present tense for the purposes of sequence).

- imperative:** the form of a verb which gives a command, e.g. 'run!'
- imperfect tense:** verb form of the type 'I was —ing'. 'I used to —', 'I kept on —ing'. It indicates continued or repeated action in the past
- indeclinable:** a word which has only one form
- indicative:** a verb form which states something as a fact, not as a wish or command, e.g. 'she runs'. Compare 'run!', 'may she run!', etc
- indirect object:** term for the person to whom something is given or said, e.g. 'she said to him, "Give it to me"': 'she told him to give her the book'
- indirect speech:** words which are reported, not, as in direct speech, stated exactly as the speaker said or thought them, e.g. direct command 'let me go', indirect command 'she told them to let her go'; direct statement 'he has gone', indirect statement 'he said that he had gone'; direct question 'where am I?', indirect question 'she wondered where she was'. Any verb of speaking or thinking can introduce indirect speech
- infinitive:** verb form prefixed in English by 'to', e.g. 'to run', 'to have worked', etc
- inflexion:** the different endings that a word takes to express its meaning in a sentence, e.g. 'he' (subject), 'him' (object) indicate case and may be said to be 'inflected'. Cf. 'they say', 'we said', indicating tense
- interrogative:** asking a question, e.g. 'who?' is an interrogative pronoun
- intransitive (verb):** a verb is intransitive when it does not require a direct object to complete its meaning, e.g. 'I stand', 'I sit'. In English such words can, at a stretch, be used transitively as well, when they adopt a different meaning, e.g. 'I sit (= take) an exam'; 'I cannot stand (= endure) that man'
- jussive (subjunctive):** related to giving orders. The form of the jussive subjunctive in English is 'let him/them/me/us'.
- locative case:** the case used to indicate where something is at. It is used in Latin with names of towns and one-town islands, e.g. 'at Rome', 'on Malta'.
- main verb:** the main verbs of a sentence (there are the verbs so left when all other verbs have been cut out, e.g. infinitives, participles, verbs in subordinating clauses), e.g. 'Although being something of a bibliophile — who loved nothing more than a good read — if she could get one, she sold her books (when the examinations were over) and lived in misery the rest of her life with her friends who were totally illiterate'. Main verbs: 'sold' and 'lived'
- mood:** whether a verb is indicative, subjunctive or imperative
- morphology:** study of the forms which words take
- nominative:** a case of the noun, pronoun or adjective. For function, see 6.2.4
- noun:** name of a person ('woman', 'child'), place ('London'), thing ('table'), 'Caesar', 'mountain' or abstraction ('virtue', 'courage', 'thought', 'quality')

- Noun clauses** are clauses which do the job of a noun in the sentence, e.g. all indirect speech, e.g. 'he says words'; 'words' = noun, object: 'he says that she is brave'; 'that she is brave' = noun-clause, object), constructions following 'I fear that...', 'I doubt that', 'I prevent x from' and 'it happened that ...'
- number:** whether something is singular or plural; 'table' and 'he' are singular, 'tables' and 'they' are plural
- object:** the person or thing to which the action of the subject and verb directly applies, e.g. 'she says that ...', 'they love books', 'we can see Rome'. Cf. *indirect object*
- participle:** a verb-form with the qualities and functions of an adjective, e.g. 'a man thinking ...'. In Latin there are present participles (meaning 'about to —', on the point of —ing) and perfect participles active (meaning 'having —ed') and passive (meaning 'having been —ed')
- passive:** a verb is passive when the subject is not doing the action, but having the action done to it. The sentence can may be described in both the active and the passive, e.g. 'she hit the ball' (active), 'the ball was hit by her' (passive), 'we visited Rome' (active), 'Rome was visited by us' (passive)
- perfect:** verb-form of the type 'I —ed', 'I have —ed', 'I did —', expressing a simple action in the past, e.g. 'I walked', 'she has gone', 'we did see it'
- person:** the persons are expressed by the pronouns 'I', 'we' (first persons, singular and plural); 'you' (second person singular and plural); 'he'/'she'/'it', 'they' (third persons singular and plural)
- phrase:** part of a sentence not having a finite verb, often introduced by a preposition, e.g. 'in the house' (prepositional phrase); 'going to work, he —' (participle phrase); 'I wish to do it' (infinitive phrase).
- pluperfect tense:** a verb-form of the type 'I had —ed', e.g. 'I had walked', 'they had gone'
- plural:** more than one, e.g. 'tables' is plural, 'table' is singular.
- predicate:** what is said about the subject of a sentence, e.g. 'The man', (subject) 'wore blue socks' (predicate).
- predicative:** to predicate something of someone is to say something new about them. So when adjectives (including participles) and nouns say something new, i.e. not previously acknowledged, about a person or thing, they are being used 'predicatively'. In English, predicative adjectives and participles usually come *after* the nouns they go with, e.g. 'I saw the man *working*', 'the woman went away *happy*', 'Caesar became *consul*', 'she is a *help* to them' (the last two are predicative nouns). Contrast 'I saw the working man', 'the happy woman went away', in which the adjectives describe what is already understood or acknowledged, adding nothing new (such adjectives are technically called 'attributive').

prefix: a small addition to the front of a word, which alters the basic meaning, e.g. *fix*, *refix*, *prefix*; *export*, *import*; *embark*, *disembark*, *redisembark*.

preposition: word coming before a noun or pronoun which (in Latin) affects the noun/pronoun's case, e.g. 'into the house', 'from the pot', 'in the hill', 'with my friend', 'by train'. Such expressions are called 'prepositional phrases'.

present tense: verb-form of the type 'I —', 'I am —ing', 'I do —', e.g. 'I love', 'I am loving', 'I do love'.

primary sequence: when the main verb of a sentence is present, future, or perfect in the form 'I have —ed'.

principal parts: (in Latin) the four parts of an active verb (present, infinitive, perfect and perfect participle) from which all other parts are formed, deponent verbs have only three such parts (present, infinitive, and perfect participle).

pronoun: this refers to a noun, without naming it, e.g. 'he' (as against 'the man', or 'Caesar'), 'they' (as against 'the women', or 'the Mitfords'), 'we', 'you', 'who', 'which'.

question (direct): a sentence ending in '?' (see also *indirect speech*)

reflexive: a pronoun or adjective is reflexive when it refers to (i.e. is the same person or thing as) the subject of the clause in which it stands, e.g. 'they warmed *themselves* by the fire', 'when they had checked *their* equipment, the leader gave them (not reflexive, since 'leader' is the subject) orders'.

regular: a 'regular' verb, noun, or adjective follows the pattern of the type to which it belongs, without deviation.

relative clause: a clause introduced by a relative pronoun such as 'who', 'which', 'what', 'whose', 'whom', 'that'; the relative pronoun refers back to a previous noun or pronoun (sometimes it refers forward to it) and the whole clause helps to describe or define the noun or pronoun referred to (hence it is an adjectival clause) e.g. 'the book *which I am reading* is rubbish', 'she presented the man *whom she had brought*', 'Who dreads, yet undismayed/Dares face his terror . . . Him let saint Thomas guide'.

reported speech: see *indirect speech*.

result clause: a clause which expresses the result or consequence of an action. It takes the form 'so . . . that / as to . . .' e.g. 'they were so forgetful *that they left* (as to leave) all their money behind'.

secondary sequence: see *historic sequence*.

semi-deponent: a verb which takes active forms in present, future and imperfect tenses, but deponent forms in perfect, future perfect and pluperfect.

sequence: see *primary* and *historic*.

singular: expresses one of something, e.g. 'table' is singular, 'tables' is plural; 'he' (singular), 'they' (plural).

statement: an utterance presented as a fact, e.g. 'I am carrying this pot'. Cf. question 'Am I carrying this pot?', command 'Carry this pot!'

subject: the subject of a sentence is, in the case of active verbs, the person/thing doing the action or being in the state (e.g. 'Gloria hits out'; 'Gloria is champion'); in the case of passive verbs, the subject is the person or thing on the receiving end of the action, e.g. 'the ball was hit by Gloria'.

subjunctive: the mood of the verb used in certain main and subordinate clauses in Latin and English, often expressing wishes or possibilities or commands, e.g. 'may I win!', 'let him think!', 'she left in order that she *might* catch the bus'.

subordinating clause (sub-clause): any clause which is not the main one (e.g. see *noun*, *relative clause*, *result clause*, *final clause*, *adverb*, *temporal clause*, *causal clause*, *concessive clause*, *conditional clause*, *participle*, *infinitive*). Cf. *phrase*. Also see *main verb*.

suffix: a small addition to the end of a word which changes its meaning, e.g. 'act', 'actor', 'action', 'active'.

superlative: the form of an adjective or adverb which expresses its highest degree, e.g. 'the *fastest* horse', 'he jumped *very high*', 'she worked *extremely hard*'.

syllable: a vowel or a vowel + consonant combination, pronounced without interruption as a word or part of a word, e.g. 'the' (one syllable), 'Julius' (three syllables), 'antidisestablishmentarianism' (eleven syllables).

syntax: grammar which deals with the constructions of a sentence (e.g. *indirect speech*, *result clauses*, *temporal clauses*, *participle phrases* etc.).

temporal clause: a clause expressing the time *when* something happened in relation to the rest of the sentence, e.g. 'when . . .', 'after . . .', 'while . . .', 'before . . .', 'as soon as . . .'

tense: the time at which the action of a verb is meant to take place. See under *present tense*, *future tense*, *imperfect tense*, *perfect tense*, *future perfect tense*, *pluperfect tense*.

transitive (verb): a verb which takes a direct object to complete its meaning, e.g. 'I put the book on the table', 'I make a chart' (it is very difficult to think of a context in which 'I put' and 'I make' could make a sentence *on their own*. This is not the case with *intransitive* verbs, e.g. 'I sit').

verb: a word expressing action or state, e.g. 'run', 'jump', 'stand', 'think', 'be', 'say'. (See under *active* and *passive*). Every complete sentence has at least one.

vocative: a case of the noun, pronoun or adjective, used when addressing someone (e.g. 'you too, Brutus?', 'et tū, Brūte?').

voice: whether a verb is active or passive.

vowel: 'a', 'e', 'i', 'o', 'u'. Diphthongs are two vowels pronounced as a single syllable (e.g. 'ou', 'ae').

Introduction

Running vocabulary for Introduction

<i>aedile</i> house	<i>familia</i> household	<i>quī</i> who? (pl.)
<i>teu</i> go, cov. miserly	<i>trā</i> daughter	<i>quis</i> who? (s.)
<i>com-fata</i> with his	<i>trā-phā</i> is the daughter	<i>caena</i> stage
daughter	of Euclio	<i>senex</i> old man
<i>eg</i> I	<i>habitant</i> (they) live	<i>serua</i> (woman) slave
<i>es</i> you are (in question:	<i>habitat</i> (he/she/it) lives	<i>serua Euclōnis</i> Euclio's
are you?)	<i>in aedibus</i> in the house	slave
<i>est</i> is; he/she/it is; there is	<i>in familiā Euclōnis</i> in	<i>seruae nōmen</i> the name of
<i>estis</i> you (pl.) are (in	Euclio's household	the slave
question: are you?)	<i>omnēs</i> all (pl.)	<i>Staphyla</i> Staphyla
<i>et</i> and, too	<i>paterfamiliās</i> head of the	<i>sum</i> (I) am
<i>Euclō</i> Euclio	family	<i>sumus</i> we are
<i>Euclōnis</i> of Euclio,	<i>pater Phaedrae</i> father of	<i>sunt</i> are; they are, there
Euclio's	Phaedra	are
<i>Euclōnis familia</i> Euclio's	<i>Phaedra</i> Phaedra	<i>tū</i> you
household	<i>Phaedrae</i> of Phaedra	

Learning vocabulary for Introduction

Nouns

<i>Euclō</i> Euclio	<i>filī-a</i> daughter	<i>seru-a</i> slave-woman
<i>famili-a</i> household	<i>Phaedr-a</i> Phaedra	<i>Staphyl-a</i> Staphyla

Verbs

habit-ō I dwell

Others

et and; also, too, even

General notes

- 1 All vowels are pronounced *short* unless marked with a $\bar{\text{ }}$ (macron) over them. So observe different vowel length of 'i' in, e.g., *filia*, etc. It may be helpful, but is not essential, to mark macra in your exercises.
- 2 $\acute{\text{ }}$ above a vowel indicates *stress*. Stress marks are included in all tables and throughout the Reference Grammar.
- 3 You should learn the learning vocabulary for each section *before* attempting the exercises. Please see *Text*, p. viii for suggested methodology.

Grammar for Introduction – *familia Eucliōnis*1 *sum* 'I am'

1st person singular (1st s.)	su-m	'I am'
2nd person singular (2nd s.)	es ¹	'you are'
3rd person singular (3rd s.)	es-t	'he/she/it is' 'there is'
1st person plural (1st pl.)	sū-mus	'we are'
2nd person plural (2nd pl.)	ēs-tis	'you (pl.) are'
3rd person plural (3rd pl.)	su-nt	'they/there are'

¹ Really *es-s*

Notes

- 1 *sum* is the most common verb in Latin.
- 2 Whereas English takes two words to express 'I am', Latin takes *one*. This is because the *endings* of the verb – *m*, –*s*, –*t*, –*mus*, –*tis*, –*nt* – indicate the person doing the action. Thus in full:

– <i>m</i>	= I ¹
– <i>s</i>	= you (s.)
– <i>t</i>	= he, she, it, there
– <i>mus</i>	= we
– <i>tis</i>	= you (pl.)
– <i>nt</i>	= they, there

¹ In other verbs –*ō* = 'I'

- 3 *sum* is irregular because, as you can see, the stem changes from *su-* to *es-*. If it is any consolation, all verbs meaning 'to be' are irregular, e.g. English 'I am', 'you are', 'he is'; French (deriving from Latin) 'je suis', 'tu es', 'il est' etc.

- 4 In the 3rd s. and 3rd pl., *est* and *sunt* mean only 'is' and 'are' if the subject is named, e.g. *senex est* = 'he is an old man'; *Eucliō senex est* = 'Euclio is an old man'; *seruae sunt* = 'they are slave-women'; *omnēs seruae sunt* = 'all are slave-women'.

- 5 Note the following points about word-order in sentences with *sum*:

- (a) Where subject and complement are stated
 - (i) the unemphatic order is: subject complement *sum*. E.g.

Eucliō senex est 'Euclio is an old man'.

- (ii) other orders place emphasis on the first word, e.g.

senex est Eucliō (complement *sum* subject)

senex Eucliō est (complement subject *sum*)

Both mean 'an old man, that's what Euclio is.'

NB The order 'subject *sum* complement' emphasizes the subject.

- (iii) The verb *sum* may come first and is then emphatic, e.g. *est enim Eucliō auārus* (*sum* subject complement) 'for Euclio is (in fact) a miser.'

- (b) Where the subject is not stated in Latin, the usual order is: complement *sum*. E.g.

Staphyla est 'it's Staphyla'.

- (c) *est/sunt* at the beginning of a sentence commonly indicate the *existence* of something, and are often best translated 'there is/there are'. E.g.

est locus . . . 'there is a place . . .'

In such sentences, more information will be expected e.g. 'there is a place, where roses grow', 'there are people, who like Latin.'

NB In (a) (i) and (ii) and (b) observe how complement + *sum* usually stick together to form the predicate, e.g.

Eucliō senex-est

senex-est Eucliō

sum is likely to go closely with the word preceding it, except where the order has been altered for special emphasis (as in e.g. *senex Eucliō est*).

Exercises

Morphology

- 1 Translate into Latin: you (s.) are; there are; he is; there is; you (pl.) are; they are; it is; I am; she is.
- 2 Change s. to pl. and vice versa: sum; sunt; estis; est; sumus; es.

Reading

Using Note 5 in the grammar section, give the correct translation of these sentences:

- (a) familia est.
- (b) serua Staphyla est
- (c) est enim aula aurī plēna (aula, pot; aurī plēna, full of gold)
- (d) coquus est seruus (coquus, cook; seruus, slave).
- (e) Phaedra filia est.
- (f) in aedibus sunt Eucliō, Phaedra et serua (in aedibus, in the house)
- (g) auārus est senex (auārus, miser; senex, old man)
- (h) est prope flūmen paruus ager (prope flūmen, near the river; paruus, small; ager, field).

English–Latin

Translate the Latin sentences into English. Then translate the English sentences into Latin, using the pattern of the Latin ones to help you arrange the word-order correctly.

- (a) sunt in familiā Eucliō, Phaedra, Staphyla
There is in the household a slave-girl.
- (b) Eucliō et Phaedra in aedibus sunt.
The slave-girl is in the house.
- (c) Eucliō sum.
You (s.) are a slave.
- (d) filia Eucliōnis Phaedra est
Euclio's slave is Staphyla.
- (e) quis es?
I am Euclio.
- (f) quī estis?
We are Euclio and Phaedra

SECTION ONE

Section 1A

Running vocabulary for 1A

Important notes

- 1 nom. is short for nominative and indicates the subject or complement of a sentence
acc. is short for accusative and indicates the object (direct) of a sentence. See Glossary of English–Latin Grammar p. xxi.
- 2 Where a 3rd s. verb is glossed '(he/she/it)', select the appropriate pronoun where there is no stated subject.

ad focum to the hearth
ad . . . nam to the door
ad Larē to the Lar
ad nūptiās (filiae tuae) to
the wedding (of your
daughter)
ad tē to you (s.)
adest (he/she/it) is present
aedes (nom. pl.) house
ante ianuam Demaeneti
before Demaenetus'
door
aperis (you) (s.) open
aperit (he/she/it) opens
appropinquat (he/she/it)
approaches
appropinquō I approach
at but
aula (nom.) pot
aulam (acc.) pot
aurī plēna (nom.) } full of
aurī plēnum (acc.) } gold

aurum (nom., acc.) gold
autem but
bene good
bonam (acc.) good
celat (he/she/it) hides
celō I hide away, secrete
circumspectat (he/she/it)
looks around
clam secretly
clāmās (do) you (s.) shout
clāmat (he/she/it) shouts, is
shouting
clāmātis you (pl.) shout;
are you shouting?
clausa (nom.) closed, shut
cognōui I know
contrā in return
coqui (nom.) cooks
coquorum et tībicinārum of
cooks and pipe-girls
coquōs (acc.) cooks
coquum (acc.) cook

coquus (nom.) cook
corōnam(que) (acc.) (and) a
garland
corōnō I garland
cūncta (nom.) the whole
cūcti (nom.) everyone
cūr why?
cursitant (they) run about
cursitō (I) run about
dās you (s.) give
dat he gives, offers
Dāne (voc.) O Davus
Dāuus (nom.) Davus
dē aulā about the pot
deinde then
Demaenetus (nom.)
Demaenetus
dō I give
dominus (nom.) master
dominus serui et seruae
master of the slave-
man and slave-woman

1st pl.	amā-mus	'we love'
2nd pl.	amā-tis	'you (pl.) love'
3rd pl.	āma-nt	'they love'

3 Present indicative active (2nd conjugation): *habeō* 'I have', 'I am having', 'I do have'

1st s.	hābe-ō	'I have' 'I am having' 'I do have'
2nd s.	hābē-s	'you have' etc
3rd s.	hābe-t	'he/she/it has'
1st pl.	hābē-mus	'we have'
2nd pl.	hābē-tis	'you (pl.) have'
3rd pl.	hābe-nt	'they have'

Notes

- 1 All verbs called 1st conjugation conjugate in the present like *am-ō*, e.g. *habit-ō* 'I live', *intr-ō* 'I enter', *uoc-ō* 'I call', *clām-ō* 'I shout', *par-ō* 'I prepare', *cēl-ō* 'I hide'.

All verbs called 2nd conjugation, which all end in *-eō*, conjugate like *habe-ō*, e.g. *time-ō* 'I fear'

- 2 Observe that these regular verbs are built up out of a *stem* + *endings*. The stem gives the *meaning* of the verb (*ama-* 'love', *habe-* 'have'), the endings give the *person*, i.e.

-ō	'I' (cf. <i>su-m</i>)
-s	'you'
-t	'he/she/it; there'
-mus	'we'
-tis	'you (pl.)'
-nt	'they/there'

- 3 Observe that the 'key' vowel of 1st conjugation verbs is *A* (*amA-*), of 2nd conjugation is *E* (*habE-*). The only exception is the 1st s. *amō* 'I love', though this was originally *amaō*.

4 Terminology

Conjugation means 'the setting out of a verb in all its persons' as illustrated in 2 and 3. Thus to conjugate a verb means to set it out as at 2 and 3

Indicative means that the action is being presented as a fact (though it need not be actually true). E.g.:

'I speak to you' (fact, true)

'The pig flies past the window' (presented as a fact, but not true!)

Active means the subject is performing the action, e.g. 'Euclio runs', 'Staphyla sees the daughter'.

Tense means the time at which the action is taking place. Thus 'present' means 'present tense', i.e. the action is happening in the present, e.g. 'I am running'. Cf. future tense 'I will run', etc

5 Meaning

The present indicative active of e.g. *amō* has three meanings, i.e. 'I love, I am loving, I do love'. Each of these three 'aspects' (as they are called) of the present tense represents the actions in a slightly different way. 'I love' is the plainest statement of fact, 'I am loving' gives a more vivid, 'close-up', continuous picture (you can see it actually going on), 'I do love' is emphatic. You must select *by context* which meaning suits best. Remember, however, that in general the emphatic meaning is indicated in Latin by the verb being put first in the sentence.

Exercises

Morphology

- 1 *Conjugate*: *cēlō*; *timeō*; *portō*; *habeō*; (optional: *habitō*; *clāmō*; *intrō*; *uocō*; *sum*)
- 2 *Translate, then change pl. to s. and vice versa*: *clāmās*; *habent*; *intrat*; *uocō*; *sumus*; *portāmus*; *timēs*; *habētis*; *est*; *timet*; *uocant*; *cēlātis*; *timēmus*; *habeō*; *sunt*
- 3 *Translate into Latin*: you (pl.) have; I do hide; we are carrying; they call, you (s.) are afraid of; she is dwelling; there are; it has; there enters; she is

6 The cases in Latin: terminology and meaning

The terms 'nominative', 'accusative', 'genitive', 'dative' and 'ablative' are the technical terms for five of the six so-called 'cases' of Latin nouns and adjectives. (The sixth case, the vocative, is used to address people, e.g. 'welcome, friend', but since its form is the same as the nominative in

almost all instances, we have left it out of the charts.) The cases will be referred to as nom., acc., gen., dat., and abl. When laid out in this form the cases are called a 'declension'. 'Declining' a noun means to go through all its cases. *The different forms of the cases are of absolutely vital importance in Latin and must be learned by heart till you know them to perfection.* The reason is as follows. In English, we determine the meaning of a sentence by the order in which the words come. The sentence 'man bites dog' means something quite different from 'dog bites man', for no other reason than that the words come in a different order. A Roman would have been bewildered by this, because in Latin word-order does not determine the grammatical functions of the words in the sentence (though it plays its part in emphasis): what is vital is the *form* the words take. In 'daughter calls the slave', 'daughter' is the subject of the sentence, and 'slave' the object. A Roman used the *nom.* form to indicate a subject, and the *acc.* form to indicate an object. Thus when he wrote or said the word for daughter, *filia*, he indicated not only what the word meant, but also its function in the sentence – in this case, subject; likewise, when he said 'slave', *servum*, the form he used would tell him that slave was the object of the sentence. Thus, hearing *filia servum*, a Roman would conclude at once that a daughter was doing something to a slave. Had the Roman heard *filiam servus*, he would have concluded that a slave, *servus*, which is here in the *nom.* case, was doing something to a daughter, *filiam*, here in the *acc.* case. WORD-ORDER IN LATIN IS OF SECONDARY IMPORTANCE since its function relates not to grammar or syntax so much as to emphasis, contrast and style. To English-speakers word-order is, of course, the critical indicator of meaning. In Latin, grammar or syntax is indicated by WORD FORM. WORD FORM IS VITAL.

We can note here that English has a residual case system left. E.g., 'I like beer', not 'me like beer'; 'he loves me', not 'him loves I'; and cf. he, him / she, her, hers / they, them, theirs.

- 1 *Noun*: the name of something (real or abstract), e.g. 'house', 'door', 'idea', 'intelligence'.
- 2 *Nominative case*: the most important functions are (i) as subject of a sentence, and (ii) as complement after the verb 'to be'. Nominative means 'naming' (*nōminō* 'I name'). In Latin, the subject of a sentence is 'in the verb', e.g.

habeō means 'I have'

habet means 'he/she/it has'

If one wants to 'name' the subject, it goes into the *nom.* case, e.g.

habeō serva 'I (the slave) have'

habet serva 'she (the slave) has', 'the slave has'

habet vir 'he (the man) has', 'the man has'

- 3 *Accusative case*: the most important function is as object of a verb. The *acc.* case denotes the person or thing on the receiving end of the action, e.g. 'the man bites *the dog*'. One may also look at it as limiting or defining the extent of the action, e.g. 'the man bites' (what does he bite? A bullet? A jam sandwich? No –) 'the dog'. So the accusative case can also limit or define the extent of a description, e.g. *nūdus pedēs* 'naked in respect of the feet', 'with naked feet'.
- 4 NB The verb 'to be' is NEVER followed by a direct object in the *acc.*, but frequently by a 'complement', in the *NOM.* E.g. 'Phaedra is the daughter' *Phaedra filia est*. This is perfectly reasonable, since 'daughter' obviously describes Phaedra. They are both the same person, and will be in the same case.
- 5 *Genitive case*: this case expresses various senses of the English 'of'. Its root is the same as *genitor*, 'author', 'originator'; 'father'. Thus it denotes the idea 'belonging to' (possession), e.g. 'slave of Euclio', and origin, e.g. 'son of Euclio'. Cf. English 'dog's dinner' (= 'dinner of dog') and 'dogs' dinner' ('dinner of the dogs'), where *dog's* and *dogs* are genitive forms.

Dative and ablative cases: these will only be used in very limited ways in the Text at the moment, but you should attempt to learn their forms now. Dative and ablative forms will appear in exercise work.

- 6 *Word-order*: the usual word-order in English for a simple sentence consisting of subject, verb and object is: (i) subject (ii) verb (iii) object, e.g. 'The man (subj.) bites (verb) the dog (obj.).'

In Latin the usual order is (i) subject (ii) object (iii) verb. See 1⁵ above and Reference Grammar W for a full discussion.

7 Singular and plural; masculine, feminine and neuter

As well as having 'case', nouns can be either singular (s.), when there will be one of the persons or things named, or plural (pl.), when there will be more than one. This feature is called the 'number' of a noun. Nouns also possess 'gender', i.e. are masculine (m.), feminine (f.) or neuter (n.).

8 1st declension nouns: *serva*-a ae 1 feminine (f.) 'slave-woman'

The pattern which nouns follow is called 'declension'. Nouns 'decline'.

	case	s.	
nominative	(nom.)	sēru-a	'slave-woman'
accusative	(acc.)	sēru-am	'slave-woman'
genitive	(gen.)	sēru-ae (-āī)	'of the slave-woman'
dative	(dat.)	sēru-ae	
ablative	(abl.)	sēru-ā	

	case	pl.	
nominative	(nom.)	sēru-ae	'slave-women'
accusative	(acc.)	sēru-ās	'slave-women'
genitive	(gen.)	seru-ārum	'of the slave-women'
dative	(dat.)	sēru-īs	
ablative	(abl.)	sēru-īs	

Notes

- 1 Since it is only in special circumstances that Latin uses a word corresponding to 'the' and 'a', *serua* can mean 'slave-woman', 'the slave-woman', or 'a slave-woman'. The same applies to all nouns in Latin.
- 2 All 1st decl. nouns end in *-a* in the nom. s. This is called the 'ending', the rest of the noun is called the 'stem'. So the stem of *serua* is *seru-*, the ending *-a*. The same applies to all 1st decl. nouns. Cf. *fili-a*, *famili-a*, *Phaedr-a*, *Staphyl-a*, *aul-a*, *corōn-a*, *scaen-a*.
- 3 Most 1st decl. nouns are f. in gender (common exceptions are e.g. *agricol-a* 'farmer', *naut-a* 'sailor', both m.).
- 4 Note ambiguities:
 - a. *seru-ae* can be gen. s., dat. s., or nom. pl.
 - b. *seru-a* is nom. s., but *seru-ā* = abl. s. (not ambiguous if you note vowel length carefully: *-a* nom. / *-ā* abl.)
 - c. *seru-īs* can be dat. or abl. pl.
- 5 Nouns of this declension you should have learned are: *famili-a* 'household', *fili-a* 'daughter', *Phaedr-a* 'Phaedra', *seru-a* 'slave-woman', *Staphyl-a* 'Staphyla', *aul-a* 'pot', *corōn-a* 'garland', *scaen-a* 'stage', 'scene'

9 2nd decl. nouns: *seru-us* 2 masculine (m.) 'male slave'

	s.	pl.
nom.	seru-us 'male slave'	sēru-i 'male slaves'
acc.	sēru-um 'male slave'	seru-ōs 'male slaves'

gen.	sēru-ī	'of the male slave'	seru-ōrum	'of the male slaves'
dat.	sēru-ō		sēru-īs	
abl.	sēru-ō		sēru-īs	

Notes

- 1 The vocative case, used when addressing people (e.g. 'hello, Brutus'), ends in *-e* in the 2nd decl. m., e.g. 'you too, Brutus?' *et tū, Brūte?* (see 17A for full discussion).
- 2 Observe ambiguities:
 - (a) *seru-ō* can be dat. or abl. s.
 - (b) *seru-īs* can be dat. or abl. pl.
 - (c) *seru-ī* can be gen. s. or nom. pl.
 - (d) Watch *-um* endings of acc. s. and gen. pl.
- 3 The other noun of this decl. you should have learned is *coqu-us* 'cook'.

Exercises

- 1 Decline: *coquus*; *aula*; (optional: *seruus*, *familia*, *corōna*, *scaena*).
- 2 Name the case or cases of each of these words: *seruārum*; *coquō*; *corōnam*; *seruōs*; *scaenae*; *filiā*; *coquus*; *seruī*; *coquum*; *filiae*; *scaenās*; *seruō*; *coquōrum*; *aula*; *seruīs*.
- 3 Translate each sentence, then change noun(s) and verb to pl. or s. as appropriate. E.g. *coquus seruam uocat*: the cook calls the slave-girl. *coqui seruās uocant*.
 - (a) *sum seruus*.
 - (b) *aulam portō*.
 - (c) *corōnās habent*.
 - (d) *serua timet seruū*.
 - (e) *seruās uocātis*.
 - (f) *seruae aulās portant*.
 - (g) *cēlāmus aulās*.
 - (h) *seruās cēlant coqui*.
 - (i) *familia corōnam habet*.
 - (j) *uocat seruus seruam*.

10 Prepositions

Prepositions (*praepositus* 'placed in front') are the little words placed in front of nouns e.g. *in* 'into', *ad* 'towards' etc. Learn the following important prepositions.

in, *ad* + *acc.*

in 'into', 'onto', e.g. *in scaenam intrat* 'he enters onto (i.e. right onto) the stage'

ad 'to(wards)' e.g. *ad scaenam aulam portat* 'he carries the pot towards (not necessarily onto) the stage'

Observe that the *acc.* denotes direction *towards which* something moves. Compare the next preposition.

in + *abl.*

in 'in', 'on', e.g. *in scaenā est* 'he is on the stage'

Observe that *in* + *abl.* denotes position *at*.

Exercise

Write the Latin for: onto the stage; in the pot; onto the garlands; into the pots; in the household; towards the slave-woman; in the slaves; towards the daughter.

Translation hint

It is extremely important that Latin words be taken in the order in which they appear in a sentence, but that judgement about the final meaning of the sentence be suspended until all the necessary clues have been provided. Take, for example, the following sentences:

(a) *aulam igitur clam sub terrā cēlō*

One should approach it as follows:

aulam 'pot': -*am* = accusative case, so something is happening to it

igitur 'therefore' (fixed)

clam 'secretly' (fixed)

sub 'underneath'

terrā 'earth', so probably 'underneath the earth'

cēlō something to do with 'hide', person ending -*ō*, so 'I hide'.

That gives us subject and verb; *aulam* must be object, so 'I hide the pot under the earth'. Add 'therefore' and 'secretly' in aptest place.

(b) *in aedīs intrant seruus et serua et nūptiās parant*

in 'in' or 'into', depending on case of following noun
aedīs = plural, so 'house'. Accusative, so 'into the house'

intrant = something to do with entering. -*ant* = 'they', so 'they enter'

seruus = something to do with a slave. But -*us* shows subject, so the slave must be doing something. Can he be 'entering'? But *intrant* is plural, 'they enter'. Oh dear!

et 'and'. Ah. Perhaps another subject about to appear

serua 'slave-woman', -*a* ending shows subject. Excellent: 'The slave and the slave-woman are entering into the house'

et 'and'. More people entering? Or another clause?

nūptiās 'marriage-rites'. -*ās* shows object. So something being done to the marriage-rites

parant: something about preparing. -*ant* shows 'they'. So 'they prepare the marriage-rites'. Presumably 'they' are the two slaves of the earlier clause. So 'The slave and slave-woman enter the house and prepare the marriage-rites.'

This is the best way to approach a Latin sentence. A number of the exercises will encourage you to do this kind of analysis.

Reading exercise

1 Read each of these sentences, then without translating, say what the subject of the second verb is (in Latin). Finally, translate each sentence into English.

(a) *seruus in scaenam intrat. corōnās portat.*

(b) *coquī in aedibus sunt. seruās uocant.*

(c) *est in familiā Euchiōnis serua. Staphyla est.*

(d) *in scaenam intrat Dēmaenetus. aulam aurī plēnam habet.*

(e) *coquus et serua clāmant. seruū enim timent.*

2 Take each word as it comes and define its 'job' in the sentence e.g. *Dēmaenetus coquū* . . . - *Dēmaenetus* is subject, so *Dēmaenetus* is doing

something. coquum is object, so Demaenetus is doing something to a cook). Then add an appropriate verb in the right form (e.g. Demaenetus calls a cook – Dēmaenetus coquum uocat).

- (a) aulam seruus . . .
- (b) serua corōnam, aulam seruus . . .¹
- (c) seruās seruī . . .
- (d) familia coquōs . . .
- (e) Lar seruōs . . .
- (f) aurum ego . . .
- (g) Euchiō familiam . . .
- (h) aulās aurī plēnās et corōnās seruāe . . .

¹ The verb must be s

3 Define subject, verb, object and prepositional phrases in the following passages and answer the questions:

- (a) And now the sun had stretched out all the hills,
And now was dropped¹ into the western bay;
At last he rose, and twitched his mantle blue:
Tomorrow to fresh woods and pastures new.
(Milton, Lycidas 190–3)

¹ What 'was dropped'?

- (b) Still green¹ with bays each ancient Altar stands,
Above the reach of sacrilegious hands;
Secure¹ from Flames, from Envy's fiercer rage,
Destructive War, and all-involving Age.
See from each clime the learn'd their incense bring!
(Pope, Essay on Criticism 181–5)

¹ What is 'green' and 'secure'?

4 With the help of the running vocabulary for 1A, work through the Latin passage 'Dēmaenetus . . .', following these steps:

- (a) As you meet each word, ask
 - (i) its meaning
 - (ii) its job in the sentence (i.e. subject or object? part of a phrase?)

e.g.

Dēmaenetus coquōs et tībīcinās uidet.

Dēmaenetus 'Dēmaenetus', subject, coquos 'cooks', object, et 'and' almost certainly joining something to coquōs, tībīcinās 'pipe-

girls', object – part of a phrase coquōs et tībīcinās: uidet '(he) sees', verb: 'Dēmaenetus the cooks and pipe-girls (he) sees'.

- (b) Next produce a version in good English, e.g. 'Dēmaenetus sees the cooks and pipe-girls'.
- (c) When you have worked through the whole passage, go back to the Latin and read the piece aloud, taking care to phrase correctly, thinking through the meaning as you read.

Dēmaenetus coquōs et tībīcinās uidet. ad nūptiās filiae ueniunt. in aedīs Dēmaenetī intrant et nūptiās parant. nunc aedēs Dēmaenetī coquōrum et tībīcinārum plēnae sunt. Dēmaenetus autem timet. aulam enim aurī plēnam habet. nam sī aula Dēmaenetī in aedibus est aurī plena, fūrēs ualdē timet Dēmaenetus. aulam Dēmaenetus cēlat. nunc aurum saluum est. nunc saluus Dēmaenetus. nunc salua aula. Lar enim aulam habet plēnam aurī. nunc prope Larem Dēmaenetī aula sub terrā latet. nunc igitur ad Larem appropinquat Dēmaenetus et supplicat. 'ō Lar, ego Dēmaenetus tē uocō. ō tūtēla meae familiae, aulam ad tē aurī plēnam portō. filiae nūptiae sunt hodiē. ego autem fūrēs timeō. nam aedēs meae fūrū plēnae sunt. tē ōrō et obsecrō, aulam Dēmaenetī aurī plēnam seruā.' 5 10

English–Latin

Translate the Latin sentences into English. Then translate the English sentences into Latin, using the pattern of the Latin ones to help you arrange the word-order correctly.

- (a) coquus aulam Dēmaenetī portat.
The slave has the cooks' garlands.
- (b) tū clāmās, ego autem aulās portō.
The slave girl is afraid. Therefore I am calling the cook.
- (c) cūr scaena plēna est seruōrum?
Why is the household full of cooks?
- (d) ego Lar tē uocō. cūr mē timēs?
(It is) I, Phaedra (who)¹ enter. Why are you (pl.) hiding the pot?
- (e) sī aurum habet, Dēmaenetus timet.
If they hide the pot, the slaves are afraid.
- (f) corōnās et aulās portant seruī.
(It is)¹ a cook and a slave-girl Dēmaenetus is summoning

¹ Put stressed words first in the sentence.

Section 1B

Running vocabulary for 1B

a ha'	<i>dēcipit</i> (he/she/it) deceives
ab illō from that (former self of his) [The whole phrase is a quotation from Virgil <i>Aeneid</i> 2.274, used by Aeneas of the ghost of Hector.]	<i>Dēmaenete</i> O Demaenetus <i>Dēmaenet-us</i> 1 2m Demaenetus <i>de-us</i> 1 2m. god <i>dī</i> (nom. pl.) gods, (voc. pl.) O gods.
ab inferis from the dead	<i>dīues</i> (nom.) rich (man)
adhūc so far	<i>diuitum</i> (gen.) of rich (men)
aedēs (nom.) house	<i>dō</i> 1 I give
aedīs (acc.) house	<i>dormiō</i> I am asleep
aggerō I pile, heap up	<i>dormit</i> (he/she/it) sleeps
amō 1 I love	<i>dōtem</i> (acc.) dowry
an? or?	<i>dūcit</i> (he) leads
anxius worried	<i>dum</i> while
appareō 2 I appear	<i>ē</i> out of, from
appropinquō 1 I go up to, approach	<i>ecce</i> look!
ār-a ae 1f altar	<i>ecquis</i> (does) anyone?
auārus greedy	<i>ehēu</i> what a pity! oh dear!
au-us ī 2m. grandfather	<i>Euclo-nem</i> (acc.) Euclo
bene good! well	<i>Euclo-ni</i> (dat.) to Euclo
bona (nom.)	<i>Euclo-nis</i> (gen.) of Euclo
bonam (acc.)	<i>euge</i> } hoorah!
bonum (acc.)	<i>eugepae</i> } yippee!
bonus (nom.)	<i>explicō</i> 1 I explain, tell
cēlā hide!	<i>fābul-a ae</i> 1f. story
celeriter quickly	<i>facis</i> you (s.) make, do
circumspiciō 1 I look around	<i>facit</i> (he/she/it) makes, does
clam secretly	<i>falsa</i> } false
collocō 1 I place	<i>falsum</i> }
cōnsilium plan	<i>familiāris</i> of the household
credō I believe	<i>festinō</i> 1 I hurry about
cūr-a ae 1f care, devotion, worry, concern	<i>foue-a ae</i> 1f. pit, hole
cūrō 1 I care for, look after, am concerned about	<i>fūrēs</i> (nom., acc.) thieves
dē (+abl.) concerning	<i>fūrum</i> (gen.) of thieves

<i>hodiē</i> today	<i>homo</i> (nom.) man, fellow
<i>hominum</i> (gen.) of men	<i>honōrem</i> (acc.) respect
<i>ignōrō</i> 1 I do not know	<i>imaginem</i> (acc.) vision
<i>imāgō</i> (nom.) vision	<i>in aedīs</i> into the house
<i>in aedibus</i> in the house	<i>in somniō</i> in a dream
<i>intrō</i> (l. 151) inside	<i>iterum</i> again
<i>iuxta</i> (+acc.) next to	<i>Larem</i> (acc.) 1 it
<i>Laris</i> (gen.) of the Lar	<i>lateo</i> 2 I lie hidden
<i>magnū</i> (voc. pl.) great	<i>magnus</i> great (amount of)
<i>malus</i> evil, wicked	<i>maneo</i> 2 I remain
<i>mei</i> (of) my	<i>meum</i> my
<i>mihi</i> (to) me	<i>mirum</i> amazing
<i>miserum</i> miserable,	<i>miserum</i> miserable,
unhappy	
<i>mōstrō</i> 1 show, reveal	
<i>moveō</i> 2 I move	
<i>multam</i> (acc.)	} many, much
<i>multās</i> (acc.)	
<i>multī</i> (nom.)	
<i>multōrum</i> (gen.)	
<i>multum</i> (acc.)	
<i>murmurō</i> 1 I mutter	
<i>mutāus</i> changed	
<i>nēmīnem</i> (acc.) no-one	
<i>nempe</i> clearly, no doubt	
<i>nūllam</i>	} (acc.) no, none
<i>nūllās</i>	
<i>nūllum</i>	

Section 1B

11 →

<i>numquam</i> never	<i>serua</i> keep safe!
<i>pauper</i> (nom.) poor (man)	<i>seruō</i> 1 I keep
<i>pecūni-a ae</i> 1f money	<i>simul</i> at the same time
<i>perditissimus</i> most done for	<i>somnia</i> (acc.) dreams
<i>posideō</i> 2 I possess, have hold	<i>somnium</i> dream
<i>praeterea</i> besides	<i>spectō</i> 1 I look at, see
<i>quāto</i> how (much)	<i>spectatorēs</i> spectators, audience
<i>quāto</i> why?	<i>stupeō</i> 2 I am amazed, astonished
<i>quāto</i> because	<i>sub pedibus</i> under (your) feet
<i>quāto</i> what?	<i>sub (+abl.)</i> under
<i>quāto</i> how close	<i>sub me te</i> under (my) cloak
<i>salvum</i> safe	<i>suddenly</i>
<i>salvum</i> safe	<i>super (+acc.)</i> above
<i>salvum</i> safe	<i>supplicō</i> 1 I make prayers (to)

<i>tamen</i> however, but
<i>tandem</i> at length
<i>teneō</i> 2 I hold, possess, keep
<i>terr-a ae</i> 1f earth
<i>thēsaur-us</i> ī 2m. treasure
<i>tum</i> then
<i>ualdē</i> greatly
<i>uerum</i> true
<i>arxō</i> 1 I annoy, worry
<i>uideō</i> 2 I see
<i>uidēte</i> see! look!
<i>uigilō</i> 1 I am awake
<i>uisō</i> I visit
<i>unguentum</i> ointment
<i>ut</i> how!

Learning vocabulary for 1B

Nouns

<i>cūr-a ae</i> 1f. care, worry, concern	<i>unquent-um</i> ī 2n. ointment
<i>de-us</i> ī 2m. god	<i>aedis aed-is</i> 3f. temple; pl <i>aed-ēs</i> nom house
<i>thēsaur-us</i> ī 2m. treasure	

Adjectives

<i>multi-us a um</i> much, many	<i>nūll-us a um</i> no, none
---------------------------------	------------------------------

Verbs

<i>am-ō</i> 1 I love	<i>explic-ō</i> 1 I tell, explain
<i>cūr-ō</i> 1 I look after, care for	<i>supplic-ō</i> 1 I make prayers (to)
<i>d-ō</i> 1 I give	

Others

<i>clam</i> secretly	<i>quod</i> because
<i>quārē</i> why?	<i>tamen</i> however, but

<i>posside-ō</i> 2 I have, hold, possess
<i>uide-ō</i> 2 I see

tandem at length

Grammar and exercises for 1B

11 3rd declension nouns (consonant stem): *fūr fūr-is* 3m. 'thief'

	s.		pl.	
nom.	fūr	'thief'	fūr-ēs	'thieves'
acc.	tur-em	'thief'	fūr-ēs	'thieves'
gen.	fūr-is	'of the thief'	fūr-um	'of thieves'
dat.	fūr-ī		fūr-ibus	
abl.	fūr-e		fūr-ibus	

NB. This is the standard pattern of endings for 3rd decl. nouns whose stems end in a consonant. There are, however, slight changes of pattern in nouns whose stem ends in the vowel *-i-* (the so-called '*i*-stem' nouns) as follows

12 3rd declension nouns (*i*-stem) *aedis aed-is* 3f. 'room', 'temple'; in plural 'temples', 'house'

	s.	
nom.	aed-is	'room', 'temple'
acc.	aed-em	'room', 'temple'
gen.	aed-is	'of the room', 'of the temple'
dat.	aed-ī	
abl.	aed-e (aed-ī)	
	pl.	
nom.	aed-ēs	'temples' / 'house'
acc.	aed-īs (-ēs)	'temples' / 'house'
gen.	aed-ium	'of temples' / 'of the house'
dat.	aed-ibus	
abl.	aed-ibus	

Notes

- 1 *aed-is* in the s. means 'room', 'temple'; in the pl. usually 'house'.
- 2 Observe acc. pl. in *-īs*, gen. pl. in *-ium*, and alternative abl. s. in *-ī*. This dominance of *-i-* is the mark of *i*-stem nouns of the third declension. In fact originally *all* the cases would have had the *-i-*, since it is part of the stem. The s. of *turris* 3f. 'tower', which keeps the old forms even in classical Latin, will demonstrate this: *turri-s*, *turri-m*, *turri-s*, *turri*, *turri*.

Note that we indicate in the grammar sections which nouns and adjectives are *i*-stem, but for practical reasons we present the endings as for consonant stems, i.e. *aed-is*, not (the technically correct) *aedi-s*

13 Stems and endings of 3rd decl. nouns

- 1 3rd decl. nouns have a great variety of endings in the nom. s. What unites them all is that their gen. s. has the same ending, e.g. *Eucliō Eucliō-is*, *senex sen-is*. You must therefore learn both the decl. and the gen. s. as well as the gender of these 3rd decl. nouns, i.e. not *aedis* 'temple', pl. 'house', but *aedis aed-is* 3f. 'temple', pl. 'house'.
- 2 The gen. s. is doubly important, because it gives you the STEM OF THE NOUN to which the endings are added to make the declension. Thus when you have learned *senex sen-is* 3m., you know that the stem is *sen-* IT IS THE GEN. S. WHICH GIVES YOU THIS
- 3 You also need to be able to work back from the stem to the nom. s. in order to find the word in a dictionary. E.g. if you see *pācem* in the text, you MUST be able to deduce that the nom. s. is *pāx*, otherwise you will not be able to look the word up. Observe the following common patterns of CONSONANT STEMS

- (a) stems ending in *-l-* or *-r-* keep *l* and *r* in the nom., e.g.

cōsul-is → nom. *cōsul* 'consul'

tur-is → nom. *fūr* 'thief'

- (b) stems ending in *-d-* or *-t-* end in *-s* in the nom., e.g.

ped-is → nom. *pēs* 'foot'

dōt-is → nom. *dōs* 'dowry'

- (c) stems ending in *-c-* or *-g-* end in *-x* in the nom., e.g.

rēg-is → nom. *rēx* 'king'

duc-is → nom. *dux* 'general'

- (d) stems ending in *-ōn* or *-iōn* end in *-ō* or *-iō* in the nom., e.g.

Scīpiōn-is → nom. *Scīpiō* 'Scipio'

praedōn-is → nom. *praedō* 'pirate'

Exercises

- 1 Decline: honor, fūr, (optional: Eucliō (s.), Lar, aedis).
- 2 Name the case of each of these words: Eucliōnis, fūrem, aedium, honorēs, Lar, senum, aedis, honorēm, fūr, Laris.
- 3 Translate each sentence, then change noun(s) and verb(s) to s. or pl. as appropriate, e.g. fūrem servus timet – the slave is afraid of a thief – fūrēs servi timent.

- (a) deinde thēsurum senis fūr uidet.
- (b) Lar honorēm nōn habet.
- (c) igitur senem deus nōn cūrat.
- (d) quārē tamen supplicātis, senēs?
- (e) unguentum senex tandem possidet.
- (f) in aedibus senex nunc habitat.
- (g) fūr aulam aurī plēnam semper amat.
- (h) honorēm tamen non habet fūr.
- (i) quārē in aedis nōn intrās, senex?
- (j) servam clam amat senex.

14 1st/2nd declension adjectives: *mult-us a um* 'much', 'many'

	s.		
	m.	f.	n.
nom.	mūlt-us	mūlt-a	mūlt-um
acc.	mūlt-um	mūlt-am	mūlt-um
gen.	mūlt-ī	mūlt-ae	mūlt-ī
dat.	mūlt-ō	mūlt-ae	mūlt-ō
abl.	mūlt-ō	mūlt-a	mūlt-ō
	pl.		
	m.	f.	n.
nom.	mūlt-ī	mūlt-ae	mūlt-a
acc.	mūlt-os	mūlt-as	mūlt-a
gen.	mūlt-orum	mūlt-ārum	mūlt-ōrum
dat.	mūlt-īs	mūlt-īs	mūlt-īs
abl.	mūlt-īs	mūlt-īs	mūlt-īs

Notes

- 1 Adjectives (from the stem *adiectus* 'added to') give additional information about a noun, e.g. *fast* horse, *steep* hill (adjectives are often called 'describing words').

- 2 Since nouns can be m., f. or n., adjectives need to have m., f. and n. forms so that they can 'AGREE' grammatically with the noun they describe. So adjectives must agree with nouns in *gender*.
- 3 Adjectives must also 'AGREE' with nouns in *number*, s. or pl.
- 4 Finally, they must 'AGREE' with nouns in *case* (nom., acc., gen., dat. or abl.). A noun in the acc. can only be described by an adjective in the acc.
- 5 In summary, if a noun is to be described by an adjective in Latin, the adjective will have to agree with it in *gender, number and case*. Here are three examples:

- (a) 'I see *many* temples' – 'temples' are the object, and plural; the word we shall use in Latin is *aedis*, which is f. So if 'many' is to agree with 'temples', it will need to be acc., pl. and f. Answer: *multās aedis*.
- (b) 'He shows *much* respect' – 'respect' is object, s. The word we shall use, *honor honor-is*, is m. So 'much' will have to be acc. s. m. Answer: *multum honorēm*.
- (c) 'He hears the voice of *many* slaves' – 'slaves' is gen. and pl., the word we shall use, *serva*, is f. So 'many' will be gen. pl. f. Answer: *multārum servārum*.

- 6 It is worth emphasising here that an adjective does not necessarily describe a noun it is standing next to. It describes a noun it *agrees with* in case, number and gender, e.g.:

- (a) *multum filia servat thesaurum* – *multum* = acc. s. m., *filia* = nom. s. f., *thesaurum* = acc. s. m. I.e. 'It's a great deal of treasure the daughter keeps.'
- (b) *multum furum consilium placet* – *multum* = acc. s. m. or nom. acc. s. n., *furum* = gen. pl., *consilium* = nom. acc. s. n. I.e. 'No scheme of thieves is pleasing.'

multus usually precedes its noun, e.g. *multī servī* 'many slaves'. When it follows its noun it is emphatic, e.g. *servōs multōs habeo* 'I really do have lots of slaves'.

- 7 Adjectives can be used on their own as nouns, when gender will indicate meaning, e.g. *bonus* (m.) 'a good man', *bonum* (n.) 'a good thing'.

15 2nd declension neuter nouns: *somni-um* ī 2n. 'dream'

	s.		pl.	
nom.	sōmni-um	'dream'	sōmni-a	'dreams'
acc.	sōmni-um	'dream'	sōmni-a	'dreams'
gen.	sōmni or sōmni-ī	'of the dream'	somni-ōrum	'of dreams'
dat.	sōmni-ō		sōmni-īs	
abl.	sōmni-ō		sōmni-is	

Notes

- 1 There is only one neuter noun type of the 2nd decl.; they all end in *-um* in nom. s. Cf. *aur-um* 'gold', *unguent-um* 'ointment'.
- 2 As with other neuters, the nom. and acc. s. and pl. are the same (see 26).
- 3 Do not confuse the neuter s. forms with the acc. s. of 2nd decl. m. nouns like *seru-us* (*seru-um*) or gen. pl. of 3rd decl. nouns like *aedis* (*aedium*). Be sure that you learn nouns like *somnium* as type 2 neuter.
- 4 As with all neuters, there is a danger of confusing the pl. forms in *-a* with 1st decl. f. nouns like *serua*.
- 5 Note the gen. s. *sōmni* or *sōmni-ī*. Nouns of the 2nd decl. ending in *-ius* (e.g. *filius* 'son') usually have gen. s. in *-ī* (e.g. *fili-ī*) and nom. pl. always in *-iī* (e.g. *fili-ī*).
- 6 Gen., dat., abl. s. and pl. endings are the same as for *seruus* (9).

Exercises

- 1 Here to learn is a list of 2nd decl. neuter nouns like *somnium*

exitum ī 2n 'death', 'destruction'
ingenium ī 2n 'talent', 'ability'
pericul-um ī 2n 'danger'

- 2 Pick out the gen. pts. from the following list. Say what nouns they come from with what meaning (e.g. *periculorum* = gen. pl. of *pericul-um* = danger, *honorum*, *ingenium*, *aedibus*, *fūrum*, *exitiō*, *seruum*, *unguentorum*, *aurum*, *senum*, *thesauris*).
- 3 Pick out, and give the meanings of, the pl. nouns in the following list: *scena*, *serua*, *ingenia*, *familia*, *cura*, *anguentis*, *filia*, *somnia*, *corōna*, *pericula*

16 2nd declension noun (irregular): *de-us* ī 2m. 'god'

	s.		pl.	
nom.	dē-us	'god'	dī	'gods'
acc.	dē-um	'god'	dēōs	'gods'
gen.	dē-ī	'of the god'	de-ōrum (dē-um)	'of the gods'
dat.	dē-ō		dīs	
abl.	dē-ō		dīs	

17A Vocatives

The vocative case (*uocō* 'I call') is used when addressing a person. Its form is the same as the nominative in all nouns, except 2nd declension m., where *-us* of nom. s. becomes *-e* (e.g. *Dēmaenete* 'Demacnetus!', *serue* 'O slave') and the *-ius* of nom. s. becomes *-ī* (e.g. *filius* 'son'; *fili-ī* 'son!').

NB The vocative s. of *meus* 'my' is *mī*, e.g. *mī fili-ī* 'O my son'.

17B Apposition

Consider this sentence:

sum Dēmaenetus, Eucliōnis auus 'I am Demacnetus, Eucho's grandfather'

The phrase *Eucliōnis auus* gives more information about Demacnetus. It is said to be 'in apposition' to *Dēmaenetus* (from *adpositus* 'placed near'). Note that *auus*, the main piece of information, is the same case as *Dēmaenetus*.

Note

Appositional phrases may be added to a noun in any case. E.g. *sum seruus Dēmaeneti senis* 'I am the slave of Demacnetus the old man' *senis* (gen.) is in apposition to *Dēmaeneti* (gen.).

Exercises

- 1 Attach the correct form of *multus* to these nouns (in ambiguous cases give all possible alternatives): *curās*, *aurum*, *fīres*, *senem*, *honoris*, *aedem*, *seruorum*, *senum*, *aedis*, *coronae*, (optional *seruum*, *unguenta*, *aedis*, *familiam*, *aedium*, *honor*, *aedes*)

2 Pair the given form of *multus* with the nouns with which it can agree:

multus: senex, cūra, Larem, familiae, seruus
multī honor, aedēs, Laris, senēs, seruī
multīs: honōribus, aedīs, cūram, seruum, deum, senibus, aurum
multās: senis, honōrēs, aedīs, cūram, familiās
multae: seruae, aedī, cūram, senēs, dī
multa: aedēs, unguenta, senem, cūra, corōnārum

(optional:

multōs: aedīs, unguentum, cūrās, seruōs, fūrēs
multō: aurum, Larem, cūram, honōrī, aedem
multōrum: aedium, unguentōrum, seruum, senum, deōrum,
 corōnārum
multārum: fūrum, aurum, honōrem, seruārum, aedium)

3 Translate into Latin: many slave-girls (nom.); of much respect; of many garlands; much gold; many an old man (acc.); of many thieves; many old men (acc.).

4 Translate these sentences:

- multī fūrēs sunt in aedibus.*
- multās cūrās multī senēs habent.*
- multae seruae plēnae sunt cūrārum.*
- multum aurum Euchiō, multās aulās aurī plēnās habet.*
- seruōs senex habet multōs.* (See 14^b.)

5 Translate these sentences:

- nūlla potentia longa est.* (Ovid)
- uīta nec bonum¹ nec malum¹ est.* (Seneca)
- nōbilitās sōla est atque ūnica uirtūs.* (Juvenal)
- longa est uīta sī plēna est.* (Seneca)
- fortūna caeca est.* (Cicero)

See 14^c

potentia a u f. power
longa a u m. f. long
bonum n. o. good
malum n. o. bad
nōbilitās f. nobility
sōlus a u m. only
atque and

bon-us a u m. good
mal-us a u m. bad
nōbilitās nōbilitāt-is 3f.
 nobility
sōl-us a u m. only
atque and

ūnic-us a u m. unique,
 unparalleled
uirtūs uirtūt-is 3f. goodness
fortūn-a ae 1f. fortune
caec-us a u m. blind

Optional exercises

- 1 Identify the case (or cases, where ambiguities exist) of the following words, say what they mean, and then turn *s.* into *pl.* and *pl.* into *s.*: *seruae*, *honōrī*, *thēsaurīs*, *familiā*, *deum*, *filīā*, *dīs*, *corōna*, *senum*.
- 2 Give the declension and case of each of the following words: *thēsaurum*, *honōrum*, *deōrum*, *seruārum*, *aedium*.
- 3 Case work

- (a) Group the following words by case (i.e. list all nominatives, accusatives, genitives etc.). When you have done that, identify *s.* and *pl.* within each group: *Euchiōnem*, *senī*, *thēsaurō*, *filiae*, *familia*, *deī*, *corōna*, *scaenās*, *dī*, *aedēs*, *honōribus*, *seruārum*, *multīs*
- (b) Identify the following noun forms by showing

what case they are

whether *s.* or *pl.*

their nom. *s.* form, gen. *s.* form and gender

their meaning

e.g. *senem* is acc. *s.* of *senex* *sen-is*, *m.* 'old man'. Remember ambiguities!

- (i) 3rd declension: *aedēs*, *patris*, *senibus*, *honōrum*, *senem*, *aedibus*, *honōrī*, *sene*, *aedium*, *honōris*, *senēs*, *aedīs*
- (ii) 1st declension *f.*: *Phaedrae*, *aulārum*, *corōnās*, *scaenā*, *cūrīs*, *filīarum*, *familiae*, *Staphylam*, *seruīs*, *aulam*, *corōnae*, *scaenās*
- (iii) 2nd declension *m.*: *seruī*, *coquus*, *thēsaurum*, *seruīs*, *coquī*, *seruō*, *deōs*, *thēsaurīs*, *coquō*, *deī*
- (iv) Various declensions: *sene*, *seruīs*, *patris*, *coquīs*, *honōrī*, *aedīs*, *aulārum*, *honōrum*, *deum*, *seruārum*

Reading exercises

English and Latin

Pick out subject(s), verb(s) and object(s) in the following English sentences. Identify also adjectives, and say with what nouns they agree.

- (a) In the long echoing streets the laughing dancers throng *K. its*
- (b) And the long carpets rose along the gusty floor *K. its*
- (c) I bring you with reverent hands
 The books of my numberless dreams. (Yeats)

- (d) 'Tis no sin love's fruit to steal
But the sweet theft to reveal. (Jonson)
- (e) His fair large Front and Eye sublime declar'd
Absolute Rule. (Milton, describing Adam)
- (f) Gazing he spoke, and kindling at the view
His eager arms around the goddess threw
Glad earth perceives, and from her bosom pours
Unbidden herbs and voluntary flowers

(Pope, translating Homer's Iliad, where
Zeus makes love to his wife Hera)

2 In each of these sentences, the verb comes first or second. Say in each case whether the subject is *s.* or *pl.*, then, moving on, say in order as they come whether the following words are subjects or objects of the verb. Next, translate into English. Finally read out the sentences in Latin with the correct phrasing

- (a) clāmant seruī, senex, seruac
(b) dat igitur honōrem multum Phaedra.
(c) nunc possidet Lar aedis
(d) amant dī multum honōrem.
(e) dat aurum multās cūrās
(f) habitant quoque in aedibus seruī
(g) est aurum in aulā multum.
(h) timent autem fūrēs multī senēs.
(i) quārē intrant senex et seruus in scaenam?
(j) tandem explicat Lar cūrās senis

3 In order of appearance, translate each word and say whether it is the subject or the object or genitive. Then supply a suitable verb in the correct person and translate the sentence into English.

- (a) senem seruus . . .
(b) aedis deus
(c) honores Lar
(d) fūr aurum
(e) Euclionis filiam dī
(f) filiae senum honōrēs
(g) aedem deus
(h) unguenta dī
(i) Larem Phaedra, Phaedram Lar
(j) seruos Phaedra et seruac

T verb must be

4 Take the Latin as it comes and say, as you translate, what the function of each word is (subject, object, verb etc.), grouping words into phrases where necessary. Translate into English. Then read out the Latin correctly phrased, thinking through the meaning as you read

- a) aulās enim habet multās Eucliō senex
b) aedis fūrū plēnās multī timent senēs
c) thēsaurum Euclionis clam uidet seruus
d) deus est in aedibus seruus
e) Phaedram, filiam Euclionis, et Staphylam, filiae Euclionis
f) Lar amat
g) deinde Eucliō aulam, quod fūrēs ualdē timet, cēlat.
h) mē igitur Phaedra amat, Phaedram ego.
i) nam aurum Eucliō multum habet, corōnās multās, multum unguentum
j) senex autem fūrēs, quod multum habet aurum, ualdē timet.
k) multum seruī unguentum ad Larem, multās corōnās portant.

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Read through this passage, as for Reading Exercise no. 4 in 1A (p. 16). For an adjective, say (i) what it belongs with (if it follows its noun) (ii) what sort of noun you will expect with it (if it precedes). Use the running vocabulary for 1B for any words you do not know. At the end, after translating the passage, read it out in Latin, correctly phrased.

Lar in scaenam intrat. deus est Euclionis familiae. seruat Lar sub terrā thēsaurum Dēmaenetī. multus in aulā thēsaurus est. ignōrat autem dē thēsaurō Eucliō, quod Larem nōn cūrāt. nam nūllum dat unguentum, nūllās corōnās, honōrem nūllum. Phaedram autem, senis auārī filiam, Lar amat. dat enim Euclionis filia multum unguentum, multās corōnās, multum honōrem. Lar igitur Dēmaenetī aulam, quod bona est Euclionis filia, Euclionī dat. Eucliō autem aulam, quod auārus est, sub terrā iterum collocat. nam fūrēs ualdē timet Eucliō! cūrās habet multās! uexat thēsaurus senem auārum et anxium. plēnae enim fūrū sunt dīuitum hominum aedēs

English-Latin

Translate the Latin sentences into English. Then translate the English sentences into Latin, using the pattern of the Latin ones to help you arrange the word-order correctly.

- a) Lar igitur Euchiōnem, quod honōrem nōn dat, nōn amat.
The gods therefore care for Phaedra, my son, because she cares for the Lar
- b) senex autem curas habet multās, quod aurum habet multum
The slaves however are carrying many garlands, because they are bestowing much respect.
- c) Euchiōnis aedēs fūrum sunt plēnae, quod aulam aurī plēnam habet senex
The temple of the gods is full of gold, because the daughters of the rich give pots full of gold
- d) ego multum unguentum, corōnās multās, multum honōrem habeo.
You (s.) have much worry and much treasure
- e) tē, Dēmaenete, nōn amō.
I'm not carrying gold, my son
- f) clāmant seruī, supplicant seruae, timet senex
The daughter is praying, the old men shouting and the slave-girls are afraid.

Deliciae Latinae

These sections, which will occur at the end of Grammar and Exercise sections, will consist of a mixture of hints on word-building, word exercises, Latin words and phrases in everyday use, and easy pieces of original Latin for translation. The title means 'Latin delights'.

NB The vocabulary help in *Deliciae Latinae* sections is aimed at helping you to translate as quickly and easily as possible. Consequently, we do not always give full grammatical information about words.

Derivations

The Roman Empire extended over modern Italy, Spain, Portugal and France, all of whose languages are descended directly from Latin. Britain was part of the Roman Empire, but it was overrun by Anglo-Saxons in the years following the end of Roman rule, so that there was no major Latin influence on the language at this stage – Anglo-Saxon was the predominant tongue. Latin was, however, still the language of the

church in Britain so all interaction was not wholly lost (Bede *Bede*, the eighth-century monk from Jarrow near Newcastle upon Tyne, wrote his history of the English church in Latin.) The turning-point for the English language came in 1066 when the Norman Duke William the Conqueror took England. French-speaking kings ruled England for some 300 years (till Agincourt (1415), when English again became the official language of royalty.) The Latin-based French language became incorporated into Middle English, adding enormous richness to it, e.g. Middle English gives us 'kingly', French-Latin adds 'regal', 'royal', 'sovereign'. It is largely through French that English has the Latin component that it does.

Consequently, Latin is very useful to anyone who wants to learn the Romance languages (i.e. languages descended from the language of the Romans), and vice versa knowledge of Romance languages can help you to understand Latin. Four hints

- Identify the stem of the Latin word as well as its nom. s. form, e.g. *senex* gives us 'senile' (from the Latin adjective *senilis*, formed from *sen-* the stem of *senex*).
- Many English words ending in -ion come from Latin via French.
- Many English words ending in -ate, -ance, -ent, -ence come from Latin, again via French.
- English derivatives have 'j' and 'v' where the Latin words from which they come have *i* and *u* used as consonants (i.e. before or between vowels). So *Ianuarius* produces 'January' and *video* produces 'video'. The reverse process will help you to see whether a word has a Latin root, e.g. 'juvenile' comes from Latin *iuuenilis*.

Note

English has taken some of its Latin-based words direct from Latin rather than through an intermediary language such as French, e.g. 'wine' from *uinum*, 'wall' from *uallum* (see Appendix p. 554). Other English words look similar to Latin not because they have been taken from Latin, but because both English and Latin share a common linguistic ancestor, Indo-European, the vocabulary of which is preserved in different ways in the various derivative tongues. Thus the Indo-European word for 'two', which can be reconstructed as **duō*, emerges in English as *two*, German *zwei*, Sanskrit *dvau*, and Latin as *duo* (whence French *deux*, Italian *due*, Spanish *dos*).

Word-building

(a) Stems

The stem of one word gives the clue to the meaning of many other words, e.g. *servu-* in the form *servu-us* or *servu-a* means 'slave', as a verb, with a verb-ending, *serviō*, it means 'I am a slave to'.

coqu- in the noun form *coquus* = 'a/the cook'; in the verb form *coquō* = 'I cook'

aed- in the form *aedēs* = 'a/the house'; with the suffix *-ficō* (= 'make'): *aedificō* = 'I build'; in the form *aedīlis*, it means 'aedile', a Roman state official originally with a particular responsibility for building

(b) Prefixes

A 'prefix' (*prae* 'in front of', *fixus* 'fixed') is a word fixed in front of another. Most prepositions (see 10), e.g. *in* 'into', 'in', 'on', *ad* 'towards' etc., can also be used as prefixes, and as such slightly alter the meaning of the 'root' word to which they are fixed, e.g.

root word *sum* 'I am': *adsum* 'I am near'; *insum* 'I am in'
 root word *portō* 'I carry': *importō* 'I carry in'; *apportō* 'I carry to'
 (observe that *inp-* becomes *imp-* and *adp-* becomes *app-*)

Note the following prepositions which are commonly used as prefixes:

cum (con-) 'with'
prae 'before, in front of, at the head of'
post 'after'

Exercise

Split the following Latin words up into prefix and root, and say what they might mean: *conuocō*, *inhabitō*, *inuocō*, *praeuideō*, *comportō*, *praesum*, *posthabeō*.

(c) Verb-stems different from the present stem

As you will soon discover, Latin verbs have a number of different 'stems'. So far you have learnt the present stem, e.g. *uoc-ō* 'I call'. But most 1st conjugation verbs have another stem in *-āt-* i.e. *uoc-at-*. This stem was very fruitful in forming other Latin words, and so French words, and so English words, particularly those in *-ate* or *-ation*. Thus *vocation*, *convocation*, *invocation*, *invoke* etc.

Exercise

Give an English word in *-ate* or *-ation* from the following Latin words, and say what it means: *supplicō*, *explicō*, *importō*, *dō*, *habitō*.

uideō has another stem, *uīs-*, and *possideō* has possess- - giving us what English nouns, by the addition of what letters?

Word exercises

- 1 Give English words connected with the following Latin words: *familia*, *corōna*, *scaena*, *timeō*, *deus*, *multus*, *uideō*
- 2 With what Latin words are the following connected? *pecuniary*, *honorific*, *amatory*, *thesaurus*, *porter*, *clamorous*, *filial*, *edifice* (Latin *ae* becomes *e*), *unguent*, *furtive*, *servile*, *nullify*

Everyday Latin

We use Latin words and phrases every day of our lives:

a m. = *ante merīdiem*. What does *ante* mean?
p.m. = *post merīdiem*. What does *post* mean? What is a *post mortem*? What is a *post scriptum*?
iānuā = 'door'. *Iānus* (Janus) was a Roman god who had two faces, so that he could look out and in like a door and, like the month January, forward to the new year and back to the old
tandem = 'at length', just like the bicycle made for two (introduced originally as a learned joke; the Latin word was never used of space)
uox (= 'voice') *populī*, *uox deī* - meaning? Cf. *agnus* ('lamb') *deī*

Frequently in English we give Latin words their correct Latin plurals, e.g. we talk of *termini*, pl. of the Latin *terminus*. What would you say of someone who gave the plural of 'ignoramus' as 'ignorami' (*ignōr-ō* 1)?

Consider the following plurals: *data* ('given things'), *agenda* ('things to be done'), *media* ('things in the middle'). They are neuter plurals, declining like *multus*, directly from Latin. What are their singular forms?

Real Latin

Vulgate

(Taken from the Vulgate, Jerome's fourth-fifth-century A.D. translation of the Bible into Latin. Called 'Vulgate' from its title *ēditiō vulgāta* 'popular edition'. Cf. 'vulgar' in English.)

et (Deus) ait, *sud* 'ego sum Deus patris tui, Deus (of) Abraham, Deus (of) Isaac, et Deus (of) Jacob' (Exodus 3.6) 'ego sum qui (who) sum' (Exodus 3.14)

Conversational Latin

Contrary to popular belief, Latin always has been a spoken as well as a written language. Most of our texts from ancient times, of course, reflect the literary, written, form. But in Plautus, Terence and the letters of Cicero we do hear the voice of Romans. Here are some common conversational gambits

saluē or *saluus sis* or *auē* (or *hauē*) 'Hello!' (lit. 'Greetings', 'May you be safe', 'Hail!')

ualē 'Goodbye!' (lit. 'Be strong')

sis or *sī placet* or *nisi molestum est* or *gratum erit sī . . .* or *amābō tē* 'Please' (lit. 'If you will', 'If it pleases', 'If it's no trouble', 'It would be nice if . . .', 'I will like you (if you . . .)')

grātiās tibi agō 'Thank you' (lit. 'I give thanks to you')

ut ualēs? or *quid agis?* or *quid fit?* 'How are you?' (lit. 'Are you strong?', 'What are you doing?', 'What is happening?')

est or *est ita* or *etiam* or *ita* or *ita uērō* or *sānē* or *certē* 'Yes' (lit. 'It is', 'It is so', 'Even', 'Thus', 'Thus indeed', 'Certainly', 'Surely')

nōn or *nōn ita* or *minimē* 'No' (lit. 'Not', 'Not so', 'Least')

age or *agedum* 'Come on'

rēctē 'Right' (lit. 'Correctly')

malum 'Damn!' (lit. 'A bad thing')

dī tē perdant! 'Damn you!' (Lit. 'May the gods destroy you')

insānum bonum 'Damned good' (Lit. 'A crazy good thing')

Latin conversation did not die out with the end of the Roman Empire. Erasmus of Rotterdam, the great Dutch humanist, originally wrote his *Colloquia Familiāria* (first published in 1518) partly as an aid to teaching Latin conversation. The first 'Colloquy' introduces the pupil to various modes of greeting. These are the formulae recommended to lovers ('Greetings my . . .'):

saluē	mea Cornēliola	('little Cornelia')
	mea uita	('life')
	mea lūx	('light')
	meum dēlicium	('darling', 'delight')
	meum suānium	('sweetheart', lit. 'kiss')
	mel meum	('honey')
	mea uoluptās ūnica	('only joy')
	meum corculum	('sweetheart', lit. 'little heart')
	mea spēs	('hope')
	meum sōlātium	('comfort')
	meum decus	('glory')

Section 1C

Running vocabulary for 1C

<i>abēō</i> I go away	<i>domin-us</i> ī 2m. lord, master	<i>hercle</i> by Hercules
<i>abī</i> go away!	<i>dormit</i> (he/she/it) sleeps	<i>hic</i> here
<i>abī</i> (he/she/it) goes away	<i>ē</i> Lycōnidē, uicīnō 'by Lyconides, the neighbour'	<i>hodiē</i> today
<i>adūm</i> (they) approach, come up	<i>ē, ex</i> (+ abl.) from, out of	<i>homo</i> <i>homin-is</i> 3m. man, fellow
<i>adit</i> (he/she/it) approaches, comes up	<i>egone</i> am I?	<i>iānu-a</i> ae 1f. door
<i>anim-us</i> ī 2m. mind	<i>eō</i> I go	<i>ignis</i> <i>ign-is</i> 3m. fire
<i>aqu-a</i> ae 1f. water	<i>etiam</i> <i>nunc</i> further still	<i>ignōrō</i> I I do not know
<i>arāne-a</i> ae 1f. cobweb	<i>exī</i> get out!	<i>imus</i> we go
<i>audī</i> listen!	<i>exis</i> you (s.) go/come out	<i>in uirōs</i> among the men
<i>Bona</i> (<i>bon-us a um</i>) good	<i>exit</i> (he/she/it) goes out	<i>inveniunt</i> (they) enter
<i>clāmatque</i> and shouts	<i>expellis</i> you (s.) drive out	<i>inquunt</i> (they) say
<i>cōgitō</i> I I think, reflect	<i>expellit</i> (he/she/it) drives out	<i>insān-us a um</i> mad
<i>ponder</i>		<i>intrō</i> inside
<i>cōnsili-um</i> ī 2n. plan		<i>inuīt-us a um</i> unwilling(ly)
<i>cōsistunt</i> they stand around		<i>is</i> you (s.) go
<i>cultrum</i> (acc.) knife	<i>extingue</i> put out!	<i>istic</i> there
<i>dīuidit</i> he divides	<i>facis</i> you (s) make, do	<i>it</i> he goes
<i>dīuitum</i> of rich (men)	<i>Fortūn-a</i> ae 1f. luck	<i>iterum</i> again
<i>domi</i> at home	<i>for-um</i> ī 2n. forum	<i>mal-us a um</i> evil, wicked,
	<i>gravid-us a um</i> pregnant	bad
	<i>hem</i> well!	<i>mane</i> wait!

maneō 2 I wait
me-us a um my, mine
mī 'O my'
miser miser-a um unhappy
moneō 2 I advise, warn
murmurō 1 I mutter
neque neither, and . . . not
nimis too (much)
nōs (nom., acc.) we, us
numquam never
occidī I'm done for!
occipiti-um ī 2n. back of
 head
occludē shut!
ocul-us ī 2m. eye
ohē stop!
operam dā! pay attention!
pauper (nom.) poor (man)

pecūni-a ae 1f. money
per diem by day
per noctem by night
periī I'm lost!
peruigilō 1 I stay awake
praetor praetōr-is 3m
 praetor
prohibē stop (her)!
quid what?
quid agis? what are you
 (s.) up to?
quō where?
redeō I return
redit (he/she/it) returns
respondē repl.
rogō 1 I ask (for)
salu-us a um safe
sēcum with himself/herself

sedule carefully
seruā keep!
seruō 1 I keep, preserve
solicitō 1 I worry
stā! stand (still)!
statim at once
tacē shut up!
taceō 2 I am silent
tam so
tu-us a um your
uerberō 1 I flog, beat
uexō 1 I annoy, trouble
uicīn-us ī 2m. neighbour
ut how
ut ualēs? how are you?

Learning vocabulary for 1C

Nouns

aqu-a ae 1f. water
domin-us ī 2m. master,
 lord
ocul-us ī 2m. eye
uicīn-us ī 2m
 neighbour(ing)

Adjectives

mal-us a um bad, evil,
 wicked
me-us a um my, mine
 (voc. *mī* 'O my')

Verbs

cōgit-ō 1 I ponder, reflect,
 consider
rog-ō 1 I ask
seru-ō 1 I save keep
st-ō 1 I stand
uerber-ō 1 I flog, beat
uex-ō 1 I annoy, trouble,
 worry

Others

ē, ex (+abl.) out of, from
neque neither; and .
 not, nor
numquam never
quid? what?
statim at once

New forms: adjectives

miser miser-a um
 miserable, unhappy,
 wretched

New forms: verbs

e- I go, come; *ei, exeō*
 I come, go out, *abeō*
 I come go away; *aleō*
 I go, come to,
 approach; *redeō* I return

Grammar and exercises for 1C

18 Present imperative active 1st and 2nd conjugation

	1st conj.		2nd conj.
2nd s.	amā 'love!'	hábē 'have!'	
2nd pl.	amā-te 'love!'	habē-te 'have!'	

Notes

- 1 These forms express a command in Latin
- 2 The understood subject is 'you' (s. or pl.)
- 3 The s. form is the bare stem of the verb; the pl. adds -te.

Exercises

- 1 Construct and translate the s. and pl. imperatives of these verbs: *timeō*, *rogō*, *taceō*, *cōgitō*, *moneō*, *cūrō*, *possideō*, (optional: *habeō*, *stō*, *explicō*, *cēlō*, *amō*, *uideō*, *maneō*)
- 2 Translate into English: *dā corōnam!*, *portā aquam!*; in aedibus manēte!; *tacē!*; *thēsaurum seruā!*; *monēte filiam!*
- 3 Translate into Latin: see! (pl.); ask Euclio! (s.); be quiet! (pl.); hide the pot! (pl.)

19 *eō* 'I go', 'I come' (irregular): present indicative active

1st s.	e-ō	'I go', 'I come', 'I am going/coming', 'I do go/come'
2nd s.	ī-s	'you go', 'you come' etc
3rd s.	i-t	
1st pl.	i-mus	
2nd pl.	ī-tis	
3rd pl.	e-u-nt	

Imperatives

2nd s	i	go' etc
2nd pl	ite	

Notes

- 1 The stem of the verb is simply *i-* (as shown by the imperative *s*)
- 2 There are many compound words based on *eō*, e.g. *adeō* 'I approach', 'I go up to' (cf. *ad* 'towards', 'near'); see learning vocabulary for 1C

Exercises

- 1 Translate into English and then turn *s.* into *pl.* and vice versa: *ī*, *eunt*, *itis*; *eo*, *it*; *īmus*, *exītis*; *abīmus*, *abītis*; *redeunt*, *reditis*; *īte*, *redeō*, *eunt*
- 2 Translate into Latin: we are going away; they return; go away! (*s.*); you (*pl.*) are approaching; she is coming out; I am going; go back! (*pl.*); you (*s.*) go.

20 1st and 2nd declension adjectives: *meus*, *tuus*

me-us a um 'my', 'mine', and *tu-us a um* 'your(s)' decline exactly like *multi-us a um*, and agree with their nouns in the same way. Observe that *tu-us* means 'your(s)' when you are *one* person.

NB. The vocative of *meus* is *mī* (cf. 17A), e.g. *mī fili* 'O my son'

21 1st and 2nd declension adjectives: *miser miser-a miser-um*

	m.	f.	n
nom.	miser	miser-a	miser-um
acc.	miser-um	miser-am	miser-um
gen.	miser-ī	miser-ae	miser-ī
dat.	miser-ō	miser-ae	miser-ō
abl.	miser-ō	miser-ā	miser-ō
pl.			
	m.	f.	n
nom.	miser-ī	miser-ae	miser-a
acc.	miser-ōs	miser-ās	miser-a

gen.	miser-orum	miser-arum	miser-orum
dat.	← miser-īs →		
abl.	← miser-īs →		

NB Arrows indicate that the form shown is the same for all genders

Exercises

- 1 Add the appropriate forms of *meus* and *tuus* to the following nouns (see 20) and say what case they are: *igne*; *aedīs*; *honōris*; *familiā*; *oculōrum*; *dominō*; *aquae*; *Euchiōnem*; *senex*
- 2 Add the appropriate form of *miser* to the following nouns and say what case they are: *Euchiōnī*; *Phaedrā*; *deus*; *filiam*; *aedibus*; *dominī*; *seruārūm*; *coquīs*; *senum*

22 Personal pronouns: *ego* 'I' and *tū* 'you'

nom.	ēgo	'I'	tū	'you'
acc.	me		te	
gen.	mei		tui	
dat.	mīhi (mī)		tibi	
abl.	me		te	

Notes

- 1 *tū* is used when one person is being referred to (cf. *tuus*)
- 2 When 'I' or 'you' are subject of a verb, we have seen that Latin does not need to express them separately, since the verb itself indicates the person by its personal endings *-ō*, *-s*, *-t* etc. But Latin does use *ego*, *tū* when the speaker wants to stress the identity of the person talking or draw a specific contrast between one person and another. E.g.

- (a) *ego Euchiōnem amō, tū Phaedram* 'I like Echio, whereas you like Phaedra'
- (b) *ego deum cūrō, tū senem uexās* 'I care for the god, you simply annoy the old man'

It is a matter of emphasis, especially when a contrast is involved.

- 3 *meī* and *tui* are 'objective' genitives, i.e. 'of me', 'of you' means 'directed at me/you'. For example, *amor tui* means 'love of/for you' in the sense 'love directed at you'. The idea 'belonging to me/you' is performed by the adjectives *meus*, *tuus* e.g. *pater meus* = 'my father', i.e. 'the father belonging to me'.

Exercises

1 Translate these sentences, then change nouns and their adjectives and verb to the s. or pl. as appropriate:

- manent in domini mei aedibus neque seruae neque serui.
- malī senis mala serua dominum meum uexat.
- tuus uicinus uicinum meum uidet.
- senis miserī seruus in aedibus numquam manet.
- seruae miserae ad Larem meum numquam adeunt neque supplicant.
- dominus malus seruās statim uerberat miserās.

2 In these sentences, most adjectives are not directly next to the noun they qualify. Read through each sentence, predicting the gender, number and case of the noun you await (where the adjective comes first) and indicating when the adjective is 'solved'. Then translate.

- malus igitur senex nōn multum habet honōrem
- meā est tuus ignis in aulā.
- meīs tamen in aedibus multī habitant patrēs.
- malōs enim senēs Lar nōn amat meus.
- meusne tuum seruat pater ignem? (-ne - ?)

3 Translate these sentences:

- sōla pecūnia rēgnat. (Petronius)
- uēritās numquam perit. (Seneca)
- semper auārus eget. (Horace)
- nōn dēterret sapientem mors. (Cicero)
- in fugā foeda mors est, in uictōriā glōriōsa. (Cicero)

sōl-us a um alone

pecūn-a ae 1f money

rēgn-ō 1 I rule, am king

uēritās ueritat-is 3f. truth

perēō (conjugates like eō) 1 die

auār-us ī 2m. miser

egeō 2 I am in need

dēterreō 2 I frighten off,

deter

sapiēns sapient-is 3m. wise man

mors mort-is 3f. death

fug-a ae 1f. rout, flight

foed-us a um disgraceful

uictōri-a ae 1f. victory

glōriōs-us a um glorious

23 Prepositions

Note that ā, ab 'away from' and ē, ex 'out of', 'from' take the ablative (cf. in + abl. at 10).

NB. ab and ex are the forms used before following vowels, e.g. ab aulā, ex igne.

Exercise

Translate into Latin: out of the water; into the eye; away from the fire; towards the masters; away from the house; onto the stage (optional: out of the pot; towards the thieves; from the old men; into the house.)

Reading exercises

1 Take the Latin as it comes and, as you translate, say what each word is doing in the sentence, taking care to ascribe adjectives to the correct nouns (if they follow them) or to predict the number, gender and case of the noun (if the adjective precedes). Then supply a suitable verb in the correct person and translate into correct English

- uicinum senex miser
- dominus enim meus tuum ignem
- neque ego meum neque tū tuum seruū . . .¹
- deinde mē seruī malī .
- seruōs malōs uicinus meus . .
- aulam, mī domine, serua mala
- fūrem miserum ego quoque . . .
- ignem tū, ego aquam . . .²
- oculōs meōs serua tua semper . . .
- quārē aurum et unguentum et corōnās Eucliō miser numquam

¹ Verb 2nd s

² Verb 1st s

2 Analyse noun-functions, adjectives, and verbs:

- Close up the casement, draw the blind,
Shut out that stealing moon,
She wears too much the guise she wore
Before our lutes were strewn
With years-deep dust, and names we read
On a white stone were hewn. (Thomas Hardy)
- Hail, native language, that by sinews weak
Didst move my first endeavouring tongue to speak,
And mad'st imperfect words with childish trips,
Half unpronounced, slide through my infant lips . . .

(Milton)

- (c) Know then thyself, presume not God to scan;
The proper study of Mankind is Man. (Pope)

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Read the following passage carefully, translating each word as it comes and analysing its function. Identify word-groups and anticipate, as far as you can, what is to come. When you have done this, translate into correct English. Finally read out the passage in Latin with the correct phrasing, thinking out the meaning as you read. Use the running vocabulary of 1C

EUCLIŌ (clāmat) exī! exī ex aedibus, serua
(serua in scaenam intrat)

SERVA quid est, mī domine? quārē tū mē ex aedibus uocas? (Eucliō seruam uerberat) ō mē miseram, ut dominus meus mē uexat. nunc enim mē uerberat. sed tū, mī domine, quārē mē uerberās?

EUC. ō mē miserum. tacē. ut mala es! ut mē miserum uexās! manē istic, Staphyla, manē! stā! moneō tē.
(in aedīs intrat Eucliō)

SER. ō mē miseram. ut miser dominus meus est
(Eucliō ex aedibus in scaenam intrat)

EUC. saluum est. tū tamen quārē istic stās? quārē in aedīs nōn īs? abī! intrā in aedīs! occlūde iānuam!
(serua in aedīs intrat)

nunc abeō ad praetōrem, quod pauper sum. ut inuītus eō! sed sī hīc maneō, uicīnī meī 'hem' inquiunt 'senex miser multum habet aurum.'

English-Latin

Translate the Latin sentences into English. Then translate the English sentences into Latin, using the pattern of the Latin ones to help you arrange the word-order correctly.

- (a) Staphyla, abī et aquam portā!
Slave-women, go out and ask for fire!
- (b) tū autem, mī domine, quārē cūrās malās habes?
But why do you, my Eucliō, love a wretched slave-woman?
ut aurum multum serēs uexat miserōs!
How the evil old man beats his unhappy slaves!
- (d) ō mē miseram! ut oculī meī mē uexant!
O dear me! How wretched an old man I am!

- (e) malōs dominōs miserī seruī habent.
(It is) a wretched old man the unhappy daughter loves.
- (f) malōrum seruōrum oculī dominī miserī cūrās nōn uident.
The eyes of a bad slave-woman do not see the worry of the unhappy daughter.

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building

Prefixes

in- can = 'into', 'in' (e.g. *ineō* 'I go in', *īsum* 'I am in'), but it can equally well be a negative, e.g. *īnsānus* = *in* + *sānus* 'not sane', 'mad'

ē, ex usually means 'out of', 'out', e.g. *exit* 'he goes out', *exstinguō* 'I put out', *expellō* 'I push out'

ā, ab = 'away (from)', e.g. *abeō* 'I go away'

re- (only used as a prefix) = 'back', 'again', e.g. *redit* 'he returns'.
(Observe that *re-* becomes *red-* before vowels)

Exercise

- 1 Give the Latin derivation (prefix and root) of the following English words: cogitate, excogitate, instate, reinstate, reverberate, export, revoke, abrogate, reserve, explicate (*plicō* 'fold').
- 2 Give English words, with meanings, formed from the following stems māns- (maneō); monit- (moneō). Use prefixes as necessary.

Word exercises

- 1 What do the following English words mean? vexatious, admonish, aquatic, dominant, impecunious, inexplicable.
- 2 Give English words from: ignis, oculus, maneō, malus, saluus.

Everyday Latin

notā bene (NB) 'note well!' What conjugation is *notō*?
*vidē*¹ *infra* (or simply *vidē*, abbreviated *v.*) 'see below'

adeste, fidēlēs 'be present, faithful!' 'O come, all ye faithful'
exit '(s)he goes out'; *exeunt* 'they go out'

See n. 10 on p. xii

Real Latin

Vulgate

nonōra patrem tuum et mātrem tuam (*Exodus* 20 12)
nos estis sal ('salt') terrae . . . *vos estis lux* ('light') mundi (*Matthew* 5 13)

Sayings of Cato

parentēs amā.
datum (= *what you are given*) *seruā.*
uerēcundiam (= *modesty*) *seruā.*
familiam cūrā.
iūrnrandum (= *oath*) *seruā.*
coniugem (= *wife*) *amā.*
deō supplicā.

These are from a collection of *dicta Catōnis* 'Sayings of Cato'. (= Marcus Cato, 234–149 B.C.), written in the third or fourth century A.D. but ascribed to that grand old man who epitomised Roman wisdom and tradition to later generations. They were firm favourites from the Middle Ages till the seventeenth century in England.

Beginning of an epitaph

sepulcrum huius pulcrum pulcrāi tennae . . .

pulcrum 1f. tomb
hūi 1f. at the foot of
pulcrum 1f. total tomb
pulcrāi 1f. at the foot of
tennae 1f. according

We know the woman buried there was called Claudia – perhaps one of the family called Claudia Pulchra?

Section 1D

Running vocabulary for 1D

a, ab (+ abl.) away from
adest (she) hang about

arcuari-us 1 2m. chest-maker

audiō I hear, listen

aurifex aurific-is 3m. goldsmith

aurique and (of) gold

calceolari-us 1 2m. shoemaker

caupō caupōn-is 3m. shopkeeper

clamor clamor-is 3m. shout

dic say! tell!

dicis you (s.) say, are saying, mean

duc lead

ducis you (s.) lead, take

ducō I lead, take

domum duc marry!

domum non ducis you (s.) do not marry

ducis you (s.) lead, take

ducō I lead, take

ducis you (s.) lead, take

ducō I lead, take

ducis you (s.) lead, take

ducō I lead, take

ducis you (s.) lead, take

ducō I lead, take

ducis you (s.) lead, take

ducō I lead, take

ducis you (s.) lead, take

ducō I lead, take

ducis you (s.) lead, take

ducō I lead, take

ducis you (s.) lead, take

ducō I lead, take

ducis you (s.) lead, take

ducō I lead, take

ducis you (s.) lead, take

ducō I lead, take

ducis you (s.) lead, take

ducō I lead, take

for-um 1 2n. forum

frater frater-is 3m. brother

habeo 2 I hold, regard as

imperium 1 2n. command, order

intolerabilis unendurable

ita so, thus

libeo 2 I order

lanāri-us 1 2m. wool-worker

liber-i 1 2m. (pl.) children

lumbolari-us 1 2m. concerned with

making ornamental

hems

lumbolari-us 1 2m. concerned with

making ornamental

hems

lumbolari-us 1 2m. concerned with

making ornamental

hems

lumbolari-us 1 2m. concerned with

making ornamental

hems

lumbolari-us 1 2m. concerned with

making ornamental

hems

lumbolari-us 1 2m. concerned with

making ornamental

hems

lumbolari-us 1 2m. concerned with

making ornamental

hems

lumbolari-us 1 2m. concerned with

making ornamental

hems

lumbolari-us 1 2m. concerned with

making ornamental

hems

lumbolari-us 1 2m. concerned with

making ornamental

hems

pall-a 1f. garment

pater pater-is 3m. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

pater 1f. father

thylacista a ae 1m. collector
of offerings
tibi to you (s.)
tum then

tūne 'do you?' (s.)
ualē! goodbye!
uehicul-um ī 2n. waggon
uir uir-ī 2m. man,

husband
uīs you (s.) wish, want
ut as
uxor uxōr-is 3f. wife

Learning vocabulary for 1D

Nouns

fēmin-a ae 1f. woman
pecūni-a ae 1f. money
puell-a ae 1f. girl
filii-us ī 2m. son
uir uir-ī 2m. man,

husband
dīues dīuit-is 3m.f. rich
(person)
frāter fratr-is 3m. brother
pater patr-is 3m. father

pauper pauper-is 3m.f.
poor (person)
soror sorōr-is 3f. sister
uxor uxōr-is 3f. wife

Adjectives

magn-us a um great, large
optim-us a um best, very
good

Verbs

habe-ō 2 I hold, regard
(have)¹

nube-ō 2 *iuss-*² I order,
command, tell

ualē goodbye!

Others

ā, ab (+abl.) away from
ita so, thus; yes
ne and . . . not, neither;
not

nimis too much
(of) + gen.
-que and
satis enough (of) + gen.
tum then

ut as, when (how!)¹

New forms: nouns

nomen nomen-is 3n. name

domum to home

domi at home

New forms: adjectives

pulcher pulchr-a um
beautiful

New forms: verbs

duc- 3 *dux-* 1 *du-*² I lead
komon duc- I take home,
marry

dic- 3 *dix-* 1 *dic-*² I speak
say

audi-ō 4 I hear, listen to

¹ See 1.11 on p. xi for the significance of the brackets.

² Learn these other stems now. They are irregular and used to form other tenses.

Grammar and exercises for 1D

24 Present indicative active (3rd conjugation): *dīcō* 'I speak', 'I say'

1st s.	dīc-ō	'I say'
2nd s.	dīc-i-s	'you say'
3rd s.	dīc-i-t	'he/she/it says'
1st pl.	dīc-i-mus	'we say'
2nd pl.	dīc-i-tis	'you (pl.) say'
3rd pl.	dīc-u-nt	'they say'

Imperatives

2nd s.	dīc	'say!' (irregular)
2nd pl.	dīc-i-te	'say!'

Notes

- 1 Note the key vowel in the 3rd conj. – the short *-i-* throughout (cf. *amō*, *habeō*). This *-i-* is *not* part of the stem in the way that *-e-* in *habeō* (stem *habe-*) was.
- 2 Observe that the 3rd pl. is *dīc-u-nt*.
- 3 A similar verb to this is *dūcō* 'I lead', 'I take'.
- 4 Normal imperatives of 3rd conj. verbs are *-e*, *-ite* (see 36). Note that the vowels in these endings are all short. Cf. imperatives of *audiō* in 25.

25 Present indicative active (4th conjugation): *audiō* 'I hear', 'I listen to'

1st s.	aūdi-ō	'I hear'
2nd s.	aūdi-s	'you hear'
3rd s.	aūdi-t	'he/she/it hears'
1st pl.	audi-mus	'we hear'
2nd pl.	audi-tis	'you (pl.) hear'
3rd pl.	aūdi-u-nt	'they hear'

Imperatives

2nd s.	aūdi	'listen!'
2nd pl.	audi-te	'listen!'

Notes

- 1 The key vowel in the 4th conj. is *-i-*, which follows the same pattern – *i* long and short as the *-e-* of the 2nd conj., and is, like that part of the

stem. So -i- appears throughout (contrast the -i- in *dīcō*)

2 Observe the 3rd pl. in *i-unt*; cf. *dīc-unt*

Exercises

- 1 Translate into Latin: she says; they are leading; we hear; we say; you (pl.) hear; speak! (s.); listen! (pl.); lead! (pl.); you (s) are saying; he hears; they are listening.
- 2 Identify the conjugation (1, 2, 3 or 4) of the following verbs and translate them: *cūrō*, *cēlat*, *habētis*, *dūcunt*, *rogās*, *possidēmus*, *audiō*, (optional: *iubētis*, *supplicō*, *clāmāmus*).
- 3 Translate *ad turn s* into pl. and vice versa: *dīcītis*, *audiant*, *supplicāmus*, *audīs*, *dīcō*, *dūcimus*, *audīmus*, *clāmant*, *tacēs*, (optional: *rogat*, *dicit*, *cōgitō*, *manētis*, *amātis*, *dūcunt*, *moneō*, *uocās*, *dūcis*)

26 3rd decl. nouns: *nōmen nōmin-is* 3n. 'name'

	s.	pl.
nom.	<i>nōmen</i>	<i>nōmin-a</i>
acc.	<i>nōmen</i>	<i>nōmin-a</i>
gen.	<i>nōmin-is</i>	<i>nōmin-um</i>
dat.	<i>nōmin-ī</i>	<i>nōmin-ibus</i>
abl.	<i>nōmin-e</i>	<i>nōmin-ibus</i>

Notes

- 1 All n. nouns have the same forms for the nom. and acc. in both s. and pl. (-a); cf. 15. Only the context will tell you whether they are subject or object. Note that if verb is singular then a neuter pl. must be the object; if verb is plural, then neuter s. must be the object.
- 2 All 3rd decl. nouns in -men are neuter, and follow the pattern of *nōmen*.
- 3 *nōmen* is a consonant-stem noun. There are also 3rd decl. neuter *i-* stems. You will meet these later.

27 1st/2nd decl. adjectives: *pulcher pulchr-a pulchr-um* 'beautiful', 'handsome'

	s.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	<i>pulcher</i>	<i>pulchr-a</i>	<i>pulchr-a</i>	<i>pulchr-um</i>
acc.	<i>pulchr-um</i>	<i>pulchr-am</i>	<i>pulchr-am</i>	<i>pulchr-um</i>

Section 1D

gen.	<i>pulchr-ī</i>	<i>pulchr-ac</i>	<i>pulchr-ī</i>
dat.	<i>pulchr-o</i>	<i>pulchr-ac</i>	<i>pulchr-ō</i>
abl.	<i>pulchr-o</i>	<i>pulchr-ā</i>	<i>pulchr-ō</i>

f

m

f

n

nom.	<i>pulchr-ī</i>	<i>pulchr-ac</i>	<i>pulchr-a</i>
acc.	<i>pulchr-os</i>	<i>pulchr-ās</i>	<i>pulchr-a</i>
gen.	<i>pulchr-īrum</i>	<i>pulchr-īrum</i>	<i>pulchr-ōrum</i>
dat.	← <i>pulchr-īs</i> →		
abl.	← <i>pulchr-īs</i> →		

NB. We have already met *miser* which, apart from the nom. s. m., declines like *audias* on the stem *miser-* (21). *pulchro* is identical, except that it declines on the stem *pulchr-*.

2nd decl. nouns: *puer puer-ī* 2m. 'boy', *uir uir-ī* 2m. 'man', *culter cultr-ī* 2m. 'knife'

puer puer-ī 2m. 'boy'

uir uir-ī 2m. 'man'

	s.	pl.		s.	pl.
nom.	<i>puer</i>	<i>puer-ī</i>	nom.	<i>uir</i>	<i>uir-ī</i>
acc.	<i>puer-um</i>	<i>puer-ōs</i>	acc.	<i>uir-um</i>	<i>uir-ōs</i>
gen.	<i>puer-ī</i>	<i>puer-ōrum</i>	gen.	<i>uir-ī</i>	<i>uir-ōrum</i> (<i>uir-um</i> - see 16)
dat.	<i>puer-ō</i>	<i>puer-īs</i>	dat.	<i>uir-ō</i>	<i>uir-īs</i>
abl.	<i>puer-ō</i>	<i>puer-īs</i>	abl.	<i>uir-ō</i>	<i>uir-īs</i>

These nouns decline exactly like *senex* on the stems *puer-* and *uir-*. Only nom. s. m. is different. Cf. 21.

culter cultr-ī 2m. 'knife'

	s.	pl.
nom.	<i>culter</i>	<i>cultr-</i>
acc.	<i>cultr-um</i>	<i>cultr-ōs</i>
gen.	<i>cultr-ī</i>	<i>cultr-ōrum</i>
dat.	<i>cultr-ō</i>	<i>cultr-īs</i>
abl.	<i>cultr-ō</i>	<i>cultr-īs</i>

This noun declines exactly like *senex* on the stem *cultr-*. Only nom. s. m. is different. Cf. *pulcher* (27).

Exercises

- 1 Give the correct form of the adjectives *magnus*, *miser*, *pulcher* for these cases of *nōmen*: *nōmen*, *nōminis*, *nōmine*, *nōmina*, *nōminum*
- 2 Give the correct form of *pulcher* and *miser* to describe each of these nouns (e.g. *senem* acc. s. m. = *senem pulchrum*): *uxōrum*, *sorōribus*, *uirō*, *uxōris*, *fēminae*, *frātrī*, *aedīs*, *Larem*, *seruā*, *aedēs*, *fēminis*, *dominī*, *seruōs*

Optional exercise

Add the appropriate form of *miser*, then of *pulcher*, to the following nouns and translate (e.g. *Euclīonem* = acc. s. m. = *miserum/pulchrum* 'miser/handsome Euclio'): *sorōre*, *dīuitis*, *uir*, *uxōrī*, *fēminae*, *puellis*, *filii*, *uxorē*, *Larem*, *frātrum*, *seruā*

- 29 Interrogative pronoun/adjective *quis/quī*, *quis/quae*, *quid/quod* 'who?', 'which?', 'what?'

		s.			pl			
		m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.	
nom.	pron.	quis	quis	quid	quī	quae	quid	
	adj.	quī	quae	quod				
acc.	pron.	quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae	
	adj.							quod
gen.		←cuius→			quōrum	quārum	quōrum	
dat.		←cui→			←quibus (quīs)→			
abl.		quō	quā	quō	←quibus (quīs)→			

Notes

- 1 'Interrogative' means 'asking a question'.
- 2 Observe that the endings are a mixture of 2nd and 3rd declension. You will meet this again (it is called the 'pronominal' declension)
- 3 Adjective and pronoun are identical except for nom. s. and the acc. s. n.
- 4 For the pronoun use, cf. 'who is calling?' *quis* vocat? 'what do I see?' *quid* uideō?, for the adjective 'what man is it?' *quī* uir est?, 'what gold do I see?' *quod* aurum uideō?

Exercises

- 1 Translate into Latin the underlined words with the appropriate form of *quis* or *quī* + noun. You will need to ask whether the question word is a pronoun or an adjective and then define its case
 - (a) Whose (s. m.) are these books?
 - (b) Which women do we see?
 - (c) What is this?
 - (d) What name is this?
 - (e) Whom (m. s.) do you hate most?
 - (f) What woman's are these?
 - (g) Whom (f. s.) should we persecute?
 - (h) Which man is guilty?

- 30 *domus* 'house', 'home'

domus used with prepositions means 'house'. But when it means 'home' it is used without the preposition in the following ways: *domum* '(to) home'; *domī* 'at home'; *domō* 'from home'. Cf. *aedēs* which means only 'house': *in aedīs* 'into the house', *in aedibus* 'in the house'

- 31 *satis* 'enough', *nimis* 'too much', 'too many'

Both these words control nouns in the gen. case (the so-called 'partitive' genitive indicating *part of a whole*), e.g. *satis pecūniae* 'enough (of) money', *nimis honoris* 'too much (of) respect'. *satis* and *nimis* are fixed in form

- 32 *-que*

-que means 'and' and either (i) links the noun it is joined to with the previous word e.g. *seruum patremque* 'slave and father' or (ii) in poetry indicates that a list is coming, e.g. *seruumque patremque sororemque* 'both slave and father and sister'.

EXERCISES

- 1 In each of these sentences, there is one adjective which precedes and does not stand next to the noun it qualifies. Read through each sentence, predicting the gender, number and case of the noun awaited, noting when the adjective is second. Then translate.

- (a) nōn multam possident pecūniam optimae uxores
 (b) multī meās sorōrēs amant filiī
 (c) seruōs miserōs optimī nōn uexant senes
 (d) malī frātrēs pulchrās uerberant sorōrēs
 (e) multī fēminās pulchrās domum dūcunt senes

Before doing Exercises 2 and 3, revise carefully the ablative forms of nouns of the 1st, 2nd and 3rd declension

- 2 Translate into English: in aedīs; in aulā; ad Larem; ab ignibus; in aquam; ex aulīs; in aedibus; in aquā; ā dominō; ex oculīs; (optional: ad dominum; in scaenam; in nōmine; ā seruā; in aulam; in scaenā)
- 3 Translate into Latin: in the house (use aedēs); towards the girl; towards the brothers; away from the wife; onto the stage; in the house; out of water; away from the fires; (optional: in the waters; from the stage; into the family; in the eye; towards the masters; out of the household)
- 4 Translate: nimis corōnārum; satis seruōrum; nimis aquae; satis nōminum; nimis sorōrum; satis ignis
- 5 Translate these sentences:
- (a) quem uirum audiō?
 (b) cuius nōmen nunc dicitis?
 (c) in aedibus Euclōnis satis aurī semper est.
 (d) habet filia Euclōnis misera nimis cūrārum
 (e) tū autem quam fēminam domum dūcis?
 (optional)
 (f) puer pulcher est, uir tamen malus.
 (g) pater meus nimis pecūniae habet, satis cūrārum
 (h) quārē pulchra fēmina pauperem numquam amat?
 (i) optimī uirī satis aurī semper habent.

- 6 Translate these sentences:

- (a) uir bonus est quis? (Horace)
 (b) quis nōn paupertātem extimēscit? (Cicero)
 (c) quis bene cēlat amōrem? (Ovid)

- d) quid est beāta uīta? sēcūritās et perpetua tranquillitās. (Seneca)
 (e) mors quid est? aut finis aut trānsitus. (Seneca)
 (f) immodica ira gignit insāniam. (Seneca)
 (g) uītam regit fortūna, nōn sapientia. (Cicero)

bonus is a um good	securus securitat-is 3f	excessus is
poverty	freedom from worry	immoderate
inmensō 3 I am greatly	perpetuus a um perpetual,	ira ae 1f anger
kind of	continuous	gigno 3 I beget, cause
ne well	tranquillitās tranquillitāt-is	insani-a ae 1f madness
mor amor-is 3m. love	3f. peace	rego 3 I rule, direct
on happy,	mors mort-is 3f. death	fortun-a ae 1f fortune
1	aut . . . aut either . . . or	sapientia ae 1f wisdom
1f life	fin-is fin-is 3m end	
	trānsit-us (nom)	

Reading

- 1 Observe the following

ego tē uxōrem habeō = I regard you as a wife
 ego tē pauperem faciō I make you poor / a poor man (NB. faciō conjugates like audiō, but -i- is short throughout).

Supply a part of habeō or faciō which will make sense of the following combinations and translate. Then read out in Latin, phrasing correctly.

- (a) tandem uir mē filium
 (b) Euclīō uicīnum diuitem
 (c) Euchōnem pauperem
 (d) Megadōrus filiam Euclōnis uxōrem
 (e) ego autem diuitēs miserōs . . .
 (f) dominus malōs seruōs miserōs

- 2 Analyse the following passage in terms of subject, object; genitive usages, adjectives; prepositions.

Zeus, as he had promised, has Apollo remove the body of Sarpedon, 'the breathless hero', from the battlefield

Apollo bows, and from Mount Ida's Height
 Swift to the Field precipitates his Flight,
 Thence, from the War, the breathless Hero bore,
 Veil'd in a Cloud, to silver Simois' shore:
 There bath'd his honourable wounds, and drest

His manly Members in th' Immortal Vest,
 And with Perfumes of Sweet Ambrosial Dews,
 Restores his Freshness, and his Form renews.
 Then Sleep and Death, two twins of winged Race,
 Of matchless swiftness, but of silent Pace, 10
 Received Sarpedon, at the Gods' command,
 And in a Moment reach'd the Lycian land;
 The Corps amidst his weeping Friends they laid,
 Where endless Honours wait the Sacred Shade
 (Pope, translation of Iliad XVI)

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Read the following passage carefully, translating in order of the words and analysing the function of each one, defining word-groups, and anticipating, as far as you can, what is to come. Then translate into correct English. Finally read the passage aloud with the correct phrasing, thinking through the meaning as you read. Use the running vocabulary of 1D.

Megadōrum, uirum diuitem et Eucliōnis uicinum, soror Eunomia ex aedibus uocat. Eunomia enim anxia (worried) est, quod Megadōrus uxōrem nōn habet. Megadōrus autem uxōrem nōn uult (wants). nam uxōrēs uirōs diuitēs pauperēs faciunt. habet satis aurī Megadōrus et fēminās pulchrās nōn amat. ut enim pulchra fēmina est, ita uirum uexat 5 ut uir diues est, ita uxor uirum pauperem facit. Eunomiam autem sorōrem optimam Megadōrus habet. ut igitur postulat (demands) soror, ita facit frāter. Phaedram enim, Eucliōnis filiam, puellam optimam habet. ut tamen pauper Eucliō est, ita dōtem habet Phaedra nūllam. Megadōrus autem dōtem nōn uult (wants). nam sī diuitēs uxōrēs sunt 10 magnamque habent dōtem, magnus est post nūptiās sūmptus, nimis dant uirī pecūniae.

English-Latin

Translate the Latin sentences into English. Then translate the English sentences into Latin, using the pattern of the Latin ones to help you arrange the word-order correctly.

- (a) ut ego soror optima sum, ita tū frāter optimus.
 Just as Phaedra is an excellent daughter, so Euclio is an excellent father.
- (b) dominus meus frātre uirum optimum habet

- I consider beautiful women (to be) bad wives.
- (c) quid nōmen uxōris est tuae?
 Who is the brother of my neighbour?
- (d) uir pauper uxōrem pauperem domum dūcit
 The best husbands marry beautiful wives
- (e) fēminae in aedibus stant.
 The girls are going into the water
- (f) satis ego aurī habeo, satis pecūniae.
 The rich man has too much money and too much worry.

Deliciae Latinae

Word exercises

- 1 What do the following English words mean? sorority, uxorious, fraternal, simile, optimise, pauper, pulchritude, duke (also: il duce; duchy; duchess, doge; ducat (coin bearing the duke's image)), audio-visual, magnify
- 2 Derive English words from the following Latin: nōmen, domī, pecūnia, fēmina, ualē, satis

Everyday Latin

Where would one write *ex librīs* (liber, libr- 'book')?
 What sort of statement comes *ex cathedrā*? (*cathedra* is a special papal seat – originally the bishop's seat in his church, hence 'cathedral')
 Christ told the story of Dives and Lazarus. Who was Dives? (see Luke 16:19ff.)
 Often things seem to go on *ad infinitum* – explain. What is the force of the *in-* prefix?
in vīnō vēritās (= 'truth'). Where is truth found?
 To 'ad lib' is to talk *ad libitum*, i.e. to whatever extent you want (*libet* 'it is pleasing, desirable').
ad nauseam – to what point?
deus ex māchinā. *māchina* is a stage crane. Explain how the phrase comes to refer to a miraculous ending to an event.
per ardua ad astra (Royal Air Force motto) 'Through the heights / through difficulties . . .' – where?

Word-building

dūcō has another stem, *duct-*. Use the 'pool' of prefixes (pp. 32, 43) and your knowledge of common endings to produce at least ten English derivatives, with meanings.

See how large a score you can make with *audiō*, *audīt-* and *dūcō*, *dict-* in the same way.

Real Latin

Martial

Martial (c. AD 40–104) was a Roman satirical epigrammatist.

Thāida Quintus amat. 'quam Thāida?' Thāida luscā.

ūnum oculum Thāis nōn habet, ille duōs.

(3.8)

Thāis name of a very
famous Roman
courtesan (acc.
= Thāida)

quam which?
lusc-us a um one-eyed
ūn-us a um one

ille 'but he' i.e. Quintus
(sc. nōn habet)
duōs two (eyes)

NB. The Romans thought of love as blind and lovers as 'blinded'.

habet Africānus mīliēns, tamen captat.

Fortūna multīs dat nimis, satis nūllī.

(12.10)

mīliēns 100 million
sesterces

captō 1 I hunt legacies
multīs to many

nūllī to no-one

Vulgate

Dominus regit mē (Psalm 23)

Ordinary of the Mass

in nōmine Patris et Filī et Spiritus Sācti

Section 1E

Running vocabulary for 1E

adsūm I am near, at hand,
present

aeqrē hardly

acqu-us a um content

anim-us ī 2m. mind,

heart, spirit

asin-us ī 2m. donkey

audī hear! listen!

audisne? ne turns audis into
a question

bene well, thoroughly

blandē ingratiatingly

bon-us a um good

bōs bou-is 3m. ox

certē without doubt

cognōvī I know

cōsili-um ī 2n. plan

dōs dōt-is 3f. dowry

dubi-us a um in doubt

dūc lead! take!

et ... et both ... and

exisne? ne turns exis into a
question

fac do! make!

facile easily

facimus we do, make

facinora (nom.) schemes

facinus (nom., acc.) deed,
scheme

facit (he/she/it) makes,
does

fer carry! bring!

fero I carry, endure

fers you (s.) carry, endure

fert (he/she/it) carries

for-um ī 2n. forum

gravid-us a um pregnant

hercle by Hercules!

hic here

hodie today

homo homin-is 3m. man,

fellow

iaceō 2 I lie

immortālēs immortal

imperō 1 I order

irrideō 2 I laugh at

(+ne = ?)

lut-um ī 2n. mud

mihi (to) me

mox soon

nefari-us a um wicked

nihil nothing

nūpti-ae ārum 1f. (pl.)

marriage-rites

occidī I'm done for!

omnia (acc.) everything

onus (acc.) load, burden

oper-a ae 1f. attention

opus (nom.) need

ōrdō ordin-is 3m. rank,

class

pateō 2 I am obvious, lie

exposed

paupertās paupertat-is 3f.

poverty

periī I'm lost!

perspicu-us a um obvious

pol certainly (lit. 'by

Pollux')

poscō 3 I demand, ask for

(in marriage)

praeterea moreover

prōmitte promise!

prōmittō 3 I promise

quasi as if

quid cōsili what (of)

plan?

quō to where?

respicō 3,4 I give a

second glance to

saluē hail!

salutō 1 I greet, welcome

scelus (nom., acc.) crime,

criminal, villain

scelera (nom., acc.)

crimes, criminals,

villains

sēcum with himself/herself

sic thus, as follows

sine (+abl.) without

stult-us a um stupid

subit-us a um suddenly

tibi to you

transcendō 3 I cross over

(to) (ad + acc. = I

become)

ualeō 2 I am well; I wield

influence; ualeō ā

(+abl.) I am well from

the point of view of

ubi where?

uero truly

ut you (s.) wish, want

ut I wish, want

utamus we wish, want

utit (he/she/it) wishes

wants

ultro vol. pl. wish

want

Learning vocabulary for 1E

Nouns

nupti-ae anim 1f pl marriage-rites	advice, judgement
anim-us ī 2m mind, spirit, heart	dōs dōt-is 3f. dowry
cōsili-um ī 2n. plan,	homo homin-is 3m. man, fellow

Adjectives

hon-us a um good, brave; fit; honest

Verbs

irride-ō 2 I laugh at, mock	saluē welcome!	promitt-o 3 promiss- prōmiss-
	posc-ō 3 I demand	I promi

Others

bene well, thoroughly; rightly	occidī I'm done for!	quō (to) where,
et ... et both ... and	perī I'm lost!	sēcum with/to himself
hodiē today	quasi as if, like	herself
-ne	quid cōsili? what (of) plan?	ubi where (at)

New forms: nouns

facinus facinor-is 3n. deed, crime; endeavour	onus oner-is 3n. load, burden	scelus sceler-is 3n. crime villanv; criminal villain
--	----------------------------------	--

New forms: verbs

faci-ō 3/4 fēc-, fact- I make, do	fer-ō 3 tul-, lāt- I bear lead	uol-ō I wish, want
--------------------------------------	-----------------------------------	--------------------

Grammar and exercises for 1E

33 Present indicative active (3rd/4th conjugation): capiō 'I capture'

1st s. capi-ō	'I capture' etc
2nd s. capi-s	
3rd s. capi-t	

1st pl. capi-mus
2nd pl. capi-tis
3rd pl. capi-u-nt

Notes

- 1 There are a number of verbs which draw their forms from both 3rd and 4th conjs. You have met *faciō*, 'I make, do'
- 2 *capiō* appears to be straight 4th conjugation in the pres. ind. act., but observe a difference. True, it keeps the -i- all the way through, but the -i- remains *short* as in the 3rd conj

34 uolō 'I wish', 'I want' (irregular): present indicative active

1st s. uol-ō	'I wish', 'I want' etc
2nd s. uis	
3rd s. uul-t (uol-t)	
1st pl. uol-u-mus	
2nd pl. uul-tis (uol-tis)	
3rd pl. uol-u-nt	

NB. The stem of *uolō* is irregular but observe that the personal endings are regular, i.e. -o, -s, -t etc

35 ferō 'I bear', 'I carry', 'I lead' (irregular): present indicative active

1st s. fēr-ō	'I bear' etc
2nd s. fer-s	
3rd s. ter-t	
1st pl. ter-i-mus	
2nd pl. ter-tis	
3rd pl. lēr-u-nt	

NB. It is the absence of -i- between stem and ending in 2nd, 3rd s. and 2nd pl. that makes this irregular.

36 Present imperatives active (all conjugations)

1	2	3	4	3/4
āmā 'love!'	hābē 'have!'	pōsc-e 'ask!'	aūdī 'hear!'	cāp-e 'take!'
amā-te	habē-te	pōsc-ite	audī-te	cāpi-te

Note

- 1 We use *poscō* for 3rd conj. as *dīcō* has an irregular imperative, and *capiō* 'I take', 'I capture' should be learnt now, as it will exemplify 3rd/4th conj. throughout.
- 2 Note the similarity of 3rd and 3rd/4th conjugation imperative forms. Despite the presence of the -i- in *capiō*, the imperative form in the s. is still *cap-e*.

37 Irregular imperatives

<i>sum</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>dīcō</i>	<i>dūcō</i>	<i>ferō</i>	<i>faciō</i>
es 'be!'	ī 'go!'	dīc 'say!'	dūc 'lead!'	fer 'bring!'	fac 'do', 'make!'
es-te	ī-te	dīc-i-te	dūc-i-te	fer-te	fac-i-te

Notes

- 1 Herewith a mnemonic to help you remember four of the irregular imperatives: 'dīc had a dūc with fer on its back, and that's a fac'
- 2 Observe the lack of -i- in *fer-te*.

Exercises

- 1 Translate into Latin: you (s.) make; hear! (pl.); they carry; bring! (s.), two verbs; she wishes; we do; he bears; go! (pl.); you (s.) want; demand! (s.); I do; take (s.) the dowry (optional: we make; you (s.) endure; you (pl.) bring; you (pl.) wish; love your father! (s.)).
- 2 Translate the following, then change s. to pl. and vice versa: facimus; fert; uult; ferunt; dīc; ferte; uolumus; est; eunt; facis; dūcite; īte; capite (optional: fac; uīs; es; habent; dīcit; audīte; faciunt; fers)

38 3rd. decl. nouns: *onus oner-is* 3n. 'load', 'burden'

	s.	pl.
nom.	ónus	óner-a
acc.	ónus	óner-a
gen.	óner-is	óner-um
dat.	óner-ī	ónér-ibus
abl.	óner-e	oner-ibus

cf.

NB. All 3rd decl. nouns in -us, -eris are n. (cf. *nōmen* 26). Observe that, as usual, the nom. and acc. forms are the same; and that, like *nōmen*, the nom. and acc. pl. end in -a. It is vital to know the full categorisation (i.e. the *number* in the nom. of nouns like *onus*, for fear of confusing them with 2nd decl. nouns like *thesaurus*, *toppulus* etc. *onus* is a consonant stem noun.

EXERCISES

- 1 Give the correct form of *multus* for these cases of *onus*: *onus*, *oneris*, *onere*, *clat*, *clatibus*.
- 2 Give the word that agree with the given form of *pulcher*.

pulchri: *oneris*, *scelere*, *dominī*, *facinus*, *deī*, *dī*
pulchra: *fēmina*, *facinora*, *scelera*, *seruae*, *senex*
pulchrum: *opus*, *seruum*, *fēminam*, *senēs*, *Larem*, *scelus*,
facinoris
pulchrōrum: *nōminum*, *seruārum*, *deōrum*, *senum*, *scelerum*

39 Questions in -ne?

-ne attached to the FIRST word of a sentence turns a statement into a question, e.g. *puerum amās* 'you love the boy' *amāsne puerum?* 'do you love the boy?'

NB. Emphasis is placed on the first word in such questions. *puerumne amās?* means 'is it the boy you love?'

Exercise

Read out these sentences in Latin, correctly phrased. Then translate. Next turn each into a question, putting the word to be questioned first, and adding -ne to it. Translate and read out the Latin again.

- (a) *est bona puella.*
- (b) *īmus ad aedīs Euchiōnis.*
- (c) *fert bene onus serua.*

- (d) optimum cōsilium habent.
- (e) Euclo filiam statim prōmittit.
- (f) Megadōrus satis pecūniae habet.
- (g) soror frātre bene audit.
- (h) scaenam uidētis.
- (i) Euclio honōrem numquam dat.
- (j) uxōrēs nimis aurī semper habent.

40 *quid + gen.*

We have already met *satis + gen.* 'enough (of)', and *nimis + gen.* 'too much (of)'. *quid + gen.* = 'what (of)?', e.g. *quid cōsili est?* 'what (of) plan is there?' *quid negōti est?* 'what (of) trouble is there?' 'what's the problem?' This is another example of the so-called 'partitive' genitive (cf. 31).

Exercises

- 1 Translate: in aedīs; ē dōte; in animō; ad hominēs; ab aquā; ex ignibus; domī; ē periculō; in exitium; ad aquās; in periculum.
- 2 Translate these sentences:
 - (a) ubi est Megadōrus? quid cōsili habet?
 - (b) uxōremne pulchram uult uir diues? quid negōti est?
 - (c) tē igitur bonum habeō.
 - (d) seruī in aedibus nimis faciunt scelerum, nimis facinorum malōrum.
 - (e) quid oneris fers? quō is?
- 3 Translate these sentences:
 - (a) festinā lentē. (Suetonius)
 - (b) uirtūs sōla uītam efficit beātam. (Cicero)
 - (c) nihil inuitus facit sapiēns. (Seneca)
 - (d) auctor opus laudat. (Ovid)
 - (e) nihil in uulgō modicum. (Tacitus)
 - (f) neque bonum est uoluptās neque malum. (Aulus Gellius)

<i>festino</i> 1 I hurry, hasten	<i>beat-us a um</i> happy, blessed	<i>opus oper-is</i> 3m. work
<i>lentē</i> slowly		<i>laudō</i> 1 I praise
<i>solus</i> 3f goodness	<i>nihil</i> nothing	<i>uulg-us ī</i> 2m. crowd, mob
<i>solus</i> alone, only	<i>inuit-us a um</i> unwilling(ly)	<i>modic-us a um</i> moderate
<i>uita</i> 1f. life	<i>sapiēns</i> sapient-is 3m. wise	<i>uoluptās uoluptāt-is</i> 3f pleasure
<i>facio</i> 3,4 I make (x acc., y acc.)	man	
	<i>auctor auctor-is</i> 3m. author	

Reading exercises

- 1 Read through each of these pairs of sentences. In each case (1) say whether the subject of the second sentence is m., f. or n., (2) say to what or whom the second sentence refers, (3) translate the sentences, (4) read aloud in Latin, correctly phrased.
 - a) Megadōrus filiam Euclionis sine dōte domum dūcit. optimus igitur homo est
 - b) Megadōrus domū hodiē neque nūptiās parat neque coquōs uocat malum est
 - c) Eunomia soror Megadōrī est. bona fēmina est
 - d) Eunomia frātre habet. nōn dubium est
 - e) Euclo filiam amat. malus nōn est
 - f) Euclo timet. nōn dubium est
 - g) Staphyla cōsilium Euclionis audit. malum est.
 - h) Staphyla in aedīs redit. cūrae enim plēna est.
- 2 Analyse the following piece, stating, as you read, subject, verb, object, adjective.

But anxious Cares the pensive Nymph oppress'd,
And secret Passions labour'd in her Breast.
Not youthful Kings in Battle seiz'd alive,
Not scornful Virgins who their Charms survive,
Not ardent Lovers robb'd of all their Bliss, 5
Not ancient Ladies when refused a Kiss,
Not Tyrants fierce that unrepenting die,
Not Cynthia when her Mantle's pinned awry,
E'er felt such Rage, Resentment and Despair,
As thou, sad Virgin! for thy ravish'd Hair. (Pope) 10

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Read carefully through this passage, translating in the order of the words, analysing the function of each and the groupings of the words, and anticipating the direction of the sentences. Translate into correct English. Then read aloud the passage with correct phrasing, thinking through the meaning as you read. Use the running vocabulary of 1E.

Megadōrus Euchōnem uicīnum uidet. ā forō abīt Euchō. anxius est. nam animus Euchōnis, quod aurum nōn uidet, domī est, Euchō ipse (himself) forīs (outside). Euchōnem blande salutāt Megadōrus. homo ille pauperem. timet autem Euchō, quod Megadōrus uir dīues est. perspicuum est. Megadōrus thēsaurum Euchōnis uult. nōn dubium est. Euchō in aedīs it, uidet aurum, saluum est. ex aedibus igitur exit. Megadōrus filiam Euchōnis uxōrem poscit. filiam prōmittit Euchō, sed sine dōte. pauper enim est. dōtem igitur habet nūllam. Megadōrus dōtem uult nūllam, bonus est et dīues satis. nūptiae hodiē sunt. coquum igitur uocat Megadōrus in aedīs. timet autem Staphyla, quod Phaedra ē Lycōnidē grauida est. Megadōrus uxōrem domum dūcit grauidam malum est.

English-Latin

Translate the Latin sentences into English. Then translate the English sentences into Latin, using the pattern of the Latin ones to help you arrange the word-order correctly.

- irrīdēsne mē, homo malus uirum optimum?
Is he, a rich man, pouring scorn on Euchio, a poor man?
- malum est. Megadōrus enim filiam Euchōnis uxōrem tacit.
There's no doubt. The old man considers the girl his daughter.
- recite ad Larem, seruī! corōnās ferte multās!
Go into the house, slave-woman. Bring your burdens.
- quid cōsili est? Megadōrusne dōtem uult? malum est.
What's up? Do you want money? There's no doubt (of that).
- quō abis? isne in aedis? nūptiasne parās hodie? optimum est.
What do they want? Are they going home? Are they carrying loads? They're good lads.
- bonum habē animum, Megadōre. nam cōsiliū bonum est.
Cheer up, master. The deed's a very good one.

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building

trāns means 'across'. Sometimes it appears as *trā-*, e.g. *trādō* 'I hand over', 'I hand across (the ages)' – whence 'tradition'.

prō means 'in front of', 'on behalf of', 'for'.

Learn three important stems

mittō has another stem *miss-* (thus *prō + mittō* 'send ahead', 'send in advance' gives 'promise')

faciō has another stem *fact-*. When *faciō* has a prefix, it becomes *-ficiō*, stem *fect-*, e.g. *prae + faciō* becomes *prae-ficiō*, stem *prae-fect-*. Add *-ant/-ent* to your list of suffixes, e.g. efficient

ferō has another stem *lāt-*

Exercise

Using the pool of prefixes and suffixes you have built up so far (pp. 32, 43), construct English words from the stems of *mittō* (*miss-*), *faciō* (*fact-*), *ferō* (*lāt-*) and *dūcō* (*duct-*). Say how the English word gets its meaning. The final list should be on the long side.

Word exercise

- Give the meaning and Latin connection of these English words: nuptial, animate, hominid (*-id* = 'son of'), voluntary, onus, fact.
- Observe how fruitful the *fer-* stem is in English. Give the meanings of: igniferous, auriferous.
- What sort of people are those who are asinine and bovine?
- Note that *ae-* in Latin becomes *e-* in mediaeval Latin and so, often, in English, e.g. *aequus* – 'equal'.

Everyday Latin

Cf. = *cōnfer* 'compare!' (*cum + ferō* 'bring together').

A 'recipe' in English is an imperative – *recipe!* 'take!', from *recipiō*. This is a useful way of remembering 3/4 imperatives.

A common neuter noun in *-us* in Latin is *corpus*. Remember it is neuter, with stem *corpor-*, through *mēns sana in corpore sanō* 'a healthy mind in a

healthy body' (Juvenal, Roman satirist, telling us what all men should pray for). Cf. corporeal, incorporate, corporation. Equally helpful may be the tag *habeās corpus* 'you may have the body'.

Real Latin

Martial

Tongiliānus habet nāsum: scio, nōn nego. sed iam
nil praeter nāsam Tongiliānus habet (12.88)

Tongiliānus 2m	charc. n. m. meat 1	nego 1 I deny
Tongiliānus base 1 or	am. crim. s. at 1	inter w.
engre 2 I know	habeat 1 I have	praeter + acc.
praeter 2 a. ascertained	at 1 know	

nōn cēnat sū e aprō mester Inte. Caecilīnus
bellum conuiuiam Caecilīnus habet 1. 57

See p. 10 for a explanation of the Latin & English words.

one 1 I die	Inte 1 I am	conuiuiam 1m
one + abl. with acc.	C. Caecilīnus 2m	bellum 1m
ap + apr. 2m. wild boar	C. Caecilīnus	
ester n. 1m. east	bellum 1m. war	

NB. Boar was a dish usually cooked for a party; Caecilianus ate it when dining alone

Vulgate

salaum mī fac, domine (Psalm 59)

pater, si dīs, transfer calicem istum a me (Luke 22.42)

m istum this cup

Ordinary of the Mass

laudamus tē, benedicimus te, adoramus tē, glōrificamus tē, gratiās
agimus tibi pr. pter magnam glōriam tuam Domine Deus, rex celestis,
Deus pater omnipotens

laude 1 I praise 'laud'	gloriā 1 I glorify	rex king
benedicere 3 I bless	gratiā ag. 3 I give thanks	celestis in heaven
ad + acc. 1 I worship	ad + acc. 1 I give thanks	omnipotens all-powerful
	propter (+ acc.) for the sake of	

Section 1F

Running vocabulary for 1F

amittere to lose

amitto 3 I lose

anim-a ae 1f. breath

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

an- 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

ergo so

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

fac 1m. 1f. 3m. 3f.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

omnēs (nom. pl.) m.

Learning vocabulary for 1F

Nouns

cēn-a ae 1f. dinner
turb-a ae 1f. crowd, mob
cīuis cīu-is 3m 1. citizen

nihil (nīl) (indecl.)
 nothing

Verbs

āmitt-ō 3 āmiſs- amiss-
 I lose
aufer-ō auferre 3 abstul-
 ablāt- I take away
coqu-ō 3 I cook
mitt-ō 3 mīſs- miss- I send

dormi-ō 4 I sleep
inueni-ō inuenire 4 I find
sci-ō 4 I know
fugi-ō 3/4 I escape, run
 off, flee
habe-ō negōtium I conduct

business
ine-ō inire I enter, go in

Others

apud + acc. at the house
 of, in the hands of, in
 the works of

aut or
quid negōtī? what (of)
 business, problem,

trouble?
ubi when? (where at?)

New forms: adjectives

audāx audāc-is brave,
 bold, resolute
facil-is e easy

ingēns ingent-is huge,
 large, lavish
omn-is e all, every,
omnia everything

trist-is e sad, gloomy,
 unhappy

Grammar and exercises for 1F

41 Present infinitive active 'to —' (=second principal part): all conjugations

1	2	3	4	3/4
'to love'	'to have'	'to say'	'to hear'	'to capture'
amā-re	habē-re	dic-e-re	audī-re	cáp-e-re

Notes

- 1 The infinitive commonly means 'to —', e.g. *amāre* 'to love'. It is, in fact, an indeclinable NOUN based on a verb (derivation in 'no', *fīnis* 'ending'). Consider how 'I like a run' ('run', noun, object) means virtually the same as 'I like to run' ('to run' noun, object)
- 2 Note the long vowel in conjs. 1, 2 and 4, and the loss of -i- in the 3rd/4th conj. infinitive.

- 3 The infinitive is known as the second principal part (the first principal part being the dictionary form, i.e. *amō*, *habeō*, *dicō*, *audiō*, *capiō*). At the moment it is important to learn because, in conjunction with the first principal part, it tells you infallibly what conjugation the verb is. Thus

1st p p	2nd p p	
-o	-īre	1st conj
-is	-ere	2nd conj
-it	-ere	3rd conj
-i	-ire	4th conj
-i	-ire	3rd 4th conj

42 Irregular infinitives: *sum*, *eō*, *uolō*, *ferō*

Learn the following irregular infinitives

sum - esse 'to be'
eō - ī-re 'to go'
uolō - uel-le 'to wish'
ferō - fēr-re 'to bear'

Exercise

Give the infinitive of these verbs and translate: *habeō*, *explicō*, *cēlō*, *inueniō*, *maneō*, *redeō*, *dūcō*, *dicō*, *poscō*, *stō*, *rogō*, *fugiō*, *āmittō*, *auferō*, *faciō*, *sum*, (optional: *uerberō*, *coquō*, *dormiō*, *seruō*, *uolō*)

43 Personal pronouns: *ego*, *nōs*; *tū*, *uōs*

nom.	égo	'I'	nōs	'we'	tū	'you'	uōs	'you'
acc.	mē		nōs		tē		uōs	
gen.	mēi		nóstrum		tūi		uēstrum	
			nōstri				uēstri	
dat.	mīhi (mī)		nōbīs		tībi		uōbīs	
abl.	mē		nōbīs		tē		uōbīs	

Notes

- 1 You have already met the s. forms *ego*, *tū*. Here are their plurals, *nōs*, *uōs*. Note the gen. pl. forms.

2 *nostrum, uestrum* are the so-called 'partitive' genitives (31), e.g. *multī nostrum* 'many of us'. *nostrī, uestrī* are 'objective' genitives (see 22³), e.g. *memor nostrī* 'mindful of us'.

44 3rd decl. adjectives: *omn-is e* 'all', 'every'

	s.		pl.	
	m./f.	n.	m./f.	n.
nom.	omni-s	omn-e	omn-ēs	omn-ia
acc.	omn-em	omn-e	omn-īs (omn-ēs)	omn-ia
gen.	←omn-is→		←omn-ium→	
dat.	←omn-ī→		←omn-ibus→	
abl.	←omn-ī→		←omn-ibus→	

Notes

- Just as with 2nd decl. adjectives like *mult-us a um*, 3rd decl. adjectives must agree in gender, number and case with the nouns they describe (14).
- M. and f. forms are the same as each other in s. and pl. – a useful saving of labour for the learner.
- Generally, 3rd declension adjectives are *-i-* stems (cf. 12) and have:

abl. s. in *-ī*, acc. pl. in *-īs*, n. pl. in *-ia*, gen. pl. in *-ium*

Contrast 3rd declension consonant-stem nouns, which have:

abl. s. in *-e*, acc. pl. in *-ēs*, n. pl. in *-a*, gen. pl. in *-um*

- Similar to *omnis*: *trist-is e* 'sad'; *facil-is e* 'easy'; *difficil-is e* 'difficult'.

45 3rd decl. adjectives: *ingēns ingēns (ingent-)* 'huge'

	s.		pl.	
	m./f.	n.	m./f.	n.
nom.	ingens	ingēns	ingent-ēs	ingent-ia
acc.	ingent-em	ingēns	ingent-īs (ingent-ēs)	ingent-ia
gen.	←ingent-is→		←ingent-ium→	
dat.	←ingent-ī→		←ingent-ibus→	
abl.	←ingent-ī→		←ingent-ibus→	

NB Observe the stem change of this common type of adjective in *-ēns* and note that its n. s. form is the same as the m./f. form in the nom. Otherwise, its endings are identical to those of *omnis*.

46 3rd decl. adjectives: *audāx audāx (audāc-)* 'bold', 'courageous'

	s.		pl.	
	m./f.	n.	m./f.	n.
nom.	audāx	audāx	audāc-ēs	audāc-ia
acc.	audāc-em	audāx	audāc-īs (audāc-ēs)	audāc-ia
gen.	←audāc-is→		←audāc-ium→	
dat.	←audāc-ī→		←audāc-ibus→	
abl.	←audāc-ī→		←audāc-ibus→	

NB This very common 3rd decl. adjective type ends in *-x* in the nom., and has its stem in *-c-*. *audāx* follows the pattern of *ingēns* in the relationship between the nom. s. m. and n. forms. Other endings identical with *omnis*, *ingēns*.

Exercise

- Decline in full: *puer audāx*; *omnis aqua*; *ingēns periculum*.
- Construct a grid consisting of 7 columns with headings as follows:

NOUN CASE NUMBER GENDER *omnis* *ingēns* *audāx*

Under the heading NOUN write the following list of nouns down the column: *seruae*, *thēsaurī*, *oculōs*, *dominus*, *nōminibus*, *cōnsilium*, *cēnā*, *turbārum*, *cīuī*, *pecūniās*, *puellā*, *periculō*, *ignis*, *animīs*.

Leave plenty of space between each noun. In the next three columns, define exactly the case, number and gender of each of the nouns. In the last three columns, make *omnis*, *ingēns* and *audāx* agree with the noun. Where the form of the noun indicates different possible cases, write down all the possibilities. E.g.

NOUN	CASE	NUMBER	GENDER	omnis	ingēns	audāx
filiae	gen.	s.	f.	omnis	ingentis	audāx
	dat.	s.	f.	omnī	ingentī	audāx
	nom.	pl.	f.	omnes	ingentes	audāx

- Determine which of the nouns is in agreement with the given adjective (the answer may be one or more than one)

ingentem *nominum*, *cōnsilium*, *deum*, *seruarum*
audāx *puellā*, *cōnsilium*, *homo*, *dominus*, *ingentis*
omnium *oculum*, *coquorum*, *periculum*, *honorem*

trīstēs – animōs, dominī, filiae, familiam, aedīs
 facilia – aqua, serua, puella, familia, scelera
 difficilī – coquō, frāter, sorōris, dominus, filiā, turba, exitiō

47 *dīues dīuit-is* 'wealthy', 'a wealthy man'; *pauper pauper-is* 'poor', 'a poor man'

	s.		pl.	
	m./f.	n.	m./f.	n.
nom.	dīues	dīues	dīuit-ēs	dīuit-a
acc.	dīuit-em	dīues	dīuit-ēs	dīuit-a
gen.	← dīuit-is →		← dīuit-um →	
dat.	← dīuit-ī →		← dīuit-ibus →	
abl.	← dīuit-e →		← dīuit-ibus →	

	s.		pl.	
	m./f.	n.	m./f.	n.
nom.	paúper	paúper	paúper-ēs	paúper-a
acc.	paúper-em	paúper	paúper-ēs	paúper-a
gen.	← paúper-is →		← paúper-um →	
dat.	← paúper-ī →		← paúper-ibus →	
abl.	← paúpere →		← paúper-ibus →	

When used to describe a noun, these two adjectives mean 'wealthy' or 'poor'. But they can be used *on their own*, when they act as nouns, and mean 'a wealthy person', 'a poor person', e.g. *Euchio dīuites amat* 'Euchio adores the rich rich people' (noun); but *Euchio homo pauper est* 'Euchio is a poor man' (adjective)

The same principle applies to all adjectives in Latin. When used on their own, they can stand as nouns. In such circumstances, it is very important to pay close attention to the *gender* of the adjective, e.g. *multī* (pl.) on its own would mean 'many men'; *multae* 'many women'; *multa* 'many things'; *omnēs* could mean 'all men' or 'all women'; but *omnia* would mean 'all things', 'everything'

NB These are consonant-stem adjectives. Contrast *omnis*, *ingēns*, *audax* 44-6.

Exercises

1 Translate into English:

- cēnam igitur ingentem coquus audāx coquere uult.
- quārē omnia coquōrum nōmina scīre uīs?
- cōsiliū autem audāx in animō habēs.
- ubi in aedīs intrāre uultis, statim nōs uocāte.
- scelera audācia omnis pauper facere uult.
- turba hominum audācium ingēns ad aedīs Megadōrī adit.

2 Translate into English:

- multae neque dormiunt neque cēnam coquunt.
- bona aufert
- omnia scīre uultis.
- pulchrī pulchrās amant.
- omnēs pecūniā habēre uolunt.
- multī fugiunt, multī autem stant.
- pauperem dīues nōn amat.
- omnēs bonī cīuīs cūrant.
- malī mala cōgitant.
- pecūnia omnis uexat.

3 Translate these sentences:

- aeuum omne et breue et fragile est. (Pliny)
- senectūs insānābilis morbus est. (Seneca)
- ira furor breuis est. (Horace)
- rationāle animal est homo. (Seneca)
- facilis est ad beātam uītam uia. (Seneca)
- difficile est saturam nōn scribere. (Juvenal)
- difficile est longum subitō dēponere amōrem. (Catullus)
- nātūram quidem mūtāre difficile est. (Seneca)
- uariū et mūtābile semper
fēmina (Virgil)
- turpe senex mīles, turpe senīlis amor (Ovid)

aeuum i 2m age

breu-is e short

fragil-is e brittle frail

senectūs senectut-is 3f old

age

insānābil-is e incurable

morb-us i 2m. disease

ir-a ae 1f anger

furor furor is 3m madness

rationāl-is e possessing

reason

animal animal-is 3m

animal

beat-us a um happy

blessed

uit-a ae 1f life

ui-a ae 1f. road, way
 difficil-is e difficult
 satur-a ae 1f. satire
 scribō 3 I write
 long-us a um long, long
 asting

subitō suddenly
 depōnō 3 I lay aside
 amor amor-is 3m. love
 natur-a ae 1f. nature
 quidem indeed (emphasises
 preceding word)

muto 1 I change, alter
 vari-us a um variable
 mutabil-is e changeable
 turp-is e disgraceful
 miles milit-is 3m. soldier
 senil-is e in an old man

Reading exercises

1 Analyse these examples, in the order of the words, determining subject, object, verb, infinitive

- The intellect of man is forced to choose
Perfection of the life, or of the work. (Yeats)
- To err is human, to forgive divine. (Pope)
- And that same prayer doth teach us all to render
The deeds of mercy. (Shakespeare)
- We'll teach you to drink deep. (Shakespeare)
- To make dictionaries is dull work. (Johnson)
- Love looks not with the eyes but with the mind
And therefore is wing'd Cupid painted blind. (Shakespeare)

2 Say, as you translate in the order of the words, what the functions of the words and the word-groups are in these incomplete sentences. Complete them (with part of uolō) and translate into correct English. Then read them aloud, phrasing them correctly.

- ubi pauper cēnam ingentem habere . . . ?
- quō tū inire . . . ?
- cūrās diuitis ferre omnis pauper . . .
- amāre puellās pulchrās et aurum dominī auferre nōs seruī . . .
- facile ferre onus ciuēs omnēs
- uōs apud Euclionem cēnam coquere numquam

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Read this passage, translating in word-order, defining the function of each word and anticipating the construction. Translate into correct English. Then read the passage aloud in Latin, phrasing correctly, thinking through the meaning as you read. Use the running vocabulary of 1F.

Megadōrus nūptiās facere uult. coquōs igitur uocat multōs ad aedīs. coquorum opus est cēnam coquere ingentem. uxōrem domum dūcit

Megadōrus Phaedram, Euchōnis filiam. sed coquī Euchōnem uirum pauperem habent et tristem. nam nīl āmittere uult. follem enim ingentem, ubi dormire uult, in ōs impōnit. ita animam, dum dormit, nōn āmittit. apud tōnsōrem praesegmina, quod nihil uult āmittere, colligit omnia et domum dūcit. aquam dare nōn uult. ignem dare, quod āmittere timet, nōn uult. uir tristis est. coquī igitur in aedīs inire Megadōrī, uirī diuitis et facilis, uolunt. periculum autem in aedibus Megadōrī multum est, uāsa argentea ingentia, uestēs multae, multum aurum. sī quid seruī āmittunt, coquōs fūrēs putant (*think*) et comprehendere uolunt. apud Euchōnem autem coquī saluī sunt. uāsa argentea ex aedibus auferre Euchōnis facile nōn est, quod uāsa nūlla habet!

English-Latin

Translate the Latin sentences into English. Then translate the English sentences into Latin, using the pattern of the Latin ones to help you arrange the word-order correctly

- quārē in aedīs Megadōrī, uirī diuitis, onus ferre uultis?
Do you want to cook dinner in a poor man's, Euclio's, house?
- ciues omnēs ē periculō exire uolunt
Resolute slaves want to escape from the house.
- ingentem enim āmittere pecūniam quis uult?
What woman doesn't want to find a bold slave?
- diuitēs ubi nūptiās faciunt, coquōs in aedīs uocant.
When they want a large dinner, masters ask for a good cook.
- omnēs coquī cultrōs portant ingentis.
A beautiful woman draws (ferō) a big crowd.
- apud tamen pauperem cēna tristis est.
At a rich man's house dinners are excellent.

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building

ā/ab appears as au as a prefix to ferō, i.e. auferō 'I take away'.
 in means 'into', 'upon' in inueniō 'I come upon', 'I find'.

Observe the interesting combination of elements in negotium 'business'. The word is built up of nec(g)- 'not' + ōtium 'leisure'.

Word exercises

- 1 Give the meaning and Latin connection of: civilised, nihilistic, cook, dormitory, fugitive, negotiate, initial, invention, science, emit
- 2 Give English words from the Latin: facilis, audāx, omnis (dat. pl.), āridus, lapis (NB stem), tōnsor.

Real Latin

Sayings of Cato

quod (an amount which) satis est dormī.

āleam (gambling) fuge.

meretricem (whore) fuge.

Vulgate

beātī pauperēs quia uestrum est rēgnum deī. (Luke 6.20)

beātus blessed

uestrum yours

regnum kingdom

beātī pauperēs insert sunt

Giovanni Cotta (1480–1510)¹

amō, quod fateor, meam Lycōrim,

ut pulchrās iuvenēs amant puellās;

amat mē mea, quod reor, Lycōris,

ut bonae iuvenēs amant puellae.

quod fateor 'as I admit'

iuuenis iuuen-is 3m young

quod reor 'as I think'

Lycōrim = acc. s. of

man

Lycōris

¹ Latin was the language of scholarship and international communication throughout the Renaissance (fifteenth and sixteenth centuries) and was still felt by and large to be the proper medium for literature also. These are the first four lines of a poem in which the poet's girl gives him some locks of her hair as a love-pledge. The poet burns them, since they have, he claims, 'burned' him – with love!

Mottoes¹

fac rēctē et nīl timē. (Hill)

ā deō et patre. (Thomas)

amat uictōria cūram. (Clark)

rēctē rightly

ā on the side of

uictōria victory

¹ These mottoes originate in mediaeval times or later. Many families have several

Word study

uestis means 'clothes' (uestiō 'I dress'), so English 'vest'. uestiārium 'dressing room' emerges in English as 'vestry'. inuestire 'to put clothes on', 'surround' gives 'investiture' and 'invest' (clothing one's money with yet more?). trāns 'across' + uest- yields 'transvestite', one who crosses over to the clothes of the opposite sex, or simply one who disguises himself: hence 'travesty'. dī- (indicating separation) + uest- gives 'divest', 'take clothes off'.

Do not confuse with 'vestige', from uestīgium 'footprint', 'trace': hence e.g. 'investigate', which means 'following on someone's tracks'.

Section 1G

Running vocabulary for 1G

ige! come!

aliter alter-a um one or

other (of two)

imb-ō ae ō both

amor amōr-is 3m. love

an or

animō aequō in a calm

frame of mind, i.e.

cool, collected

animō bonō in a cheerful

frame of mind, i.e.

cheerful

ante (+ acc.) before

auferō 3 I take x (acc.)

away from y (dat.)

caec-us a um blind

certē without doubt

certō for a fact

crēdō 3 I believe x (dat.);

entrust x (acc.) to y

(dat.)

culp-a ae 1f. blame, guilt

cum (+ abl.) with

currō 3 I run

custōdiō 4 I guard

custōs custōd-is 3m f guard

dē (+ abl.) about,

concerning

dextr-a ae 1f right (hand)

domō (from) home

ebriō (to) a drunkard

ecce look!

edepol by Pollux!

em here you are! there!

es! be! (s.)

esse to be

etiam still

fānō (to) the shrine

fān-um ī 2n. shrine

fateor I confess

Fidēs Faith

forās outside

heus hey!

homīnī (from) the man

id quod that which

ignōscō 3 (+ dat.) I pardon

immō more precisely

immortāl-is e immortal

impudēns impudent

shameless (one)

inrēpō 3 I creep

īnsan-us a um mad

inueniō 4 I find

iuuenis iuuen-is 3m youth

laeu-a ae 1f left (hand)

licet it is permitted to

(+ dat.)

loc-us ī 2m place, site

lumbri-c-us ī 2m. worm

manum (acc.) hand

mēcum with me

melius better

mīhi to/for me, from me

miserō (dat.) miserable

nescio 4 I do not know

nisi except

noster nostr-a um our

nūllā continentia of no self-

restraint

ostendō 3 I show
perdō 3 I lose, destroy
plāg-a ae 1f. blow; *plāgās*
dā (+dat.) I beat
plōrō 1 I weep
prōferō 3 I show, hold out
prohibeō 2 I prevent, stop
propter (+acc) on
 account of
quidvis whatever he likes
quod what, that which;
 which
reddō 3 I give back

referō 3 I hand back
rūsum again
sit-us a um placed
spectātōribus (dat. pl.) to
 the audience
summā audaciā of great
 boldness
summā pulchritūdine of
 great beauty
summā virtūte of great
 uprightness
tangō 3 I touch, lay hands
 on

tertius a um third (hand)
tibi to/for you; from you
trifur triple thief
tuō (dat.) your
vae shame on!
verbum ī 2n. word
verberabilissim-us most
 floggable
uer-us a um true
vil-is e cheap
vin-um ī 2n. wine

Learning vocabulary for 1G

Nouns

audaci-a ae 1f. boldness,
 cockiness
continenti-a ae 1f. self-
 control, restraint

fān-um ī 2n. shrine
iuuenis iuuen-is is 3m.
 young man

virtus virtut-is 3f
 manliness, courage,
 goodness

Adjectives

aequ-us a um fair,
 balanced, equal

summ-us a um highest, top
 of

Verbs

age! come!
credō 3 *credid- credit-*
 I believe (+dat.);
 I entrust x (acc.) to y
 (dat.)

ostendō 3 I show, reveal
reddō 3 *reddid- reddit-*
 I return, give back

tangō 3 *tetig- tact-* I touch,
 lay hands on

Others

certē without doubt

certō for a fact

Grammar and exercises for 1G

48 The dative case: usage and meaning

- 1 The dative is in one sense only the 'giving' case (the word derives from *dō datus* 'I give'). That is, if I give something to a person, the person who

receives it is in the dative case, e.g. *mihi aulam dat* 'he gives me the pot / the pot to me'. But equally, it is the 'losing' case too, since if I take something from a person, the person goes into the dative case, e.g. *hominī aulam auferō* 'I take the pot from the man'. So one can say that the dative is the case defining the gainer or the loser, the one advantaged or disadvantaged

- 2 Another 'advantage' sense is that of possession, expressed by *sum* + dative, e.g. *est mihi pecūnia* 'there is money to me', 'I have money'
- 3 Another common usage of the dative is to denote the person spoken to (also, in some sense, a gainer – a gainer of the words you have spoken), e.g. *fēminae dicit multa* 'he says many things to the woman'.

'To' (i.e. 'to the advantage of') and 'from' (i.e. 'to the disadvantage of') (and sometimes 'for') will translate the dative best for the time being. But you should note that the usages and meanings of the dative are very wide, and that when they are all gathered together the common idea behind them all seems to be that the person in the dative is somehow *involved or interested in the action of the verb*: that action has some consequences for the person, sometimes specific, sometimes quite vague. So when you come across a dative, ask first 'how is the person in the dative case affected by the verb?'

Distinguish between 'to' and 'from' indicating primarily *motion* (when Latin uses *ad*, *ex*, *ab*) and the dative usages (indicating gain or loss) outlined above

Exercises

- 1 Form the dative s. and pl. of these noun + adjective phrases: *senex miser*; *puella audāx*; *puer ingēns*; *onus multum*; *cōsiliū audāx*; (optional: *soror optima*; *nōmen meum*; *culter tuus*; *seruus omnis*).
- 2 Pick out the datives in this list: *cūram*, *animō*, *fāna*, *virtūtī*, *audaciae*, *hominis*, *animōs*, *dīuitibus*, *uxor*, *onerī*, *pecūniā*, *filīs*, *aquae*, *dominō*, *ignibus*, *uicīnum*, *dīs*, *honōrēs*, *fēminis*, *corōnae*, *cōsiliō*
- 3 Give the Latin for: to the huge slaves; for me; to the unhappy old man's disadvantage; to the wicked wives; for us; belonging to you (s.); (optional: to the advantage of the best citizen; belonging to the bold slave-girl; to the good father's disadvantage; for every boy).
- 4 Translate these sentences:

- (g) tibi multōs seruōs pecūniamque multam dō.
 (h) seruō audācī et seruae pulchrae nihil umquam crēdō.
 (i) uirō dīuitī, quod mihi dōs nūlla est, filiam meam prōmittere uolō.
 (j) nōbīs corōna, unguentum uōbīs domī est.

2 In these sentences, the verb has been omitted. By doing as in the previous exercise, say what you anticipate. Then fill the gap (it may often be possible to insert verbs which alter the function of the dative completely). Translate

- (a) hominibus bonīs ciuēs omnēs pecūniam .
 (b) quārē mihi aurum . . . ?
 (c) nōbīs animus bonus . . .
 (d) fānō, nōn hominī audācī, Eucliō aurum . . .
 (e) tū nōbīs quārē corōnās omnīs et omne unguentum . . . ?
 (f) puellis audācibus et iuuenibus pulchris nūlla continentia . . .
 (g) ego filiae meae dōtem ā uirō . . .
 (h) quārē pater tuus mihi tē uxōrem nōn . . . ?
 (i) scelus, quid tibi negōtī in aedibus meis . . . ?
 (j) omnī bonō iuuenī uirtūtem audācia . . .

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Read the following passage carefully, defining, as you translate, in word-order, the functions of the nouns and verb-groups, and anticipating the following parts of the sentence. When you have done this, translate. Finally, read out the passage, phrasing correctly, thinking through the meaning as you read. Use the running vocabulary of 1G.

est Euchiō aula auri plena. Eucliō aulam ex aedibus portat. timet enim ualdē omnes enim bonīs fūtes omne aurum auferre semper uolunt. uult igitur in fānō aulam celāre ubi aurum in fānō celat Eucliō, Strobilus uidet et fānō exit Eucliō bonō animō est, quod nunc fūtem timet nullum. Strobilus autem ut lumbricus in fānam intrat. nam aulam Euchiō miserō auferre ault sed seruū audācem uidet Eucliō seruō audācī mala multa dicit et aurum poscit. seruus autem senī aurum reddere non uult, quod aurum nōn habet. Euchiōnī manum dextram seruus ostendit. deinde sem miserō ostendit laeuam. Eucliō autem manum tertiam rogat. seruus Euchiōnem insānum habet et exit. aulam Eucliō ā fānō aufert et alteri (d. n. s. m.) locō clam crēdit.

English-Latin

Translate the Latin sentences into English. Then translate the English sentences into Latin, using the pattern of the Latin ones to help you arrange the word-order correctly.

- (a) Euchiō uir summā uirtūtē est.
Phaedra is an extremely beautiful girl.
 (b) bonō animō es et dā mihi pecūniam.
Be calm (s.) and take the gold from the slave.
 (c) senex miser hominī malō aulam aurī plēnam crēdit.
All the old men are returning the pots full of money to the good citizens.
 (d) uōs autem quārē senī aurum nōn redditīs?
But why are you taking the young man's garland from him?
 (e) quid tibi negōtī est in aedibus senis miserī?
What business have you (pl.) in the shrine of my household god?
 (f) est mihi pater optimus, uir summā continentīā.
I've an excellent son, a young man of the highest qualities.

Deliciae Latinae

Word building

(a) Prefixes

sub- (sometimes appears as su-, sus-) 'under', 'from under'
 dē- 'down from'
 per- 'through', 'thoroughly', 'very'

Exercise

Divide each of the following words into their compound parts and suggest a meaning for each: ēuocō, circumducō, perfacilis, trāsmittō, redeō, prōuideo, efferō, praeficiō, amittō, reddō, subducō, edūcō, sabeō, permultus, anteferō, trādō, perficiō, circumdō, dēducō, referō, dēuocō, summittō, perstō.

(b) Noun formation

Many nouns are formed from verbs or adjectives. This is often done by placing a suffix (*sub-fixus* 'fixed on under', i.e. at the end) onto the verb or

Adjective stem. This suffix frequently gives a clue to the meaning of the noun, e.g.:

- sor or -tor (gen. s. -ōris m.) means 'the person who', e.g. *amātor* 'lover'
- or (gen. s. -ōris m.) means 'activity', 'state' or 'condition', e.g. *amor* 'the state of loving', 'love'
- iō, -tiō, -siō (gen. s. -iōnis f.) means 'action or result of an action', e.g. *cōgitātiō* 'the act of thinking', 'thought'
- ium n. means 'action or result of an action', e.g. *aedificium* 'the result of making a house', 'a building'
- men (gen. s. -minis n.) means 'means, or result of an action', e.g. *nō-men* 'means of knowing', 'name'

Exercise

- 1 Give the meaning of the following nouns: *auditor*, *cūrātor*, *uexātiō*, *inuentiō*, *cōsiliū*, *dictiō*, *turbātor*, *prōmissiō*, *maleficium*, *beneficium*, *habitātiō*.
- 2 Form the genitive singular of: *uexātiō*, *dictiō*, *habitātiō*, *inuentiō*, *auditor*, *turbātor*.

Real Latin

Vulgate

panem nostrum quotidiānum dā nōbis hodiē et dīmittē nōbis peccāta nostra (Luke 11.3-4)

panis *panis* 3m bread

quotidiānus *a um* daily

dīmittō 3 I discharge
peccātum 2n. sin

Mottoes (based on the dative)

nōn nobis, sed omnibus (Ash, Ash)

nōn mihi, sed deō et rēgi (Booth, Warren)

nōn mihi, sed patriae (Hecock, Jones-Lloyd, Lloyd, Whittingham)

deō, rēgi et patriae (Irvine, Duncombe)

deo, patriae, tibi (Lambard, Sulley)

gloria deo (Challen, Henn)

rex 1 3m king

patria *a* 1f fatherland

gloria *a* 1f glory

SECTION TWO

Section 2A

Running vocabulary for 2A

abibis you (s.) will go off
ac and

accipio 3/4 I take, receive
accumbō 3 I recline, lie
down

adferam I shall bring (m)
adferēs you (s.) will bring
(m)

adscribam I shall write
alongside

adscribō 3 I write next to,
alongside

adseruābit (he) will keep/
guard

adseruō 1 I keep, guard
adiuuo 1 I help

aduertō, see *animum*

agam I shall deal / take
action

agēmus, see *grātias*

alter (nom. s. m.) one,
another (of two)

alteram (acc. s. f.) a
second

alterius (gen. s. f.) of the
one / of the other (of
two)

amātor *amātor-is* 3m. lover
amīc-a *ae* 1f. mistress
amīc-us 2m. friend

animum aduertō 3 I pay
attention

antiqu-us a um ancient
astuti-a *ae* 1f. astuteness,
(pl.) tricks

atque and
audiēs you (s.) will hear
auferam I shall take away
auferētis you (pl.) will
take away

Bacchus *Bacchid-is* 3f.

Bacchus (worshipper of
Bacchus, god of wine)

ballist-a *ae* 1f. catapult
bell-us a um lovely,
beautiful

bene good, fine

biclini-um 2n. dining-
couch (for two
persons)

bis twice, a second time
capiam I (shall) capture

captiēs you (s.) will take
cauēbit (he) will be wary

cauēs 2 I am wary

celer *acc* s. f. swift

celeres *nom* p. f. swift

celer *nom* s. f. swift

celer *acc* s. f. quickly

celer *acc* s. f. wax

Chrysos *us* 2m.

Chrysalus ('goldie')

cito quickly

cognōscet (he) will
recognise

compōnō 3 I devise, put
together

corbis *corb-is* 3m. or f.
basket

crēdet (+ dat.) he will
believe

cum (+ abl.) with

cūrābō I shall take care of
dabis you (s.) will give

dabit he will give
dabō I shall give

de (+ abl.) about

de (+ abl.) about

de (+ abl.) about

de (+ abl.) about

de (+ abl.) about

de (+ abl.) about

de (+ abl.) about

de (+ abl.) about

de (+ abl.) about

de (+ abl.) about

de (+ abl.) about

de (+ abl.) about

de (+ abl.) about

de (+ abl.) about

ducent-ī ae a 200
 dum while
 ece look'
 erit (it, there, she) will be
 erunt (they) will be
 etiam also
 etiamsi even if
 euax good!
 exurgo 3 I get up
 faciam I shall do
 faciemus we will run up
 faciēs you (s.) will do
 fatō 3 I deceive, trick
 foris for-is 3f. door
 grātās agēmus we will
 give thanks (to x: dat.)
 grūtās grūtāt-is 3f.
 seriousness
 habēbis you (s.) will have
 habēbitis you (pl.) will
 have
 habeo I shall have
 hercle by Hercules
 iam now already
 immō no; more precisely
 imperator imperat r is 3m
 general
 ingeni-um ī 2n.
 intelligence, brain
 inquit (he) says
 inspiciō 3, 4 I look in
 intendam I shall aim
 intrō inside
 invādam I shall assault,
 invade (in + acc.)
 ioc-us -ī 2m. joke
 ita uērō yes, indeed
 iterum again
 iubeō I shall order, give
 instructions
 legēt he (will) read
 lō-um ī 2n. thread
 litter-a ae 1f. letter (of
 alphabet)
 litter-ae ārum 1f. pl. letter
 loc-us ī 2m. place
 lun-a ae 1f. moon
 mālō I prefer

mālumus we prefer /
 would rather
 manum acc. s. f.) hand
 manū abl. s. f.) hand
 manus (nom. s. f.) hand
 manūs (nom. or acc. pl.
 f.) hands
 mānīs you (s.) prefer
 mānūtīs you (pl.) prefer
 mēcum with me
 mendāx mendā-is
 untruthful, lying
 miles mīlīt ī 3m. soldier
 Mnēsilocho-us ī 2m.
 Mnesilochus
 ('remembers the
 ambush')
 modo now
 Nicobul-us ī 2m.
 Nicobulus ('victorious
 in judgement')
 nesciō 4 I do not know
 nisi except
 nōli (s.) } don't (+ inf.)
 nōlite (pl.) }
 nolo I do not want
 refuse
 nōn uīs you (s.) do not
 want / refuse
 nōnne surely?
 noster nostra nostrum our
 nox noct-is 3f. night
 numm-us ī 2m. coin
 obligābō I shall tie up
 obligō I I tie up
 obsecrō I I beseech, beg
 obsignābō I shall seal
 obsignō I I seal
 offici-um ī 2n. duty, job
 oppid-um ī 2n. town
 per (+ acc.) through
 pergo 3 I continue go on
 Pistoclēr-us ī 2m.
 Pistoclerus ('trustworthy
 with property')
 plan-us a um smooth
 port-a ae 1f. gate
 possum I am able / can

post (+ acc.) after
 postea afterwards
 potero I shall be able
 poteris you (s.) will be
 able
 potes you (s.) are able
 potest (he) is able
 primō } first
 primum }
 prō (+ abl.) for
 prorsus certainly
 excellent
 prēpugnāci-um ī 2n.
 rampart
 quam than
 quantum (+ gen.) how
 much?
 quia because
 quōmodo how?
 rem (acc. s. f.) } the
 res (nom. s. f., nom. or } matter(s),
 acc. pl. f.) } things
 salūtō 1 I greet
 sapienti-a ae 1f. wisdom
 scribam I shall write
 scribēs you (s.) will write
 scribō 3 I write
 semel once
 sic thus
 sicut just as
 sign-um ī 2n. signal
 sōl sōl-is 3m. sun
 spērō 1 I hope
 stil-us ī 2m. stylus
 (writing implement for
 wax tablet)
 stultiti-a ae 1f. stupidity
 stult-us a um stupid
 sumptus (nom. s. m.)
 expense
 sumptūs (acc. pl. m.)
 expenses
 su-us a um his
 tabell-ae ārum 1f. pl.
 writing tablets
 tāl-is e such

turris turr-is 3f. tower
 uero indeed
 uincō 4 I come

uero indeed
 uincō 4 I come

ut-a ae 1f. way, road
 uictōri-a ae 1f. victory
 uincō 4 I come

Learning vocabulary for 2A

Nouns

amic-a ae 1f. mistress
 (pl.) tricks
 cēt-a ae 1f. wax
 lun-a ae 1f. moon
 tabell-ae ārum 1f. pl.

ut-a ae 1f. way, road
 money
 oppid-um ī 2n. town

stil-us ī 2m. stylus
 wax tablet
 sol sol-is 3m. sun

Adjectives

alter altera alterum one,
 another (of two; see
 Grammar 2B)

noster nostra nostrum our(s)
 uester uestra uestrum
 your(s) (pl.)

difficil-is e difficult
 mendāx mendāc-is lying,
 untruthful

Verbs

adiuō 1 I help
 obsecrō 1 I beseech, beg
 adscribō 3 I write in
 addition

scribō 3 scrips- script-
 uincō 4 uīnx- uīnet- I bind
 capiō 3, 4 cēp- capt- I take,
 capture

dēcipiō 3, 4 I deceive
 bring to

Others

ac (atque) and
 bene good! fine! (well,
 thoroughly, rightly)

cum (+ abl.) (in company)
 with
 dē (+ abl.) about,
 concerning

dum while
 iterum again
 modo now

New forms: nouns

man-us ūs 4f. hand
 sumpt-us ūs 4m. expense(s)

New forms: adjectives

celer celeris celere swift

New forms: verbs

unwilling

unwilling

unwilling

Grammar and exercises for 2A

50 Future indicative active 'I shall —' (all conjugations)

	1	2	3
	'I shall love'	'I shall have'	'I shall say'
1st s.	amā-b-ō	habē-b-ō	dīc-a-m
2nd s.	amā-bi-s	habē-bi-s	dīc-ē-s
3rd s.	amā-bi-t	habē-bi-t	dīc-e-t
1st pl.	amā-bi-mus	habē-bi-mus	dīc-ē-mus
2nd pl.	amā-bi-tis	habē-bi-tis	dīc-ē-tis
3rd pl.	amā-bu-nt	habē-bu-nt	dīc-e-nt
	4	3/4	
	'I shall hear'	'I shall capture'	
1st s.	aūdi-a-m	cāpi-a-m	
2nd s.	aūdi-ē-s	cāpi-ē-s	
3rd s.	aūdi-e-t	cāpi-e-t	
1st pl.	aūdi-ē-mus	cāpi-ē-mus	
2nd pl.	aūdi-ē-tis	cāpi-ē-tis	
3rd pl.	aūdi-e-nt	cāpi-e-nt	

Notes

- 1 The following rhythmic chant may help you to memorise future forms '-bō -bis -bit in 1 and 2, and -am -ēs -et in 3 and 4'.
- 2 Note that in 1st and 2nd conj., the endings -bō -bis -bit etc. follow the pattern of 3rd conj. present, i.e. dūc-ō -is -it etc. In 3rd and 4th conj. the new 1st s. ending in -am needs to be learned.

51 Irregular futures: *sum* → *erō*; *eō* → *ibō*

1st s.	er-ō 'I shall be' etc.	ī-b-ō 'I shall go' etc.
2nd s.	er-i-s	ī-bi-s
3rd s.	er-i-t	ī-bi-t
1st pl.	ēr-i-mus	ī-bi-mus
2nd pl.	er-i-tis	ī-bi-tis
3rd pl.	er-a-nt	ī-bu-nt

Notes

- 1 The future of *sum* was originally *es-ō*. The *s* became *r* between vowels, hence *erō*.
- 2 *ferō* is regular in the future — *fer-am -ēs -et* etc.

Exercises

- 1 Translate these futures, change *s.* to *pl.* and vice versa, and say to what conjugation each verb belongs: cēlābunt, inueniet, amittēs, habēbimus, coquent, iubēbit, uerberābis, crēdet, capiētis, scribam, facient, audiētis, (optional: obsecrābunt, dormiet, fugiēs, habitābitis, clāmābit, timēbis, uidēbimus, poscēmus, prōmittam, ostendent, uexābō, tacēbitis, amābunt).
- 2 Give the corresponding future form of each of these presents, then translate: crēdunt, salūtat, scribit, fers, estis, it, rogō, cūrant, (optional: uincīs, capiō, adfertis, sunt, adiuuant, dēcipimus, scītis, possidēs, exeō, portō, tangunt, reddis, irrīdēmus, dat).
- 3 Form and translate 3rd s. and 3rd pl. of the future of the following verbs: dō, clāmō, maneō, taceō, ducō, poscō, dormiō, uinciō, capiō, fugiō, sum, redeō, (optional: obsecrō, uocō, moneō, habeō, prōmittō, dīcō, sciō, inueniō, dēcipiō, faciō).
- 4 Translate into Latin: you (*s.*) will hear; they will call; I shall make; we will speak; you (*pl.*) will be silent; he will lead; we will love; (optional: they will deceive; you (*s.*) will fear; I shall keep; you (*pl.*) will cook; she will see).
- 5 Pick out the futures in this list and translate: ferunt, dūcent, uident, uerberābō, dīcis, possidēs, dūcēs, amābunt, iubētis, facimus, fugiēmus, timēmus, mittēs, manēs, tacēs, dēcipiēs.

52 Three irregular verbs: *possum*, *nōlō*, *mālō*

Present indicative

	<i>possum</i> 'I can', 'I am able'	<i>nōlō</i> 'I am unwilling', 'I do not want', 'I refuse'	<i>mālō</i> 'I prefer'
1st s.	pōs sum	nol-ō	mal-ō
2nd s.	pot-es	nōn uis	mā uis
3rd s.	pōt-est	nōn uult	mā uult

1st pl.	pōs-sumus	nol-u-mus	mal-u-mus
2nd pl.	pot-estis	nōn uultis	mal-uitis
3rd pl.	pōs-sunt	nōl-u-nt	mal-unt
Infinitive	pōs-sc	nōl-l-e	mal-l-e

Notes

- 1 *possum* is a combination of the stem *pot-* meaning 'power', 'capacity' + *sum*. Where *t* and *s* meet, the result is *-ss* e.g. *potsum* → *possum*.
- 2 *nōlō*, *mālō* are based on *uolō*. *nōlō* is a combination of *ne* + *uolō*. *mālō* is a combination of *magis* (*ma-*) 'more' + *uolō* 'I want (to do x) more (than y)'.
- 3 All three verbs control an infinitive, as they do in English, e.g. 'I am unwilling to', 'I am able to', 'I prefer to'. Note that *mālō* often controls two infinitives, separated by *quam* 'than', e.g. *mālō amāre quam pugnāre* 'I prefer to have love affairs rather than to fight'. The construction often has acc. nouns rather than infinitives.
- 4 The futures of *nōlō*, *mālō*, *uolō* are quite regular – note that *nōlam*, *mālam*, *mālēs* are not actually found; the future of *possum* is again a combination of *pot* + *sum*:

Future indicative

1st s.	pōterō	uol-a-m	(nōl-a-m)	(māl-a-m)
2nd s.	pōt-eris	uol-e-s	nōl-e-s	māl-e-s
3rd s.	pōt-erit	uol-e-t	nōl-e-t	māl-e-t
1st pl.	pot-erimus	uol-ē-mus	nōl-ē-mus	māl-ē-mus
2nd pl.	pot-eritis	uol-ē-tis	nōl-ē-tis	māl-ē-tis
3rd pl.	pōt-erunt	uol-e-nt	nōl-e-nt	māl-e-nt

Exercises

- 1 Translate into Latin: you (s.) wish; we prefer; they refuse; he can; we will prefer; you (pl.) do not wish; you (s.) are able; they will refuse; (optional: he will wish; they can; we will be able; you (s.) prefer; we can; I shall be able).
- 2 Translate and convert presents into futures, futures into presents: est, possunt, uoles, mālent, nōn uis, erimus, nōlumus, (optional: erunt, uult, poterit, nōlet, māuultis, uis, potes).

53 Adjectives in -er: *noster*, *uester*; *celer*; *acer*1st/2nd decl. adjectives: *noster*, *uester*

noster 'our(s)' and *uester* 'your(s)' decline like *pulcher pulchr-a um* (27). The difference between *uester* and *tuus* is that *uester* means 'your(s)' when 'you' are more than one person (cf. 20).

3rd decl. adjectives ending in -er

(e.g. *celer celer-is celer-e* 'swift', 'fast')

	s.			pl.	
	m.	f.	n.	m./f.	n.
nom.	cēler	cēler-is	cēler-e	cēler-es	cēler-ia
acc.	cēler-em	cēler-em	cēler-e	cēler-is(-ēs)	cēler-ia
gen.		← cēler-is →		← celer-um →	
dat.		← cēler-ī →		← cēler-ibus →	
abl.		← cēler-ī →		← cēler-ibus →	

Notes

- 1 3rd decl. adjectives ending in -er (do not confuse with 2nd decl. adjectives like *miser*, *pulcher*) decline virtually identically with *omnis*, but do show a difference between the nom. s. m. (*celer*) and f. (*celeris*). They are i-stems (cf. 12).
- 2 Note that, while *celer* keeps the -er throughout the declension (cf. *miser* of the 1/2nd declension), some -er adjectives drop the 'e' (cf. *pulcher* of the 1/2nd declension), e.g. *acer*.

acer acris acre 'keen', 'sharp'

	s.			pl.	
	m.	f.	n.	m./f.	n.
nom.	ācer	ācr-is	ācr-e	ācr-ēs	ācr-ia
acc.	ācr-em	ācr-em	ācr-e	ācr-is(-ēs)	ācr-ia
gen.		← ācr-is →		← ācr-um →	
dat.		← ācr-ī →		← ācr-ibus →	
abl.		← ācr-ī →		← ācr-ibus →	

54 Cardinal numerals 1-10, 100-1,000

		s		
		m.	f.	n.
1	I	nom. un-us	ŭn-a	ŭn-um
		acc. ŭn-um	ŭn-am	ŭn-um
		gen.	← ŭn-ŭs →	
		dat.	← ŭn-ī →	
		abl. ŭn-ō	ŭn-ā	ŭn-ō
		pl.		
		ŭn-ī	ŭn-ae	ŭn-a like pl. of multus
2	II	nom. dú-o	dú-ac	dú-o
		acc. dú-ōs (dú-o)	dú-ās	dú-o
		gen. du-ōrum	du-ārum	du-ōrum
		dat./abl. du-ōbus	du-ābus	du-ōbus
		m./f.	n.	
3	III	nom. tr-ēs	tr-ía	
		acc. tr-ēs (tr-īs)	tr-ía	
		gen.	← tr-ium →	
		dat.	← tr-ibus →	
		abl.	← tr-ibus →	
4	IV/IIII	quattuor		
5	V	quīnque		
6	VI	sex		
7	VII	septem		
8	VIII	octō		
9	IX/VIII	nóuem		
10	X	décem		
100	C	céntum		
200	CC	ducént-ī ae a (like pl. of multus)		
300	CCC	trecént-ī ae a		
400	CD	quadríngént-ī ae a		
500	D	quīngént-ī ae a		
1,000	M	mille (undecl. adj.), pl. mīlia gen. milium dat. abl. milibus (see Note)		

Note

Normally, *mille* is used as an adjective and *mīlia* as a noun, e.g.

mille milites = one thousand soldiers

duo mīlia militum = two thousand(s) (of) soldiers

tria mīlia militum = three thousand(s) (of) soldiers etc.

55 4th declension nouns: *manus* *man-ūs* 4f. 'hand'

	s.	pl.
nom.	mānu-s	mānū-s
acc.	mānu-m	mānū-s
gen.	mānū-s	mānu-um
dat.	mānu-ī	māni-bus
abl.	mānū	māni-bus

Notes

- 1 Most 4th decl. nouns are m. (*manus* is one of the few exceptions).
- 2 It is obviously very easy to confuse these with 2nd decl. nouns like, e.g., *thesaurus*, so it is vital to learn the nom. and gen. s. together.
- 3 Care is needed with the *-ūs* ending, which might be gen. s., nom. or acc. pl. Note that the form *manus* can only be nom. s.

56 4th declension noun (irregular): *domus* 'house' 4f.

	s.	pl.
nom.	dōmu-s	dōmū-s
acc.	dōmu-m	dōmū-s or dōmō-s
gen.	dōmū-s or dom-ī	dom-ōrum (dōmu-um)
dat.	dōmu-ī or dōm-ō	dōm-ibus
abl.	dōm-ō	dōm-ibus

Notes

- 1 See 30 above for *domum*, *domī* and *domō* meanings.
- 2 *domus* has a mixture of 2nd declension forms in with the 4th.

Exercises

- 1 Give the Latin for beautiful hand, large hand, my hand; swift hand. Note decline noun and adjective together in all cases, s. and pl.
- 2 Pick out datives and ablatives from this list (note where the form is ambiguous): *uia*, *amicae*, *mendāces*, *oppida*, *lunam*, *nocte*, *nummōs*, *tabellas*, *manuī*, *celeri*, *sumptuum*, *officio* *facili*, *scelere* *audaci*, *stilos* *bonos*, *soli*, *nummīs* *ducentīs*, *astūtiae* *tuae*, *cēram* *meam*, *sumptui* *magnō*.

57 3rd declension monosyllables

If a 3rd decl. noun is a monosyllable with two consonants at the end of the stem, gen. pl. is in -ium, e.g.

nox noct-is, gen. pl. noctium

dōs dōt-is, gen. pl. dōtum

Cf. the normal rule for consonant-stems at 11. Nouns like *nox* are in fact *i*-stem.

Exercises

1 Translate these sentences:

- nummōs senex noster ducentōs in manum tibi hodiē dabit.
- quid uīs mē facere? mālō enim adiuuāre quam nīl facere
- sī senex mendācem mē habēbit, ego astūtiās magnās facere uolam.
- ego meum officium faciam, uōs uestrum facere mālō.
- amīcīs uestrīs, sī senī aurum auferre poterō, nummōs ducentōs dare poteritis.
- dā mihi manum tuam, tē obsecrō; ego tibi meam dabō.
- sī fēminae uīs crēdere, in aquā celerī scribere uīs.
- aurum sī senī auferre poteris, Chrȳsale, tē seruū magnā astūtīā habēbō.
- dum tacet nox, fūrēs facinora facere mala quam dormīre mālunt.
- cēram, tabellās, stilum aufer mihi: hodiē scribere nōlō.

2 Translate these sentences:

- ūsus magister est optimus. (Cicero)
- sed quis custōdiet ipsōs custōdēs? (Juvenal)
- ācta deōs numquam mortālia fallunt. (Ovid)
- īrācundia leōnēs adiuuat, pauor ceruōs, accipitrem impetus, columbam fuga. (Seneca)
- potest ex casā uir magnus exīre, potest ex defōrmi humilique corpusculō fōrmōsus animus et magnus (Seneca)
- beātus esse sine uirtūte nēmo potest. (Cicero)
- sine imperiō nec domus ūlla nec cīuitās stāre potest. (Cicero)

exper-i-us 4m. experience
magister magistr-i 2m.
teacher

optim-us a um best

custodiō 4 I guard

acc. pl. m.)

themselves

custōd-is 3m. guard

deed

mortāl-is e of human

beings

falsū 3 I deceive, escape

the notice of

iracundi-a ae 1f. rage

leō leōn-is 3m. lion

pauor pauor-is 3m. panic,

fear

ceru-us i 2m. stag

accipiter accipitr-is 3m.

hawk

impet-us ūs 4m.

vehemence; attack

columb-a ae 1f. dove

fug-a ae 1f. flight

cas-a ae 1f. cottage, hovel

defōrm-is e ugly,

misshapen

humil-is e humble, lowly

corpuscul-um i 2n. little

body

fōrmōs-us a um beautiful

beāt-us a um happy,

blessed

nemo (nom) no one

imperi-um i 2n. control,

authority

uill-us a um any

cīuitās cīuitāt-is 3f. state

Reading

Infinitives may add a simple idea to verbs like *possum*, *uolō*, *nōlō*, *mālō* etc.; e.g. *uidēre possum* = I can see; *īre uolō* = I want to go. They may also introduce more complex ideas, since the infinitive may take its own object or prepositional phrase, e.g. *sōlem iterum uidēre uolō* = I want to see the sun again; *in aedīs Bacchidum inīre possum* = I can go into the house of the Bacchides. The limits of the infinitive phrase are marked by the underlining. In the case of *uolō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, *iubeō*, the verb itself may also have an object, which becomes attached to the infinitive phrase: e.g. *tē (obj.) sōlem iterum uidēre uolō* = I want you (obj.) to see the sun again. *mālō* is more complex still, since it often outlines a preference between two things, which are compared by *quam* = 'than', e.g. *lūnam uidēre quam sōlem mālō* = I prefer to see the moon to seeing the sun.

1 In the following sentences, translate in word-order and make explicit the boundaries of the infinitive phrase. Mark which word in the phrase is the object of the introductory verb.

- hominem bonum quam malum filiam meam domum dūcere mālō.
- seruum hominem esse magnā audāciā nōlō.
- tē tuum officium, mē facere meum dominus iubet.
- dominōs uerberāre seruōs audācīs cīuēs mālunt.
- uxōrēs uirōs amāre iubeō.

2 Now read out the sentences in Exercise 1 in Latin, phrasing so as to avoid any possible ambiguities. How would you read sentence (e) in response to these two questions?

- What do you tell husbands to do?
- What do you tell wives to do?

3 Here are some disembodied infinitive phrases. Translate in word-order, then add a part of uolō, nōlō, mālō, iubeō or possum to complete the sense. Translate into correct English. Finally, read out the Latin correctly phrased

- tē mihi crēdere
- seruum ad senem uiam muenire alteram
- nummōs ducentōs capere quam nīl habēre
- amicam mē amāre meam
- stilōs et cēram et tabellās tē adferre
- hominēs ex oppidō exire audācīs
- Chr̄ysalum iterum patrem dēcipere meum
- seruum unguentum, corōnās seruam adferre mihi
- aurum Larī meō quam seruō audācī crēdere
- amicīs auferre audācibus nummōs tē ducentōs

4 In English, the following is normal: 'I want to have the gold. Give it to me' But in Latin this would be: aurum habēre uolō. dā mihi

Say in each of the following pairs of sentences which pronoun English inserts and Latin omits

- aurum tibi crēdō, ō Lar. adseruā'
- tē dē filiā timēre nōlō, senex. adseruābō
- cēram et tabellās adferō. cape
- ego lūnam uidēre possum. uidēsne tū
- hodiē officium uōbīs difficile dābō. cūrāte

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Read carefully this passage, translating in the order of the words and defining the function of each word and phrase and anticipating the direction of the sense. Then translate into correct English. Finally, read aloud the passage, phrasing correctly, thinking out the meaning as you read. Use the running vocabulary of 2A

est Chr̄ysalus, seruus audāx Nicobūlī, homo magno ingenio, astūtia summā. per (through) Chr̄ysalum uult Mnēsilochns senem iterum decipere. officium difficile habet Chr̄ysalus. neque Chr̄ysalō senex neque filia credit sed Chr̄ysalus cōsiliū capit audāx in aedis Pistoclērum Mnēsilochn amicum, mittit Pistoclērum ceram, tabellās, stilum, linum adferre iubet. Chr̄ysalus, ubi redit amīcas, Mnēsilochn litteras ad patrem scribere iubet. ita patri scribit filius probus 'Chr̄ysalus malus est. nūpater hodiē enim ad te adibit et in te ballistam intendet magnam. nam tē oppidum habet, antiquum et aurī plēnum. sī turrim dēlēbit tuam et

prōpugnācula tua, per portam in oppidum tē statim inuādet. tum aurum tuum in corribus ex oppidō mē auferre iubēbit et meae dare amīcae. tē cauēre, pater mī, iubeō. sūmptus enim magnus erit, sī tē iterum dēcipiet ualē'

English-Latin

Translate the Latin sentences into English. Then translate the English sentences into Latin using the pattern of the Latin ones to help you arrange the word-order correctly

- te lham meam statim domum dūcere iubeō
Mnesilochus will want Chrysalus to deceive the poor old man again
- pauperis hominis uirtutem quam diuitis audāciam semper mālō
He will always prefer the tricks of a bold slave to the boldness of a living mistress
- Nicobūlus, uir nūllā astūtiā, aurum seruō audācī numquam auferre poterit
Chrysalus, a man of great astuteness, will easily be able to remove the old man's two hundred coins
- amīcae sūmptus semper magnus est
The hand of a thief is always swift
- dīuitēs pauperibus nummōs dant nūllōs
The old men will give the young men a lot of money.
- erit mihi magnus sūmptus, quod uxōrem habeō diuitem.
The young men will have large expenses, because they have pretty mistresses

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building

dē + abl. = 'about', 'concerning', 'down from'.

dē as a prefix to verbs = 'away', 'down', e.g. dēscendō 'I go down' (see above p. 83), cf. spērō 'I hope', dēspērō 'I lose hope'. Sometimes it intensifies the word, e.g. capiō 'I catch', dēcipiō 'I catch out' (hence 'deceive').

If the simple verb has a short *ā* or *ē* as its first vowel, e.g. *cāpiō*, *sēdeō* ('sit'), that vowel will usually change to an *i* after a prefix, e.g.:

cāpiō *dēcipiō*

sēdeō *obsideō*

fāciō *perficiō*

ob as a prefix means 'in front of', 'against' e.g. *sedeō* = 'sit', *obsideō* = 'sit in front of', 'besiege' (cf. obsession); *ob* + *ferō* = *offerō* 'put in someone's path', 'offer' (note *b* → *f* before *f*); *ob* + *eō* = *obeō* 'come face to face with', 'meet'. Romans said one came 'face to face' with death (*mortem obeō* – hence 'obituary'). Verbs compounded with *ob* often take the dative.

Word exercise

Give the meaning and Latin connection of: lunatic, style, official, adjutant (*adiuuō*), nocturnal, solar, manual, mendacious, credible, scribble, a posse, beneficial, reiterate, sumptuary (laws).

Everyday Latin

A *possum* is the trade-name of an electronic typewriter for quadriplegics.

If you go *via* somewhere, what does it mean?

What is one's *alter ego*?

Word study

alter

alter means 'one, or the other, of two people'; so *alterō* 'I change', so 'alter'. It is from this stem that we get 'adultery', which is nothing to do with 'adult' (the word 'adult' derives from *adultus*, past participle of *adolēscō* 'I grow up'. An 'adolescent' is 'one growing up', and 'adult' is 'one having grown up') 'Adultery' derives from *ad* + *alterō*, i.e. moving from one state to another, so changing a lot, so corrupting.

possum

As we saw, this word is a combination of *pot* + *sum*. The *pot*-root means 'ability', 'power', so *possum* means 'I am able', 'I can', the infinitive of which is *posse*, 'to be able'. Hence 'possibility', 'possible', 'impossible' etc.

A sheriff's posse derives from mediaeval Latin *posse comitatūs* 'the power of the county', i.e. a force with legal authority. The *pot*-root yields Latin *potentia* 'power', hence 'potential', 'potency' and the negative 'impotence'. With *omni*- 'all', we have 'omnipotence'.

sincere

It is a good story, but not true, that 'sincere' (Latin *sincērus*) derives from *sine* 'without' + *cēra* 'wax'. The false derivation springs from the Roman practice of mending broken statuary with wax and selling it off as if complete. In the heat of the day, however. . . Another 'folk' etymology derived the word from honey 'without wax', i.e. clean, pure, simple. Its true origin is uncertain.

Real Latin

Martial

nōn amo tē, Sabidī, nec possum dīcere quārē.

hoc tantum possum dīcere, nōn amo tē. (1.32)

Sabidī = O Sabidius

hoc tantum this only

Cf. the famous version of Thomas Brown (1663–1704):

I do not love thee, Dr Fell.

The reason why I cannot tell.

But this I know and know full well.

I do not love thee, Dr Fell.

Veientāna mihī miscēs, ubi Massica pōtās:

olfacere haec mālō pōcula, quam bibere. (3.49)

Veientāna (obj.) (name of
cheap wine)

mihī for me

miscēō 2 I mix

Massica (obj.) Massic
(name of fine wine)

pōtō 1 I drink

olfaciō 3/4 I smell

haec pōcula (obj.) these
drinks (i.e. the Massica)

quam than

bibō 3 I drink

Vulgate

God speaks to Moses in a cloud: 'nōn poteris uidēre faciem meam: nōn enim uidēbit mē homo et uiuet.' (Exodus 33.20)

faciem (acc. s. f.) face

uiuō 3 live

'nōn occidēs ... nōn furtum faciēs ... nōn concupiscēs domum proximī tuī; nec dēsiderābis uxōrem eius, nōn seruum, nōn ancillam, nōn bouem, nōn asinum.' (Exodus 20.13.)

<i>occidō</i> 3 I kill	<i>proxim-us</i> ī 2m. neighbour	<i>ancill-a</i> ae 1f. maidservant
<i>furi-um</i> ī 2n. theft	<i>dēsiderō</i> 1 I long for	<i>bōs bou-is</i> 3m. m. ox
<i>concupiscō</i> 3 I desire	<i>eius</i> his	<i>asin-us</i> ī 2m. ass

et ego uōbīs dīcō . . . 'quaerite et inueniētis'. (Luke 11.9)

quaerō 3 I seek

Mottoes

omnia superat virtūs. (Gardiner)

omnia vincit amor. (Bruce, Rogers)

omnia vincit labor. (Cook)

omnia vincit vērītās. (Eaton, Mann, Naish, Nash)

omnia bona bonīs. (Wenman)

<i>superō</i> 1 I overcome	<i>labor labōr-is</i> 3m. work	<i>vērītās vērītāt-is</i> 3f. truth
<i>vincō</i> 3 I conquer		

Section 2B

Running vocabulary for 2B

a! ah!	<i>Bellerophōn</i> Bellerophon-is 3m. Bellerophon (who was given a letter to bear ordering his own death)	<i>cōnāris</i> you (s.) try
<i>abducō</i> 3 I lead away	<i>caput caput-is</i> 3n. source (scelerum caput = scoundrel)	<i>conuīui-um</i> ī 2n. dinner-party
<i>accipio</i> 3/4 I receive, take	<i>caueō</i> 2 I am wary	<i>diligō</i> 3 I love
<i>accūsō</i> 1 I accuse	<i>cicer cicer-is</i> 3n. chick-pea	<i>domō</i> from home
<i>adgredior</i> I am going up to (ad + acc.)	<i>cognōscō</i> 3 I get to know, examine	<i>ecce</i> look!
<i>adgreditur</i> (he) goes up to (ad + acc.)	<i>column-a</i> ae 1f. column	<i>ēgreditur</i> (he) comes/goes out
<i>adulēscēns adulēscēt-is</i> 3m. young man		<i>ēgrediuntur</i> (they) come out
<i>agō</i> 3 I do		<i>eho</i> ha!
<i>annōn</i> or not (see <i>utrum</i>)		<i>etiam</i> even
at but		<i>euge</i> hurrah!

fiō I happen (fit 3rd s)
fortiter vigorously
frict-us a um roasted
fung-us ī 2m. mushroom
haud not
iam presently
id quod that which, what
immō more precisely
impingō 3 I thrust (x acc forward (sc. 'against him')

in m-īs I am crazy
in p-īs 3/4 I look in
interea meanwhile
interus inside
irascor I am getting angry
irāt-us a um angry
lect-us ī 2m. couch
legō 3 I read
liberō 1 I free
libertās libertāt-is 3f. freedom
litter-ae ārum 1f. pl. letter
loquere speak! (s.)
loqueris you (s.) speak of, you say
loquī to talk
loquitur (he) speaks
loquor I am speaking, I say
loquuntur (they) say
lumbric-us ī 2m. worm
mē esse 'myself to be', 'that I am'
mēcum with/to myself
mentīrī (to) lie
minārī (to) threaten (+ dat.)

mināris you (s.) are threatening (+ dat)
minor I am threatening (+ dat)
modo just
moritur (he) dies
mōs mor-is 3m. way
habitus (pl.) character
mox soon
neccesse est it is necessary
neg-t-um ī 2n. business
nesciō 4 I do not know
nesci-us a um forgetful of (+ gen)
nōlī don't (s.) (+ inf.)
nūntiō 1 I report
oblīuisceris you (s.) forget
oblīuiscor I forget
obsignāt-us a um sealed
opinor I think
opus oper-is 3n. job, work, task
perficiō 3/4 I finish, complete, carry out
pergō 3 I go on, go ahead
persequor I pursue
petō 3 I go after, seek
plus more (+ gen)
polliceor I promise
precārī (to) beg
precor I beg
prōgreditur (he) is coming / comes forward
prope nearby
propter (+ acc.) because of
pugn-us ī 2m. fist
pūtid-us a um rotten

quantī, see *tantī*
quem he whom
quia because
recordāris you (s.) remember
recordor I remember
rem (acc. s. f.) the matter
rerum (gen. pl. f.) (of) things
res (nom. s. f.) the matter
rēs (nom., acc. pl. f.) things
respondeō 2 I reply
saeu-us a um wild, angry
sapientia ae 1f. wisdom
sceler-us a um criminal
sequere follow! (s.)
sequimini follow! (pl.)
sequitur (he) follows
sequor I follow
sic thus
sign-um ī 2n. seal, mark
spectō 1 I look at
stult-us a um stupid
tam so
tam . . . quam as . . . as
tantī . . . quantī worth as much . . . as
tranquill-us a um calm
trāsenn-a ae 1f. trap
turd-us ī 2m. thrush
uerb-um ī 2n. word
uetustissim-us a um very old
utrum . . . annon do . . . or not? (double question)

Learning vocabulary for 2B

Nouns

litter-ae ārum 1f. pl. letter
sapientia ae 1f. wisdom

lect-us ī 2m. couch, bed
uerb-um ī 2n. word

opus oper-is 3n. job, work, task

Adjectives

nesci-us a um ignorant of
(+ gen.)

saeu-us a um wild, angry

stult-us a um stupid

Verbs

caueō 2 I am wary

respondeō 2 I reply

agō 3 ēg- āct- I do, act

cognōscō 3 cognōu- cognit- I
get to know, examine

diligō 3 I love

legō 3 I read

pergō 3 I go on, go ahead,
continue

nesciō 4 I do not know

inspicō 3/4 inspex- inspect-
I look into; inspect,
examine

perficiō 3/4 perfēc- perfect- I
finish, complete; carry
out

Others

at but (often introduces a
supposed objection)

domō from the home (cf.
domī, domum)

ecce look!

intrō (to) inside

mēcum with/to myself
(= *mē* abl., *cum* with)

mox soon

quia because

sic thus, in this way, so
tam so

New forms: nouns

caput *capit-is* 3n. head;
source

rēs *re-ī* 5f. thing, matter,
business, property,
affair

diēs *diē-ī* 5m. or f. day

Verbs

minor 1 dep. I threaten
(+ dat.)

opinor 1 dep. I think

precor 1 dep. I beg, pray

recordor 1 dep. I
remember

polliceor 2 dep. I promise

loquor 3 dep. *locūt-* I talk,
speak, say

obliuiscor 3 dep. I forget

sequor 3 dep. *secūt-* I
follow

mentior 4 dep. I lie

adgredior 3/4 dep. *adgress-*
I approach

ēgredior 3/4 *ēgress-* I go/
come out

prōgredior 3/4 *prōgress-*
I advance

Grammar and exercises for section 2B**58 Present deponent (all conjugations): indicative, imperative, infinitive**

	1	2	3
	<i>minor</i> 'I threaten'	<i>polliceor</i> 'I promise'	<i>loquor</i> 'I speak'
Indicative			
1st s.	<i>min-o-r</i>	<i>pollice-o-r</i>	<i>loqu-o-r</i>
2nd s.	<i>mina-ris</i> (-re)	<i>pollicē-ris</i> (-re)	<i>loqu-e-ris</i> (-re)
3rd s.	<i>minā-tur</i>	<i>pollicē-tur</i>	<i>loqu-i-tur</i>

1st pl. *minā-mur*

2nd pl. *minā-mini*

3rd pl. *minā-ntur*

pollicē-mur

pollicē-mini

pollicē-ntur

loqu-i-mur

loqu-i-mini

loqu-u-ntur

Imperative

2nd s. *minā-re*

2nd pl. *minā-mini*

Infinitive *minā-rī*

pollice-re

pollicē-mini

pollicē-rī

loqu-e-re

loqu-i-mini

loqu-i

4

3/4

Indicative *mentior* 'I lie'

1st s. *mēnti-o-r*

2nd s. *mēnti-ris* (-re)

3rd s. *mēnti-tur*

1st pl. *mēnti-mur*

2nd pl. *mēnti-mini*

3rd pl. *mēnti-ū-ntur*

prōgredior 'I advance'

prōgrēdi-o-r

prōgrēd-e-ris (-re)

prōgrēdi-tur

prōgrēdi-mur

prōgrēdi-mini

prōgrēdi-ū-ntur

Imperative

2nd s. *mēnti-re*

2nd pl. *mēnti-mini*

Infinitive *mēnti-rī*

prōgrēd-e-re

prōgrēdi-mini

prōgrēd-i

Notes

- 1 So far you have only met verbs in their 'active' forms. But there is another class of verb, called 'deponent'. It is this class you are now meeting for the first time. Deponents are identified by the different personal endings they take.
- 2 The personal endings of active verbs are, as we know, -ō, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt. The personal endings of deponent verbs are -r, -ris (-re), -tur, -mur, -mini, -ntur. These new personal endings are of the highest importance as they are more widely used than just with deponents (as you will see). Consequently, if you learn them now, you will be saving yourself a great deal of learning in the future.
- 3 Given the new personal endings, deponent verbs are constructed exactly as active verbs are, i.e. stem with its key vowel + personal endings. E.g.

1st conj.: *mina-* + endings (NB *minor* cf. *amō*).

2nd conj.: *pollice-* + endings.

3rd conj.: *loqu-* + -i- + endings. (NB *loquor* cf. *dīcō*; *loquuntur* cf.

dicunt. The really difficult one here is the 2nd s.: *loqueris* cf. *dicis*. Observe the pattern of short vowels.)

4th conj.: *menti-* + endings.

3rd/4th conj.: *prōgredi-* + endings, except for 2nd s., where the -i- of the stem alters to -e- (as in 3rd conj.). Note that the -i- remains short (contrast 4th conj. *mentīris*, *mentītur* etc.).

- 4 Imperatives present a problem, in that the s. and pl. imperatives can be identical in form with the indicatives. For example, *mināminī* may mean 'you threaten' or 'threaten!' (pl.), and *mināre* could mean 'you threaten' or 'threaten!' (s.). The context will tell you which is right.
- 5 Do not confuse s. deponent forms in -āre, -ere, -ēre, and -īre with active infinitives like *amāre* etc.
- 6 The most difficult infinitive is the 3rd and 3rd/4th conj. infinitive, which ends in plain -ī, e.g. *loquī-ī*, *prōgredī-ī*. All the rest end in stem (+ key vowel) + -rī.

Exercises

- 1 Translate and convert s. to pl. and vice-versa: *precātur*, *mentīris*, *pollicēmur*, *sequuntur*, *minaris*, *loquimini*, *mentior*, *opināre*, *prōgredimini*, *loqueris*, *pollicēre*, *mināmur*, (optional: *recordor*, *ēgreditur*, *oblīuiscuntur*, *sequeris*, *precare*, *opināmur*, *adgredieris*, *loquitur*, *mentiuntur*, *prōgrediuntur*, *mināmur*).
- 2 Give the Latin for: we threaten; he promises; they forget; you (pl.) remember; you (s.) speak; I am following; advance! (s.), beg! (s.), talk! (pl.), promise! (s.), (optional: we are thinking, they advance, he comes out, she threatens, remember! (pl.), we are lying, they speak, you (pl.) promise; talk! (s.); you (s.) follow).
- 3 Say whether each of the following is an infinitive or an imperative and translate: *amāre*, *mināre*, *pollicēre*, *sequere*, *uocāre*, *habēre*, *loquī*, *audī*, *inuenīre*, *prōgredī*, *dormī*, *mentīrī*, *precāre*, *opinārī*, *inuenī*, *dūcere*, *loquere*, *inīre*, *iubēre*, *prōgredere*.
- 4 Give the meaning, infinitive and s. imperative of the following verbs: *habēō*, *cūrō*, *minor*, *loquor*, *audio*, *dūcō*, *mittō*, *precor*, *fugiō*, *crēdō*. (optional: *opior*, *prōgredior*, *moneō*, *sequor*, *maneō*, *polliceor*).

59 *nōlī* + infinitive

nōlī (pl. *nōlīte*), the imperative of *nōlō*, means in Latin 'don't!', and is followed by the infinitive (lit. 'do not wish to!', 'refuse to!'). E.g. *nōlī/nōlīte clāmāre* 'don't shout!', *nōlī/nōlīte loquī* 'don't speak!'

Exercise

Translate into Latin: don't follow (s.); don't (pl.) threaten me; don't (s.) be stupid (m.); don't (pl.) send the letter; don't (s.) hide the pot; don't (pl.) lead the slaves; (optional: don't (s.) advance; don't (pl.) mention; don't (s.) do the business today; don't (pl.) carry the garlands).

60 5th decl. nouns: *rēs* *rē-ī* 5f. 'thing', 'matter', 'business', 'affair'

	s.	pl.
nom.	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rē-s</i>
acc.	<i>rē-m</i>	<i>rē-s</i>
gen.	<i>rē-i</i>	<i>rē-rum</i>
dat.	<i>rē-i</i>	<i>rē-bus</i>
abl.	<i>rē</i>	<i>rē-bus</i>

NB. Most 5th decl. nouns are f. But *diēs* 'day' is normally m. (it is f. when it denotes a special day).

Exercise

Decline in full: *omnis rēs*; *pulcher diēs*; *mea rēs*; *trīstis diēs*

61 3rd decl. n. noun: *caput* *capit-is* 'head'

	s.	pl.
nom.	<i>cāput</i>	<i>cāpit-a</i>
acc.	<i>cāput</i>	<i>cāpit-a</i>
gen.	<i>capit-is</i>	<i>cāpit-um</i>
dat.	<i>cāpit-ī</i>	<i>capit-ibus</i>
abl.	<i>cāpit-e</i>	<i>capit-ibus</i>

NB. Given the gen. s. *capit-is*, this noun follows the normal pattern of 3rd decl. n. nouns like e.g. *nōmen* 26.

- 62 Special 1st/2nd decl. adjectives *nūll-us a um* 'no(ne)', 'not any'; *alter alter-a um* 'one' (of two), 'the one . . . the other'

	s.			pl		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	nūll-us	null-a	nūll-um	nūll-ī	nūll-ae	null-a
acc.	nūll-um	nūll-am	nūll-um	nūll-ōs	nūll-ās	nūll-a
gen.	← nūll-īus →			nūll-ōrum	nūll-ārum	nūll-ārum
dat.	← nūll-ī →			← nūll-īs →		
abl.	nūll-ō	nūll-ā	nūll-ō	← nūll-īs →		

	s.			pl		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	āter	āter-a	āter-um	āter-ī	āter-ae	āter-a
acc.	āter-um	āter-am	āter-um	āter-ōs	āter-ās	āter-a
gen.	← āter-us →			āter-ōrum	āter-arum	āter-arum
dat.	← āter-ī →			← āter-īs →		
abl.	āter-ō	āter-ā	āter-ō	← āter-īs →		

NB. Both these adjectives are entirely regular except that the gen. s. ends in *-īus*, e.g. *nūllīus*, *āterīus* and the dat. s. in *-ī*; cf. *quis* gen. s. *cuius* dat. s. *cui*, *īnus* gen. s. *īnīus* dat. s. *īnī*

Exercises

1 Translate into English

- Nicobūlus: nōlī mihi minārī, Chrȳsale.
Chrȳsalus: at ut rēs est, domine, sic tibi loquor.
- seruus audāx caput habet astūtiārum plēnum.
- seruī ex aedibus mox ēgrediuntur atque senem sequuntur.
- at quis loquitur? ut opīnor, Chrȳsalus est.
- intrō inspice, mī domine. quid in aedibus uidēs? rēs mala est, ut opīnor.
- Chrȳsalus dominum cauēre iubet et nescium rērum omnium uocat.
- rēs omnis cognosce. tē enim recordārī quam obliuiscī malō.
- ut pollicēris, sic rem esse uolō
- quid uōs opīnāmini? ecce! seruus mihi minātur, deinde mentitur, tum obsecrat mē et precātur.
- tū, mī Nicobūle, prōgredere atque Chrȳsalō statim mināre.

2 Translate these sentences

- crēdula rēs amor est. (Ovid)
- rēs est nīgna tacere. (Martial)
- uita erunt dōnec hominēs. (Tacitus)
- rēs hūmānae fragilēs cadūcaeque sunt. (Cicero)
- dulce et decōrum est prō patriā morī. (Horace)
- et facere et patī fortia Rōmānum est. (Livy)

credul-us a um confiding,

crēdulus unsuspecting

amor amor-is 3m. love

uita-um ī 2n. fault, crime

dōnec while, as long as (sc. there are)

hūman-us a um human

fragil-is e brittle, frail

caduc-us a um perishable

dulc-is e sweet

decōr-us a um fitting,

seemly, honourable

prō (+ abl.) for, on behalf

ol

patri-a ae 1f native land

mori-or 3/4 dep. I die

pati-or 3/4 dep. I suffer,

endure

fort-is e brave

Roman-us a um Roman

Reading

When a sentence contains more than one clause, there are, in the conjunctions and other small words within previous clauses, signposts marking the direction of the sense. You have met *ita* . . . leading up to *ut* (or vice versa) and in 2B (Text) you saw *tam* . . . *quam* = 'as . . . as' and *tantī* . . . *quantī* = 'worth as much . . . as'. Ambiguities in the conjunction are often resolved in advance by markers, e.g. *tum*, *ubi* . . . shows *ubi* to mean 'when' rather than 'where'. More generally, you will know from seeing *sī*, that the sentence is conditional ('if x, then y') and *quod/quia* give the reason for something in another clause

Translate only the 'signposts' (markers like *tum*, *tam* etc. and conjunctions like *sī*, *quod* etc.) and say what the basic structure of each of these sentences is. When you have done this, translate (in word-order first, then into correct English). Finally read aloud, phrasing correctly, thinking through the meaning as you read.

- tum* rem cognōscēs omnem, mī domine, sī scīre uolēs, ubi filium tuum in aedibus uidēbis Bacchidum.
- ut tū mihi rem dīcis, sic ego, quod tibi crēdō, opīnor.
- tantī est senex noster, ut opīnātur Chrȳsalus, quia seruus est summā audāciā, quantī fungus pūtīdus.
- tē inspīcere intrō, quod tē omnia scīre uolō, iubēbo in aedis, ubi filium, sī oculōs habēs, cum amīcā mox uidēbis.
- at sī senī litterās tum dare poterō, ubi ego uolam, tam erit frīctus, ut opīnor, quam est frīctum cicer.

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Read this passage carefully, translating in word-order. Define the function of each word as you go, grouping them into the correct phrases and anticipating the direction of the sense. Then translate into correct English. Finally, read aloud with the correct phrasing, thinking out the meaning as you read. Use the running vocabulary of 2B

inānum negōtium Chrȳsalus, ut opīnātur, persequitur, quia senem decipere iterum uult. cōsiliū tamen satis audāx in animō est. Mnēsiloehī enim litterās senī dabit. Chrȳsalus tum dominum saeuum esse uult, ubi litterās accipiet, quia tum mōrēs Mnēsiloehī malōs nārrāre poterit. litterās in manūs senī tum dat seruus audāx, ubi ex aedibus ēgreditur. senex litterās legit, deinde seruōs uocat. tum ubi domō ēgrediuntur, seruōs Chrȳsalum uincēre iubet, Chrȳsalum tacēre senem autem irridet Chrȳsalus ac rērum nescium omnium stultumque uocat tantū habet dominum, ut dicit, quantū fungum pūtīdum. senex tam irātus fit quam uult seruus. tum autem Chrȳsalus perīculum Mnēsiloehī loquitur, senem in aedīs intrō inspīcere Bacchidum iubet. prōgreditur senex ad aedīs et intrō inspīcit. at conuīuium uidet et rem malam atque trīstem

English-Latin

Translate the Latin sentences into English. Then translate the English sentences into Latin, using the pattern of the Latin ones to help you arrange the word-order correctly.

- nōlī uxōrem meam adgredī, Chrȳsale.
Don't threaten the poor old man, slave.
- ubi litterās scribis, rem in animō habē; uerba mox sequuntur.
When you (pl.) recall the matter, remember the dangers; the mind never lies
- dīues autem, uirtūtis nescius, pauperī minātur.
The slaves, ignorant of everything, are forgetting their danger.
- cīuēs bonī in perīculum prōgrediuntur.
All the girls are coming out of their house.
- ego tibi nōn minor, sed ita loquor, ut rēs est.
We are not lying, but telling you how the matter stands.
- sequimini mē, meī seruī, atque omnia obliuiscimini.
Follow me, my son, into the house and pray to the gods.

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building

sub + abl./acc. = 'under', 'close up to'

sub- as a prefix (sometimes appearing as *su-* or *sus-*) attaches the same meaning to the verb, e.g. *sub + capiō = suscipiō* 'undertake'; *sub + sequor = subsequor* 'follow closely'. Cf. submarine, subcutaneous etc. See above p. 83

Word exercise

Give the meanings and Latin connection of: perfect, capital, verb, irate, maximise, legible, advent, opinion, loquacious, progressive, stultify, oblivious, record (NB. *cor cordis heart*), literate

Everyday Latin

In logic, what does a *nōn sequitur* not do?

secundus 'second' is connected with *sequor*. It is, after all, what follows the first. Since a following wind was favourable to sailors, *secundus* also means 'favourable'

Letters often say 're your bill for drinks now outstanding at . . .' This means 'in the matter of', the abl. of *rēs*. Something *ad rem* is 'to the point', 'relevant to the matter in hand' (also a motto of the Wright family)

If you see (*sic*), it indicates that what has just been written is intentionally written (*sic*) like that.

Real Latin

Martial

cum tua nōn ēdās, carpis mea carmina. Laeli.
carpere uel nōlī nostra, uel ēde tua

cum since

tua = tua carmina

ēdō 3 I publish: ēdas 'you publish'

carpō 3 I criticise

carmen carmin-is 3n poem

Laeli O Laelius

uel . . . uel either . . . or
nostra, tua 1e carmina

Sayings of Cato

cum bonis ambulā
rem tuam custodī (guard).
librōs (books) lege
miserum nōlī irridēre.

Vulgate

The Lord to Moses: 'ingredere ad Pharaōnem, et loquere ad eum "haec dicit dominus deus Hebraeorum: dimitte populum meum".' (Exodus 9.1)
Jesus to the disciples: 'sinite puerōs uenire ad mē et nōlīte uetāre eōs; tālum enim est rēgnū deī.' (Luke 18.16)

Pharaō Pharaōn-is Pharaoh	Hebrae-i ōrum 2m.	sinō 3 I allow
cum him	pl Hebrews	uetō 1 I forbid
haec as follows	dimitto 3 I let go	tālum of such a sort
	popul-us ī 2m people	rēgn-um ī 2n. kingdom

Mottoes

nōlī irridēre leōnem. (Cooper, Walsh)
nōlī mentīrī. (Notley)
nōlī mē tangere. (Graeme, Graham, Willett)
dum crēscō, spērō. (Rider)
dum spīrō, spērō. (Anderson, Baker, Brook, Cutler, Davies, Gordon, Greaves, Hunter, Jacobs, Lee, Mason, Moore, Nicholls, Pearson, Roberts, Smith, Symonds, Taylor, Thomason, Walker, Whitehead, Young)
dum vigilō, cūrō. (Cranstoun)
dum vivō, spērō. (Monteith)
dum in arborem (?) (Hamilton)
fac et spērā. (Armstrong, Arthur, Campbell, Morison, Richardson)

irritō 1 I annoy	spērō 1 I hope	arbor arbor-is 3f. tree
leō leōn-is 3m. lion	spīrō 1 I breathe	(= the cross?; dum
tangō 3 I touch	vigilō 1 I am on guard	then = 'until', i.e. 'as far
crēscō 3 I grow	uiuō 3 I live	as (onto)')

Word study

ambulō

ambulō means 'I walk', 'take a turn'. Hence 'amble', and 'preamble', the introductory stroll round a subject (*prae* 'in front of'). The French had an *hôpital ambulant*, i.e. 'touring hospital', 'field hospital', whence our

'ambulance'. 'Perambulate' means 'walk through or over' (*per* 'through'); hence the English derivation 'perambulator', which *should* mean 'one who walks over'. It is tempting to think that 'ramble' comes from *re* + *ambulō*, but this is disputed

diēs

The Latin adjective *dīvus* means 'divine', 'of the sky' and 'luminous'. It connects with *deus* 'god' (cf. Greek 'Zeus'), whence *dīvus*, *dīuīnus*, the goddess Diana, English 'divine'. It also connects with *diēs* 'day' – so 'light' and 'god' appear to be closely connected semantically. (Cf. John 1.4: 'In Him was life and the life was the light of men'; 1 John 1.5: 'God is light and in Him there is no darkness at all'.) *Iuppiter* is cognate with Greek *zeu pater* 'O Zeus father'. Observe that Jupiter also appears in Latin as *diēspiter* (connected with *diēs* + *pater* 'father of day'), and that the gen. s. of *Iuppiter* is *Iovis*, in primitive Latin *Dionis*. Both *diēspiter* and *Dionis* bring us back to the *di-* root again. *Iou-* gives us 'jovial' (from the astrological influence of the planet Jupiter). There is also a connection between *Zeus*, *deus* and the Old English god of war *Tīw*, whence Tuesday!

diēs helps to give us 'dismal' (*diēs malī* 'unlucky days'), and 'diary' (*diārium* 'ration for the day'). From *diēs* Latin got the adjective *diurnus* 'daily', giving English 'diurnal' and (through French) 'journal'. Note that in France and Italy, Thursday is named after Jupiter (Fr. *jedi*, It. *giovedì*)

Section 2C

Running vocabulary for 2C

<i>absum</i> I am absent	<i>ambō ambae</i> both (<i>ambōs</i>	<i>bell-us a um</i> pretty
<i>accipio</i> 3,4 I receive	acc p m amb i acc	(1 or Ceres) 3m
<i>adloquor</i> 3 dep. I address	pl. f.)	Castor (brother of
<i>admodum</i> fairly, quite	<i>ambulō</i> 1 I walk	Pollux)
<i>aedis aed-is</i> 3f. shrine,	<i>annōn</i> or not?	<i>Ceres Ceter-is</i> 3f. Ceres
temple	<i>arbitror</i> 1 dep. I think	(goddess of crops)
<i>amātor amātor-is</i> 3m. lover	<i>aure-us a um</i> golden	<i>citō</i> immediately, at once

agnosce I know
agnosce you (s.) know
cōnor 1 dep. I try
cōspicor 1 dep. I catch sight of
cennuō 4 I meet
crux cruce-is 3f. cross (in *malam crucem* = to a bad death, to Hell)
cubō 1 I sleep
dēfendō 3 I defend
ergō therefore
errō 1 I am mistaken, err
exanim-us a um lifeless
exhērēs exhērēd-is disinherited (from + gen.)
exsoluō 3 I release
fiō 1 happen (3rd s. *fit*)
for-um ī 2n. forum
haud not
hercle by Hercules!
Herculēs Herculis 3m Hercules
heus hey!
hic (nom. s. m.) this (adj.); this man, he (pron.)
hīs (acc. pl. m.) these
huic (dat. s. m.) to this man, to him
huius (gen. s. m.) of this
hunc (acc. s. m.) this man, him
iam now presently
illa (nom. s. f.) that (adj.); she (pron.); that woman
illā (abl. s. f.) her (pron.); that (adj.); that woman
illae (nom. pl. f.) those (adj.)
ille (nom. s. m.) that (adj.); he (pron.); that man
illī (dat. s. m./f.) (to) him, (to) that man

illius (gen. s. m.) of that (adj.); of him, his (pron.)
illō (abl. s. m.) him; that man
illōrum (gen. pl. m.) of them, their
illōs (acc. pl. m.) them (pron.), those (adj.)
illud (acc. s. n.) that
illum (acc. s. m.) him that man
immō yes; indeed
impur-us a um vile, defiled
ingredior 3/4 dep. I enter
inquam I say
Iovem (acc. s.) Jupiter = Jupiter
irāscor 3 dep. I get angry
ir-it-us a um angry
Iūnō Iūnōn-is 3f. Juno
iūrō 1 I swear
Lātōn-a ae 1f. Leto
lepid-us a um charming
manifestō openly
Mārs Mārt-is 3m. Mars (god of war)
Mercuri-us ī 2m. Mercury (messenger god)
meretrix meretrīc-is 3f prostitute
miles mil-it-is 3m. soldier
Miner-a ae 1f. Minerva (goddess of wisdom)
modo just
mōs mōr-is 3m. way, habit; (pl.) character
mulier mulier-is 3f woman; wife
necō 1 I kill
nisi unless, if . . . not
nonne surely? can't I?
nūpt-us a um married
nusquam nowhere
opprimō 3 I surprise, catch
Ops Op-is 3f Ops (goddess of plenty)

osculor 1 dep. I kiss
pacīscor 3 dep. I make a bargain
per (+ acc.) through, by
perjuri-um ī 2n. perjury
Philipp-us ī 2m. a gold coin (struck by Philip of Macedon)
plānē obviously, clearly
Pollūx Pollūc-is 3m Pollux (brother of Castor)
quam how! (with adj. or adv.); (rather) than
quid why?
quod whatever, in whatever way
retinēō 2 I hold, detain
Sātūrn-us ī 2m. Saturn (father of Jupiter)
scelest-us a um criminal
sēdulō zealously, assiduously
sermō sermōn-is 3m conversation
Sōl Sōl-is 3m. the god of the sun
Spēs Spē ī 3f. Hope
suāu-is e sweet
Summān-us ī 2m Summanus (a Roman god who caused lightning at night)
suspīcor 1 dep. I suspect
tempus tempor-is 3n. time (ad tempus = in time)
uel or
uenio 4 I come
Venus Vener-is 3f. Venus (goddess of love)
uideor 2 dep. I seem
Virtūs Virtut-is 3f. the goddess Virtue
uīs 3f. (irreg.) force (acc. *uim*)
uisō 3 I visit
uīt-a ae 1f. life

Learning vocabulary for 2C

Nouns

<i>meretrīx meretrīc-is</i> 3f	<i>mos mōr-is</i> 3m way, habit, custom; (pl.) character	<i>mulier mulier-is</i> 3f woman, wife
--------------------------------	--	--

Adjectives

<i>ir-it-us a um</i> angry	<i>scelest-us a um</i> criminal wicked
----------------------------	--

Verbs

<i>ir-it-us a um</i> angry	<i>uideor</i> 2 dep. I seem	<i>irascor</i> 3 dep. I grow angry
----------------------------	-----------------------------	------------------------------------

Others

<i>iam</i> now, or now	<i>plānē</i> clearly
<i>per</i> (+ acc.) through, by	<i>quam</i> how! (+ adj. or adv.)

New forms:

adjectives

<i>hic haec hoc</i> this, this person/thing; (pl.) these	<i>ille illa illud</i> that; that person/thing; (pl.) those
--	---

Grammar and Exercises for 2C

63 *hic haec hoc* 'this', 'this person', 'this thing', 'the latter', pl. 'these'

	m.			f.			n.		
	hic	haec	hoc	hic	haec	haec	hic	haec	haec
nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hic	haec	haec	hic	haec	haec
acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hunc	hanc	hanc	hunc	hanc	hanc
gen.	huius			huius			huius		
dat.	huic			huic			huic		
abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hōc	hāc	hōc	hōc	hāc	hōc

Notes

- 1 Describing a noun, *hic* means 'this' (pl. 'these'); on its own, it will mean 'this man', 'this woman', 'this thing', depending on gender and context. Often 'he', 'she', 'it' will suffice.
- 2 Its forms seem to be irregular, but note the *-ius* of the gen. s. (cf. *nūllus*, *alter* 62 and *quis* 29), and the pl., except for *haec*, is just like *multus* on the stem *h-*.
- 3 NB. *hinc* 'from here'; *hīc* '(at) here'; *hūc* '(to) here'

64 *ille illa illud* 'that', 'that person', 'that thing', 'the former'

	s.			pl		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	ill-e	ill-a	ill-ud	ill-ī	ill-ae	ill-a
acc.	ill-um	ill-am	ill-ud	ill-ōs	ill-ās	ill-
gen.	← ill-ius →			ill-ōrum	ill-ārum	ill-ōrum
dat.	← ill-ī →			← ill-īs →		
abl.	ill-ō	ill-ā	ill-ō	← ill-is →		

Notes

- 1 On its own, *ille* means 'that man', 'that woman', 'that thing', depending on gender and context; describing a noun, it means 'that', 'those'. Often it best translates as 'he', 'she', 'it'.
- 2 The forms at first glance seem irregular, but on closer inspection you will see that, apart from *ille*, *illud*, *illās*, *illī* (cf. *nūllus*, *nūlli*, *cuius*, *ab*, *alterius*, *alteri*) they are simply the stem *ill-* with 2nd decl. adjective endings like *multus*.
- 3 From *ille* came French *le*, *la* and Italian *il*, *la*.
- 4 NB. *illinc* 'from there'; *illīc* '(at) there' *illūc* '(to) there'. Cf. 63³
- 5 *ille* ... *hic* are often used in contrast to mean 'the former' (i.e. *that one* over there, a long way away) and 'the latter' (i.e. *this one* here which is so close to us).
- 6 Ambiguities: note that *illī* can be dat. s. m. f. or n. or nom. pl. m. But *illae* can only be nom. pl. f., because gen. and dat. s. are *illius*, *illī*

Exercises

- 1 *Decline in all cases*: *hic* *seruus*; *ille* *mīles*; *haec* *serua*; *illud* *perīculum*; *hoc* *uerbum*; *illa* *mulier*
- 2 *What case or cases are the following phrases in*: *huius* *patris*; *hāc* *filiā*; *hae* *uxōrēs*; *huic* *animō*; *hoc* *onus*; *hīs* *cemis*; (optional: *hunc* *diem*; *hārum* *noctium*; *hōs* *seruōs*; *haec* *cōnsilia*; *hōc* *capite*; *huius* *perīculī*); *illī* *stilī*; *illō* *uerbō*; *illud* *opus*; *illōs* *diēs*; *illīs* *sceleribus*; *illī* *manuī*; (optional: *illam* *turbam*; *illa* *soror*; *illīus* *ignis*; *illī* *familiae*; *illōs* *honōres*; *illīus* *rēi*; *illa* *domus*; *illā* *rē*).
- 3 *Give the Latin for*: this soldier (acc.); to that old man; this girl's; those plans (nom./acc.); these dangers (nom./acc.); that woman's.
- 4 *Give the case of the following phrases, where the noun could be ambiguous, but where the form of hic or ille solves the problem*: *hī* *thēsaurī*; *illīus* *thēsaurī*; *illās* *sorōrēs*; *hae* *sorōrēs*; *illa* *rēs*; *hās* *rēs*; *illae* *rēs*; *huius* *manūs*; *illae* *manūs*; *hae* *manūs*; *illās* *mulierēs*; *hae* *mulierēs*; *illī* *puerō*; *hōc* *puerō*; *illae* *fēminae*; *huic* *fēminae*; *illīus* *fēminae*; *hic* *diēs*; *illōs* *diēs*; *hī* *diēs*
- 5 *Join hic or ille to the word(s) with which it agrees, and translate*:

huius: *seruus*, *amīcī*, *mulierēs*, *lūnae*, *stilōs*
illum: *cōnsilium*, *opus*, *puerum*, *diērum*, *frātre*, *rem*
illā: *uxōre*, *nox*, *manū*, *stilus*, *officia*
hoc: *mīles*, *officium*, *nōmen*, *cīuem*, *aurum*
haec: *aedēs*, *corōna*, *opera*, *manus*, *negōtia*, *rēs*
illōs: *cīuīs*, *senem*, *facinus*, *deōs*, *domus*

Optional revision

- 1 *Give the meaning, conjugation and infinitive of the following verbs*: *cēlō*, *explicō*, *inueniō*, *audiō*, *dūcō*, *fugiō*, *mittō*, *ferō*, *mālō*, *sum*, *crēdō*, *scribō*, *salūtō*, *legō*, *nesciō*.
- 2 *Translate the following verbs, and then analyse them as follows*:

If an indicative, give person, number, tense (present or future) and voice (active or deponent), e.g. amās – 2nd person singular present active of amō 'love'

If imperative, say whether s. or pl., active or deponent

If infinitive, say whether active or deponent

In all cases, end your analysis by saying what the verb is and what it means (see example above)

amābis, habēre, dūc, minārī, dīcet, uelle, scrībītis, poterō, cape, dormiunt, prōgredere, dēfendis, opprimēs, necā, loquī, nōlumus, irrīdēre, stāte, rogās.

Exercises

- 1 Translate. cum hīs mulieribus; in illō capite; ad hanc rem; per illam turbam; cum hāc meretrice; ex illō periculō
- 2 Give the Latin for: onto this stage; with that woman; through these fires; with those brothers; in this eye; into that town; through these dangers
- 3 Translate these sentences:

- (a) sī ille miles Mnēsiloichum cum Bacchide opprimet, illōs necābit
- (b) haec Bacchis amīca Mnēsiloichī, illa Pistoclērī esse uīdētur
- (c) hanc mulierem ille iuuenis, illam hic amat
- (d) Nicobūlus militis illius audit uerba, tum mōrēs fili plānē cognoscit
- (e) huic seruō omnēs meretrīcēs malae, illīs iuuenibus optimae esse uidentur
- (f) hunc senem seruus ille dēcipere cōnātur

- 4 Translate these sentences:

- (a) ūna salūs uictīs nūllam spērāre salūtem. (Virgil)
- (b) praeterita mūtāre nōn possumus. (Cicero)
- (c) nītimur in uetītum semper cupimusque negāta. (Ovid)
- (d) semel ēmissum uolat irreuocābile uerbum. (Horace)

salūs salut-is 3f salvation
source of safety
uict-ī ōrum 2m, pl the
conquered
spērō 1 I hope for
praeterit-a ōrum 2n, pl the
past

mutō 1 I change
uītor 3 dep. I strive
towards (in + acc.)
uetit-um ī 2n, the
forbidden

cupiō 3/4 I yearn for
negāt-a ōrum 2n, pl. what

we have been denied
semel once
ēmiss-us a um spoken, sent
forth
uolō 1 I fly
irreuocābil-is e beyond
recall, irrevocable

Reading

Translate in word order, defining which is subject (if one is quoted), which is object etc. in these incomplete sentences, then supply a verb to complete them and

translate into correct English. Finally read out the sentences in Latin with correct phrasing, thinking through the meaning as you read

- a) ille miles hanc mulierem huic iuuenī crēdere
- b) illum huius senis seruū
- c) hoc aurum illī militī hic seruus
- d) cum hac mulier illum iuuenem hic miles mox
- e) hanc la. f. m. hōs nummōs omnis dare

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Read the sentences carefully, translating in word-order as usual. You will need to choose from the words the one which makes sense of your suppositions about the meaning of the sentence. Translate into correct English; then translate the sentence into Latin, phrasing correctly, thinking through the meaning as you read. See the meaning in the dictionary of 2C

Nicobulus filium et Bacchidem in aedibus (hanc, cōgitat, uidet) meretrīx Bacchis (ambās, arbitrātur, est). Chrṽsalō autem meretrīx esse hanc, miles, illa) nōn uidētur. nunc intrat Cleomachus miles et illius uxōris, meretrīcis, filiae) amātor. illum autem Chrṽsalus Bacchidis uirum, filium, plānē) uocat. Chrṽsalī dominus nunc timet (amātor, citō, ualdē), quod Bacchidem militis (filiam, nihil, uxōrem) arbitrātur Chrṽsalī manūs seruōs statim (cūrāre, exsoluere, crēdere) iubet, Chrṽsalum cum hōc (fēminā, periculō, milite) pacīscī, quod uult. huic militī seruus statim nummōs (illum, fēminās, ducentī, multōs) pollicētur sed illum tacēre ac uerba mala (dicere, audire, precārī) iubet, quod senem (amāre, pollicērī, dēcipere) uult. deinde nummōs militī (hunc, ille, magnō) prōmittit. Chrṽsalus autem militī illī multa periūria dicit (ad tempus, dē Mnēsilocho, in aedibus) et illum ad forum mittit.

English-Latin

- 1 Translate these sentences into Latin, taking care to choose a word-order which gives the correct emphasis (see Reference Grammar W).

- (a) This man loves that man's daughter.
- (b) This young man's father seems to be rich.
- (c) Those women I consider as prostitutes.
- (d) This is a great duty for good citizens.
- (e) That soldier wants to defend this woman.

- (f) It's the character of these women I consider wicked
(Remember 'it's the' is just a way English has of emphasising something; Latin puts the emphatic words early in the sentence.)

2 Translate this passage (after rereading the text of 2C).

CHRYSALUS Who is this chap?

NICOBULUS He's my son Mnesilochus

CHR. He appears to be with a pretty woman. What do you think?

NIC. She is pretty. But who is she? Tell me, I beg you

CHR. Do you see that man?

NIC. Do you mean (use *dīcō*) that soldier?

CHR. Yes

NIC. Go on.

CHR. I will. He is this woman's man.

NIC. What are you saying? But this woman's obviously a whore

CHR. (Is) this (what) you think? You'll know everything soon

NIC. What? Is she married (use *nūpt-us a um*)? I'm done for. O poor me!
O wicked young man!

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building

Suffixes

Verbs often receive a change in their meaning from a suffix (or 'infix') which becomes part of their stem, e.g.

-sc- indicates the beginning of an action. So *cognōscō* means 'I begin to know', 'I get to know'; *pacīscor* 'I begin/attempt to make a treaty'. All *-scō* verbs are 3rd conjugation.

-it- denotes repetition. So *clāmitō* = 'I keep on shouting'. All verbs in *-itō* are 1st conjugation.

Word exercise

Give the meaning of these words and their connections with Latin, military, (French) *le, la*; (Italian) *il, la*; conative, arbitrate, meretricious, morals.

Everyday Latin

ad hoc 'for, directed at, this one occasion', i.e. unplanned
post hoc, ergō propter hoc 'after this, therefore because of this'. A famous logical trap into which it is only too easy to fall. After you learned Latin you became a drunken layabout; therefore it was because you learned Latin that . . . etc. Particularly tempting for historians

Real Latin

Martial

laudat amat cantat nostrōs mea Rōma libellōs,

mēque sinūs omnēs mē manus omnis habet

ecce rubet quīdam, pallet, stupet, ōscitat, ōdit.

hoc uolo: nunc nobīs carmina nostra placent. (6.60)

laudo 1 I praise

canto 1 I sing up

libellōs 2m books of poems

sinūs (nom. pl.) pockets (a fold in the toga where books kept)

ecce but look!

rubeō 2 I blush

quīdam someone (subject)

palleō 1 go pale

stupeō 1 look bewildered

ōscitō 1 I vawn

ōdit 'he hates

hoc, nunc, are the

emphatic words here

nobīs i.e. to me

carmen carmin-is 3n. poem

placet 2 it is pleasing

Mottoes

hoc signum (emblem) nōn onus sed honor. (Stoughton)

hoc opus. (Dee)

hoc virtūtis opus. (Collison)

Word study

plānus

This means 'flat', 'level', so 'clear', 'obvious' in Latin. This becomes English 'plane', a level surface, and the tool which makes a surface level. Through French, we have English 'plain', a level surface, and plainsong (as opposed to measured music, i.e. Gregorian chant as opposed to polyphony). In Italian *plānus* emerges as *piano*, 'flat', hence in music, 'softly'. Combined with Italian *forte* 'loud' (cf. Latin *fortis* 'brave', 'strong'), it yields 'pianoforte', which can play both soft and loud. 'Explain' comes from *explānō* 'flatten', 'spread out', literally and before the mind

Others

ante (+ acc.) before, in front of

hic here

immō more precisely, i.e. no or yes (a strong

agreement or disagreement with what precedes)

in (+ acc.) against (into, onto)

post later, afterwards

sine (+ abl.) without

verō indeed

verum but

Grammar and exercises for section 2D

65 Perfect indicative active: 'I —ed', 'I have —ed'

	1	2	3
	'I loved'	'I had'	'I said'
	'I have loved'	'I have had'	'I have said'
1st s.	amā-u-ī	hāb-u-ī	dīx-i
2nd s.	amā-u-istī (amāstī)	hab-u-istī	dīx-istī (dīxtī)
3rd s.	amā-u-i-t	hāb-u-i-t	dīx-i-t
1st pl.	amā-u-i-mus	hab-u-i-mus	dīx-i-mus
2nd pl.	amā-u-is-tis (amāstis)	hab-u-is-tis	dīx-is-tis
3rd pl.	amā-u-ēru-nt (amāuēre/amārunt)	hab-u-ēru-nt (habuēre)	dīx-ēru-nt (dīxēre)
	4	3/4	
	'I heard' 'I have heard'	'I captured' 'I have captured'	
1st s.	audī-u-ī	cēp-i	
2nd s.	audī-u-istī (audīstī/audīstī)	cēp-istī	
3rd s.	audī-u-i-t	cēp-i-t	
1st pl.	audī-u-i-mus	cēp-i-mus	
2nd pl.	audī-u-is-tis (audīstis)	cēp-is-tis	
3rd pl.	audī-u-ēru-nt (audīuēre/audīerunt/ audiēre)	cēp-ēru-nt (cēpēre)	

Notes

1 The perfect tense (*perfectus* 'completed', 'finished') has three basic meanings:

- (a) (by far the most common): completed action in past time, e.g. *amāuī* 'I loved'.
- (b) action in the past seen from the point of view of the present, e.g. *amāuī* 'I have loved'.

- (c) present state arising from past action, e.g. *periī* 'I am done for' (i.e. 'I have perished and therefore am (now) done for')

Cf. Cicero's announcement that the conspirators involved with Catiline had been executed – *uixērunt* 'they have lived', i.e. 'they are dead'. Generally speaking, the choice will be between (a) and (b), according to context

2 Formation of the perfect tense

- (a) The perfect active is formed for 1st and 4th conjugations by adding *-ui* to the stem, e.g. *ama-ui*, *audi-ui*. 2nd conjugation verbs only rarely add *-ui* to the stem (e.g. *dēleō dēlēre dēlēuī*); they drop the *-e* of the stem as a rule, e.g. *habēō habēre habuī*. Note the *u* still appears in the ending: this is the key to perfect active in conjugations 1, 2 and 4. Third conjugation are unpredictable (see Note 4)
- (b) Note, however, that in 1st and 4th conjugations, *-ui/-ue/-u-* is sometimes dropped giving e.g. *amāstī* for *amāuistī*, *audīit* for *audīuit* etc. See the bracketed forms in the chart

3 BUT: all perfect actives have personal endings in

-ī
-isti
-it
-imus
-istis
-erunt (-ēre)

Note that, apart from 1st and 2nd s., the personal endings (*-t*, *-mus*, *-tis*, *-nt*) are the normal active ones. Note variations on *-erunt*: it can be *-ere* (do not confuse with infinitives, e.g. *habēre* and 2nd s. deponents, e.g. *pollicēre*)

4 The perfect active stems of 3rd and 3rd/4th conjugation verbs, and some irregular 1st and 2nd conj. verbs, are not as neatly predictable as those of the other conjugations, but certain patterns do emerge, e.g.

- (a) adding *-si* to the stem, like.

maneō 2 *mānsī* 'I stayed'

irrideō 2 *irrisī* 'I laughed at'

iubeō 2 *iussī* 'I ordered'

mittō *mīsī* 'I sent'

Note the effect on e.g.

dūcō dūxī 'I led'

dīcō dīxī 'I said'

uīnciō uīncī 'I bound'

scribō scripsī 'I wrote'

- b) doubling up ('reduplicating') the initial consonant and adding a vowel, like:

dō 1 dedī 'I gave'

tangō tetigī 'I touched'

poscō poposcī 'I demanded'

- c) lengthening the vowel in the stem, like

inueniō inuēnī 'I found'

fugiō fugī 'I fled'

legō lēgī 'I read'

- d) changing the vowel in the stem

faciō fēcī 'I made', 'I did'

agō ēgī 'I did', 'I drove'

capiō cēpī 'I took'

- e) no change in the stem at all:

dēfendō dēfendī 'I defended'

compounds of *-cendō -cendī*

verbs in *-uō -uī* e.g. *soluō soluī* 'I released'

- f) stems ending in *lmnr* ('liquids', 'nasals') add *-uī*, e.g.

uolō uolūī 'I wished'

aperiō aperuī 'I opened'

66 Irregular verbs

Irregular verbs learned to date are:

- 1 *adiuuō adiuuāre adiuuī* 'I help'
dō dare dedī 'I give'
stō stāre steti 'I stand'

- 2 *caueō cauēre cauī* 'I am wary', 'I look out'
dēleō dēlēre dēlēuī 'I destroy'

irrideō irridēre irrīsī 'I laugh at'

iubeō iubēre iussī 'I order'

maneō manēre mānsī 'I remain'

possideō possidēre possēdī 'I possess'

respondeō respondere respondi 'I reply'

uideō uidēre uidī 'I see'

- 3 *adscribō* see *scribō*

agō agere ēgī 'I do', 'I act'

āmittō see *mittō*

cognōscō cognōscere cognōuī 'I get to know'

coquō coquere coxī 'I cook'

crēdō crēdere crēdidī 'I believe', 'I trust'

dēfendō dēfendere defendī 'I defend'

dīcō dīcere dīxī 'I say'

diligō diligere dilixī 'I love'

dūcō dūcere dūxī 'I lead'

gerō gerere gessī 'I do', 'I act' ('I wage')

legō legere lēgī 'I read'

mittō mittere mīsī 'I send'; (*ā-*) 'I lose'

opprimō opprimere oppressī 'I surprise', 'I catch'; 'I crush'

ostendō ostendere ostendī 'I show'

pergō pergere perrēxī 'I carry on'

poscō poscere poposcī 'I demand'

prō-mittō -mittere -mīsī 'I promise'

reddō reddere reddidī 'I give back'

scribō scribere scripsī 'I write' (to)

soluō soluere soluī 'I release'

tangō tangere tetigī 'I touch'

uincō uincere uici 'I conquer'

- 4 *inueniō inuenire inuēnī* 'I find'

uīnciō uīncire uīncī 'I bind'

- 3 4 *capiō capere cēpī* 'I capture'
dēcipiō dēcipere dēcēpī 'I deceive'
faciō facere fēcī 'I do', 'I make'
fugiō fugere fugī 'I flee'
īnspiciō īnspicere īnspexi 'I inspect', 'I look into'
perficiō perficere perfēcī 'I complete'

Irregulars

(ad)ferō ferre tulī 'I bear, carry'

adsum 'I am present' see sum

auferō auferre abstulī 'I take away', 'I remove'

eō ire īrī or i-ī 'I go' (not really irregular, as the stem is -f)

mālō mālī mālūī 'I prefer'

nolō nolle nolūī 'I do not want'

sum esse fui 'I am'

uolō uelle uolūī 'I wish'

Exercises

- 1 Form and then conjugate the perfect of these verbs: clāmō, uideō, uincō, uincio, abeō, sum, dō, capiō, ferō, faciō, (optional: pugnō, dēleō, gerō, dormiō, redeō, adsum, fugiō, adferō, dēcipiō)
- 2 Translate each of these perfects. Change *s.* to *pl.* and vice versa: dēlēuistī, gessērunt, uīcit, adfuiſtis, soluī, pugnāuimus, abiistis, (optional: amāuit, habuērunt, dēfendistī, necāuērunt, audiūī, cēpistis).
- 3 What verbs are these perfects from? Translate them: dedistī, crēdidit, attulērunt, fuit, dēbuistis, mānsī, oppressimus, scripsērunt, adiūuistis, tetigit, amīsistis, diximus, exiit, (optional: uīdit, mīsī, habitāuimus, timuistī, possēdistis, rogāuērunt, stetī, monuit, inuēnērunt, iniistī, abstulimus, reddidī, potuit, uoluī, māluērunt, cāuistis, perfēcimus, ēgit, dilēxī, inspexērunt).
- 4 Give the Latin for: I have given; we fought; you (*s.*) destroyed; he has loved; they were present; you (*pl.*) conquered; I went out; they have killed, he replied, you (*s.*) have acted, we completed, you (*pl.*) carried.
- 5 Give present, future and perfect 3rd *s.* and *pl.* of these verbs: dormiō, pugnō, dēleō, gerō, sum, auferō, redeō, dēcipiō.
- 6 Locate the perfects in this list and translate them (say what tense the others are): stābit, dedērunt, crēdet, aderis, uīcistī, pugnābunt, soluunt, dēlent, gerent, mānsī, inuēnistis, perficiēs, dilīgis, habēs, monuistis.

67 Ablatives: phrases of time

We have met two uses of the ablative to date: with prepositions (esp. of place, e.g. 'in', 'at', 'from'), and descriptive ('a man of great arrogance') (cf. 10, 23, 49).

The ablative case is also used to show the time *at which* or *within which* something took place (cf. locational use), e.g. *illō tempore* 'at that time'; *primā hōrā* 'at the first hour'; *decem annīs* '(with)in ten years'

Exercise

1 Translate the following

- a) Mnesicles ut tacitus uerba Chrṽsalī audīuit
- b) cum milite pugnauī, iam cum sene pugnābō, nunc autem tacitus sētiō
- c) magnō post tempore Graecī urbem Trōiam cēpērunt
- d) hōc tempore noctis omnēs dormīre dēbent
- e) fūrēs in aedīs nocte clam ineunt tacitī
- f) ut Graecī equum illō tempore contrā¹ Trōiam misērunt, ita hodie libellās mittet contrā dominum Chrṽsalus

2 Translate these sentences

- a) dēfēnsor culpae dīcit mihi 'fēcimus et nōs haec muenēs.' (Juvenal)
- b) dīc mihi, quid fēcī, nisi nōn sapienter amāuī? (Ovid)
- c) tumus Trōes: fuit illum. (Virgil)
- d) lūsistī satis, ēdistī satis atque bibistī; tempus abīre tibi est. (Horace)
- e) nātūra sēmīna nōbīs scientiae dedit; scientiam nōn dedit. (Seneca)

dēfēnsor defēnsōr-is 3m.

defender

culp-a ae 1f. fault

mi except that

sapienter wisely

Trōs Trō-is 3m. Trojan

īl-lum ī 2n. Troy

lūdō 3 lūsī 1 play, have

fun

ēdō esse ēdī 1 eat

bibō 3 bibi 1 drink

nātūr-a ae 1f. nature

sēmīn sēmīn-is 3n. seed

scienti-a ae 1f. knowledge

Reading exercise

Recognising the function of an ablative phrase is not always easy. So far you have met three types: (a) descriptive, e.g. *uir summō ingeniō* 'a very intelligent man', (b) prepositional, e.g. *cum illā muliere* 'with that woman', (c) time when or within which, e.g. *hōc tempore* 'at this time', *ūnā hōrā* '(with)in one hour'. Translate the following phrases and say to which category they belong: *uir*

summā audaciā; illō tempore; hāc nocte, dē tuō periculō; tacitā nocte; ā senibus miseris; seruus multā astutiā; mēcum; hōris multis; magnō post tempore; fēmina summā pulchritūdine; ē forō; illō noctis tempore; cum meā uxōre; annis decem

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Read this passage carefully, translating in word-order. You will need to stop to group the ablative phrases and decide their function. Often the words in the phrase will not be next to one another. Attempt as you read to classify ablative adjectives and hold them in your mind without attempting to translate fully until the noun solves them. Translate into correct English, then read aloud in Latin, phrasing correctly, thinking through the meaning as you read.

Atridae longō post tempore illum cēperunt. decimō enim annō urbem Trōiam tandem expugnauerunt. nam illō tempore rēgēs in urbem equum miserunt ligneum. Epēus, uir astutiā magnā, equum illum aedificauit. milites in equō fuerunt armati, summā audaciā uiri. hī ex equō illā exierunt nocte et urbem mox delēuerunt. sic illō diē Trōia urbs unā periit hōrā.

English-Latin

1 Translate into Latin. Consult Reference Grammar W on word-order

- The young man stood in the house silently.
- Has the old man given the gold to the soldier?
- They have sent the horses against the city of Troy
- On this night I have defeated my master and captured much booty.
- At this time of year all people ought to stay at home
- The soldiers have seen the signal and will soon advance against the town.

2 Translate this passage (after rereading the text of 2D)

NICOBULUS What ought I to do, Chrysalus? Tell me.

CHRYSALUS I don't want to say.

NIC. I beg you, speak. What shall I do? For I want to succeed (use rem bene gerere).

CHR. You will succeed, in my view, if you give the gold to your son. But I'm not giving an order.

NIC. I'll give him the money. Stay here! I'll be back soon.

(Nicobulus goes into the house)

CHR. The old man's destruction is nigh! How I've deceived him!

Now Mnesilochus will be able to give his mistress enough money

Deliciae Latinae

Real Latin

Vulgate

in principiō creauit Deus coelum et terram. (Genesis 1.1)

formauit igitur dominus Deus hominem dē limō terrae et inspirauit in faciem eius spirāculum uitae. (Genesis 2.7)

septimō autem diē sabbatum domini Dei tui est; nōn faciēs omne opus in eō, tū et filius tuus et filia tua, seruus tuus et ancilla tua, iumentum tuum

. . . sex enim diēbus fecit dominus coelum et terram et mare. (Exodus 20.10-11)

principi-um beginning
creo I I make
coel-um heaven, sky
terr-a earth
formō I I form
lim-us mud, clay

inspirō I I breathe
faciem (acc.) face
eius his
spirācul-um breath
uit-a life
septim-us seventh

sabbat-um sabbath
omne = any (i.e. all opus is excluded)
in eō in, during it
ancill-a maidservant
iument-um ox
mare sea

Mottoes

nīl sine Deō. (Awdry)

nīl sine labōre. (Atkinson, Simpson)

nīl sine causā. (Brown)

nōn sine Deō. (Eliot)

nōn sine causā. (Drury)

nōn sine industriā. (Bevan)

nōn sine iūre. (Charter)

nōn sine periculō. (Mackenzie, Walker)

labor labōr-is 3m. work industri-a ae 1f. effort
caus-a ae 1f. reason, cause

iūs iūr-is 3n. justice, right

Word-building

Further suffixes

The following suffixes commonly form abstract nouns, 'the quality of', 'the condition of':

- ia (gen. s. -iae f.) e.g. *audācia* 'boldness'
- tās (gen. s. -tātis f.) e.g. *bonitās* 'goodness'
- tūs (gen. s. -tūtis f.) e.g. *seruitūs* 'slavery'
- tūdō (gen. s. -tūdinis f.) e.g. *multitūdō* 'manyness', 'crowd', 'plenty'

Exercise

- 1 Derive and give the meaning of the following nouns: *iuventūs*, *scientia*, *timor*, *uirtūs*, *pulchritūdō*, *paupertās*, *praedictiō*, *facilitās*, *praetor*, *malefactor*, *clāmor*, *cīuitās*.
- 2 Form the gen. s. of: *uirtūs*, *pulchritūdō*, *paupertās*, *facilitās*, *timor*, *praetor*.
- 3 What are the nominatives of the following nouns, none of which you have met? *Scīpiōnis*, *Cicerōnis*, *legiōnibus*, *longitūdinem*, *uictōrēs*, *cupiditātī*, *ēruptiōne*, *iuventūtis*, *libertātem*, *explōratōrum*.
- 4 Can you guess the meaning of any of the nouns in 3?

Adjective formation

Here is a list of common suffixes which form adjectives:

- ilis } 'able to be', e.g. *ductilis* 'leadable', *mōbilis* 'mobile'
- bilis }
- idus 'condition', e.g. *timidus* 'being in a condition of fear', 'afraid'
- osus 'full of', e.g. *periculōsus* 'full of danger', 'dangerous'
- eus 'made of', e.g. *aureus* 'made of gold', 'golden'

The following list of suffixes may best be covered by the meaning 'pertaining to': -ālis, -ānus, -āris, -ārius, -icus, -ilis, -inus, -iuus, -ius, e.g. *Rōm-ānus* 'pertaining to Rome', *Lat-inus* 'pertaining to Latium', *seru-ilis* 'pertaining to slaves', 'servile', *patr-ius* 'pertaining to one's father', 'paternal', 'ancestral' etc.

Exercise

Analyse the following adjectives etymologically, and reach a conclusion about their meaning: *familiāris*, *facilis*, *audibilis*, *incrēdibilis*, *fertilis*, *scaenicus*, *fūrtiuus*, *senilis*, *honōrābilis*, *igneus*, *oculeus* (used of monsters), *aquārius*, *pecūniosus*, *uirilis*, *uxōrius*, *domesticus*, *nōminātiuus*, *dōtālis*, *animōsus*, *cīuilis*, *iuenilis*

Everyday Latin

Remember three important perfects with reference to Julius Caesar's famous words that he wrote on a placard at a huge triumph in Rome in 46 celebrating one of his quickest victories (at Zela in Asia Minor in 47)

uēnī, uīdī, uīcī 'I came, I saw, I conquered'

On tombstones *fl.* = *floruit* '(s)he flourished' and *ob.* = *obit* '(s)he died' (cf. 'obituary') – both perfect tense

Word exercise

Give the Latin connection of the following words: predatory, annuity, perennial, anniversary¹, millennium², temporary, urbane, tacit, pugnacious, delete, debt, solve, ante-chamber

¹ anniversary
² mille '1 000'

Word study

sinecure (*cūra*)

This derives from *sine* + *cūra*, 'without the care', and *cūra*, through French, came to mean 'cure' in Middle English. In ecclesiastical language, *cūra* became the 'cure of souls', whence 'curate', one who cures souls (cf. French *curé*). So a 'sinecure' was a church office which paid a salary but did not involve work, the cure of souls. 'Secure' comes from *sē-* ('without') + *cūra*, 'without anxiety or care'; and *sēcūrus* became *seur* in Old French, whence English 'sure'. Late Latin *excūrō* 'I clean off' (Classical Latin 'I take great care') becomes, by a circuitous route, 'scour'. 'Curious' comes from *cūra* too. Latin *cūriōsus* means 'full of cares' 'anxious about', and so also 'inquisitive': hence 'curiosity', and in abbreviated form 'curio'. 'Accurate' comes from *ad* + *cūrō* 'give care to'.

aequus and equus

Since classical *ae-* became *e-* in mediaeval Latin, the derivations of these two words are easily confused! *aequus* 'even', 'equal' gives all the 'equality' words (and through French 'egalitarian'). 'Equations', of course, are supposed to balance and the 'equator' equates, i.e. makes equal, the two halves of the earth. 'Equitable' means 'fair', and its negative gives 'iniquity'. *adaequare* means 'I make truly level' (i.e. 'at a suitable level'), so 'adequate'. 'Equilibrium' is 'even balance' (*libra* 'scales'); 'equanimity' is the state of a balanced *animus* or 'mind'; and an 'equinox' occurs when night equals day.

equus 'horse' (cf. *eques* 'cavalryman') gives us 'equine', 'equestrianism' etc

arca, 'box', 'coffer', comes from the same root as *arceō* 'I keep at a distance'. *arcānus* means 'boxed in', 'closed in', whence 'arcane', meaning 'secret'. In compounds, *arceō* becomes *-erceō*. So *coerceō* 'contain', 'restrain' gives English 'coerce'; *exerceō* 'drive out', 'keep someone moving' yields 'exercise' (cf. *exercitus* 'a trained force')

Section 2E**Running vocabulary for 2E**

accipio 3/4 I receive
accumbō 3 I lie down
addict-us ī 2m. debt-slave, bondman (a debtor who could not pay could become the slave of his creditor)
adgrediar I shall come up (to)
agn-us ī 2m. lamb
ais you (s.) say
aliquis (nom. s. m.) someone

alloquar I shall speak to
amātor amātor-is 3m. lover
amb-ō ae both
amplexabor I shall embrace
amplexor I dep. I embrace
ante-eo -ire I beat, I am in advance of
aperiō 4 I open
appellō 1 I call
ariēs ariet-is 3m. ram
attōns-us a um shorn
audeō 2 I dare

bālūtātēs (nom. pl. f) bleating
bard-us a um dull
bene faciō 3/4 I do x (dat.) a favour
bis twice
blandiloqu-us a um persuasive, sweet-talking
blenn-us ī 2m. blockhead
buccō buccōn-is 3m. blabberer
castigō 1 I rebuke

Section 2E

cōgō 3 I drive
colloquor 3 dep. I discuss together
conāhimur we will try
cōnāhor I shall try
conclūs-us a um shut in
condictō cōn. lation-is 3f term
cōnspicor 1 dep. I catch sight of
consultō 1 I deliberate
conuīus-um ī 2n. party
cupiō 3 4 I desire
dērideō 2 I mock
dol-ō h-um ī 2n. halt
dolor dolor-is 3m. pain
frangō 3 I break down
et alis
et am. abl. s. n the same
et in actually, then'
 (expresses indignation, impatience); still
eveniō 4 I happen, turn out
euge hurrah!
ē 1 I call out
expectō 1 I wait for
lattu-us a um silly
teriō 4 I strike (*obscen*)
flāgit-um ī 2n. disgrace
foris for-is 3f. door
fortūn-a ae 1f. fortune
fung-us ī 2m. mushroom
gerō 3 I conduct; *sē gerere* to behave oneself
hāc this way
heus! hey!
hūc (to) here
hūmān-us a um human
ibi there
improb-us a um abandoned, wicked
incursō 1 I charge into (in + acc.) (*obscene*)
indicō 1 I point to
infortunat-us a um down on his luck
ingredietis you (s.) will enter

ingredior 3/4 dep. I enter
intercō interire interī I die
intus inside
lac lact-is 3n. milk
lacerō 1 I tear to pieces
lan a ae 1f. wool
lēmō 4 I soothe, calm
lepidē charmingly, pleasantly
lepid-us a um charming
long-us a um long
loquar I shall speak
loqueris you (s.) will speak
lūdō 3 I play about, have a good time
magis more
mal-um ī 2n. trouble
mandō 1 I entrust (x acc to y dat.)
maximē very much, especially
metuō 3 I am afraid
minimē not at all (lit least)
modestē in moderation
molest-us a um nasty, irksome
moror 1 dep. I delay (NB *haud moror* = I'm not bothered I don't mind)
mors mort-is 3f. death
narrō 1 I tell, relate
negō 1 I say no
nēquit-a ae 1f. wickedness
nihil worth nothing, of no value
nisi unless, if . . . not
niteō 2 I glisten, am in good condition
nōminō 1 I name
nōnne? surely?
obliviscētur he will forget
ocasiō occasiōn-is 3f chance, opportunity
orō 1 I beg
ovis ov-is 3f. sheep
pāstor pāstor-is 3m. shepherd

patiar I shall endure
patiemur we will endure
pecū pecūs 4n. flock
perdō 3 *perdidī* I destroy, ruin
pessim-us a um very bad, very wicked
Philipp-us ī 2m. gold coin (minted by Philip of Macedon)
Philoxen-us ī 2m. Philoxenus ('friend of strangers')
pol by Pollux', indeed!
prō (+ abl.) for
procul far away
prōdigi-um ī 2n. miracle
prōducō 3 I lead out, bring out
prōgrediemur we will advance
propter (+ acc.) on account of
pulsō 1 I knock at
putid-us a um rotten
quamquam although
quantī (see *tanti*)
quī (of) those who
quidem indeed
quid multa? lit. why (should I say) a lot? = to cut a long story short
quōmodo how?
regrediemur we shall go back
sapienter wisely
sē himself
ē gerere to behave (himself)
sequar I shall follow
sequēmini you (pl.) will follow
sequemur we will follow
sequēris you (s.) will follow
simil-is e alike, similar
sinō 3 I allow
soci-us ī 2m. ally

solicitō 1 I bother, worry
sol-us a um alone
sordid-us a um dirty
spoliō 1 I despoil, strip
stolid-us a um senseless
stultissim-us a um stupidest
stultiti-a ae 1f. stupidity
tamquam like

tantū . . . quantū worth as
 much . . . as
tondeō 2 *tondē* I shear,
 fleece
tranquill-us a um calm
ueniō 4 I come
uesper uesper-is 3m.
 evening
uictus ūs 4m. food

uin-um i 2n. wine
uit-a ae 1f. life
uiuō 3 I live
uix with difficulty
uiscor 3 dep. I take
 revenge on
umquam ever
unde from where?
uox uoc-is 3f. voice

Learning vocabulary for 2E

Nouns

uit-a ae 1f. life

mal-um i 2n. trouble; evil

foris for-is 3f. door

mors mort-is 3f. death

ouis ou-is 3f. sheep

uox uoc-is 3f. voice; word

Adjectives

amb-ō ae both (like *duo*,
 see 54)

pūtid-us a um rotten

simil-is e alike, similar;
 like *x* (gen.)

Verbs

castigō 1 I rebuke

solicitō 1 I bother, worry

amplexor 1 dep. I embrace

cōspicor 1 dep. I catch
 sight of

audeō 2 *aus-* I dare

accipiō 3/4 *accēpi*, *accept-*

I receive, welcome,
 learn, obtain

ingredior 3/4 dep. *ingress-*
 I enter

patior 3/4 dep. *pass-*
 I endure, suffer; allow

Others

hāc this way

hūc (to) here

ibi there

nisi unless, if . . . not;
 except

prō (+abl.) for, in return
 for; on behalf of; in
 front of

propter (+acc.) on
 account of
quamquam although

Grammar and exercises for 2E

68 Future indicative deponent (all conjugations)

1	2	3
<i>minābor</i>	<i>pollicēbor</i>	<i>loquar</i>
'I shall threaten'	'I shall promise'	'I shall speak'
1st s. <i>minā-bo-r</i>	<i>pollicē-bo-r</i>	<i>loqu-a-r</i>
2nd s. <i>minā-be-ris</i>	<i>pollicē-be-ris</i>	<i>loqu-ē-ris</i>
(<i>minā-be-re</i>)	(<i>pollicē-be-re</i>)	(<i>loqu-ē-re</i>)

3rd s.	<i>minā-bi-tur</i>	<i>pollicē-bi-tur</i>	<i>loqu-ē-tur</i>
1st pl.	<i>minā-bi-mur</i>	<i>pollicē-bi-mur</i>	<i>loqu-ē-mur</i>
2nd pl.	<i>minā-bi-mini</i>	<i>pollicē-bi-mini</i>	<i>loqu-ē-mini</i>
3rd pl.	<i>minā-bú-ntur</i>	<i>pollicē-bú-ntur</i>	<i>loqu-ē-ntur</i>
	4	3,4	
	<i>mentiar</i> 'I shall lie'	<i>progrediar</i> 'I shall advance'	
1st s.	<i>menti-a-r</i>	<i>progre-di-a-r</i>	
2nd s.	<i>menti-e-ris</i> (<i>menti-eris</i>)	<i>progre-di-e-ris</i> (<i>progre-di-eris</i>)	
3rd s.	<i>menti-ē-tur</i>	<i>prōgre-di-ē-tur</i>	
1st pl.	<i>menti-ē-mur</i>	<i>prōgre-di-ē-mur</i>	
2nd pl.	<i>menti-ē-mini</i>	<i>prōgre-di-ē-mini</i>	
3rd pl.	<i>menti-e-ntur</i>	<i>prōgre-di-ē-ntur</i>	

Notes

- We noticed the close relationship between present deponent and present active forms at 58. There is an equally close relationship between future deponent and future active forms (for which see 50)
- While in the 3rd and 4th conjs. the *-am*, *-ēs*, *-et* of the active becomes regularly *-ar*, *-ēris* (*-ēre*), *-ētur*, in the 1st and 2nd conjs., the active *-bō*, *bīs*, *-bit* becomes *-bor*, *-beris* (*-bere*), *-bitur*. Cf. 3rd conjugation presents (*loquor*, *loqu-eris*, *loqu-itur*). Note in both the change of vowel *-i-* to *-e-* in 2nd s.
- Observe the vowel-length of the 2nd s. future of *loquor* – *loquēris*. Contrast the 2nd s. present – *loqueris*.

Exercises

- Conjugate the future of: *opīnor*, *cōspicor*, *uideor*, *irāscor*, *oblīuiscor*, *mentior*, *ēgredior*, *patior*, (optional: *minor*, *precior*, *recordor*, *sequor*, *ingredior*, *suspīcor*).
- Translate and turn s. to pl. and vice versa: *opīnābor*, *mentiēris*, *precābitur*, *uidēbiminī*, *loquēris*, *pollicēbimur* (optional: *ingrediar*, *sequētur*, *uidēberis*, *cōspicābuntur*).
- Give the Latin for: you (s.) will pray, she will threaten; they will seem; you (pl.) will talk; I shall advance; we shall think; they will try; he will follow.
- Turn the following presents into their future equivalents and translate:

minātur, precantur, opīnor, uidēminī, cōspiciātur, sequitur, loquuntur (optional: irāsceris, mentīris, ēgredior, prōgrediminī, precāmur, patimur).

5 Turn these futures into their present equivalents and translate: arbitrāberis, cōnābitur, patientur, loquēminī, sequēmur, adgrediēris, morābor, opinābimur, prōgrediēminī, uidēbitur, mentiar.

6 Name the tenses of these verbs: dedit, conāberis, mentitur, uidēbitur, fēcērunt, amant, dēlent, dīcent, loquēris, tulistī (optional: fert, erit, irāscar, fuistis, timet, dūcet, potest, mānsī)

69 Genitive of value

The genitive case is used to express the value put on a person or thing. e.g. *homo nihilī* 'a man of nothing' i.e. 'of no value', 'worth nothing'; *tantī es quantī fungus* 'you are of such (value) as a mushroom' (lit. 'you are of such value as of what value (is) a mushroom').

Exercises

1 Translate these sentences:

- Nīcobūlus filium uocāuit iuuenem nihilī.
- Philoxenus autem amīcās nīl nisi bonum habuit.
- Nīcobūlus Bacchidī exitium minātur, nisi filium illa soluet.
- Philoxenus Nīcobūlō, quod amat, tantī esse quantī fungus pūtīdus uidētur.
- Bacchis! tē illum senem amplexārī iubeō. ego hunc amplexar.
- soror! ita agam dē sene, ut iussistī, quamquam malum mihi esse magnum uidētur mortem amplexārī.
- senēs, ut opīnor, ambō mox ad forēs prōgredientur.
- ita est, ut dīxī: ad forēs prōgrediuntur senēs.

2 Translate these sentences:

- humilēs labōrant, ubi potentēs dissident. (Phaedrus)
- dīuīna nātūra dedit agrōs, ars hūmāna aedificāuit urbīs. (Varro)
- meminī enim, meminī neque umquam obliuīscar noctis illius. (Cicero)
- hīc, ubi nunc Rōma est, orbis caput, arbor et herbae et paucae pecudēs et casa rāra fuit. (Ovid)

- rēligiō peperit scelerōsa atque impia facta. (Lucretius)
- nēmo repente fuit turpissimus. (Juvenal)

humil-is humil-is 3m.
lowly person
labōrō 1 I have a hard
time
potēns potent-is 3m.
powerful man
dissidēō 2 I disagree
dīuīn-us a um divine
nātūr-a ae 1f. nature
ager agr-ī 2m. field
ars art-is 3f. art, skill
hūmān-us a um human
aedificō 1 I build

meminī I remember
umquam ever
obliuīscar 3 dep (+ gen.) I
forget
Rom-a ae 1f. Rome
orb-is orb-is 3m. world
arbor arbor-is 3f. tree
herb-a ae 1f. grass
pauc-ī ae a a few
pecus pecud-is 3f. cattle
cas-a ae 1f. cottage, hovel
rarus a um few and far

between, scattered
rēligiō rēligiōn-is 3f.
religion
pariō 3/4 peperī I bring
forth, cause
scelerōs-us a um wicked
impi-us a um impious
fact-um ī 2n. deed
nēmo no one
repente suddenly
turpissimus (nom. m.) an
utter scoundrel

Optional supplementary revision exercises

- Give the conjugation, infinitive and meaning of the following verbs: adseruō, scribō, salūtō, crēdō, perficiō, arbitror, nesciō, opprimō, reddō, dērideō, possum, mālō, agō, dēfendō, fugiō, dormiō, ferō, prōmittō, poscō, stō, sum, iubeō.
- Give the meaning, declension, gender and gen. s. of the following nouns: serua, sōl, diēs, manus, officium, opus, scelus, stilus, ouis, caput, rēs, periculum, nox, mulier, puer, cīuis.
- Pair the nouns of list A which agree with the adjectives of list B (often a noun will find agreement with more than one adjective). Identify the case, and translate, e.g. familiam + hanc = acc. 'this household'; familiam + similem = acc. 'the same sort of household'.

A Nouns

familiam, deōs, uxōrī, nōminum, sorōre, frāter, onera, animō, cōnsilium, iuuenēs, manū, rēi, diēs, militem, uōx.

B Adjectives

multī, illā, magnōs, omnium, ingentia, celerīs, haec, illud, hanc, similem, trīstis, facilēs, huic.

Reading and Reading exercise / Test exercise

- Below are given a number of main clauses and a pool containing an equal number of subordinate clauses or phrases to complete them. Read and translate

each main clause, then, on the basis of sense, choose the subordinate clause which best fulfils your expectations.

- (a) ego tē, homo pūtide, nihil habeō propter hoc . .
- (b) uītam arbitror nīl . . .
- (c) senēs mortem semper mālunt . . .
- (d) magnum tibi malum, Bacchis, dabō .
- (e) Nīcobūlus tamen aurum accipiet et in aedīs Bacchidum ingrediētur . . .
- (f) tū tibi bene facere hōc tempore dēbēs
- (g) tum filium tuum cōspiciāberis . . .

dum uiuus
quod amātor senex fieri audēs
quamquam Mnēsilocho et Chrȳsalum ulcīscī māuult
nisi bonum
nisi nobīs filiōs nostrōs reddēs
quam uītam
ubi ad forēs Bacchidum adgrediēris et īspiciēs

- 2 Read the following passage carefully, translating in word-order, defining word function and phrasing word-groups, while anticipating what is to come. Then translate into correct English. Finally, read the passage aloud in Latin, phrasing correctly, thinking through the meaning as you read

Philoxenus, Pistoclērī pater, uir summā uirtūte, in scaenam intrāuit. ibi Nicobūlum, Mnēsilochoī patrem, uidit. Philoxenō ille multa mala nārrāuit dē filiis. tandem ad aedīs Bacchidum adiērunt, pulsāuerunt forēs, meretrīcēs uocāuerunt. tum, ubi ex aedibus illae mulierēs exiērunt, filiōs poposcērunt. tandem senēs in aedīs illae dūxērunt

English-Latin

- 1 (a) If you (s.) don't give me back my money, I'll kill you.
- (b) Nothing bothers me except a lying slave.
- (c) That old man is worth as much as a wicked slave.
- (d) I will embrace my son, if he dares to approach me.
- (e) At that time I couldn't hear any¹ voice but² yours.
- (f) Although life is good,³ death will approach the doors of rich and poor.

¹ Rephrase: 'I was able to hear no voice'

² = nisi.

³ Trans. 'a good thing'.

- 2 Read the text of 2E again carefully, then translate this passage:

NICOBULUS Philoxenus, you are of no value. Although you are an old man, yet you dare to become a lover.

PHILOXENUS Don't blame me, Nicobulus. And if you want to rebuke your son, go inside. The women will look after you, if you enter.

BACCHIS 1: I'll give back two hundred pieces, old man, if you'll come in. And I'll embrace you.

NIC. I'm done for. It's difficult, because I want to upbraid the scoundrels. Nevertheless, although I shall think myself a scoundrel, I'll go in.

SOROR 2: Good. You are doing yourself a good turn, as you should, while you're alive. In death no mistress will embrace you

Deliciae Latinae

Word exercise

Give the meaning and Latin connections of: vital, malicious, vociferous, ambidextrous, castigate, solicitous, patience, mortal, accept.

Word-building

English suffixes

Note the common anglicisation of Latin suffixes (via French):

English	Latin	
-ry	-ris, -rūs, -ria	} 'pertaining to'
-an	-ānus	
-ious	-ius	
-ic	-icus	
-ive	-iuis	
-able	-abilis	} 'able to be'
-ible	-ibilis	
-ion	-iō	} 'action or result of action'
-ate, ite	-ātus, -itus	
-ty	-tās	} 'quality, condition of'
-nce	-ntia	
-tude	-tūdo	

Exercise

Say what you can about the derivation and meaning of the following English words.

Adjectives: legible, submersible, inaudible, irrevocable, military, captive, laudable, urban, scenic, nuptial, impecunious, filial, visible.

Nouns: fraternity, sorority, submission, nomination, audition, vicinity, admonition, station, visibility, vision, mission, longitude, instance (= *insto* I urge), arrogance (= *adrogō* I claim), replication, fugitive.

Word study

forum

forum, the legal and business centre of a town, basically means 'outdoors' and is connected with *forēs* 'doors' and the adverb *forās* 'out of doors'. *forum* yields the adjective *forēnsis* 'connected with the legal and business centre', hence English 'forensic', 'connected with the law'. *forestis* is a late Latin adjective often connected with *silva* 'a wood out of doors', whence 'forest'. From *forāneus* through Middle English *foreine* and Old French *forain* we eventually get 'foreign'.

Real Latin

Martial

praedia sōlus habēs, et sōlus, Candide, nummōs,
aurea sōlus habēs, murrina sōlus habēs,
Massica sōlus habēs et Opīmī Caecuba sōlus,
et cor sōlus habēs, sōlus et ingenium.
omnia sōlus habēs – nec mē puta uelle negāre!
uxōrem sed habēs, Candide, cum populō. (3.26)

praedi-um ī 2n. farm
sōl-us a um alone
Candide O Candidus
murrin-um ī 2n. expensive
agate jar
Massic-um ī 2n. fine wine

Opīmī Caecub-um ī 2n.
Caecuban wine of
Opimius' vintage
(supposedly laid down
121; cf. 'Napoleon
brandy')

cor cord-is 3n. heart
ingeni-um ī 2n. wit
nec mē puta 'do not
reckon that I' . . .
negō I I deny (it)
popul-us ī 2m. people

Vulgate

sex diēbus operāberis, et faciēs omnia opera tua . . . nōn moechāberis . . .
nōn loquēris contrā proximum tuum falsum testimōnium. (1 A. 2. 20. 9ff)

sex six	contrā + acc. against	testimōn-um ī 2n
operor 1 dep. I am busy	proxim-us ī 2m neighbour	evidence
moechor 1 dep. I commit adultery	fals-us untrue	

Mottoes

prō deō et – patriā (Mackenzie) / libertāte (Wilson) / ecclēsīā. (Bisshopp)
prō Deō, prō rēge, prō patriā, prō lēge. (Blakemore)
prō fidē et patriā. (Long)
prō patriā et – libertāte (Michie) / rēge (Jones, Thomas) / religiōne (Shanley) / virtūte. (Higgins)
prō patriā vivere et morī. (Grattan)
prō rēge et populō. (Bassett)
prō rēge, lēge, grege. (Sheld)
prō lūsū et praedā. (MacMoran)

patri-a ae 1f. fatherland	religiō religiōn-is 3f. religion	popul-us ī 2m. people
ecclēs-a ae 1f. church	uivō 3 I live	grex greg-is 3m. crowd, mob
rēx rēg-is 3m. king	morior 3, 4 I die	lūs-us ūs 4m. sport
lēs lēg-is 3f. law		
fidēs fidē-ī 5f. faith		

SECTION THREE

Section 3A

Running vocabulary for 3A

abigō 3 I drive off
adpōt-us a um tipsy
Alcumēn-a ae 1f.
 Alcumena
amātor amātor-is 3m. lover
ambulō 1 I walk
Amphitruō Amphitruōn-is
 3m. Amphitruo
appareō 2 I appear
audātor bolder, cockier
audācissimus boldest,
 cockiest
bell-um ī 2n. war; *bellum*
gerō 1 wage war
cael-um ī 2n. sky
commoveō 2 I move on
cōfidentior more
 undaunted
cōfidentissimus most
 undaunted
coniūx coniug-is 3m. or f.
 husband/wife
constanti-a ae 1f. loyalty
cubō 1 I lie down
dol-us ī 2m. trick
dux duc-is 3m. leader
ea (nom. s. f.) that
 (woman); (nom. pl. n.)
 those
eā (abl. s. f.) that, her

ea (nom. pl. f.) those (tr
 that)
eam (acc. s. f.) that
eās (acc. pl. f.) those (tr
 that)
ēbrior rather drunk
edepol by Pollux!
eī (dat. s. f.) to her
eīs (dat. pl. f.) those (tr
 that)
eius (gen. s. m.) his
eō (abl. s. m.) him, that
 man
eōrum (gen. pl. m.) of
 them, their
eum (acc. s. m.) him, that
 man
expugnō 1 I storm
exsequor 3 dep. I carry
 out
fortior braver
fortissimus bravest
gravid-us a um pregnant
hostis host-is 3m. enemy
imāgo imāgin-is 3f.
 likeness, image
imper-um ī 2n. order
intus inside
loue. see *Iuppiter*
is (nom. s. m.) that

Iugul-ae ārum 1f. pl
 Orion
Iuppiter Iou-is 3m. Jupiter
legiō legiōn-is 3f. legion
liber liber-a um free and
 easy in (+ gen.)
long-us a um long
longior (nom. s. m.)
 longer
longiorem (acc. s. m.)
 longer
longissima (nom. s. f.)
 longest
longissimam (acc. s. f.)
 longest
Lūn-a ae 1f. moon
meditor 1 dep. I think on,
 ponder, practise
melīorem (acc. s. f.) better
melīorī (dat. s. m.) better
Mercuri-us ī 2m. Mercury
mutō 1 I change
nārrō 1 I tell, narrate
nigrior (nom. s. m.)
 blacker
nigriorem (acc. s. f.)
 blacker
Nocturn-us ī 2m.
 Nocturnus, god of
 night

Section 3A

novī (perf.) I know
nuntiō 1 I announce,
 proclaim
nuntius ī 2m. messenger
ob (+ acc.) on account of
 because of
occidō 3 I set
oper-a ae 1f. attention
oratiō oratiōn-is 3f. speech
paulisper briefly
pendō 3 *pependī* 1 hang
 probe well and truly
puḡciti-a ae 1f. modesty,
 chastity
quam than
quomodo how

reueniō 4 I return, come
 back
rex rēg-is 3m. king
sē (acc.) himself
 themselves; itself
Septentriones Septentrion-
um 3f. pl. the seven
 stars of the Great Bear
sign-um ī 2n. constellation
sol-us a um alone
Sōsi-a ae 1m. Sosia
statim (l. 35) stock still
stultior (nom. s. m.) more
 stupid
stul-tior (acc. s. m.)
 more stupid
stultissimior (acc. s. m.)
 most stupid

stultissimus (nom. s. m.)
 most stupid
Telebo-ae (ārum) 1m. pl
 the Teleboae
Theb-ae ārum 1f. pl
 Thebes
Thebān-us a um Theban
tot-us a um whole,
 complete
ueniō 4 I come
Vergili-ae ārum 1f. pl
 Pleiades
Vesperugō 3f. the Evening
 Star
victori-a ae 1f. victory
umquam ever
ut-us a um one
utrumque on both sides

Learning vocabulary for 3A

Nouns

victori-a ae 1f. victory
 triumph
bell-um ī 2n. war, conflict

imper-um ī 2n. order
 command
Iux du- 3m. leader,
 general

Iuppiter Iou-is 3m. Jupiter,
 Jov.
rex rēg-is 3m. king,
 monarch

Adjectives

long-us a um long
liber liber-a um free

niger nigr-a um black
fort-is e brave, courageous

is e-a id that; he, she, it

Verbs

ambul-ō 1 I walk
nunti-ō 1 I announce,
 proclaim

medit-or 1 dep. I think on,
 reflect, ponder; practise
bellum gerō 3 *gessi gest-*
 I wage war

ueni-ō 4 *uen-t uent-*
 I come, arrive

Others

ob + acc. on account of,
 because of

quam than; (how!)

umquam ever

Grammar and exercises for 3A

70 *is ea id* 'that', 'those', 'that person', 'he', 'she', 'it'

	s.			pl		
	m.	f.	n	m	f	n
nom.	is	ē-a	id	ē-i ¹	ē-ac	e-a
acc.	ē-um	ē-am	id	ē-ōs	e-as	ē-a
gen.	← ē-ius →			e-orum	e-īrum	e-orum
dat.	← ē-i →			← e-īs ² →		
abl.	ē-ō	ē-ā	ē-ō	← ē-is ² →		

¹ *ei* (nom. pl.) often becomes *ii*² *his* often becomes *iis*

Notes

- 1 This word works in the same way as *hic*, *ille*. On its own, it means 'that man', 'that woman', 'that thing'; 'he', 'she', 'it' depending on gender and context; describing a noun it means 'that'. The difference between *is* and *ille* is that *is* = 'the one mentioned', while *ille* = 'that one over there I'm pointing to' or 'the former one as opposed to this one'.
- 2 Apart from *is*, *id*, *eius*, *ei* (cf. *huius*, *illius*, *illi*), the word declines exactly like *mult-us a um* on the stem *e-*. This shows up most regularly in the pl.

71 Accusative of time – 'throughout', 'for', 'during'

Time 'for' or 'throughout' is expressed either by *per* + acc., or the plain acc. without any preposition at all, e.g. *per eam noctem* or *eam noctem* 'through that night', 'for that night'. Distinguish between the accusative and the plain ablative (67), which expresses time when or within which e.g. *eā nocte* 'within that night', 'in that night'.

The accusative in time phrases may be graphically represented as a line —; the ablative as a dot · or as a point within a circle ⊙.

Exercises

- 1 Decline in all cases *s.* and *pl.*: *id bellum*; *ea urbs*; *is dux*.
- 2 What case(s) and number are the following phrases in? *eius rēgis*; *ei exercitūs*; *ei uxōrī*; *iis imperiūs*; *eam uxōrem*; *eōrum nōminum*; *ea pericula*; *ea nox*; *eum lectum*; *eōs militēs*

- 3 Give the Latin (using *is*) for: (through) those days; that victory (*acc. s.*); of that war; for those kings; those generals (*acc.*); that command (*nom./acc.*); to that mistress; those customs (*nom.*); his; to them; hers; to him, to her; on that night.
- 4 Say with which of the words in each line the given part of *is* agrees (where there is ambiguity, explain the alternatives):

ei: *militem*, *uirī*, *fēminae*, *exercituī*, *puerō*, *patrēs*

eae: *uxori*, *amicae*, *noctis*, *uias*, *rēs*

ea: *imperia*, *astūtia*, *uirtūs*, *sōl*, *urbs*, *capita*, *manus*

eius: *operis*, *puerī*, *rēi*, *exercitūs*, *mōrēs*, *aedīs*

eis: *militēs*, *signīs*, *meretricibus*, *ouīs*, *uirīs*, *mōribus*

- 5 Translate: *in eō oppidō*; *ob eam uirtūtem*; *apud eōs*; *eō tempore*; *per eam uiam*; *cum eā*; *eā nocte*; *in eam urbem*; *eās hōrās*; *ad eōs militēs*; *eam noctem*; *multōs diēs*; *eō annō*; *id tempus*.
- 6 Give the Latin for (using *is*): with those women; at that hour; at his house; onto that stage; in those cities; because of those dangers; on those nights; on account of that war; over those hours.
- 7 Replace the English word in these sentences with the appropriate form of *hic*, *ille* or *is*, and translate:
- (a) (These) *fēminae pulchrae sunt*.
- (b) *uidēsne* (those) *militēs*?
- (c) *satis* (of that) *belli est*.
- (d) (That man's) *caput ingēns est*.
- (e) *turba* (of those) *mulierum ingreditur*.

72 Comparative adjectives: *longior longius* 'longer'

Comparative adjectives carry the meanings 'more . . .', 'rather . . .', '—er', 'quite . . .', 'too . . .'; e.g. *longior* 'longer', 'quite long', 'rather long'.

Basic rule: look for the stem + *-ior-* (occasionally *-ius*).

	s.		pl	
	m./f.	n	m / f	n
nom.	lōng-ior	lōngius	lōng-ior-es	lōng-ior-a
acc.	lōng-iōr-em	lōngius	lōng-iōr-es	lōng-ior-a
gen.	← lōng-iōr-is →		← lōng-iōr-um →	
dat.	← lōng-iōr-i →		← lōng-ior-ibus →	
abl.	← lōng-iōr-e →		← lōng-iōr-ibus →	

Notes

- 1 To form the comparative, take the gen. s. of the positive adjective, remove the ending (leaving you with the stem) and add the endings for the comparative as indicated above. E.g. *ingēns ingent-is* – *ingentior*; *audāx audāc-is* – *audācior*.
- 2 Comparatives have consonant stems. This accounts for abl. in -e, n. pl. in -a, gen. pl. in -um. Note -ius in nom. and acc. n. s.
- 3 The original ending of the comparative was -ios (which becomes the neuter -ius). Then the s of -ios becomes r between vowels: so *longiōrem*, not *longiōsem* (cf. Reference Grammar E5 Note 1 and H3(d) Note).
- 4 Note the Latin for 'than', used very frequently with comparatives – *quam*. The thing being compared in the *quam* clause adopts the same case as the thing it is being compared with e.g. 'Phaedra is more lovely than Euclio' – *Phaedra* (nom.) *pulchrior est quam Euclio* (nom.); 'I hold you more foolish than him' – *habeō tē stultiōrem quam illum*.

73 Superlative adjectives: *longissim-us a um* 'longest'

Superlative adjectives carry the meanings 'est', 'most . . .', 'very . . .', 'extremely . . .'; e.g. *longissimus* 'longest', 'very long', 'extremely long'.

Basic rule: look for -ISSIM- or -ERRIM-.

	s.			
	m.	f.	n.	
nom.	long-issim-us	long-issim-a	long-issim-um	
acc.	long-issim-um	long-issim-am	long-issim-um	
gen.	long-issim-ī	long-issim-ae	long-issim-ī	
dat.	long-issim-ō	long-issim-ae	long-issim-ō	
abl.	long-issim-ō	long-issim-ā	long-issim-ō	

	f.			
	m.	f.	n.	
nom.	long-issim-ī	long-issim-ae	long-issim-a	
acc.	long-issim-ōs	long-issim-ās	long-issim-a	
gen.	long-issim-ōrum	long-issim-ārum	long-issim-ōrum	
dat.		long-issim-īs		
abl.		long-issim-īs		

Notes

- 1 These superlatives are again based on the gen. s. stem of the positive adjective, to which the endings -issimus -issima -issimum (older spelling

- issum-us) are added, declining exactly like *multus*, e.g. *ingēns ingent-is ingentissimus a um*.
- 2 Adjectives ending in -er like *pulcher*, *celer*, *miser*, form their comparatives regularly (based on the stem of the gen. s.) but have superlatives in -errimus a um, e.g. *pulcher* (*pulchr-ī*) comp. *pulchrior*, sup. *pulcherrimus*; *celer* (*celer-is*) comp. *celerrior*, sup. *celerrimus*; *miser* (*miser-ī*) comp. *miserrior*, sup. *misererrimus*.
 - 3 Two common irregular adjectives are *facilis*, *similis* (and their opposites *difficilis*, *dissimilis*). These have regular comparatives (*facilior*, *similior*), but irregular superlatives *facillimus*, *simillimus*. See Reference Grammar J3

Exercise

Add the appropriate forms of both comparative and superlative degrees of the given adjective to the nouns:

longus: diem, nocte
celer: mīlītēs, oculō
ingēns: aedēs, familiam
pulcher: manūs, mulierum
stultus: cōsilia, hominī, operum

74 Irregular comparatives and superlatives: *bonus, malus, multus, magnus, parvus*

bon-us a um	melior (meliōr-is)	optim-us a um	'good', 'better', 'best' (cf. <i>ameliorate</i> , <i>optimise</i>)
mal-us a um	peior (peiōr-is)	pessim-us a um	'bad', 'worse', 'worst' (cf. <i>pejorative</i> , <i>pessimist</i>)
mult-us a um	plūs (plūr-is)	plūrim-us a um	'much', 'more' 'most' (cf. <i>plus +</i>)
magn-us a um	maior (maiōr-is)	maxim-us a um	'big', 'bigger', 'biggest' (cf. <i>major</i> , <i>maximise</i>)

paru-us a um	minor (minor-is)	minim-us a um	'small' 'few', 'smaller' 'fewer', 'less', 'smallest', 'fewest'/'least' 1 minor, minimise)
--------------	------------------	---------------	---

These decline quite regularly (see *longior longissimus*) except for *plūs*.

	s.	pl
	(<i>plūs plūr-is</i> 3m., noun)	(<i>plūrēs plūra</i> , 3rd decl. adj)
		m./f. n
nom.	plūs	plūrēs plūra
acc.	plūs	plūr-is (plūrēs) plūra
gen.	plūris	←plūrium→
dat.	—	←plūribus→
abl.	plūre	←plūribus→

Notes

- Note: abl. s. in -e, n. pl. in -a; and then gen. pl. in -um. *plūs* is consonant-stem, but *plūrēs* is i-stem (cf. 12)
- To express 'more . . .' in the s., *plūs* + gen. 'more of . . .' is used (cf. *satis, nimis, quid?*), e.g. *plūs pecūniae* 'more (of) money'. In the pl., *plūrēs* is an adjective and agrees regularly with its noun, e.g. *plūrēs hominēs* 'more men'.

Exercises

- Construct comparative and superlative of the following adjectives, giving their meanings when you have done so: *liber*, *fortis*, *bonus*, *niger*, *similis*, *magnus*, *celer*, *paruus*, *scelestus*, *stultus*, *malus*, *trīstis*, *facilis*, *multus*, *ingēns*.
- Translate these sentences:
 - rēx deōrum et hominum eam noctem cum eā muliere in aedibus mānsit*
 - eius uir, Amphitruō, domō fortissimō cum exercitū abiit.*
 - ea Iouem Amphitruōnem arbitrātur, quod is sē¹ illi similem fēcit.*
 - is deus eam tōtam² noctem amat, quod fēminam pulchriōrem numquam uidit quam eam.*

- is eam noctem propter Alcumenam longiōrem fēcit*
- immō longissimam omnium fēcit noctem eam noctem*
- Mercurius, eius filius, deus summā est astūtia. immō astūtior is est quam omnēs dī atque hominēs.*
- is sē Sōsiae seruō simillimum fēcit*
- Amphitruō hāc nocte domum regrediētur, quod in bellō rem bene gessit et uictōriam tulit maximam*
- seruum quam Sōsiam stultiōrem, deum quam Mercurium scelestiōrem, numquam in scaenā uidī*

3 Translate these sentences

- posteriōrēs cōgitatiōnēs, ut aiunt, sapientiōrēs solent esse. (Cicero)*
- nōn faciunt meliōrem equum aureī frēnī. (Seneca)*
- uideō meliōra probōque. (Ovid)*
- nūlla seruitūs turpior est quam uoluntāria. (Seneca)*
- amā ratiōnem: huius tē amor contrā dūrissima armābit. (Seneca)*

posterior us later
cōgitatiō cōgitatiō-is 3f.
thought
aīō I saw
sapientis sapient-is wise
soleō 2 I am accustomed
frēn-ī ōrum 2m. pl. bridle

probō I approve
deterior us worse
seruitūs seruitut-is 3f.
slavery
turp-is e base, degrading
uoluntari-us a um
voluntary, willing

ratiō ratiō-is 3f. reason
amor amor-is 3m. love
contra (+ acc) against
dūr-us a um hard, difficult
armō I I arm, equip

Reading

Read (translating in word-order) each of these incomplete sentences (all containing a comparative idea) and choose from the pool below them the correct phrase to complete them. Then translate into correct English.

- noctem numquam uidī longiōrem . . .*
- hic seruus audācior est . . .*
- eī senī aurī plūs dabō . . .*
- hōc tempore nigrior est nox . . .*
- is uir maiōre uirtūte est . . .*
- seruum stultissimum mālō . . .*
- numquam periculum maius ferre poterō . . .*

- (h) mīltēs numquam fuērunt fortiōrēs . . .
 (i) uirumne deō similiōrem umquam uīdistis . . . ?
 (j) fēmināsne pulchriōrēs umquam cōspicābor . . . ?

quam hic; quam hoc; quam hanc; quam huic; quam eās; quam illī; quam eum; quam ille; quam mendācem; quam illō.

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Read this passage carefully, translating in word-order, defining the functions of words and the groups to which they belong, and stating at each point what you anticipate on the basis of the information you already have. Then translate into correct English. Finally, read out in Latin, phrasing correctly, thinking through the meaning as you read. Use the running vocabulary of 3A

Mercurius, deōrum astūtissimus, ad urbem Thēbās cum patre uenit, quod is fēminam pulcherrimam amat, uxōrem ducis legiōnum Thēbānārum. Iuppiter quamquam ea fēmina nūpta est, tamen cum eā tōtam noctem cubāre uult. hārum rērum, ut uidēmus, liberiōrēs esse quam hominēs dī possunt, quod habent imperium maximum, mortemque numquam patiuntur. Alcūmēna autem uirum ualdē amat Mercurium igitur Iuppiter sēcum attulit, quod is dolōs plūrimōs atque astūtiās optimās scit. Mercurius igitur sē Sōsiae, Amphitruōnis seruō, similem, Iuppiter autem Amphitruōnī sē simillimum fecit. ita in aedīs Amphitruōnis dī intrāuērunt. Iuppiter, rēx hominum atque deōrum, Alcūmēnam clam tōtam noctem amāuit et grauidam fēcit. immō grauidiōrem eam fēcit, quod Amphitruō quoque eam grauidam fēcit eā nocte, ubi ad bellum abiit. nunc deus maximus, quod Alcūmēnam ualdē amat, noctem longiōrem fēcit et Mercurium ante aedīs posuit.¹ mox Sōsia ad aedīs adgrediētur et intrāre cōnābitur, eum Mercurius ab aedibus abiget.

¹ posuit 'has placed'

English-Latin

1 Translate into Latin:

- (a) This victory was greater than that (one).
 (b) In those years because of the command of a rather stupid king, many very brave soldiers fought a very long war.
 (c) There is nothing better than the duty of the best citizens.

- (d) The wisdom of the gods is greater than (that) of men. (Miss out the second 'that')
 (e) My brother is more like my father than me
 (f) Nothing is worse than this trouble

2 Read the text of 3A again, then translate this passage into Latin

SOSIA Who is (there) better than I?

MERCURY Who more rotten?

SOS. No, I'm truly the best of all slaves, the bravest of all men

MER. And the most stupid of fools!

SOS. I'm rather bold because on this very long night I'm walking alone through these streets. And I've certainly never seen a blacker night or a longer (one) than this. Why is the moon not changing, nor these constellations² setting? Will the day never appear

MER. I want you, night, to go on just as you are going on now

For you will never do a greater duty for my father than this

Use again

Deliciae Latinae

Word exercise

Give the Latin connections of: victory, bellicose, imperial, regal, urban, long, summit, liberal, meditate, fortitude

Everyday Latin

The ego (and *superego*) and the *id* were terms used by Sigmund Freud to denote respectively the conscious and subconscious self

i.e. = *id est* 'that is'

An argument *ā fortiōrī* (alternative later form for the classical *fortiōre*) is one 'from a stronger case' e.g. 'Hercules cannot pick up this rock; *ā fortiōrī* a baby will not be able to'

Other useful comparatives are *posterior* ('further behind'), *superior* ('higher'), *iūnior* ('younger' from *iuuenis*, cf. English 'junior'), *senior* ('older' from *senex*)

ē plūribus ūnum 'from rather many (peoples), one' – the American motto
An important principle of law is *dē minimīs nōn cūrat lēx* – meaning?

Word study

summus

summus means 'the top', 'highest point' and gives us 'to sum', i.e. calculate the total of, since the Romans added columns of figures from the bottom up, till they reached the *summa linea* 'the top line'. Hence a 'sum', especially of money. *summarius* is an accountant, one who does the sums, or sums up, whence English 'summary'. A 'summit' is the highest point of a hill. A 'consummation' is the complete (*con-*) summing up, so a completion or achievement.

Do not confuse with 'summon' – from *submoneō* 'warn secretly' – or words like 'consume', 'assume' from *sūmō* 'take up' 'take upon oneself' 'spend'.

fortis

fortis means 'strong' or 'brave'. The English 'force' derives ultimately from the n. pl. of *fortis*, i.e. *fortia*. English derivatives include 'fort', 'fortify' and 'fortitude'. They also include 'comfort' ('strengthen together' or 'strengthen considerably') and 'effort' (through Old French *esforts*, 'forcing oneself out' (*es-* = Latin *ex*)).

Section 3B

Running vocabulary for 3B

<i>adep̄t</i> m. p. nom. having gained taken	<i>adp̄t</i> s. out. they attacked	land, field
<i>adep̄t-a</i> (nom. s. n.) having gained	<i>adp̄t-s</i> m. pl. n. m. having attacked	<i>Alcumen-a</i> ae 1f Alcumen
<i>adp̄t</i> m. out. v. gained took	<i>adp̄t-a</i> s. out. he addressed	<i>ad-a</i> ae 1f. altar
	<i>adp̄t-a</i> 2n. territory	<i>adp̄t-a</i> m. 2n. possession power

Argiū-us a um Argive,
Greek
audācter courageously,
boldly
cael-um ī 2n. sky
castr-a ōrum 2n. pl. camp
canō 3 *cecimī* I sound
caus-a ae 1f. reason
celeriter quickly
clamor clāmōr-is 3m. shout
collocūtī (nom. pl. m.)
having discussed
collocūtī sunt (they)
discussed
condiciō *condicion-is* 3f
terms
cōsentiō 4 *cōsēnsī* I reach
agreement
cōsonō I *cōsonuī* I roar
cōspiciātus (nom. s. m.)
having caught sight of
opt-ae ārum 1f. pl. troops
tradidit 3 *dēdidī* I hand over,
surrender
adēducō 3 I lead off
denique finally, at last
dirimō 3 *dirēmī* I break off,
end
diuīn-us a um divine
domin-a ae 1f. mistress
egredior 2 *egressi* I lead out
egressi sunt they came out,
disembarked
egressi having
disembarked
equit-ēs um 3m. pl.
cavalry
exsecūtus (nom. s. m.)
having carried out
exsequor 3 I carry out
extrā (+ acc.) outside,
beyond
ferōci-a ae 1f. fierceness
ferōciter fiercely

foct-us ī 2m. hearth
fortiter bravely
fug-a ae 1f. flight, escape
hortātus (nom. s. m.)
having encouraged
hortatus est (he)
encouraged
hostis *host-is* 3m. enemy
humān-us a um human
illūstr-is e famous
imperātor *imperator-is* 3m.
commander
ingressus (nom. s. m.)
having entered
iniūst-us a um unjust
instruō 3 *instrūxī* I draw
up
iūst-us a um just
legat-us ī 2m. ambassador
legat-us 3m. legation
locūt-um 2n. pl.
spoken
locūtī sunt (they) spoke
locūtī (nom. pl. m.)
having spoken
locūtus (nom. s. m.)
having spoken
man-us ūs 4m. hand
medi-us a um middle
minātī (nom. pl. m.)
having threatened
miserē unhappily
nāu-is is 3f. ship
necesse necessary
oppugnō 1 I attack
ordō *ordin-is* 3m. rank
pax-um ī 2n. peace,
freedom from war
pāx *pac-is* 3f. peace
paulisper briefly
post (+ acc.) after
postrēmō finally
prō-p̄t next day
pro-p̄t 3 *pro-p̄t* I pitch, pass

precātī (nom. pl. m.)
having prayed (to)
precatus (nom. s. m.)
having prayed to
precātus est (he) prayed to
producō 3 *prodūxī* I lead
forward
proeli-um ī 2n. battle
profectī (nom. pl. m.)
having set out
progressi having advanced
progressi sunt (they)
advanced
proterō 3 *protrūī*
I trample down
pugnō 1 I fight
redūcō 3 I lead back
regressi sunt (they)
returned
sē himself, themselves
(nb. pl. at l. 84)
sēque and themselves
subitō suddenly
su-us a um his, her
superō 1 I gain the upper
hand
tant-us a um so much, so
great
terrestr-is 1f. land
tuba ae 1f. trumpet
tu- part of *tu-* rate, nr
hear, I hear miss 1f
carries
tu- 1 dep. a protect
a *tu-* nr. ardently
asper m. per. 2n. 3 sk
evening
delat-um 2n. the
delatation
delat-um 3m
conqueror
delat-um 3 take revenge
a *delat-um* + a. right of
to
delat-um 3m. the

Learning vocabulary for 3B

Nouns

<i>cōpi-ae</i> ārum 1f. pl. troops	<i>ōti-um</i> ī 2n. cessation of conflict, leisure; inactivity
<i>ferōci-a</i> ae 1f. fierceness	<i>proeli-um</i> ī 2n. battle
<i>terr-a</i> ae 1f. land	<i>eques equit-is</i> 3m horseman; (pl.), cavalry
<i>lēgāt-us</i> ī 2m. ambassador	
<i>ager agr-ī</i> 2m. land, field, territory	
<i>castr-a</i> ōrum 2n. pl. camp	

Adjectives

<i>illūstr-is</i> e famous
<i>su-us</i> a um his, her(s), their(s)

Verbs

<i>oppugnō</i> 1 I attack	<i>dēduc-ō</i> 3 <i>dēdux-ī</i> <i>dēduct-</i> I lead away, lead down
<i>super-ō</i> 1 I conquer, overcome, get the upper hand	<i>ēduc-ō</i> 3 <i>ēdux-ī</i> <i>ēduct-</i> I lead out
<i>hort-or</i> 1 <i>hortāt-us</i> dep. I urge, encourage	<i>reduc-ō</i> 3 <i>redux-ī</i> <i>reduct-</i> I lead back
<i>dēd-ō</i> 3 <i>dedid-ī</i> <i>dēdit-</i> I surrender, hand over	<i>adipisc-or</i> 3 <i>adept-us</i> dep. I get, gain, acquire

<i>hostis host-is</i> 3m enemy
<i>legiō legiōn-is</i> 3f. legion
<i>navis nav-is</i> 3f. ship
<i>pax pa-is</i> 3f. peace
<i>man-us</i> us 4f. band; (hand)

<i>idloqu-or</i> (<i>alloqu-or</i>) 3
<i>adlocut-us</i> (<i>allocut-us</i>) dep. I address
<i>prohisc-or</i> 3 <i>profect-us</i> dep. I set out
<i>me fer-ō</i> (<i>ferm-tus</i>) <i>lat-</i> I charge, attack (lit. 'I bear myself')

Others

<i>celeriter</i> quickly	<i>fortiter</i> bravely	<i>utrimque</i> on both sides
<i>ferociter</i> fiercely		

Grammar and exercises for 3B

75 Perfect indicative deponent: 'I —ed', 'I have —ed'

	1	2	3
	<i>minor</i> 'I threatened / have threatened'	<i>polliceor</i> 'I promised / have promised'	<i>loquor</i> 'I spoke / have spoken'
1st s.	<i>mināt-us</i> a um sum	<i>pollicit-us</i> a um sum	<i>locūt-us</i> a um sum
2nd s.	<i>mināt-us</i> a um es	<i>pollicit-us</i> a um es	<i>locūt-us</i> a um es
3rd s.	<i>mināt-us</i> a um est	<i>pollicit-us</i> a um est	<i>locūt-us</i> a um est

1st pl	<i>mināt-i</i> ae a sūmus	<i>pollicit-i</i> ae a sūmus	<i>locūt-i</i> ae a sūmus
2nd pl	<i>mināt-i</i> ae a estis	<i>pollicit-i</i> ae a estis	<i>locūt-i</i> ae a estis
3rd pl	<i>mināt-i</i> ae a sunt	<i>pollicit-i</i> ae a sunt	<i>locūt-i</i> ae a sunt

4	<i>mentior</i> 'I lied / have lied'	3/4 <i>prōgredior</i> 'I advanced / have advanced'
1st s.	<i>mentit-us</i> a um sum	<i>prōgrēss-us</i> a um sum
2nd s.	<i>mentit-us</i> a um es	<i>prōgrēss-us</i> a um es
3rd s.	<i>mentit-us</i> a um est	<i>prōgrēss-us</i> a um est
1st pl	<i>mentit-i</i> ae a sūmus	<i>prōgrēss-i</i> ae a sūmus
2nd pl	<i>mentit-i</i> ae a estis	<i>prōgrēss-i</i> ae a estis
3rd pl	<i>mentit-i</i> ae a sunt	<i>prōgrēss-i</i> ae a sunt

Notes

1 Formation of perfect stem

- (a) The perfect stem of the deponent is regularly formed by adding *-t-us a um* to the stem of the verb. Thus:

1st conj.: *minā-t-us a um*

2nd conj.: *pollici-t-us a um* (note that *-e* changes to *-i*)

4th conj.: *mentī-t-us a um*

Standing on its own, it forms the perfect participle and means 'having —ed' (see 77), e.g. *minātus* 'having threatened' etc.

- (b) You have now met the three 'principal parts' of deponent verbs, i.e. the present indicative active (e.g. *minor*), the infinitive (e.g. *minārī*) and the perfect (e.g. *minātus*). Of regular deponent verbs, the principal parts are formed as follows.

1: *minor minārī minātus*

2: *polliceor pollicērī pollicitus*

4: *mentior mentīrī mentītus*

These are the bases for forming all parts of the deponent, and must be learned from now on.

- (c) As we found with non-deponent verbs, however, 3rd and 3rd/4th conjugation deponent verbs are unpredictable in their formation of the perfect stem. Perfect stems of these verbs are formed in *-t-us a um* and *-s-us a um*. Here are the three 'principal parts' of the irregular deponents you have met so far (including one 2nd decl. verb)

in -s-us a um

- 2 uideor uidērī uīsus 'I seem'

- 3/4 (ad-) } gredior gredī gressus 'I go', 'I come'
 (ē-) }
 (in-) }
 (prō-) }
- patior patī passus 'I endure', 'I undergo', 'I suffer'

in -t-us a um

- 3 (ad-) loquor loquī locūtus 'I speak (to)'
 sequor sequī secūtus 'I follow'
 obliuiscor obliuiscī oblītus 'I forget'
 irāscor irāscī irātus 'I get angry'
 adipiscor adipiscī adeptus 'I gain', 'I get'
 proficiscor proficiscī profectus 'I set out'

2 Formation of deponent perfect indicative

To form the perfect indicative deponent, the perfect stem ending in -us -a -um (which means on its own 'having —ed') is combined with the appropriate part of *sum es est sumus estis sunt*, e.g. *locūtus sum* (lit.) 'I am (in a state of) having spoken', 'I spoke', 'I have spoken', 'I did speak'. Since the perfect stem ending in -us -a -um acts as an adjective, it must agree with the subject, e.g.

- 'I (= a woman) spoke' *locūta sum*
 'they (= the men) promised' *pollicitī sunt*
 'the boy lied' *puer mentītus est*
 'you (= the women) set out' *profectae estis*

The perfect stem in -us a um will be in the *nominative*, since it is agreeing with the subject of the sentence.

3 Meaning

The meaning, literally 'I am (in a state of) having —ed', can be treated as identical with 'I —ed', 'I have —ed' and (in certain cases) 'I am —' — a present state which results from a past action

76 Semi-deponents: *audeō* and *fiō*

A number of verbs, called 'semi-deponents', adopt *active forms* in some tenses, and *deponent forms* in others. Of the tenses you have met so far,

present and future forms of such verbs are *active in form*; the perfects, however, are *deponent in form*. Thus:

audeō 'I dare' *audēre* 'to dare' (no perfect active stem) *ausus* 'having dared'

Present	Future	Perfect
<i>audeō</i> 'I dare'	<i>audē-b-ō</i> 'I shall dare'	<i>aūs-us a um sum</i> 'I dared'
<i>aude-s</i>	<i>audē-bi-s</i>	<i>aūs-us a um es</i>
<i>aude-t</i>	<i>audē-bi-t</i>	<i>aūs-us a um est</i>
<i>audē-mus</i>	<i>audē-bi-mus</i>	<i>aūs-ī ac a sumus</i>
<i>audē-tis</i>	<i>audē-bi-tis</i>	<i>aūs-ī ac a estis</i>
<i>aude-nt</i>	<i>audē-bu-nt</i>	<i>aūs-ī ac a sunt</i>

fiō 'I become', 'I am made', 'I happen' *fierī* 'to become, be made' (no perfect active stem) *factus* 'having become', 'having been made'

Present	Future	Perfect
<i>fi-ō</i> 'I become' etc.	<i>fi-a-m</i> 'I shall become' etc.	<i>fāct-us a um sum</i> 'I became' etc.
<i>fi-s</i>	<i>fi-ē-s</i>	<i>fāct-us a um es</i>
<i>fi-t</i>	<i>fi-e-t</i>	<i>fāct-us a um est</i>
<i>fi-</i>	<i>fi-ē-mus</i>	<i>fāct-ī ac a sumus</i>
<i>fi-</i>	<i>fi-ē-tis</i>	<i>fāct-ī ac a estis</i>
<i>fi-unt</i>	<i>fi-e-nt</i>	<i>fāct-ī ac a sunt</i>

¹ *finus* and *fitus* are not found

Exercises

- 1 Form and conjugate the perfect of: *meditor*, *cōnor*, *uideor*, *obliuiscor*, *proficiscor*, *mentior*, *prōgredior*, *patior*, (optional: *cōspicor*, *adipiscor*, *polliceor*, *hortor*, *sequor*, *recordor*, *ēgredior*, *irāscor*).
- 2 Translate each perfect then change s. to pl. and vice versa: *locūtus sum*; *uīsum est*; *recordāta est*; *mentītī sumus*; *ingressae sunt*, *pollicita es*; *secūta sunt*; *adeptus est*; (optional: *irāta est*; *oblītus sum*; *passa es*, *profectus est*; *meditātī estis*; *arbitrātī sunt*; *suspiciātae sunt*).
- 3 Say what verbs these perfects come from and translate: *uīsus est*; *adepta est*, *oblītus sum*; *ingressae sumus*; *locūtī estis*; *profectī sunt*; *factum est*.
- 4 Give the Latin for: she has threatened; they (m.) set out; I (m.) have

encouraged; you (s. f.) seemed; we (f.) forgot; he promised; it happened; you (pl. m.) have lied.

- 5 Give 3rd s. and pl. present, future and perfect of these verbs and translate: *irāscor*, *minor*, *polliceor*, *mentior*, *patior*, (optional: *proficīscor*, *ingredior*, *uideor*, *fiō*, *recordor*).

77 Perfect participles deponent: 'having —ed'

A participle is an adjective which derives from a verb and shares the nature of both (from *pars* and *capiō* 'take a share/part in'). In English, it tends to be formed in '—ing' or 'having —ed', e.g. 'I saw the man running', 'the men, having departed, reached home'. The perfect stem of deponent verbs ending in *-us*, *-a*, *-um* is the perfect participle and means 'having —ed', e.g. *minātus* 'having threatened', *locūtus* 'having spoken', *ēgressus* 'having gone out'. These perfect participles decline like *multus a um* and, like any adjectives, agree with the person described as 'having —ed', e.g. 'the woman, having spoken, goes out' *mulier locūta ēgreditur*; 'the men, having spoken, go out' *homines locūtī ēgrediuntur*; 'I see the soldiers having gone-out / the soldiers when they have gone out' *mīlitēs ēgressōs uideō*.

Participles are on the whole used predicatively, i.e. they say what people *do* rather than *describe* or *define* people. Thus *mulier locūta ēgreditur* should be translated 'the woman — after speaking/having spoken/when she has spoken/speaks and — goes out'. It is not accurate to translate it 'the woman *who has spoken* goes out'. See 'predicative', p. xxi.

Exercises

- 1 Give the meaning of these words and say from what verb each comes: *locūtus*, *profectus*, *adeptus*, *irātus*, *cōnātus*, *precātus*, *suspiciātus*, *pollicitus*, *hortātus*, *uīsus*, *ēgressus*, *factus*, (optional: *arbitrātus*, *opīnātus*, *mentītus*, *secūtus*, *passus*, *adgressus*).
- 2 Translate these sentences:
 - (a) *mīlitem ingressum cēpit*.
 - (b) *hominēs paulum (a little) meditātī uēnērunt*.
 - (c) *ille multa mentītus abiit*.
 - (d) *exercitus celeriter ex urbe prōgressus mox castra posuit*.
 - (e) *haec locūta exiit*.

78 Translation hint

Deponent participles can, of course, control their own little clauses (and sometimes not so little), in the same way that infinitives do. Observe how infinitives and some direct objects in the following sentences depend on the participle, not on the main verb

hominēs fugere cōnātōs necāuimus 'we killed the men having-trying to escape', '... the men after they had tried to escape' (*fugere* depends on *cōnātōs*)

mulierēs hoc locūtās nōn amō 'I do not like the women having-said / since they said this'

mīlitēs, multa minātī, ēgrediuntur 'the soldiers, having threatened much, depart'

Observe the way in which the participles in such complex sentences gravitate towards the end of their clause, in the same way that main verbs and infinitives tend to. Often this results in a pleasing 'bracketing' effect rather like an equation, especially when the participle has a direct object, e.g. 'The priest, seeing the horse galloping down the street, gave chase.' A typical Latin order for this would be: 'The priest (nom.), the horse (acc.) down the street galloping (acc.) seeing (nom.), gave chase.'

Exercise

Select subject, verb, adjective and participle in these sentences.

- (a) She writhed about, convulsed with scarlet pain. (Keats)
- (b) Naked she lay, clasped in my longing arms. (Rochester)
- (c) I saw three ships go sailing by on Christmas day. (Do you place 'on Christmas day' with the 'I saw' clause or the 'go sailing by' clause?)
- (d) Know you not, / Being mechanical, you ought not walk / Upon a labouring day . . . ? (Shakespeare)
- (e) See! from the Brake the whirring Pheasant springs,
And mounts exulting on triumphant Wings:
Short is his Joy; he feels the fiery Wound,
Flutters in Blood, and panting beats the Ground. (Pope)

79 Regular and irregular adverbs

A common way of forming adverbs in English is to add '-ly' to an adjective (e.g. 'slow-ly', 'quick-ly', 'passionate-ly'). In Latin, adverbs (which never change) are also regularly formed from adjectives as follows.

Adverbs based on 1st/2nd declension adjectives: add -ē to the stem, e.g. *stultus* – *stultē* 'foolishly'; *miser* – *miserē* 'unhappily'; *pulcher* – *pulchrē* 'beautifully'. A very few end in -ter.

Adverbs based on 3rd declension adjectives: add -(i)ter to the stem, e.g. *fortis* – *fortiter* 'bravely'; *audāx* – *audācter* 'boldly'; *celer* – *celeriter* 'swiftly'. But note an important exception: *facile* 'easily'.

Here are some irregularly formed adverbs:

bonus – *bene* 'well'

parvus – *paulum* '(a) little', 'slightly'

multus – *multum* 'much'

magnus – *magnopere* 'greatly' (= *magnō* + *opere*)

NB. *longē* (regularly formed from *longus* 'long') 'far'.

Exercises

- 1 Identify and translate the adverbs in this list: *hōrum*, *audācter*, *mulier*, *malum*, *multae*, *male*, *liberī*, *bene*, *omne*, *liberē*, *magnopere*, *multum*, *scelere*, *pater*, *celeriter*, *pulchrē*, *proelium*, *paulum*.
- 2 Form adverbs from these adjectives and translate: *stultus*, *bonus*, *fortis*, *longus*, *similis*, *saeuus*, *tacitus*, *magnus*, *celer*, *multus*, *miser*.
- 3 The Roman literary critic Quintilian here lists the sorts of styles an orator will need to develop to suit all occasions. Translate:

dīcet . . . *grauiter*, *seuērē*, *ācriter*, *uehementer*, *concitātē*, *cōpiōsē*, *amārē*, *cōmiter*, *remissē*, *subtīliter*, *blandē*, *lēniter*, *dulciter*, *breuiter*, *urbānē*.

gravis serious
seuerus stern
concitatus passionate
amarus bitter

cōmis affable
remissus gentle
subtilis precise

blandus flattering
lēnis kind
urbānus witty

sē; su-us a um

So far you have met *ego* 'I' (pl. *nōs* 'we'), *tū* (pl. *uōs* 'you') and their possessive forms *meus* 'mine', *tuus* 'your(s)', *noster* 'our(s)', *uester* 'your(s)'. But we have not yet fully grappled with the reflexive forms for 'him, her, it, them' and their possessive forms 'his, her(s), its, their(s)'. Latin makes an important distinction between reflexive usage of such words (which means that the 'him, her' etc. being referred to is the same person as the subject of the clause) and non-reflexive (when the 'him, her' etc. being referred to is *not* the same person as the subject of the clause). When Latin uses a form of *sē*, the 'him, her, it, them' being referred to is *the same person as the subject of the verb of the particular clause*. Likewise, when Latin uses a form of *suus a um*, the person referred to in the 'his', 'her(s)', 'their(s)' is *the same as the subject of the verb*, e.g.:

Phaedra sē amat 'Phaedra loves (*sē* MUST = Phaedra) herself'

Nicobūlus suōs nummōs habet 'Nicobulus has (*suōs* MUST refer to Nicobulus) his own (i.e. no-one else's) money'

Phaedra eam amat 'Phaedra loves (*eam* CANNOT be Phaedra) her (i.e. some else)'

Nicobūlus eius nummōs habet 'Nicobulus has (*eius* CANNOT refer to Nicobulus) his (someone else's) money'

sē declined

	s / pl
nom.	—
acc.	se
gen.	sui
dat.	sibi
abl.	sē

NB. The forms are the same for s. and pl. and all genders. Reference to the subject of the verb will tell you whether to translate s. or pl., m., f. or n.

su-us a um

This possessive adjective 'his', 'hers', 'its', 'theirs' declines like *multi-us a um*.

Exercises

1 Translate the following sentences:

- hostem iratum et multa minatum miles audax saevē adgressus est.
- equitēs ē castris suis ēgressi ad urbem celeriter prōgressi sunt
- nauem adeptus celerem rex longē ā terrā suā fugit
- uxorī multa locutae uir ferociter respondit
- ubi lēgati hostis adlocuti sunt, ad castra regressi uerba eorum duci nostrō nuntiāuerunt
- dux militēs hortatus audacter sē in proelium tulit
- hostēs nostrorum ferociam equitum passi in oppidum suum fugerunt et ibi sē celāuerunt

2 Translate these sentences:

- nōn uiuere bonum est, sed bene uiuere. (Seneca)
- nemo togam sumit nisi mortuus. (Juvenal)
- multorum opēs praepotentium excludunt amicitias fidelis: nōn enim solum ipsa fortuna caeca est, sed eōs etiam plerumque efficit caecōs quōs complexa est. (Cicero)

uir 3 f live

tog-a ae 1f. toga

sumō 3 f put on

moriōr 3/4 dep. mortuus

1 die

op-ēs op-um 3f. pl. wealth

praepotēns praepotent-is

3m very powerful

man

excludō 3 f exclude,

prevent

amiciti-a ae 1f. friendship

fidel-is e loyal, faithful

nōn solum . . . sed etiam

not only . . . but also

ipsa herself (nom. s. f)

fortūn-a ae 1f. fortune

caec-us a um blind

plerumque generally

efficiō 3/4 f make (x acc

y acc)

quōs (acc. pl. m) whom

complector 3 dep

complexus f embrace

Reading

- As you translate in word-order, determine the limits of the participle phrase in each of these sentences and say what function it has in the sentence (i.e. agreeing with and describing subject, object, indirect object etc.) Then translate into correct English, finally returning to the Latin to read it out correctly phrased. E.g. hanc praedam adepti domum regressi sunt. Participle phrase: hanc . . . adepti: agreeing with subject. 'When they had obtained this booty, they returned home'. Read out with a comma pause after adepti.

- Amphitruō igitur militēs eō tempore hortatus in proelium sē tulit
- dux militēs allocutus est et praedam post uictōriam pollicitus signum dedit
- uxor Amphitruōnis uirum in uia cōspicāta domo ēgressa est.
- uxorī multa precatae et cōstantiam uiri recordatae Amphitruō tamen nīl respondit
- seruus autem dominum multa mentitus facile decēpit

- Read these participle phrases, translating in word-order, and decide their function in the sentence (NB. there are no ablatives). Then pair each with the correct ending from the list below. Finally, having translated into correct English, read aloud in Latin, phrasing correctly, and thinking through the meaning as you read

a) ciuibus otium et pācem adeptis

b) lēgātōs haec uerba locūtōs . . .

c) manum seruōrum in castra hostium profectōrum . .

d) eī mulierī clam in bellum uirum secūtae . .

e) ducem ad exercitum hostium prōgressum .

militēs mala uerba locūtī sunt

dux hostium castigāuit

bellum malum uidetur maximum esse

legiōnēs secūtae sunt

dominī necāuerunt

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Read this passage carefully, translating in word-order, determining as you go the function of the words met and the groups in which they should be phrased and stating what each new item makes you anticipate. Translate into correct English, then read aloud in Latin, phrasing correctly, thinking through the meaning as you read

Tēleboās praedam nostrā in terrā plūrimam adeptōs dux noster ulcisci uoluit. cum exercitū igitur in terram Tēleboarum profectus bellum cum eis gessit. Amphitruō autem, uir summā uirtute, per lēgātōs locutus Tēleboās praedam reddere iussit, sed Tēleboae, uiri summā ferociā, multa ferociter locuti multaque exercitui nostrō minati. Amphitruōnem statim abire iussērunt. ergō proelium factum est. dux noster deos

precātus atque exercitum hortātus mīlītēs in proelium dūxit. hostis fortiter progressōs tandem uīcīmus. Amphitruō autem lēgatōs hostium postrīdiē in castra accēpit, hanc uictōriam adeptus tam illūstrem. lēgātī hostium, ubi ex urbe profectī sunt et ad castra uēnērunt, ducem uehementer precātī nostrum dēdidērunt sē in eius arbitrium. 10

English-Latin

1 Translate into Latin:

- Our general, after encouraging the army, gave the signal.
- Amphitruo addressed the enemy through ambassadors
- All men when they have gained wisdom prefer peace and leisure to war.
- The enemy set out from the camp at that hour.
- Although I have tried to speak clearly to them, the enemy have threatened me fiercely.
- They killed the man when he had spoken thus

2 Read through the text of 3B again and then translate this passage

SOSIA When Amphitruo had spoken through ambassadors to them, the Teleboans replied thus to him: 'You have attacked our land. Go away at once. If you do not leave, we will fight.' Thus they spoke. But Amphitruo, a man of very great courage, after advancing with his army from the camp, encouraged his men. Then he led them into battle. The battle was (a) massive (one). However, our leader gained a famous victory and has now returned home.

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building

Prefixes

The prefix *dī-* or *dis-* (or *dif-*) means 'apart', 'asunder', 'not' (occasionally 'exceedingly'), e.g.

- distō* 1 'I stand apart' (cf. 'distant')
dissideō 'I sit apart' (i.e. disagree) (cf. 'dissident')
differō 'I scatter', 'I differ'

sē- as a prefix means 'apart', 'without', e.g. *sēcūrus* 'free from worry', *sēdūcō* 'I lead aside, astray', *sēditiō* 'a going (eō, it-) apart', *sēdulus* 'aside from tricks' (*dolus* 'trick'), *sēcrētus* 'separated apart' (cf. English 'secret' – something set apart; hence 'a secretary' deals with confidentialities). This *sē-* has nothing to do with *sē* reflexive.

Word exercise

Give the meaning and discuss the Latin connections of: copious, *terra firma*, legation, agrarian, otiose, hostile, naval, pacify, ferocious, invincible, exhort, illustrious, suicide (*-cīd-* – simple verb *caedō* 'I kill').

Everyday Latin

per sē 'through itself', 'because of its own nature'

Real Latin

Martial

*difficilis facilis, iūcundus acerbus es idem
 nec tēcum possum uiuere, nec sine tē. (12.46)*

<i>iūcundus</i> sweet 1	NB Gender	<i>idem</i> the same (nom.)
<i>acerbus</i> bitter 1		<i>uiuō</i> 3 I live

Motto

agnus in pāce, leō in bellō. (Edmonds)

agnus 1 2m. lamb
leō 1 3m. lion

Word study

castrum

castrum in the s. means a fortified post or settlement, in the pl. a camp. The '-caster', '-cester', '-chester' endings to the names of towns indicate 'camp' e.g. Lancaster, Worcester, Manchester and Chester. *castrum* has a diminutive *castellum*, whence 'castle' and in French *château* (a French circumflex accent often indicates a 'hidden' s, cf. Latin *fenestra* 'window' French *fenêtre*). Newcastle upon Tyne was so called because it had a *Novum Castellum* built by William Rufus in 1080.

castrum may be akin to *castrō*, 'I cut', i.e. *castrum* 'a place cut off', 'entrenchment'. If so, *castrum* and English 'castrate' have similar origins!

sequor

sequor 'I follow' has a present participle *sequēns* 'following' and perfect participle *secūtus* 'having followed'. From these we get 'sequel' and 'sequence' and through the French *suiivre* a 'suit', hence 'suitor', one who pursues a marriage partner, and 'sue', to chase someone at law. 'Pursue' derives from *prōsequor* (French *poursuivre*) *cōsequor* 'I follow all together', gives 'consecutive' and 'consequence', *exsequor* 'I follow out' gives 'execute' in the sense of 'carry out' or 'judicially put to death', *obsequor* 'I follow on account of' in accordance with the wishes of' gives 'obsequious', while *persequor* 'I follow thoroughly' gives 'persecute' *subsequor* 'I follow under', hence to succeed (as in a list), gives 'subsequent'.

Section 3C

Running vocabulary for 3C

abigō 3 I drive off
an or
astūtus (abl.) with
cunning
astūt-us a um sharp, smart
barb-a ae 1f. beard
callid-us a um cunning
celerius more quickly
celerrimē very quickly
cēnō 1 I have dinner
creatricōs-us a um scarred
coll-um ī 2n. neck
claudis tunicis with a
second-hand tunic
Davus ī 2m. Davus
dictūrus (nom. s. m.)
about to say

dolīs (abl.) with tricks,
dolīs cōsūtīs with your
second-hand tricks
domō 1 I soften up
eadem (acc. pl. n) } the
eandem (acc. s. f) } same
eādem (acc. pl. f.) }
edō 3 I eat
eōdem (acc. pl. m) the
same
equidem for my part
etiam still
eundem (acc. s. m.) the
same
exercitūrus (nom. s. m.)
about to exercise
exossat-us a um boned

exosso 1 I bone, fillet
fact-um ī 2n. deed
lacturus (nom. s. m.)
about to do, make
fallaciīs (abl.) with
deceptions
ferocissime most fiercely
ferocius more fiercely
fōrm-a ae 1f. looks
fort-is e strong
habitō 1 I dwell, live in
hercle by Hercules
hospiti-um ī 2n. reception
idem (nom. s. m.) the same
idem (nom. s. n.) the same
ingressurus (nom. s. m.)
about to enter

Section 3C

interrogō 1 I ask
intrāturus (nom. s. m.)
about to enter
intrus (nom. s. m.) about
to go
labr-um ī 2n. lip
mal-a ae 1f. cheek
mal-a ae with evil
maximē most of all
metuō 2 I am afraid
minime no, least of all
miserrimē most
wretchedly
metuō 2 I am afraid
muren-a ae 1f. cell
narraturus (nom. s. m.)
about to tell
nās-us ī 2m. nose
nemo nemin-is 3m. no-one
nemo 1 I am not
or other

nihil of no value,
worthless
nonne surely?
nuntiāturus (nom. s. m.)
about to announce
obsecrō 1 I beg, beseech
optimē best of all; very
well
ocul-is 3n. face
pariet-is 3m. wall
ped-us with feet; on foot
ped-is 3m. foot
perueniō 4 I reach
peti-a ī 2m. hat
placet it is pleasing
plūrimum very much, a
great deal
ponderō 1 I weigh
pondus ponder-is 3n
weight

primo first
prohibeō 2 I prevent, stop
pugne-us a um fisty
pugnīs (abl.) with fists
pugn-us ī 2m. fist
quandō when, since
quis anyone
silenter silently
sinō 3 I allow
statur-a ae 1f. height
tantū . . . quantū of such
value . . . as, worth
as much as
tēcum with you(rself)
terg-um ī 2n. back
tōt-us a um whole, all
tunicis with/on your tunic
ut-stit-us ūs 4m. clothes
uī (abl.) with force

Learning vocabulary for 3C

Nouns

fōrm-a ae 1f. shape, looks;
beauty
dol-us ī 2m. trick

pugn-us ī 2m. fist
nemo nemin-is 3m. ff. no-
one, nobody

pēs ped-is 3m. foot

Adjectives

aeris a um true

fort-is e strong, (brave,
courageous)

ī-dem ea-dem ī-dem (cf. *is*
e-a id) the same

Verbs

interrogō 1 ask, question

placet 2 *placu-it/placitum est*
it is pleasing. x (dat.)
votes (to)

sinō 3 I allow

Others

etiam still, even as well,
yes, indeed

nonne surely?
quandō since, when

tēcum (pl. *uobiscum*) with
you, yourself; (pl. with
yourselves)

Grammar and exercises for 3C

81 Future participles, active and deponent: 'about to / on the point of -ing'

Future participles of both deponent and active verbs are always active in meaning. They mean 'about to —', 'on the point of —ing', 'intending to —', and are formed by adding *-ūrus a um* to the stem of the perfect participle, e.g. *minātūrus* 'about to threaten', *amātūrus* 'about to love' etc. As with deponent perfect participles, these forms are *adjectives* and must agree in person, number and gender with the person 'about to . . .', e.g. *locūtūra* (fem.) *est* 'she is about to speak'; *ēgressūri sunt* 'they are about to go out'; *eōs prōgressūrōs uideō* 'I see them on the point of advancing'. Note the clue to form in the word 'future' — giving you *-ūr-us*.

■ The 4th principal part (perfect participle) of active verbs

You have already met three principal parts of active verbs, i.e. the dictionary form, the infinitive and the perfect (e.g. *amō, amāre, amāvī*; *habēō, habēre, habuī* etc.). The perfect participle is formed as follows

Regular principal parts

	Present indicative	Present infinitive	Perfect indicative	Perfect participle passive
1st conj.	<i>āmō</i>	<i>amāre</i>	<i>amāvī</i>	<i>amā-t-us a um</i>
2nd conj.	<i>habēō</i>	<i>habēre</i>	<i>habuī</i>	<i>hābi-t-us a um</i>
4th conj.	<i>aūdiō</i>	<i>aūdire</i>	<i>aūdiuī</i>	<i>aūdi-t-us a um</i>

Notes

- As you can see, the perfect participle is regularly formed by adding *-t-us a um* to the stem *amā-t-us, aūdi-t-us* etc. Note *hābi-t-us* (*-e* changes to *-i*). Thus the future participles of the three regular conjugations will be *amāt-ūr-us a um, hābit-ūr-us a um, aūdit-ūr-us a um*.
- For the curious, the meaning of this participle on its own is 'having been —ed', e.g. *amātus* 'having been loved'. Cf. 77 for deponent and semi-deponent participles, which, as we have seen, mean 'having —ed'. The perfect participle meaning 'having been —ed' will not be met properly till 151.

83 Unpredictable principal parts

The principal parts of all 3rd and 3/4th conj. verbs are best treated as unpredictable, and need to be learned. Note, however, that stem + *-tus* (sometimes + *-sus*) is one pattern, e.g. *dic-o dic-tus*. Here are the full principal parts of the active verbs of these conjugations which you have learned so far, listed by ending of perfect participle, plus those of irregular 1st, 2nd and 4th conjugation verbs

Present indicative	Present infinitive	Perfect indicative	Perfect participle passive
-----------------------	-----------------------	-----------------------	----------------------------------

Perfect participle ending in *-ct-us a um*(a) *-c(i)o*

dē- in- prō- re- c-	dūcō	ducere	dūxī	ductus	'I lead'
	dicō	dicere	dixī	dictus	'I say'
	faciō	facere	fēcī	factus	'I make', 'I do'
	perficiō	perficere	perfēcī	perfectus	'I complete'

(b) *-nc-ō*

vincō	vincere	uicī	victus	'I conquer'
-------	---------	------	--------	-------------

(c) *-g-ō*

agō	agere	ēgī	actus	'I do', 'I drive'
legō	legere	lēgī	lectus	'I read'

(d) *-qu-ō*

coquō	coquere	coxi	coctus	'I cook'
-------	---------	------	--------	----------

Perfect participle ending in *-st-us a um**-r-o*

gerō	gerere	gessi	gestus	'I do', 'I act (wage)
------	--------	-------	--------	-----------------------

Present indicative	Present infinitive	Perfect indicative	Perfect participles passive	
<i>Perfect participle ending in -pt-us a um</i>				
(a) -p(i)o				
capio	capere	cepi	captus	'I capture'
dēcipio	dēciperē	dēcēpī	dēceptus	'I deceive'
(b) -b-ō				
(ad)scribō	-scribere	-scripsi	-scriptus	'I write'
<i>Perfect participle ending in -(n)sus, -(s)sus</i>				
(a) -tto				
mittō	mittere	misi	-missus	'I send'
(b) -dō				
dēfendō	dēfendere	defendi	dēfēnsus	'I defend'
(c) -deō				
videō	videre	vidi	visus	'I see'
irrideō	irridere	irrisi	irrisus	'I laugh at'
possideō	possidere	posseī	possessus	'I hold', 'I keep'
respondeō	respondere	respondi	responsus	'I answer'
(d) -m-ō				
opprimō	opprimere	oppressi	oppressus	'I surprise, catch, crush'
(e) other -cō				
iubeō	iubere	iussi	iussus	'I order'
manēō	manere	mansi	mānsus	'I wait', 'I remain'

Perfect participle ending in -itus

(a) -d-ō				
crēdō	crēdere	crēdidī	crēditum ¹	'I believe'
dēdō	dēdere	dēdidī	dēditus	'I surrender'
reddō	reddere	reddidī	redditus	'I return'

Present indicative	Present infinitive	Perfect indicative	Perfect participles passive	
<i>Perfect participles ending in -itus, -ctus</i>				
-u (e)o				
solvō	solvere	solui	solūsus	'I release, pay'
moveo	movere	movi	motus	'I move'
adiuvō	adiuvare	adiuvi	adiūtus	'I help'

Perfect participle ending in -tus added to a plain stem

do	dare	dedi	datus	'I give'
sto	stare	steti	statum ¹	'I stand'
venio	venire	veni	-uentum	'I come'
vincio	vincire	vinci	uinctus	'I bind'
fugio	fugere	fugi	fugitūsus ²	'I flee'
sino	sistere	sivi	situs	'I allow'
deleo	delere	dēlēui	dēlēsus	'I destroy'
ad- prae	esse	fui	futūsus ²	'I am' { 'present', 'in charge of'
ferō	ferre	tuli	lātus	'I carry, bear'
auferō	auferre	abstuli	ablātus	'I take away'
in- ab- ex- red-	ire	iiui or ii	itum ¹	'I go' { 'into', 'away', 'out of', 'back'

¹ Intransitive verbs have only the -um form of past participle, which we will give from now on. See Reference Grammar A-G Intro (d) Note.

² No past participle, in such cases we give the future participle, if it exists.

Note

As you attempt to learn these vital 4th principal parts, you will not fail to notice how extraordinarily fruitful they have been in the formation of English words. You will find that you can frequently form an English word by adding '-ion', '-ive', '-ure' and '-or' to the stem of the perfect participle (cf. p. 31): try the list above. For formation of the future participle see 81 and 82 above.

Exercises

- 1 Translate these future participles and say what verb each is from: intrātūrus, clāmātūrus, factūrus, habitūrus, monitūrus, mansurus, auditūrus, mentitūrus, ēgressūrus, ductūrus, captūrus, (optional: suspicātūrus, reditūrus, locūtūrus, datūrus, rogātūrus, precātūrus, dicturus, dēfensūrus, dēletūrus, solūtūrus, passūrus)
- 2 Say which in this list are future participles and which past: scriptūrō, locūtae, āctūrīs, inuentūrī, secūtās, ēgressūra, acceptūrōrum, futūrā, morātārum, gesturum, nuntiaturus, suspicatus, uictūram, hortātōs
- 3 Give the Latin for: about to go; on the point of making; intending to defend; about to give back; on the point of laughing; about to place; about to see; intending to order; intending to deceive

84 The ablative of instrument or means – 'by means of', 'with'

We have identified three areas of usage for the ablative

- (a) Locative, e.g. 'in', 'at', 'on', 'within' of place and time (cf. 10, 67)
- (b) Separation (cf. *auferō* – *ablātus* 'I take away') e.g. *ex*, *ab* + abl. (cf. 23).
- (c) The ablative of description, e.g. 'a woman of/with great courage' (cf. 49)

We now meet the 'instrumental' usage of the ablative for the first time. This shows the instrument *with which* or means *by which* an action is carried out, e.g.

pugnīs mē uerberat 'he beats me with his fists by means of his fists' / using his fists as the instrument
pedibus hūc uenit 'he comes here by means of his feet on his feet'

Exercises

1 Translate:

- (a) at mē per omnem uītam miserrimam dolīs dēcēpit homo pessimus.
- (b) quārē igitur eam pugnīs ferōciter uerberāuit?
- (c) mambus meis hās aedīs hōc annō perfēcī

- (d) neque astūtīs neque dolīs ciuīs unquam dēcipiēs
- (e) facinoribus maximīs et sceleribus plūrimīs rem sibi optimē gessit homo pessimus
- (f) omnis uxores uirtūte et continentīā Alcumēna superāuit

2 Translate

- (a) nōne ille seruus in aedīs intrātūrus est?
- (b) ego illum pugnīs meis eōdem tempore uerberātūrus sum
- (c) nōne Sosia ille stultissimē ācturus est, sī hās aedīs ingredi uolet?
- (d) eum seruū ego maximē uolō meā fōrmā hanc noctem dēcipere
- (e) Sosia sua uirtute me numquam uincet
- (f) quid futūrum arbitrātur? hāc enim hōrā illī nōmen meā astūtiā ablatūris sum

85 nōne? ('doesn't . . .?')

nōne? asks a question in such a way that the speaker wants the answer to it to be 'yes'. The best formula for translation is 'doesn't x happen?' or 'x does happen, doesn't it?'; 'surely?' is also a safe translation. E.g.

nōne eam amō? 'don't I love her?'. 'I do love her, don't I?', 'surely I love her?'

86 īdem 'the same' and nēmō 'no one'

īdem eadem idem 'the same'

	m	f	n	m	f	n
nom.	ī-dem	ēa-dem	i-dem	ēī-dem ¹	eae-dem	ēa-dem
acc.	eūn-dem	eān-dem	i-dem	eōs-dem	eās-dem	ēa-dem
gen.	← eīus-dem →			eōrūn-dem	eārūn-dem	eōrūn-dem
dat.	← eī-dem →			← eīs-dem ² →		
abl.	eō-dem	eā-dem	eō-dem	← eīs-dem ² →		

¹ īdem also found

² īdem also found

Note

This declines like *is ea id + dem* (but NB. *īdem*, where one might expect *īdem*, *īddem*). Note that where the forms of *is* end in -m, the -m becomes an -n- before the -d- of -dem e.g. *eum-dem* – *eun-dem*; *eārum-dem* – *eārūndem*.

nemo 3m.(f.)

nom.	nemo
acc.	nemin- <u>em</u>
gen.	nūll- <u>ius</u> (nemin- <u>is</u>)
dat.	nemin- <u>i</u>
abl.	nūll- <u>ō</u> (nemin- <u>e</u>)

87 Comparative and superlative adverbs 'more —ly', 'most —ly'

Comparative and superlative adverbs are formed from the comparative and superlative adjectives.

	foolish(ly)	more foolish(ly)	most foolish(ly)
Adjective	stult- <u>us</u>	stult- <u>ior</u>	stultissim- <u>us</u>
Adverb	stult- <u>ē</u>	stult- <u>ius</u> (neut.)	stultissim- <u>ē</u>
	quick(ly)	more quick(ly)	most quick(ly)
Adjective	celer	celer- <u>ior</u>	celerrim- <u>us</u>
Adverb	celer <u>iter</u>	celer- <u>ius</u> (neut.)	celerrim- <u>ē</u>

Irregular comparative and superlative adverbs

NB. Most of these are only irregular in as far as the corresponding adjective has irregular comparative and superlative forms. If you already know the adjective forms, most of these adverbs are formed quite regularly from the adjective:

bene	'well'	melius	'better'	optimē	'best'
male	'badly'	peius	'worse'	peissimē	'worst', 'very badly'
paulum	'a little'	minus	'less'	minimē	'very little', 'a little'
multum	'much'	plus	'more'	plurimum	'most', 'a lot'
magnopere	'greatly'	magis	'more'	maximē	'very much', 'most', 'yes'

Exercises

- Form and translate the comparative and superlative adverbs of stulte, bene, pūde, miserē, pulchrē, celeriter, audacter, male (optional multum, paulum, plānē, magnopere, facile)
- Identify and translate the comparative and superlative adverbs in this list: facillimē, malum, scelere, illius, astūtius, uērō, optimē, stultē, opere, magnopere, fortius, alterius, nimis, magis, minime, hodiē, pulcherrime

- Translate each of these phrases: uir summā uirtūte; summā uirtute; seruus summā astutiā; astutiā summā; manibus pedibusque; hōc annō; eādem fōrmā; meis pugnīs; eōdem tempore.
- Give the Latin for: on the same day; a wife of the utmost excellence; with the greatest courage; with my fist; in the same year; with the same hands; a slave of great boldness; with a trick.
- Translate these sentences:

- omne futūrum incertum est. (Seneca)
- inter peritūra uiuimus. (Seneca)
- dē futūris rēbus semper difficile est dicere. (Cicero)
- uirtūs eadem in homine ac deō est. (Cicero)
- fit uia uī. (Virgil)

incert-us a um uncertain
inter (+ acc.) among

peritō perire perī peritus 1
die

uis f. force, violence (abl
uī)

uiuō 3 I live

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Read these passages, translating in word-order, defining the function of each word and phrase-group. Translate into correct English. Finally, read aloud the Latin, correctly phrased, thinking through the meaning as you read.

- mihi hōc tempore pater meus officium crēdidit maximum. nam dum eī fōrmā Amphitruōnis Alcumēnam dēcipere placet, ego seruū Sōsiam ab aedibus abactūrus sum. ego igitur meis pugnīs illi seruō exitium minātūrus in uiam ibō. meā illum astutiā dēcipiam facile, quod mihi uir nūllā sapientū esse uidetur. eī ego nōmen eōdem tempore meis auferam dolīs. placēbit enim mihi ad eum eādem fōrmā ac uōce eādem adgredi. 5
- Sōsiam in aedis dominī ingressūrum Mercurius dolīs atque astutiis dēcepit. Sōsiam enim ingredi nōn siuit, quamquam cum Amphitruō Alcumēnae eō tempore omnia nārāre iussit. Mercurius enim patrem suum, id est Iouem, cūrat. nam ille hīs in aedibus hanc noctem Alcumēnam fōrmā uirī dēcepit. Mercurius autem sē Sōsiae similem fēcit et eādem fōrmā et uōce eādem nōmen eius cēpit. Mercuriō tandem Sōsia uix (hardly) crēdidit, quandō sibi simillimum deum arbitrātus est. et hoc facilius opinātus est seruus quod deus eundem habuit petasum, uestitum eundem, eandem statūram, pedēs eōdem, idem mentum, mālās eādem, eadem labra, barbā eandem, nāsū eundem, collum idem. sēmet (himself: acc. s.) uērō Sōsiam arbitrārī tandem Sōsiae placuit, quod sē bene cognōuit. 15

English-Latin

1 Translate into Latin:

- What is that slave intending to do?
- Surely he's going to relate the battle to Alcumena?
- I intend to fool him with my tricks and my fists at the same time.
- For I've come here intending to threaten him with death¹.
- I've decided² to take his name from him by this trick.
- I've done nothing more easily, nothing better, nothing more quickly.

¹ = 'threaten death to him'² Use *nihil placet* + infinitive

2 Read the text of 3C again, then translate this passage:

MERCURY Who's speaking? If I find him, I intend to attack him with my fists.

SOSIA I'd better keep quiet. If he touches me with those fists, surely I'll be worth as much as a flatfish.

MER. Where are you intending to go, criminal? Who are you? Are you a citizen?

SOS. I'm a slave.

MER. I want you to tell me more than this. What's your name?

SOS. My name is Sosia.

MER. You're lying. Are you intending to deceive me with your tricks? If you don't go away quickly, I'll kill you with these fists.

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building

(a) Suffixes

-fex *fic-is* as a suffix is connected with *faciō* 'I make', 'I do' and commonly expresses occupation. So *carnifex* = *carō* (*carn-*) 'meat' + *fex*, 'meat-maker', 'executioner', 'scoundrel', *artifex* = *ars* (*art-*) 'skill', 'craft' + *fex*, 'craftsman'; *aurifex* = *aurum* + *fex*, 'goldsmith'.

Nero said of himself on his death-bed *quālis artifex pereō* 'What an (*quālis*) artist perishes in me!'

(b) Perfect participle

The perfect participle is an enormously fruitful source of vocabulary (cf. p. 171). Many English words are formed by the addition of '-ion', '-ure', '-ive', '-or' to that stem, e.g. 'production', 'diction', 'factor', 'missive', 'capture', 'perfection', 'action', etc., etc. Consequently, you can use these words to help you determine what the perfect participle is. For example, what is the perfect participle of *scribō*? *scribitus*? No English word 'scribition'. But there is a word 'inscription'. Chances are, therefore, that the perfect participle is *scriptus*. Likewise, for Latin-into-English translation, a word like *progrēssurus* reminds one of 'progression', i.e. going forward.

-ur-a ae 1f. added to the stem of the 4th principal part generates abstract nouns denoting

action: *scriptūra* 'writing' (*scribō* 'I write')

result: *nātūra* 'birth', 'nature' (*nāscor* 'I am born')

occupation: *mercātūra* 'trade' (*mercor* 'I sell, trade')

Word exercise

Give the meaning and Latin connection of these words: form, pedestrian, ameliorate, pejorative, interrogate, station, mansion, vision, retention, possession, position, verify, gesture, solution, concoction, elation, future, status, amateur

Everyday Latin

placebo – the harmless pill or coloured water given to pacify hypochondriac patients

id. = *idem* 'the same' (usually, 'the same author')

ibid. = *ibidem* 'the same place in the same author already cited'

Those on their way to die in the gladiatorial arena saluted the emperor with the words *auē* ('hail'), *Caesar, moritūri tē salūtant auē atque ualē* 'hail and farewell', 'hello goodbye' (common on tombstones)

One's *magnum opus* is one's 'great work' – usually referring to a book

The following phrases will help you revise the difference between *in* + acc. and *in* + abl.:

in locō parentis 'in the position of a parent'
in camerā 'in private', 'in secret' (*camera* = vaulted room, the origin of our 'chamber'. The term refers to legal judgements made privately by a judge in his rooms)
in propriā persōnā '(speaking) in one's own person'
in absentīā 'in one's absence'
in flagrante delictō '(caught) in flagrant (open) sin (crime)', i.e. taken in the act, caught red-handed
in memoriā 'to the memory'
in mediās rēs '(plunged) into the middle of the action'

Real Latin

The Vulgate

(*The last day.*) *dē Siōn ēgrediētur lēx, et uerbum Domini dē Hierusalem, et iudicābit inter populōs multōs, et corripiet gentēs fortēs usque in longinquum; et concident gladiōs suōs in uōmerēs et hastās suās in ligōnēs; nōn sūmet gēns aduersus gentem gladium; et nōn discent ultrā belligerāre . . . quia omnēs populī ambulābunt unusquisque in nōmine Dei suī; nōs autem ambulābimus in nōmine Domini Dei nostri in aeternum et ultrā.* (*Micah 4.2–5*)

<i>Siōn</i> (abl.) Sion	<i>u. u. 3</i> I beat
<i>lēx</i> <i>lēg-is</i> 3f. law	<i>gladi-us</i> <i>ī</i> 2m. sword
<i>Hierusalem</i> (abl.) Jerusalem	<i>uōmer</i> <i>uōmer-is</i> 3m ploughshare
<i>iudicō</i> <i>ī</i> 1 judge	<i>hast-a</i> <i>ae</i> 1f. spear
<i>popul-us</i> <i>ī</i> 2n. people	<i>ligō</i> <i>ligōn-is</i> 3m. pruning hook
<i>corripō</i> <i>3/4</i> I control	<i>sūmō</i> <i>3</i> I take up
<i>gēns</i> <i>gent-is</i> 3f. nation	<i>aduersus</i> + acc. against
<i>usque in longinquum</i> afar off	

discō *3* I learn
ultrā further, more beyond
belligerō *1* I fight
unusquisque each and every one
in aeternum for ever

Mottoes using the ablative

nōn vī, sed mente. (*Lincolne*)
nōn vī, sed virtūte. (*Burrowes, Ramsbotham*)
nōn vī sed voluntāte. (*Boucher*)
nōn gladiō sed grātiā. (*Charteris, Charters*)
nōn cantū sed actū. (*Gillman*)
ingeniō ac labōre. (*Kerr*)
ingeniō et vīribus. (*Huddleston*)
igne et ferrō. (*Hickman*)
industriā et labōre. (*McGalloch*)


industriā et spē. (*Warden*)
industriā et virtūte. (*Bolton*)
cōsiliō ac virtūte. (*Rose-Lewin*)
cōsiliō et animīs. (*Maitland, Ramadge*)
cōsiliō et armīs. (*Stephens*)
fidē et amōre. (*Conway, Gardner, Hart, Seymour*)
fidē et clēmētiā. (*Martin*)
fidē et armīs. (*Fairquhar*)
fidē et cōstantiā. (*Dixon, James, Lee*)
fidē et diligētiā. (*Crawford*)
fidē et fiduciā. (*Blackman, Gilchrist, Hogg, Wall, Watt*)
fidē et labōre. (*Allan*)
fidē et spē. (*Borthwick*)

<i>uis</i> (pl.) <i>uir-ēs</i> s. force; (pl.) strength	<i>act-us</i> <i>ūs</i> 4m. deed, doing	<i>fidēs</i> <i>fidē-ī</i> 5f. faith
<i>mēns</i> <i>ment-is</i> 3f. mind	<i>labor</i> <i>labōr-is</i> 3m. effort, work	<i>clēmēti-a</i> <i>ae</i> 1f. mercy
<i>uoluntās</i> <i>uoluntāt-is</i> 3f. will	<i>ferr-um</i> <i>-ī</i> 2n. sword, iron	<i>cōstanti-a</i> <i>ae</i> 1f. constancy
<i>gladi-us</i> <i>ī</i> 2m. sword	<i>industri-a</i> <i>ae</i> 1f. industry	<i>diligēti-a</i> <i>ae</i> 1f. diligence
<i>grāti-a</i> <i>ae</i> 1f. grace	<i>spēs</i> <i>spē-ī</i> 5f. hope	<i>fiduci-a</i> <i>ae</i> 1f. trust
<i>cant-us</i> <i>ūs</i> 4m. song	<i>arm-a</i> <i>ōrum</i> 2n. pl. arms	

Word study

pēs

pēs *ped-is* means 'foot', and is akin to Greek *pous* *pod-os* 'foot' — cf. 'octopus' ('eight feet'); 'podium'; 'antipodes' ('people with their feet opposite'); 'tripod' ('three-feet'). The adjective *pedālis* gives 'pedal' and *pedester* gives 'pedestrian', 'of the feet', hence, 'lowly', 'earth-bound', 'using one's feet'. *pedō* is late Latin for 'foot-soldier', whence English 'pawn', via Old French *pion*.

expediō means 'I free my feet from a trap', whence 'expedient', meaning 'advantageous' and to 'expedite', meaning 'get things moving'. Conversely, 'impede' comes from *impedio* 'I put feet in shackles', so *impedimentum* 'hindrance' *impedicō* 'I tangle someone's feet in a *pedica* ('foot-trap')' gives Middle French *empecher* and English 'impeach', meaning 'charge with an official crime'. Less obviously, *repudium*, meaning 'back-footing', yields 'repudiate'. Piedmont is the area at the foot of the mountains (*mons* *mont-is*). Most fascinating of all, 'pedigree', a register of descent or lineage, comes from *pēs* + *dē* + *grūs*, Middle French *pié de grue* 'foot of a crane', the three-line mark like a bird's foot () which is used to show family succession.

Section 3D

Running vocabulary for 3D

<i>aliquid</i> something	<i>imperō (+ dat.)</i> I give orders (to), command	<i>x (dat.) to y (inf)</i>
<i>amātor amātor-is</i> 3m. lover	<i>imperātor imperātor-is</i> 3m. general	<i>parcō 3 (+ dat.)</i> I spare, go easy on
<i>astūt-us a um</i> sharp	<i>inquit</i> (he) will say	<i>pāreō 2 (+ dat.)</i> I obey
<i>auxiliō</i> (for) a help	<i>intereā</i> meanwhile	<i>parturiō 4</i> I give birth
<i>brev-is e</i> short, brief	<i>irātus (+ dat.)</i> angry with, at	<i>pater-a ae</i> 1f. dish
<i>callid-us a um</i> cunning	<i>licet 2 licuit</i> it is permitted for <i>x (dat.) to y (inf)</i>	<i>paulum</i> a little
<i>card-ō cardin-is</i> 3f. door-hinge	<i>mane</i> early in the morning	<i>plūs</i> more
<i>cār-us a um</i> dear	<i>medi-us a um</i> middle (of)	<i>prae</i> ahead
<i>complector 3 dep</i>	<i>metuō 3</i> I fear, am afraid	<i>praesum (+ dat.)</i> I am in charge of
<i>complexus</i> I embrace	<i>mī = mihi</i> (or 'O my')	<i>quantō (by)</i> how much
<i>crēdō 3 (+ dat.)</i> I believe	<i>necesse</i> necessary	<i>tantō (by)</i> so much
<i>crepō 1</i> I creak, groan	<i>numquid</i> anything?	<i>quibus</i> (after <i>sī</i>) (to) any (pl.); (in question) to which (pl.)?
<i>cui</i> (after <i>sī</i>) (with) (to) anyone; (in question) to whom?	<i>obstō 1 obstiti (+ dat.)</i> I stand in the way (of)	<i>sī quid</i> if anything, if in any respect, at all
<i>cūrae</i> (for) a care, concern	<i>odiō</i> (for) an object of hatred	<i>sī quis</i> if anyone
<i>dimitto 3</i> I dismiss	<i>operam dō (+ dat.)</i> I pay attention to	<i>subitō</i> suddenly
<i>exemplō</i> (for) an example	<i>opus est</i> there is a need for	<i>taediō</i> (for) a source of boredom
<i>faueō (+ dat.)</i> I am favourable to		<i>teneō 2</i> I hold
<i>gratiās agō (+ dat.)</i> I thank		<i>voluptātī</i> (for) a source of pleasure
<i>impedimentō</i> (for) a hindrance		

Learning vocabulary for 3D

Nouns

grāti-a ae 1f. thanks, recompense

auxili-um ī 2n. help
impediment-um ī 2n. hindrance

voluptās voluptāt-is 3f. desire, love, passion

Adjectives

brev-is e short, brief

Section 3D

Verbs

imper-ō 1 (+ dat.) I give orders (to), command
obst-ō 1 obstur-ī (+ dat.) I stand in the way of, obstruct
operam d-ō 1 ded-i dat-us (+ dat.) I pay attention to

faue-ō 2 fau-ī faut-um (+ dat.) I do service to, favour
par-ō 2 (+ dat.) I obey
tene-ō 2 I hold
licet 2 licu-it/lictum est it is permitted to *x (dat.) to y (inf)*
gratiās agō (+ dat.) I thank

praesum praesesse praefu-ī praefutūr-us (+ dat.) I am in charge of, at the head of
inquit (he) says (1st s. *inquam*, 2nd s. *inquis*, 3rd pl. *inquirunt*)
necesse est it is necessary

Others

subitō suddenly

Grammar and exercises for 3D

88 Datives

So far the dative case has been used to indicate the person *advantaged*¹ or *disadvantaged* by an action (*mī aurum dedit* 'he gave the gold to me', *mihi aurum abstulit* 'he took the gold from me'; this sense includes the possessor also, e.g. *est mihi pecūnia* 'I have money'), and to indicate the person spoken to (*mihi dixit* 'he spoke to me'). But, as was said at the time, the range of the dative is far wider than that, and its root meaning seems to be that the person is in some way interested or involved in the action of the verb, and when faced by a dative one should ask 'In what way is the person in the dative affected by the verb?'

¹ Q. What is an *omnibus*? A. A vehicle 'for everyone' – 'to everyone's advantage'.

1 Possessive dative: further notes

Remember the two ways of expressing the idea of possession in Latin:

- habēō* or *teneō* + acc. 'I have'. e.g. *seruum habēō* 'I have a slave'.
- est/ant* + person possessing in the dative (lit. 'there is/are to *x*') e.g. *est mihi servus* 'there is a slave to me' 'I have a slave', *sunt Amphitruonī multī servī* 'there are to Amphitruo many slaves', 'Amphitruo has many slaves'.

Note the idiom *nōmen Mercuriō est mihi* 'the name to me is Mercury' i.e. 'my name is Mercury'. Observe that *Mercuriō* agrees with *mihi* (see 17B).

3rd–5th declension: pater, honor, aedēs, frāter, soror, uxor, onus, homo, cīuis, manus, diēs, nox, opus, caput, (optional: rēs, mīles, scelus, uōx, urbs, rēx, exercitus, nāuis, legiō, hostis, equitēs, mōs, pēs, uolūptas)

- 2 Give the meaning, and then form the dative s. and pl., of the following adjectives:

1st/2nd declension (m. f. n. forms in the s., one form for the pl. multus, miser, malus, meus, tuus, noster, uester, (optional: bonus, summus, longus, alter¹, nūllus¹, irātus, optimus, pessimus)

3rd declension and others (one form for both dat. s. and pl.): omnis, trīstis, ingēns, breuis, audāx, hic, (optional: facilis, fortis, ille, illūstris, melior, is, peior, maior).

¹ NB These are irregular in gen. and dat. s. See 62

3 Principal parts:

Give meaning and all four principal parts of: dō, stō, iubeō, possideō, sum, cō, ferō, uolō, dīcō, dūcō, capiō, gerō, ueniō, uincō.

Give meaning and all three principal parts of: adipīscor, adgredior, loquor, sequor, proficīscor, hortor, polliceor, mentior, cōspicor, arbitror, cōnor.

Exercises

- 1 Put the bracketed noun/pronoun in the correct case and translate the sentence (NB. not every example requires the dative).

- (ego) licet ex aedibus exīre
- (seruus) Mercurius pugnis suis aggressus est.
- (hic) seruus obstitit.
- (tū) nōn crēdō.
- (illa) uir maximē amat.
- (uōs) is seruus minātur.
- (pater) filius bonus semper pāret
- (cēna) coquus nunc parat.
- (exercitus) dominus meus praest.
- (tū) aedis inīre iubeō
- (is) dux hoc imperāuit.

2 Translate

- equitēs legiōnī impedimentō sunt
- Alcumēna Iouī magnae cūrae est.
- cīuis hic malus omnibus bonis odiō est.
- Amphitruō cīuibz suis salūtī¹ fuit.
- urbī huic ego auxiliō erō
- hoc officiū mihi uoluptātī est
- hoc tibi officiō est
- mē miserum! ego omnibus meis exitiō erō.
- hoc tibi malō erit
- Amphitruōnis uictōria omnibus cīuibz bonō est.

¹ salutē 3f. safety

3 Translate (refer back to 48.2 and 88.1 for possessive dative):

- fuit mihi filius bonus
- uxorī meae dōs maxima est
- cīuibz nostrīs nūllum auxilium fuit
- nēminī amīca bona est
- sunt eis filius et filia

4 Translate these sentences:

- doctō hominī et eruditō uiuere est cōgitāre. (Cicero)
- in uia uirtutē nūlla est uia. (Ovid)
- iniūria sapientī nōn potest fierī. (Seneca)
- hominēs amplius oculis quam auribus crēdunt. (Seneca)
- omne tulit pūctum quī miscuit ūtile dulcī. (Horace)

doct-us a um learned

erudit-us a um educated

uiuō 3 I live

inui-ss a um impassable

iniūri-a ae 1f. harm,

injury

sapiēns sapient-is wise

amplius more

auris aur-is 3f. ear

pūct-um ī 2n. vote

quī (nom. s. m.) the man

(writer) who

miscēō 2 I mix (x acc.

with y dat.)

ūtil-is e useful; profitable

dulc-is e sweet,

pleasurable,

entertaining

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Datives (or ablatives) placed early in a sentence are often difficult to tackle, until you come to the verb (or something else which solves the intransigent case). You must 'hold' the dative in these circumstances until you have information which

will solve it. Read this passage and, as you translate it in word-order, say which are the datives and where the construction becomes clear. E.g.:

ille mihi pecūniam multam auferre uult

At mihi there is no clue as to whether the idea is possession, advantage/disadvantage or indirect object. So hold it as 'in relation to me', 'affecting me'. When you reach auferre, you can see that it is likely to be disadvantage, since that verb construes with accusative and dative meaning taking something away from someone.

Note that mihi, tibi and sibi are often to be found second word in their clauses, however far away the verb is.

Sōsia tum dominō Amphitruonī, ubi ad nāuem eius ueniet, ita dīcet. 'uxōrī uerba tua nūntiāre nōn potuī, domine, quod mihi seruus ingēns pugnōs minātus est. mihi ille ferōciter obstitit. in aedīs igitur mihi intrāre nōn licuit. is enim seruus tuō seruō maximō fuit impedimentō. necesse fuit igitur mihi ad tē regredi et eius imperiīs statim pārere, quod mihi fōrma mea ita placet, ut est. officium hoc mihi nōn fuit, ut tū pollicitus es, uoluptātī, sed onerī magnō.' seruō autem ita respondēbit Amphitruō 'quid illī seruō ingentī nōmen est?' tum Sōsia 'eī nōmen Sōsiae est. nam mihi meum nōmen, fōrmam meam, meam uōcem, omnia is seruus abstulit. mihi nunc est nōmen nūllum, nisi nēmo.'

English-Latin

1 Translate into Latin:

- A very large slave stood in my way.
- The old man has a pretty daughter.
- I am allowed to give orders to my soldiers.
- Money is a source of great pleasure to Euclio.
- A bad citizen is hated by everyone.
- I want everyone to obey my orders.
- This duty will be burdensome to my wife.
- (It is) the general (who) is in charge of the army, not the soldiers.
- You (s.) must return to your land very quickly.
- Lovers like things thus.

2 Read the text of 3D again and then translate this passage:

JUPITER Goodbye, my wife. I must go back to my troops.
ALCUMENA What's up? Am I a bore to you already?

JUP. On the contrary, you are a great pleasure to me. But when the general is not at the head of his army, the soldiers do not pay attention to their duties.

ALC. Don't go away, my husband. I shall be able to love you more, if you obey me

JUP. Don't get in my way. I shall return soon, just as you want. But now I have decided¹ to go. Goodbye.

¹ Use *mihi placet* (present)

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building

Prefix

You have already met *prae-* as a prefix = 'before', 'in front of', e.g. *praeēō* 'I go in front', 'I go ahead'; *praesum* 'I am in front of', 'I am in charge'; but *prae-* can also mean 'extremely', 'very', e.g. *praealtus* 'very high'.

Word exercise

Give the meaning and Latin connection of: gratitude, auxiliary, voluptuary, brevity, minus, favour, licence, obstinate, tenacious, emperor, impede, necessary.

Note that 'parent' comes from *pariō parere* I procure, give birth to, not *pāreō* I obey.

Everyday Latin

'Let there be sung *Non Nobis* and *Te Deum*' (Shakespeare, *Henry V*, iv.8.122: Henry V after the battle of Agincourt). *Non Nobis* is Psalm 115 (Vulgate, part of Ps 113), which begins *nōn nobis, Domine, nōn nobis, sed nōminī tuō dā glōriam* (glōria ae 1f. 'glory'). *Te Deum* is the beginning of the canticle *tē deum laudāmus* (laudō 1 'I praise').

cui bonō? 'to whom (is it) for a benefit?' 'to whose advantage is it?' (NOT 'what use is it?').

urbī et orbī 'to the city and the world'. The papal pronouncement made from the Vatican at Easter to the crowds below.

Learning vocabulary for 4A(i)¹

Nouns

Agriġentīn-us ī 2m. person
from Agrigentum
(town in Sicily)
custōs custōd-is 3m. or f.
guard
fāma ae 1f. rumour,
report; reputation

impetus -ūs 4m. attack
nūnti-us ī 2m. messenger
simulācr-um ī 2n. image,
copy
templ-um ī 2n. temple
Verrēs Verr-is 3m. Verres

vis irr. f force, violence
(acc. *vis*, abl. *vis*, pl.
vises, *visum* 3f)
strength, military
forces

Adjectives

quidam quaedam quoddam
a, a certain, some

tot-us a um (gen. s. *totius*)
whole, complete

Verbs

expugnō 1 I storm
impetum faciō 3/4 *fecī factus*
I make an attack

perueniō 4 *perueni*
peruentum (ad) I reach,
arrive at, come to

repellō 3 *reppulī repulsus*
I drive back, drive out

Others

apud (+ acc.) among; (at
the house of, in the
hands of, in the works of)

interea meanwhile

repente suddenly

¹ From now on items are listed alphabetically in each category

Running vocabulary for 4A(ii)

aene-us a um bronze

Assōrīn-us ī 2m. person
from Assorus

bucīnā 'on the horn'

Chrīs-as ae m. River
Chrysas

colō 3 I worship

concurrēbant 'they began
to rush' (impf. of
concurrō)

dicam 'should I say'

doctrīn-a ae 1f. learning
effrīgō 3 *effrēgī* I break
down

Enguin-us ī 2m. person
from Engyum

erant 'there were' (impf.
of *sum*)

fact-us a um made,
constructed

fluō 3 I flow

fluui-us ī 2m. river

fortitūdō fortitūdinis 3f
bravery

gale-a ae 1f. helmet

Hierō Hierōn-is 3m. Hiero

hominēs . . . intrāre 'that
men were entering'

hūmānitās hūmānitāt-is 3f
culture

hydri-a ae 1f. jar

imitor 1 *imitātus* I copy

inscribō 3 *inscripsi*
I inscribe

intelligēbat '(he)
understood' (impf. of
intelligō)

intelligō 3 I understand

iudex iudic-is 3m. judge

iudicō 1 I judge, evaluate

loric-a ae 1f. breastplate

marmor marmor-is 3n
marble

Mater Magna Mātris
Magnae Great Mother
(i.e. the goddess
Cybele)

mātūre early, in time

monument-um ī 2n
monument

negōti-um ī 2n. business,
job

post 3 I place, put
postea afterwards
'at which' (nom. s. m.)
quid why?
reliqui 3 *reliqui* 3m. *reliqui* 3f
I leave, I put

religios-us a um sacred,
revered, holy,
awesome

reliqui 3 *reliqui* 3m. *reliqui* 3f
Sapi-Sapi 3m. *Sapi* 3f
sapere 4 *sapere* I perceive,
realise

singulār-is e peculiar
unique

sōl-us a um alone

Flēpolem-us ī 2m

Flēpolemus

ualis a ae 1f. folding door

videlicet apparently
itcastic

Learning vocabulary for 4A(ii)

Nouns

aliam 3 *aliam* 3m. *aliam* 3f
aliam 3 *aliam* 3m. *aliam* 3f
with, at

Adjectives

reliqui 3 *reliqui* 3m. *reliqui* 3f
reliqui 3 *reliqui* 3m. *reliqui* 3f
I leave, I put

Verbs

posui 3 *posui* 3m. *posui* 3f
posui 3 *posui* 3m. *posui* 3f
I put, I place

posui 3 *posui* 3m. *posui* 3f

posui 3 *posui* 3m. *posui* 3f

relinquō 3 *relinquī relictus* I

leave, I put

sentiō 4 *sensī sensus* I feel

understand, perceive,

realise

Others

postea afterwards
postea afterwards

Running vocabulary for 4A(iii)

accusō 1 I accuse

affirmō 1 I state strongly,
assert

aliquis someone (decl. like
is)

amic-us ī 2m. friend, ally

antiqu-us a um old

atrox atrox-is appalling,
shocking

audītūrōs esse 'to be about
to hear', (fut. inf. of
audiō)

audīuisse 'to have heard',
(perf. inf. of *audiō*)

Catinēnsis Catinēns-is 3m.
person from Catina

Ceres Ceter-is 3f. Ceres
(goddess of corn,

conficiō 3/4 I carry out
confirmō 1 I state clearly
confirm

conspiciātis esse 'to have
seen' (perf. inf. of
conspicor)

constituō 3 *constituī* I
decide

crimen crimin-is 3n. charge

deferō deferre dētulī I report
dēmouēō 2 I remove
erat 'there was' (impf. of
sum)

eum . . . *esse* 'that he was'
fict-us a um false
illum seruū . . . *ingressum*
esse . . . *sustulisse* 'that
that slave had entered
. . . (and) removed'

ingressum esse 'to have
entered' (perf. inf. of
ingredior)

innocens innocent-is
guiltless

intrāuisse 'to have
entered', (perf. inf. of
intro)

iste that person (i.e.
Verres)

iudicō I I judge
lēx lēg-is 3f. law

locus ī 2m. place
magistrat-us ūs 4m
magistrate, state official

negō I I deny, say that x
is not the case
nōlēbat '(he) did not want
(impf. of *nōlō*)

perantiqu-us a um very old
postridiē next day

putō I I think

reperiō 4 I find

sacr-a ōrum 2n. pl. rites

sacerdōs sacerdot-is 3f

priestess

sacrāri-um ī 2n. shrine

se . . . *cōspiciātūs esse* 'that
they had seen'

senāt-us ūs 4m. senate

seruōs . . . *intrāuisse*

sustulisse 'that the slaves
had entered . . . (and)
removed'

sign-um ī 2n. statue

soleō 2 I am accustomed
used

suspicio suspiciō-is 3f

suspicio .

sustulisse 'to have

removed' (perf. inf. of
sum)

testis test-is 3m. witness

tollō 3 *tollo* I remove

take away

uideor ī 3f. (it) seemed

impt. of *uideor*

uirgo uirg-is 3f. young
girl, virgin

uidebat 'he wished' (impf.
of *uideo*)

audisturos esse 'that
you will hear'

uōs . . . *audiuisse* 'that you
have heard'

Learning vocabulary for 4A(iii)

Nouns

amic-us ī 2m. friend, ally
iste that over there /
of yours (used
especially when
referring to opponents
at a trial; *iste* here is
always used to mean
Verres)

Adjectives

innocēns innocent-is
guiltless

Verbs

accusō I I accuse x (acc.)
of y (gen.)

affirmō I I state strongly,
assert

confirmō I I state clearly,
confirm

loc-us ī 2m. place (pl.)

loc-a ōrum 2n. pl.)

magistrat-us ūs 4m

magistrate, state official

sacerdōs sacerdot-is 3m. f

priest(ess)

sacer sacr-a um holy,
sacred

sacr-a ōrum 2n. pl. rites

senat-us ūs 4m. senate

sign-um ī 2n. statue; (seal
signal, sign)

uirgō uirgin-is 3f. young
girl, virgin

puto I I think

reperiō 4 *repperī* *reperitus*
I find

soleō 2 *solitus* (semi-dep.) I
am accustomed, used

tollō 3 *sustulī* *sublātus* I lift,
remove, take away

Running vocabulary for 4A(iv)

ampl-us a um important,
prestigious

auctoritās auctoritat-is 3f.
influence, guidance

ausūrum esse 'to be about
to dare' (fut. inf. of
audeo)

clāmōr clāmōr-is 3m.

outcry

coniciō 3/4 I throw

creō I I choose

cuius 'whose'

dicam 'should I say'

educō 3 I pick out

erat 'it was' (impf. of *sum*)

event-us ūs 4m. outcome,
result

expectābant 'they awaited'
(impf. of *expectō*)

extrā (+ acc.) outside

fās indecl. n. right

fās esse

fās . . . *esse* } 'that it
was right'
stēbat 'there arose' (impf.
of *stō*)

genus gener-is 3n. tribe

hydrī-a ae 1f. jar

id . . . *posse* 'that it could'

illō modo 'in that way'

iniciō 3/4 I throw in

inscript-us a um inscribed

laet-us a um happy (tr

'happily')

lex lēg-is 3f. law

negabant '(they) denied'

(impf. of *nego*)

nōmine 'with the name'

oportet it is right, proper,
necessary

perfectūrum esse 'to be
about to achieve' (fut.
inf. of *perficiō*)

praetereā besides,

moreover

primō at first

quot however many; how
many?

recitō I I read out

renūtiātus est '(he) was
returned, selected'

renūtiō I I return, select,
appoint

sacerdoti-um ī 2n

priesthood

sors sort-is 3f. lot-drawing,
lot

sortior 4 dep. I draw lots

spērābant 'they were

hoping' (impf. of *spērō*)

suffrāgi-um ī 2n. vote

Syrācūsān-us ī 2m. person
from Syracuse,

Syracusan

Syrācūsīs 'at Syracuse'

Theomnāst-us ī 2m

Theomnastus

tot so many

Verrem . . . *ausūrum esse*

'that Verres . . . would
dare'

Verrem . . . *perfectūrum*

esse 'that Verres would
achieve'

uetō I *uetui* I forbid

uidebatur '(it) seemed'
(impf. of *uideor*)

Learning vocabulary for 4A(iv)

Nouns

clāmōr clāmōr-is 3m. shout;

outcry; noise

lēx lēg-is 3f. law

Syrācūsān-us ī 2m. person

from Syracuse,

Syracusan

Adjectives

laet-us a um happy

Verbs

coniciō 3 *conici* *coniectus* I
throw

uetō I *uetui* *uetitus* I forbid

Others

primō at first

praetereā besides,
moreover

Grammar and exercises for 4A

89 Imperfect indicative active 'I was —ing', 'I used to —', 'I began to —', 'I tried to —'

	1	2	3
	'I was loving'	'I was having'	'I was saying'
1st s.	amā-ba-m	habē-ba-m	dic-e-ba-m
2nd s.	amā-ba-s	habē-bā-s	dic-ē-bā-s
3rd s.	amā-ba-t	habē-ba-t	dic-ē-ba-t
1st pl.	amā-bā-mus	habē-bā-mus	dic-e-bā mus
2nd pl.	amā-bā-tis	habē-bā-tis	dic-ē-bā tis
3rd pl.	amā-ba-nt	habē-ba-nt	dic-ē-ba-nt

	4	3, 4
	'I was hearing'	'I was capturing'
1st s.	audi-ē-ba-m	capi-ē-ba-m
2nd s.	audi-ē-bā-s	capi-ē-bā-s
3rd s.	audi-ē-ba-t	capi-ē-ba-t
1st pl.	audi-ē-ba-mus	capi-ē-bā-mus
2nd pl.	audi-ē-bā-tis	capi-ē-ba-tis
3rd pl.	audi-ē-ba-nt	capi-ē-ba-nt

Notes

- 1 Imperfect ind. act. is formed by taking the present stem (+ key vowel -ē- in 3rd, 4th and 3rd/4th conjugations) and adding -bam, -bās, -bat, -bāmus, -bātis, -bant.
- 2 Note the regular personal endings: -m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt.
- 3 The imperfect conjugation, being based on the stem of the present tense, is the tense of vivid, eyewitness descriptions for past events ('I was in the process of —ing', cf. present 'I am in the process of —ing'). The action, which is uncompleted (*imperfectus* 'uncompleted', cf. *perfectus* 'completed'), is depicted as continuing, or being repeated, or beginning or being attempted. Thus the most common translations for the imperfect are:

'I was —ing' } (continuing, repeated)
 'I used to —'
 'I began to —' ('inceptive' imperfect, cf. *incipiō inceptus* 'begin')
 'I tried to —' ('conative' imperfect, cf. *cōnor cōnātus* 'try')

Since English does not always distinguish between completed and uncompleted actions, it will often be possible to translate the imperfect as a simple past tense, e.g. *uidēbātur* 'it seemed'.

4 Learn the following irregulars:

sum → 1st s.	ēr-a-m 'I was' etc.	eō → 1st s.	ī-ba-m 'I went' etc.
2nd s.	ēr-ā-s	2nd s.	ī-bā-s
3rd s.	ēr-a-t	3rd s.	ī-ba-t
1st pl.	er-ā-mus	1st pl.	ī-bā-mus
2nd pl.	er-ā-tis	2nd pl.	ī-bā-tis
3rd pl.	ēr-a-nt	3rd pl.	ī-ba-nt

possum → 1st s.	pót-eram 'I was able', 'I could' etc.
2nd s.	pót-erās
3rd s.	pót-erat
1st pl.	pot-erāmus
2nd pl.	pot-erātis
3rd pl.	pót-erant

- 5 *uolō* (*uolēbam*), *nōlō* (*nōlēbam*) and *mālō* (*mālēbam*) are all regular.
- 6 Semi-deponents (see 76) take the active form of the imperfect, i.e. *audē-bam* 'I was daring', *fiē-bam* 'I was being made'. In summary, semi-deponents have ACTIVE forms in the present, future and imperfect (*audeō*, *audēbō*, *audēbam*) and DEPONENT forms in the perfect (*ausus sum*).

90 Imperfect indicative deponent

	1	2	3
	'I was threatening'	'I was promising'	'I was speaking'
1st s.	minā-ba-r	pollicē-ba-r	loqu-ē-ba-r
2nd s.	minā-bā-ris (-re)	pollicē-bā-ris (-re)	loqu-ē-bā-ris (-re)
3rd s.	minā-bā-tur	pollicē-bā-tur	loqu-ē-bā-tur
1st pl.	minā-bā-mur	pollicē-bā-mur	loqu-ē-bā-mur
2nd pl.	minā-bā-mini	pollicē-bā-mini	loqu-ē-bā-mini
3rd pl.	minā-bā-ntur	pollicē-bā-ntur	loqu-ē-bā-ntur

	4	3/4
	'I was lying'	'I was advancing'
1st s.	menti-ē-ba-r	prōgredi-ē-ba-r
2nd s.	menti-ē-bā-ris (-re)	prōgredi-ē-bā-ris (-re)
3rd s.	menti-ē-bā-tur	prōgredi-ē-bā-tur

1st pl.	menti ē bā mur	prōgredi ē bā mur
2nd pl.	menti-ē-bā-minī	prōgredi-ē-bā-minī
3rd pl.	menti-ē-bā-ntur	prōgredi-e-bā ntur

Notes

- 1 The imperfect ind. dep. is formed by taking the present stem (+ key vowel *ē* in 3rd, 4th and 3rd-4th conjugations) and adding *-bā* *-bātur* *-bāmur* *-bāminī* *-bantur* (or *-bāre*).
- 2 Note the regular personal endings for the deponent: *-r* *-ris* (or *-re*) *-tur* *-mur* *-minī* *-ntur*.
- 3 For meaning, see 89³.

Exercises

Morphology

- 1 Form and conjugate the imperfect, giving the meaning of 1st person singular imperfect, of: uideor, expugnō, fiō, perueniō, sum, cōnor, iubeō, redūcō, irāscor, faciō, (optional: legō, eō, affirmō, soleō, moror, proficīscor, adgredior, ferō, nōlō, sentiō).
- 2 Translate each verb, then change *s.* to *pl.* and vice versa: tenēbās, loquēbantur, praeerat, minābāminī, imperābam, ueniēbātis, audēbant, obliuiscēbāris, audiēbat, patiēbāmur, auferēbāmus, sequēbar, (optional: negabam, pollicēbaris, pōnebat, adipiscēbantur, tollebat, irāscēbatur, faciēbas, mentiebar, putabāmus, cōspiciābāminī, uetābant, arbitrābāmur).
- 3 Give the Latin for: I used to think; he was abandoning; they were throwing; we used to follow, you (*s.*) were reporting, she was going out, they were accustomed, you (*pl.*) were, we were stating strongly, (optional: he used to find; they were daring, you (*s.*) were speaking, they used to lie, I was encouraging, you (*pl.*) were setting out, we were removing; I was asserting).
- 4 Give 3rd *s.* and *pl.* of the following verbs in present, future, imperfect and perfect: sentiō, minor, uetō, tollō, eō, sum, audeō, adipīscor, uideor, teneō, adgredior, mentior, accūsō, colō, (optional: loquor, negō, soleō, taceō, reperīō, proficīscor, perueniō, dēferō, sequor, faciō).
- 5 Locate and translate the imperfects in this list, stating the tense of each of the other verbs: loquar, sentiebat, amābit, negabat, solēbunt, audebant.

ponam, to leontis re-quit, habebit, tacebant, opināberis, arsitibis, expugnant, repellēbās, iūdicābātis, comēcistis, (optional: dormiēbātis, iubebītis, sequēbātur, hortābimur, uolēbās, sciētis, prōmittis, habuistis, inueniēbāmus, inibimus, coquēbat, amittis, crēdebant, recordābitur)

91 *iste a ud* 'that (of yours)'

iste declines as follows:

	<i>s.</i>			<i>pl.</i>		
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
nom.	ist-c	ist-a	ist-ud	ist-ī	ist-ac	ist-a
acc.	ist-um	ist-am	ist-ud	ist-ōs	ist-ās	ist-a
gen.	← ist-īus →			ist-ōrum	ist-ārum	ist-ōrum
dat.	← ist-ī →			← ist-īs →		
abl.	ist-ō	ist-ā	ist-ō	← ist-īs →		

Notes

- 1 *iste* declines exactly like *ille* 64. Cf. *is* 70. *iste* also has a neuter *s.* in *-d*, a gen. *s.* in *-īus* and dat. *s.* in *-ī*.
- 2 *Iste* is frequently used contemptuously of an opponent in a lawsuit and is so used of Verres by Cicero throughout his Verrine speeches.

Exercises

- 1 Say with which of the nouns in each line the given form of *iste* agrees:

istius serui, fēminae, templi, manūs, rēi, custōdis, impetūs
 isti lēge, uirginem, serui, sacerdotē, negōtiō
 isti serui, uirtūtī, manuī, negōtiō, milites
 ista: fēmina, clāmor, rēs, simulācra, puellā

- 2 Make *iste* agree with these nouns: serui (2 possibilities), negōtiō (2 possibilities), uirtūtī, custōdibus, manūs (3 possibilities).

92 *quīdam, quaedam, quoddam* 'a', 'a certain'

	s.			
	m.	f.	n.	
nom.	quī-dam	quāe-dam	quod-dam	(quid-dam)
acc.	quēn-dam	quān-dam	quod-dam	(quid-dam)
gen.		← cuius-dam →		
dat.		← cui-dam →		
abl.	quō-dam	quā-dam	quō-dam	
	pl.			
	m.	f.	n.	
nom.	quī-dam	quāe-dam	quod-dam	
acc.	quōs-dam	quās-dam	quod-dam	
gen.	quōrūn-dam	quārūn-dam	quōrūn-dam	
dat.	← quibūs-dam →			
abl.	← quibūs-dam →			

Notes

- 1 The forms correspond with those of *quī* 'who?' 29 + *-dam*.
- 2 *quīdam* is the nearest classical Latin ever got to an indefinite article, 'a', 'a certain'.

Exercises

- 1 Translate and identify the case of: *seruōrum quōrundam*; *custōdī cuidam*; *signa quaedam*; *clāmōrēs quōsdam*; *dolō quōdam*; *iūdicibus quibusdam*.
- 2 Say with which of the nouns in each line the given form of *quīdam* agrees:
cuiusdam: *seruā*, *templī*, *sacerdōtis*, *custōdum*, *manūs*, *impetū*
quaedam: *fēmina*, *rēs*, *negōtia*, *mīlitēs*, *lēgēs*, *loca*
quīdam: *custōs*, *nūntius*, *puerī*, *mīlitēs*, *magistrātūs*, *iūdicēs*

93 *num* 'surely . . . not'

You have already met *nōnne*, which means 'doesn't?' 'surely?' ('it is the case, isn't it?') (85). e.g. *nōnne seruī templum intrauerunt?* 'the slaves have entered the temple, haven't they?'

num puts the opposite emphasis, i.e. 'surely something is *not* the case?'. 'it *isn't* the case, is it?', e.g.

num peiōra audiui-tis? 'surely you have *not* heard worse things?', 'you *haven't* heard worse things, have you?'

num seruī effūgērunt? 'surely the slaves haven't run away?', 'the slaves *haven't* run away, have they?'

nōnne ('surely *x* is the case?') is used to ask a question in such a way that the speaker is trying to get the listener to answer 'yes'.

num ('surely *x isn't* the case?') is used to ask a question in such a way that the speaker is trying to get the listener to say 'no'.

94 Forming the infinitive in Latin

You have already met present infinitives (cf. 41, 58), but here is a revision table:

	1	2	3	4	5
Active	-āre	-ēre	-ere	-ire	-ire
Deponent	-ārī	-ērī	-ī	-ī	-ī

Here are the other infinitive (active and deponent) tables:

95 Perfect infinitive active 'to have —ed'

1	2	3
'to have loved'	'to have had'	'to have said'
amāu-isse (or amāsse)	habu-isse	dix-isse
4	3/4	
'to have heard'	'to have captured'	
audiu-isse (or audiisse or audisse)	cēp-isse	

Notes

- 1 Perfect infins. act. are formed by taking the stem of the 3rd p. p. and adding *-isse*.
- 2 Note how *-ui-* can be dropped, giving e.g. *amāsse* (*amāuisse*) 'to have loved', *dēlēsse* (*dēlēuisse*) 'to have destroyed', *nōsse* (*nōuisse*) 'to have got to know', 'to know' (from *nōscō* 3 *nōuī*).

96 Perfect infinitive deponent 'to have —ed'

1	2	
'to have threatened'	'to have promised'	
mināt-us a um esse	pollicit-us a um esse	
3	4	3/4
'to have said'	'to have lied'	'to have advanced'
locūt-us a um esse	mentīt-us a um esse	prōgrēss-us a um esse

Notes

- 1 The perfect infin. dep is formed by combining the perfect participle with the infin. of the verb 'to be', *esse*
- 2 The perfect participle acts as an adjective and must agree with the person doing the action, e.g.

'he seems to have lied' *uidētur mentītus esse*

'the girls seem to have spoken' *puellae uidentur locūtae esse*

97 Future infinitives active and deponent 'to be about to—'

1	2	3
Active 'to be about to love'	'to be about to have'	'to be about to say'
amātūr-us a um esse	habitūr-us a um esse	dictūr-us a um esse
Deponent 'to be about to threaten'	'to be about to promise'	'to be about to speak'
minātūr-us a um esse	pollicitūr-us a um esse	locūtūr-us a um esse
4	3/4	
Active 'to be about to hear'	'to be about to capture'	
audītūr-us a um esse	captūr-us a um esse	
Deponent 'to be about to lie'	'to be about to advance'	
mentītūr-us a um esse	prōgressūr-us a um esse	

Notes

- 1 The future infinitives active and deponent are formed in exactly the same way, i.e. combining the future participle with *esse* (cf. perfect deponent infinitives 96).
- 2 The future participle acts as an adjective and will agree with the person 'about to—', e.g.

'he seems to be about to speak' *uidētur dictūrus esse*

'she seemed to be about to listen' *uidēbatur audītura esse*

- 3 The future infinitive of 'to be' is either (regular) *futūrus esse* or the fixed form *fore*.
- 4 Verbs which have no future participle have no future infinitive. Among these are: *uolō, mālō, nōlō, possum*. Note that *uisurus esse* means 'to be about to see' (never 'seem'), *factūrus esse* means 'to be about to make/do' (never 'become').

Exercises

- 1 Form the present, perfect and future infinitives of: *sum, accūsō, expugnō, cōfirmō, iubeō, reducō, tollō, comicio, egredior, mentior, ueniō, cō* (optional: *sentio, audeo, ferō, nōlō* (no future infinitive), *adipiscor, cōnor, faciō, patior, dō, colō*).
- 2 State the tense of these infinitives and say which verbs they come from: *passūrus esse, loquī, amāuisse, sentīre, habitūrus esse, sustulisse, minātus esse, uelle, itūrus esse, expugnāre, secūtus esse, poscere, posuisse, adeptus esse, iudicāsse, repertūrus esse, dēferre*.
- 3 Give the Latin for: to seem; to have forbidden; to be about to think; to report; to have found; to be about to remove; to follow; to have remembered; to be about to lie; to promise; to have spoken; to be about to forget, (optional: to have driven back, to be about to worship, to throw; to be about to confirm).
- 4 Pick out the infinitives and say what tense each is, stating also what part of the verb the others are: *solitus es, detulisti, cōfirmāuēre, affirmāre, sequere, coluisse, putā, hortātus esse, reperire, mentīre, accūsātūrus esse, ausus est, repellere, loquere, expugnāuisse, audītūrus esse, dēferēbat, iudicātūrus esse*.

98 Indirect (or reported) statements: the accusative and infinitive

Observe the following utterances:

- (a) *dicit Verrem uenire* 'he says Verres to be coming' i.e. 'that Verres is coming'.
- (b) *nūntiant seruōs peruēnisse* 'they announce the slaves to have arrived' i.e. 'that the slaves arrived'.
- (c) *nōn putō Verrem abitūrum esse* 'I do not consider Verres to be about to go' i.e. 'that Verres will go'.

In all these cases, where English uses a 'that' clause, Latin (i) dispenses with the equivalent of 'that', (ii) puts the subject of the clause in the accusative and (iii) puts the verb in the infinitive.

This is Latin's way of reporting a statement (the *direct* statement of (a) above being 'Verres is coming', of (b) 'the slaves have arrived' etc.).

So be on the lookout for verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, reporting, announcing* followed by the *accusative and infinitive*. Translate such sentences literally first, and then adjust to the English 'that' form

Notes

- 1 English has a parallel construction, e.g. 'he knows *me* to be wise', or 'he knows that I am wise'
- 2 Latin uses the reflexive (*sē, suis*) to refer in the 'that' clause to the *subject of the main verb*, e.g.

Caesar dixit sē peruēnisse 'Caesar said that he (= Caesar) had arrived'

Caesar dixit eum peruēnisse 'Caesar said that he (= someone else) had arrived'

- 3 Observe the correct English form when the main verb is past, e.g.

Caesar dixit Rōmam sē uentūrum esse 'Caesar said himself to be about to come to Rome', i.e. 'Caesar said that he would come to Rome'

Caesar dixit Rōmam sē uēnisse 'Caesar said himself to have come to Rome', i.e. 'Caesar said that he had come to Rome'

Caesar dixit Rōmam sē uenīre 'Caesar said himself to be coming to Rome' i.e. 'Caesar said that he was coming to Rome'

- 4 Note that the normal position for *sē* is second word in its sentence or clause (see examples in n. 3 above). If it comes first word in its clause, or first word after a natural break in the sense, it is usually emphatic, e.g. *Caesar mihi heri dixit sē Rōmam uentūrum esse* 'Caesar said to me yesterday | that as for himself he would come to Rome'. This rule applies to all pronouns.
- 5 The accusative and infinitive construction is so common in Latin that Latin will sometimes use it *with an introductory noun (implying speech)* e.g. *nūntium accēpi seruōs templum intrāuisse* 'I received a message (saying) that the slaves had entered the temple'. Very often, several indirect statements (sometimes a whole speech) follow one another with no repetition of the introductory word(s). So remember always

to start your final translation of a Latin accusative and infinitive with the English word **THAT**, e.g.

dixit seruōs templum intrāuisse; custōdēs effūgis; seruōs simulācrum commouēre 'he said **THAT** the slaves had entered the temple; **THAT** the guards had fled; **THAT** the slaves were shifting the statue'

99 *negō* 'I say (that) . . . not', 'I deny'

Latin generally does not use *dīcō* + negative to express the idea 'I say that . . . not', but prefers *negō*; e.g.

negat seruōs templum intrāuisse 'he says that the slaves did not enter the temple' (lit. 'he denies the slaves to have entered the temple')

Exercises

1 Translate these sentences:

- (a) Cicerō affirmat Agrigentīnōs Herculis simulācrum habēre.
- (b) Agrigentīnī Verrem praetōrem bonum fuisse negābant.
- (c) fāma erat seruōs istius in templum ingressōs esse et signum sustulisse.
- (d) nūntium quendam haec omnia nūntiāuisse Agrigentīnīs Cicerō dixit
- (e) ego putō istum semper uōbīs mentitūrum esse.
- (f) opīnābatur Cicerō nēmīnem umquam scelera peiōra quam istum factūrum esse.
- (g) Verrēs seruōs in templa mittēbat, ciuibz aurum uī auferēbat, amīcīs etiam contrā (= *against*) lēgem fauēbat, scelera omnia amplexābātur
- (h) Verrem seruī cuiusdam nōmen dēlātūrum esse audiō.
- (i) Verres, quod nōlēbat in crimine esse, amīcum quendam mentiri iussit.
- (j) Verrem sciō innocentis accūsāre solitum esse
- (k) num facinora scelestiōra umquam audiūstis, mihi?
- (l) nōne Verrēs homo est scelestissimus?
- (m) Agrigentīnōs in Verris seruōs impetum fēcisse audiui.

2 Translate these sentences:

- (a) *ratio docet esse deos.* (Cicero)
 (b) *eventus docuit fortis fortunam iuvare.* (Livy)
 (c) *homo sum: humani nil a me alienum putō.* (Terence)
 (d) *Democritum aiunt numquam sine risu in publico fuisse.* (Seneca)
 (e) *sperat adulescens diu se victurum* (sc. esse) (Cicero)
 (f) *gloria uarium et uolubile quiddam est.* (Seneca)
 (g) *nuper me cuiusdam amici languor admonuit, optimos esse nos dum infirmi sumus, quem enim infirmum aut auaritia aut libido sollicitat?* (Pliny)
 (h) *hic, ubi nunc Roma est, incaedua silua uiribat, tantaque res paucis pascua bubus erat.* (Ovid)

ratio *ration-is* 3f. reason
doceo 2 I teach, inform
event-us us 4m. outcome, event
fortuna-a ae 1f. fortune
iuvō 1 I help
humani nil nothing
 (of) human
alien-us a um of no concern to (x: ā + abl.)
Democrit-us i 2m
 Democritus (Greek philosopher)
aiō 1 say
ris-us us 4m. laughter, laughing
in publico in public
sperō 1 I hope

adulescens *adulescent-is* 3m. youth
diu for a long time
uiuo 3 uixi uicturus I live
glori-a ae 1f. fame, renown
uari-us a um fickle, inconstant
uolubil-is e unstable, liable
 change
nuper recently
languor *languor-is* 3m. illness
admonēō 2 I remind
infirm-us a um weak, feeble

auaritia-a ae 1f. avarice, greed
libido *libidin-is* 3f. lust
Roma-a ae 1f. Rome
incaedu-us a um uncut, unfelled
silua-a ae 1f. wood
uideo 2 I am green (with foliage)
pauci-i ae a a few
pascua-a ōrum 2n. pl. pasture
bos bou-is 3m. or f. ox, cow, (pl.) cattle; dat. and abl. *bubus*

Reading exercises

- 1 In each of these accusative and infinitive phrases, state who is doing the action, the tense of the action (i.e. when it would have occurred in direct speech) and, if applicable, the object or complement of the infinitive: then translate, remembering to begin with 'that'. See 98^a for normal position of *sē* etc. Note that in some cases (e.g. (d)) there is ambiguity. E.g.:

eum filiam amare (a) eum: 'that he' or 'that him' (i.e. someone other than the subject of the introductory verb)

(b) *filiam*: 'the daughter' (subject or object of *amare*)

(c) *amare*: (present) 'loves'

i.e. 'that he loves the daughter' or 'that the daughter loves him'

- (a) *seruos templum expugnaturos esse*
 (b) *Verrem seruos ad templum misisse*
 (c) *Assoninos Chrēsini colere*
 (d) *Verrem me accusaturum esse*
 (e) *simulacra scilicet*
 (f) *Scipionem hominem summā humanitāte fuisse*
 (g) *omnia se conspicatās esse*
 (h) *istum nocte ex urbe egressuram esse*
 (i) *clamorem magnum factum esse*
 (j) *eum domum ire*

- 2 In the following passage, as you read, underline the acc + inf phrase with a single line and the introductory verb with a double line. In each case, the introductory verb may appear before, in the middle, or at the end of the phrase. As you meet each acc + inf phrase, repeat the process outlined for Exercise 1 above. Next, translate the passage and finally read it aloud in Latin, taking care to phrase correctly.

Cicero templum esse apud Agrigentinos dixit ad affirmant non longē a foro esse. in hoc templum intrāuisse dixit Verris seruos eos Verrem misisse Cicero opinatus est Verrēs autem se hoc fecisse negabat fīma peterebrescebat Verris seruos in templum ingressos esse et custodēs templum defendere conites esse magnum clamorem custodēs fecisse putauit Cicero, Agrigentinos igitur ex urbe progressos esse et ad templum uenisse. fugisse tum seruos Verris affirmauit. Cicero negabat umquam se scelera peiora auditurum esse.

- 3 Before translating, say whether each sentence contains an acc + inf phrase (reported statement) or merely a prolatum infinitive (acc after verbs like *uolo* etc.)

- (a) *negarunt fieri id posse*
 (b) *id uos facere noluit*
 (c) *te Chrēsae simulacrum tollere iubeō*
 (d) *seruos se necare conatos esse affirmabat*
 (e) *Verrem simulacrum sustulisse fīma erat*
 (f) *me Verrem accusare, iudicēs, uolebant omnes Agrigentini*

- 4 Using the introductory verbs given, change the bracketed sentences from direct to indirect statements (acc. + inf.), then translate the passage:

Cicerō dīcit (templum apud Agrigentīnōs est nōn longē ā forō). affirmat (ibi est simulācrum Herculis pulcherrimum). negat (pulchrius simulācrum quam illud numquam cōspicātus sum¹). fāma est (ad hoc templum Verrēs repente nocte seruōs quōsdam armātōs mīsīt) dīcit (hī concurrerunt et templum expugnauerunt). affirmat (custōdēs templī clāmāuēre et seruīs obsistere templumque dēfendere cōnātī sunt). dīcit (mox et peiōra et scelestiōra audiētis²).

¹ Use *sē* to introduce this; change *numquam* to *umquam*

² Use *eōs* to introduce this.

Reading exercise / Test exercise

audiō apud Catinēnsis esse Cereris sacrārium. in sacrārium illud uirīs intrāre nōn licēre omnēs sciunt. fāma est mulierēs et uirginēs ibi sacra cōficere solēre. in eō sacrārīō fuisse signum Cereris perantīquum multī affirmant. hoc signum seruōs Verris Cicerō dīxit nocte ex illō locō sustulisse; omnibus rem atrōcissimam uisam esse. Verrem deinde iussisse amīcum quendam aliquem reperīre et accūsāre Cicerō dīxit. nam eum in crimine esse nōlle. Cicerō amīcum affirmāuit seruī cuiusdam nōmen dētulisse, seruū accūsāuisse, in eum fictōs dedisse testīs. senātum autem Catinēnsium sacerdōtēs uocāuisse et dē omnibus rēbus rogāuisse. sacerdōtēs dīxit Cicerō omnia omnis cōspicātās esse, senātum seruū innocentem esse dīxisse. iūdicēs numquam peiōra audīuisse scelera arbitrābātur Cicerō, mox autem peiōra audītūrōs esse.

English–Latin

- 1 Translate into Latin:

- I think that Verres did this.
- Cicero said that the slaves entered the temple.
- Many citizens used to come to the city, do business, then return home.
- Verres' friend reported the name of a certain slave.
- We all know that the defendant is a scoundrel.
- Surely you don't think that the slaves took away the statue?

- Cicero was an excellent man, used gladly to defend his friends, and¹ never forgot the crimes of our enemies.
- Cicero thinks the judges will never hear of a worse crime.

¹ No need to translate

- 2 Read the text of 4A(iv) again, then translate this passage:

The Syracusans have a law concerning the priesthood of Jupiter. Cicero says that this law enjoins the Syracusans to elect three men; that the Syracusans must then cast lots; that one of the three men becomes priest. He states that Verres wanted to give the priesthood to a friend, called Theomnastus, that the Syracusans refused, but¹ that Verres by a trick achieved his object

¹ No need for an equivalent in Latin (just use a comma)

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building

Prefixes

per-, rather like *prae-*, often intensifies the meaning of the word to which it is added, e.g. *antīquus* 'old', *perantīquus* 'very old'.

Note the way the following prefixes may change in response to the consonant to which they are attached (this is called assimilation):

- ad* + *capiō* = *accipiō*¹ 'I receive'
- ad* + *firmō* = *affirmō*² 'I assert'
- ad* + *loquor* = *alloquor* 'I address'
- ad* + *propinquō* = *appropinquō* 'I draw near'
- ad* + *tulī* = *attulī* 'I have brought (to)'
- ad* + *rapiō* = *arripiō* 'I seize'
- inter* + *legō* = *intellegō* 'I understand'
- sub* + *capiō* = *suscipiō* 'I undertake'
- sub* + *cēdō* = *succēdō* 'I go under'
- sub* + *gerō* = *suggerō* 'I supply'
- sub* + *rapiō* = *surripiō* 'I steal'
- sub* + *tulī* = *sustulī* 'I filched'

¹ Observe how a short *a* (*capiō*) becomes *i* (*accipiō*) when a prefix is added. Cf. *rapiō* → *arripiō* etc.
² It is common for the prefixes *ad-* and *con-* to be printed without assimilation, e.g. *adloquor*, *conlocō*

con + locō = collocō 'I place'
 con + pellō (3 'I drive') = compellō 'I compel'
 con + rapiō = corripio 'I snatch up'
 con + moneō = commoneō 'I move'

Suffixes: revision

-c(u)lum, -crum added to a verb stem give neuter nouns, e.g. simulō 'I copy', 'I pretend' + -crum = simulācrum 'image', 'statue'; pō-tus 'drink' + culum = pōculum 'drink', 'cup'; uehō 'carry' + -culum = uehiculum 'carriage'. Such words are usually instruments for carrying out the action.

-iō, -iōnis 3f. added to the stem of the perfect participle gives an abstract noun, e.g. legō lēct-us 'I read' → lēctiō 'reading'; audiō audītus 'I hear' → auditiō 'hearing' etc. Cf. sessiō, mōtiō, accūsātiō etc. Such words show an action, or its result.

Word exercises

Give the meaning and connection with Latin of: clamour, custodial, temple, repulsion, renunciation (NB. nūntiō becomes nūnciō in Medieval Latin), total, pugnacious, convention, sign, cult, relic, sensibility, sacerdotal, conjecture, putative, veto, legal, amicable, defamation, impetuous, judicial, triumvirate.

Real Latin

Catullus¹

nūllī sē dīcit mulier mea nūbere malle

quam mihi, nōn sī sē Iuppiter ipse petat.

dīcit: sed mulier cupidō quod dīcit amanti

in uentō et rapidā scribere oportet aquā. (Catullus 70)

nūbō 3 (+ dat.) I marry (said of women only)	quod what (postponed – in English it would come after sed)	amāns amant-is 3m. lover
ipse himself (nom. s. m.)		uent-us ī 2m. wind
petat 'were to seek'	cupid-us a um passionate	rapid-us a um fast-flowing
		oportet 'one ought'

¹ C. 84–54. Famous for his love poems addressed to his woman, Lesbia. See section 6A

Martial

omnia prōmittis, cum tōtā nocte bibistī.

māne nihil praestās. Pōllio, māne bibe. (12.12)

cum when
bibō 3 bib-i I drink

māne in the morning
praestō 1 I provide

Pōllio O Pollio

numquam sē cēnāsse domī Philo iūrat, et hoc est
nōn cēnat, quotiens nemo uocāuit eum. (5.47)

cēnō 1 I dine
Philo Philon-is 3m. Philo

iūrō 1 I swear
est 'is the case'

quotiens as often as,
whenever

Aulus Gellius¹

cum (when) mentior et mē mentīrī dīcō, mentior, an (or) uērūm dīcō?

¹ C. 123–165 A.D. His *Noctēs Atticae* in twenty books is a compendium of scholarly discussions of diverse topics

An epitaph

sum quod eris, fuī quod es

quod what

Section 4B

Running vocabulary for 4B(i)

Asi-a ae 1f. Asia Minor
 calamitās calamitāt-is 3f.
 disaster, calamity
 ceter-i ae a the rest; the
 others
 ceteris 'than the others'
 ciuitās ciuitāt-is 3f. state
 clār-us a um famous, well-
 known
 collocō 1 I lodge
 comes comit-is 3m.
 companion, friend;
 (pl.) retinue
 cupiō 3/4 I desire, yearn
 for, want desperately
 excitō 1 I raise, arouse
 fruor 3 dep (+ abl) I
 enjoy

Graec-us -ī 2m Greek
 Hellēspont-um ī 2n.
 Hellespont
 hospes hospit-is 3m. host
 lāmtor lāmtōr-is 3m
 lamtor
 ipse a um (him-, her-, it-)
 self, (them-) selves
 Lampsacēnus-ī 2m. person
 from Lampsacum (or
 Lampsacus)
 Lampsac-um ī 2n.
 Lampsacum (or
 Lampsacus)
 nōbil-is e renowned,
 distinguished
 ōlim once

omnibus aliis 'than all the
 others'
 omnibus aliis hominibus
 'than all other men'
 perniciēs perniciē-ī 5f
 destruction
 prope almost
 quiet-us a um peaceful,
 law-abiding
 tumult-us ūs 4m. riot,
 outcry, disorder
 turp-is e disgusting, filthy,
 outrageous
 ūllus a um any
 ūtor 3 dep. (+ abl) I use,
 make use of

Learning vocabulary for 4B(i)

Nouns

<i>Asi-a</i> ae 1f. Asia Minor	companion, friend,
<i>calamitās calamitat-is</i> 3f	(pl) retinue
disaster, calamity	<i>hospes hospit-is</i> 3m. host;
<i>comes comit-is</i> 3m	friend; guest,

Adjectives

<i>ceteri</i> ae a the rest; the others	<i>nobil-is</i> e renowned distinguished; well-born, noble
<i>clār-us</i> a um famous, well-known	<i>turp-is</i> e disgusting, filthy, outrageous; ugly
<i>Græc-us</i> a um Greek	

Verbs

<i>cupio</i> 3 4 <i>cupio cupio</i> 3 4	<i>fruo</i> 3 dep. <i>fructus</i> (+ abl.)
I desire, want for	I enjoy
want desperately	

Others

<i>prope</i> (adv.) almost
(prep. + acc) near

Running vocabulary for 4B(ii)

<i>artifici-um</i> ī 2n. skill, ingenuity	<i>inuestigō</i> 1 I look into, search out
<i>coep-ī</i> (perf.) I began	<i>libidō libidin-is</i> 3f. lust, passion
<i>cōsul cōsul-is</i> 3m. consul	<i>migrō</i> 1 I move
<i>cupiditās cupiditat-is</i> 3f	<i>mīr-us</i> a um wonderful, amazing
lust, desire	<i>modest-a</i> ae 1f. discretion
<i>dicam</i> 'should I say'	<i>munus muner-is</i> 3n. job, duty
<i>exardeō</i> 2 <i>exarsī</i> I burn, am on fire	<i>neglegō</i> 3 <i>neglēxī</i> I ignore
<i>exim-us</i> a um outstanding	<i>offendo</i> 3 <i>offendi</i> I offend
<i>existimatiō existimatiōn-is</i> 3f reputation	<i>omnibus aliis Lampsacēnīs</i>
<i>factus ad</i> made for	'than all other men of Lampsacum'
<i>lanitor lanitor-is</i> 3m. lanitor	<i>Philodām-us</i> ī 2m. Philodamus
<i>integritās integritat-is</i> 3f integrity	

Learning vocabulary for 4B(ii)

Nouns

<i>cōsul cōsul-is</i> 3m. consul	<i>cupiditās cupiditat-is</i> 3f
	lust, greed, desire

Verbs

<i>coep-ī</i> (perf. in form) I began	<i>recipio</i> 3/4 <i>recēpi receptus</i> I welcome, receive, take in	<i>retineō</i> 2 <i>retinui retentus</i> I hold back, detain, restrain, maintain
<i>neglegō</i> 3 <i>neglēxī neglēctus</i> I ignore, overlook, neglect		

Running vocabulary for 4B(iii)

<i>accumbō</i> 3 I lie down, recline	<i>feruens feruent-is</i> boiling	<i>oportere</i> 'ought'
<i>aliis prōvincialibus</i> 'than the other provincials'	<i>festinō</i> 1 I hurry	<i>perfundō</i> 3 <i>perfūdī</i> I drench, soak
<i>alius ex aliā parte</i> 'different people from different parts'	<i>forās</i> out	<i>Philodām-us</i> ī 2m. Philodamus
<i>bibō</i> 3 <i>bibi</i> I drink	<i>grauitās grauitat-is</i> 3f seriousness, solemnity	<i>postquam</i> after
<i>caleō</i> 2 I am warm/hot	<i>hospitāl-is</i> e welcoming	<i>propinqu-us</i> ī 2m. relative
<i>celebrō</i> 1 I fill x (acc.) with y (abl.)	<i>iānu-a</i> ae 1f. door	<i>quaesō</i> 'I say', 'please'
<i>claudō</i> 3 I close	<i>intelligō</i> 3 <i>intellēxī</i> I perceive, understand	<i>Rubri-us</i> ī 2m. Rubrius
<i>comparō</i> 1 I prepare, get ready	<i>inter</i> (+ acc) among	<i>sermō sermōn-is</i> 3m conversation, discussion
<i>concitō</i> 1 I stir up	<i>inuitō</i> 1 I invite	<i>simul</i> at the same time
<i>conueniō</i> 4 <i>conuēni</i> (ad) I meet (at)	<i>inuit-us</i> a um unwilling	<i>simul ut</i> as soon as
<i>conuiui-um</i> ī 2n. party	<i>ips-e</i> a um (him- her- it-) self	<i>solum</i> only
<i>discumbō</i> 3 <i>discubiū</i> I lie down, spread myself about	<i>laetitia-a</i> ae 1f. merriment, festivity, joy	<i>summā celeritate</i> 'with the utmost speed'
<i>effugiō</i> 3 I escape	<i>libidō libidin-is</i> 3f lust	<i>tant-us</i> a um so great, so much
	<i>maioribus poculīs</i> 'with larger cups'	<i>tumult-us</i> ūs 4m riot, outcry
	<i>multō</i> (by) much	<i>vehementer</i> strongly
	<i>nūntiāri</i> = <i>nūntiāuerunt</i>	

Note

II. 110-13. Roman custom allowed free citizen women at *conuiuia*, but Greek custom did not. The only women at Greek parties were slaves or *hetairai* ('courtesans').

Learning vocabulary for 4B(iii)

Nouns

coniūsus-um ī 2n. party
grauis *grauis*-e 3f
seriousness, solemnity,
importance, authority

iānu-a ae 1f. door
laetitia-a ae 1f. merriment,
festivity, joy

sermo *sermonis* 3m
conversation, discussion

Adjectives

ali-us a *ud* other (see 102)

sol-us a *um* alone (gen. s.
solius, dat. s. *soli*)

tant-us a *um* so much; so
great; so important

Verbs

bibō 3 *bibi* 1 drink
comparō 1 1 prepare,
provide, get ready, get
conueniō 4 *conueni*
conuentum (adv) 1 meet (at)
effugiō 3 *effugi* 1 escape

festinō 1 1 hurry
intelligō 3 *intelligi*
intellēctus 1 perceive,
understand,
comprehend, grasp
mitō 1 1 invite

optō 1 2 *optare* 1
ought (to + inf); it is
right, fitting for X
acc. to X, Y, Z

Others

inter (+ acc.) among,
between

simul at the same time

solum adv. only

Running vocabulary for 4B(iv)

assentiō 4 *assēnsi* 1 agree
caedō 3 1 cut (down); beat
(down)
circumdō 1 1 surround
concurrō 3 *concurrī* 1 run
together
eodem sēnsū et dolore 'with
the same sentiment and
anguish'
ferr-um ī 2n. iron
(implement), sword

hōc modō 'in this way'
Lampsacī 'at Lampsacum'
multō (by) much, far
negōtior 1 dep 1 do
business
omnibus aliis 'than all
others'
orō 1 1 beg, pray
parcō 3 (+ dat.) 1 spare
peccat-um ī 2n. crime,
error

potius quam rather than
praetor praetōr-is 3m
praetor (Roman state
official)
quī 'who' (nom. pl. m.)
Romān-us a *um* Roman
sax-um ī 2n. stone, rock
scelerāt-us a *um* wicked
summa celeritate 'with the
utmost speed'

Learning vocabulary for 4B(iv)

Nouns

caedō 3 *caedi* 1 cut (down);
flog, beat down

praetor praetōr-is 3m
praetor (Roman state
official)

Adjectives

Romān-us a *um* Roman

Verbs

caedō 3 *caedi* 1 cut (down);
flog, beat down

concurrō 3 *concurrī* 1 run
together

orō 1 beg, pray
parcō 3 *perpeti* *parcō*
(+ dat.) 1 spare

Others

multō (by) much, far

Grammar and exercises for 4B

100A The ablative case: summary of forms and usages to date

Here is a summary of the forms of the ablative

	1st/2nd decl.	3rd decl.	4th decl.	5th decl.
	m. f. n.	m f./n		
s.	-ō -ā -ō	-eī	-ū	-e
pl.	-īs -īs -īs	-ibus	-ibus	-eas

Notes

- 1 If you pay attention to the length of the vowels in the ending, you will cut out some of the possible confusions, e.g. -is = nom. s. (e.g. *cīu-is*) or gen. s. (e.g. *urb-is*) of 3rd decl., while the dat./abl. pl. of the 1st/2nd decl. is -īs (e.g. *seru-īs*). Confusion may result, however, from the acc. pl. form of 3rd decl. -i- stems, which is -īs (e.g. *cīu-īs*).
- 2 Watch out for the long -ā of 1st decl. abl. s. (e.g. *seru-ā*) and do not confuse it with the short -a of the 1st decl. nom. s. f (e.g. *seru-a*) and the 2nd/3rd decl. n. plurals (e.g. *cōnsilia*, *scelera*, *ingentia*).
- 3 The -ō of the 2nd decl. can be dat. or abl. (e.g. *seru-ō*).
- 4 The -e of the 3rd decl. (e.g. *urb-e*) should not be confused with the -e of the nom. acc. s. n. of adjectives (e.g. *trist-e*).

- 5 The *-ī* of the 3rd decl. adjectives (e.g. *trīst-ī*) and one noun-type (*mare*, which you will meet in 125) should not be confused with 2nd decl. *-ī* in the gen. s. (*seru-ī*) and nom. pl. (*seru-ī*).

None of these problems will arise if you make sure you know to which declension nouns and adjectives which you learn belong

The ablative: survey of uses

Four usages of the ablative have been met so far: with prepositions meaning in, at and from (10.23) (e.g. *in templō, ē fānō*); in descriptions (49) (e.g. *homo summā uirtūte*); in time phrases (67) (e.g. *illō tempore, decem annīs*); and the 'ablative of means (or instrument)' (84) (e.g. *pugnīs mē uerberat*).

It is now time to bring these usages together and add some more. Basically, the ablative has three functions:

- the 'true' ablative (*ablātus* from *auferō* – 'I take away'), the point from which the action, literally or figuratively, moves, e.g. *ē templō, ā fānō*.
- the 'locative' ablative, i.e. the point in time or space where or when something takes place, e.g. *in templō, illō tempore, decem annīs*.
- the 'instrumental-accompanying' ablative, i.e. the means/instrument by which the action is carried out, or the people, qualities or circumstances which accompany the action (in English, often 'by' or 'with'), e.g. *uir summā uirtūte* (qualities which accompany the action) and *pugnīs mē uerberat* (means/instrument by which the action takes place).

The ablative often seems a difficult case because it appears to have so many uses, but if you remember these three basic functions you will see how (what appear to be) separate uses slip into place.

100B Further uses of the ablative

- 1 Under 'true' ablative: the ablative of comparison (the standard from which comparisons can be made), e.g.

'this town is more famous than all others' *hoc oppidum clārius est omnibus aliīs* ('all the others' are the starting-point from which comparisons are made)

Observe that there is no equivalent of 'than' in this construction. Cf. the construction using *quam* which you have met at 72⁴, where the two things compared are put in the same case, e.g. *hoc oppidum clārius est quam omnia alia*.

- 2 Under 'instrumental-accompanying' ablative: the ablative of attendant circumstances, 'together with', e.g. *peruēnit cum magnā calamitāte ciuitātis* 'he came with great disaster for the state', 'he came and the circumstances in which he came led to great disaster'. *cum* + abl. is frequent, but sometimes *cum* is omitted and the plain ablative used
- 3 Under 'instrumental-accompanying' ablative: the ablative of manner, which shows how something is done. This can again be constructed with *cum* or not, e.g.

summā celeritāte peruēnit
summā cum celeritāte peruēnit } he arrived with great speed'

- 4 Under 'instrumental-accompanying' ablative, the ablative after *utor* 3 dep. *ūsus* 'I use', and *fruor* 3 dep. *fructus* 'I enjoy', e.g. *hīs uerbīs ūsī* 'using these words'.
- 5 Under 'instrumental-accompanying' ablative: the ablative expressing measure of difference. E.g.

Verrēs multō turpior est quam comitēs suī 'Verres is much (i.e. by a great amount) viler than his companions'
sōl multīs partibus maior est quam terra 'The sun is many times (lit. 'by many parts') larger than the earth' (Cicero)

101 Genitive of description

The genitive case is often used for description (cf. the ablative at 49), e.g.

eum filiam habere eximiae pulchritūdinis 'that he had a daughter of outstanding beauty'

Cf. English idiom. Note that an adjective always accompanies the noun in this usage.

Exercises

1 Revision of ablative forms

- (a) Give the ablative s. and pl. of these noun + adj. phrases: comes clārus; calamitās magna; conuīuium Graecum; amīcus nōbilis; magistrātus innocēns; fōrma turpis; rēs Rōmāna.
- (b) Pick out the ablatives in this list: praetōrī, comitibus, Asiā, cōsulis, conuīuiis, laetitia, sermōne, cupiditātem, uī, amīcō, diēbus, homine turpī, uirō nōbilī, manū celerī.
- (c) In each list, with which nouns will the adjective go?

ingentī: nūntius, puella, templō, uirgine, cūrā
audācibus: uirum, fēminis, sacerdotibus, amīcus
solā: uirō, agrō, fēmina, uirtūte
magnīs: puerīs, comitis, manibus, cōsilia
tantō: cupiditāte, proelō, sceleribus, praetōre
longiōre: noctī, periculō, sermōnis, clāmor, uīā

2 Translate these sentences:

- (a) uir multō melior omnibus aliis erat.
(b) negāuit sē summā uī hominem cecidisse
(c) iste saxīs iānuam cecidit.
(d) Cicerō Agrigentīnōs affirmāuit uirōs esse magnae uirtūtis.
(e) praetōrēs, uirī summā grauitāte, conuīuiis nōn fruuntur.
(f) Lampsacēnī mōre Graecō rēs suās gerēbant
(g) mālunt Graecī ōtiō et pāce uītam dēgere (= to pass) quam bellō et calamitātibus.
(h) Cicerō Verrem cēteris praetōribus peiōrem esse putābat.
(i) Verris seruōs fāma erat summā uī ūsōs esse.
(j) eō tempore lānitor ad Verrem summā celeritāte uēnit et eum multis uerbis retinēre cōnābātur

102 Pronoun/adjectives: *alius* 'other' and *aliquis* 'some'

alius alia aliud 'other' 'another' 'different'

	s.			pl.		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	ālī-us	ālī-a	ālī-ud	ālī-ī	ālī-ae	ālī-a
acc.	ālī-um	ālī-am	ālī-ud	ālī-os	ālī-as	ālī-a

	alius			ali-ōrum	ali-ārum	ali-ōrum
gen.	ālī-ī	ālī-ī	ālī-ī	ālī-īs	ālī-īs	ālī-īs
dat.	ālī-ō	ālī-ā	ālī-ō	ālī-īs	ālī-īs	ālī-īs
abl.	ālī-ō	ālī-ā	ālī-ō	ālī-īs	ālī-īs	ālī-īs

Notes

- 1 Observe the idiom *alius ex aliā parte* 'different men from different places'. This idiom can appear with the parts of *alius* in any case, e.g. *alius aliud laudat* or *aliī alia laudant* 'different people praise different things' or with other indefinite words e.g. *alius alibi* 'different people in different places'.
- 2 Note also *aliī . . . aliī* 'some . . . others' (sometimes *aliī . . . pars* or *pars . . . pars*).
- 3 Note *aliās* 'at another time', *alibi* 'in another place' and *aliēnus a um* 'belonging to another' (and the English 'alias', 'alibi' and 'alien').

aliquis aliqua aliquid 'someone' and *aliquī aliqua aliquod* 'some'

	<i>aliquis</i> 'someone'			<i>aliquī</i> 'some' (adj.)		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	ālī-quis	ālī-qua	ālī-quid	ālī-quī(s)	ālī-qua	ālī-quod
acc.	ālī-quem	ālī-quam	ālī-quid	ālī-quem	ālī-quam	ālī-quod
gen.	ālī-cuius	ālī-cuius	ālī-cuius	ālī-cuius	ālī-cuius	ālī-cuius
dat.	ālī-cui	ālī-cui	ālī-cui	ālī-cui	ālī-cui	ālī-cui
abl.	ālī-quō	ālī-quā	ālī-quō	ālī-quō	ālī-quā	ālī-quō

Notes

- 1 Note other *ali-* indefinites: *aliquandō* 'at some time', *alicubi* 'somewhere', *aliquantō* 'to some extent', *aliquot* 'some', 'several'.
- 2 The pl. is the same as for *ali* + *quī* (see 29), except that the n. pl. is *aliqua*.
- 3 Note *aliquid* + gen. = 'some', e.g. *aliquid artificī* 'some (of) skill'. Cf. 31 *satis*, *nimis*.

Exercises

1 With which nouns do the adjectives go?

alius: hospitis, comes, cōsulī, calamitātis, praetōrēs
aliī: Lampsacēnō, sermōnēs, Rōmānōs, conuīuī, iānuae
alia: calamitāte, conuīuia, cōsule, uirgō, cupiditātibus

aliā iānuā, conuīuiō, sermōnī, cōsul, calamitāte
 aliqua: sermō, iānuae, mulier, uerba, amīcōs
 aliquā: cōsule, fēmina, rē, conuīuia, serua

2 Translate:

- alius aliud dīcit.
- aliī Lampsacēnī, aliī Agrigentīnī erant
- aliī alibī in oppidum impetum faciunt
- aliī ex agrīs, pars ex oppidō concurrerunt
- dīcet aliquis aliquid.
- at quis appellat? magistrātus aliquī? nēmo. (Cicero)
- Catīlīna, dubitās . . . abīre in aliquās terrās? (Cicero)
- Verrēs cum aliquō comite domō exiit

appellō 1 I call
 dubitō 1 I hesitate

103 ipse ipsa ipsum 'very', 'actual', 'self'

	s.			pl		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	ips-e	ips-a	ips-um	ips-ī	ips-ae	ips-a
acc.	ips-um	ips-am	ips-um	ips-ōs	ips-ās	ips-a
gen.	← ips-ius →			ips-ōrum	ips-arum	ips-orum
dat.	← ips-ī →			← ips-īs →		
abl.	ips-ō	ips-ā	ips-ō	← ips-īs →		

Notes

- Gen./dat. s. are normal for pronouns, cf. *huius, illius, istius, eius, cuius* (also *nūllius, ūllius, ūnīus, tōtius, sōlius*) *illī, istī, eī, cui* (also *nūllī, ūllī, ūnī, tōtī, sōlī*). For nom. s. m. cf. *ille* and *iste*; other forms are like *mult-us a um*.
- ipse* is an emphatic and intensive adjective often used to resolve ambiguities as to subject or object, e.g.

retinēte uōs ipsōs 'restrain you/yourselves', 'restrain yourselves'
ipse hoc faciō 'It is actually I myself who am doing this'

Compare the phrase *ipsō factō* 'by the actual/very act'. *ipse* can be translated 'self', 'very', 'actual', e.g. *id ipsum mihi placet* 'that's the very thing I like'. It can stand on its own as a noun, e.g. *ipsī* 'the men themselves'

Exercises

1 With which nouns do the parts of ipse agree?

ipsī: calamitātī, cōsulēs, conuīuiō, templī, nūntiū
 ipsa: grauitās, cupiditāte, signa, fāmā, simulācra
 ipsā: laetitia, sermōne, grauitāte, conuīuia, celeritās

2 Translate: ipsī uoluēre; signum ipsum; ipsae clāmārun; cōsiliō ipsō; ipsī hominī pepercērunt (two possibilities; after translating, read aloud, distinguishing by your phrasing which is which); ipsa laetitia; obsecrārunt ipsī orāruntque; nolī ipsam retinēre.

3 Translate these sentences:

- tranquillō animō esse potest nēmo. (Cicero)
- sapiēns uincit uirtūte fortunam. (Seneca)
- heu, Fortūna, quis est crudēlior in nōs tē deus? (Horace)
- is maximē diuitiis fruitur quī minimē diuitiis indiget. (Seneca)
- heu, quam difficile est crīmen nōn prōdere uultū. (Ovid)
- uilius argentum est aurō, uirtutibus aurum. (Horace)
- honestā mors turpī uītā potior. (Tacitus)
- ex Africā semper aliquid nouī. (Pliny)
- hominis tōta uīta nihil aliud quam ad mortem iter est. (Seneca)
- aliud aliī nātūra iter ostendit. (Sallust)

tranquill-us a um calm

sapiēns sapient-is wise

fortun-a ae 1f. fortune

(Fortūna = the goddess

Fortune)

crudel-is e cruel

diuiti-ae ārum 1f. pl. riches

qui (nom. s. m.) who

indigē 2 (+ abl.) I want,
 need

heu alas!

crīmen crimin-is 3n.

offence, crime

prodō 3 I betray, reveal

uult-us ūs 4m 1acc

expression

uil-is e cheap

argent-um ī 2n. silver

honest-us a um honourable

potior preferable, better

Afric-a ae 1f. Africa

nou-us a um new

iter itiner-is 3n. journey,

route

nātūr-a ae 1f. nature

Reading

Pick out the ablative phrases in Exercise 2 p. 216 above. Write your translation next to each. Then say what each phrase adds to the sentence (you may use the formal categories, but it is more important that you try to define their function in your own way first). E.g.

mōre Graecō bibērunt: 'they drank in the Greek way'
 mōre Graecō: this tells us the way they drank; ablative of manner

Do not be surprised if occasionally you find it difficult to be precise or if a phrase may fit more than one category.

Reading exercise / Test exercise

in Hellēspontō oppidum esse scītis, iūdicēs, ceteris oppidīs Asiae clārius et
 nōbilius, nōmine Lampsacum. Lampsacēnōs ipsōs affirmō hominēs esse
 quētōs, illi mōre Graecō uītam dēgunt (= spend). mālunt enim ōtīō ūtī et
 pāce quam bellō et calamitātibus uītam dēgere. iste Lampsacum tempore
 quōdam peruēnit. ad lānitōrem, uīrum summae grauitātis, Lampsacēnī
 eum dēdūserunt iste autem mox sē ad Philodāmum quendam
 ingritūrum esse dicebat. Philodamus enim domū habebat fīliam
 pulcherrimam Verrem scītis, iudices, feminis pulchris semper omnibus
 modis et omnibus temporibus uolēnter secta. Tunc uero se Verrem
 offendisse aliquō modo opīnatus est atque istam summā retinēre uī
 coepit. Verrēs igitur Rubrium ad Philodāmum mīsīt, cōsiliō ūsus
 pessimō, quod Philodāmus uir erat magnae apud Lampsacēnōs
 existimatiōnis et praetōrēs cōsulēsque recipere solēbat, nōn amīcōs
 eōram sed Verres Philodāmum per uīrum Rubrium deducere iussit.
 Philodāmus autem, quod inuītus uidērī nōluit, conuīuium parāuit,
 Rubriana comitēs inuītare omnis iussit illi summa celeritate uenērunt,
 discubuēre; primō Graecō bibērunt mōre, mox pōculis maiōribus.
 conuīuium sermōnibus celebrabant hōc tempore et licetis. mox autem
 Rubrius, 'Philodame,' inquit, 'fīliam uocā tuam' sed ille, uir grauitate
 summā, irāscēbātur. mulierēs in conuīuiō cum uīrīs accumbere oportēre
 negāuit clāmōr factus est maximus per aedēs Lampsacēnī ubi tamultum
 addidēre, nocte celeritate summā ad Philodāmū aedis conueniēbant
 postridīō (= next day) autem ad Verris hospitium¹ protecti sunt ferrō
 riuam et saxis caedere coepērunt eōdem tempore igni circumdare
 Verrī autem Lampsacēnī pepercērunt, quod ciues quādam Rōmānīs
 hoc melius fore dixerunt quam praetorem necāre Rōmānum

¹ hospitium i 2n lodging.

English-Latin

1 Translate into Latin

- (a) Verres was more wicked than Rubrius.
 (b) The people of Lampsacum used to enjoy peace and leisure.

- (c) Philodamus was a man of great seriousness,¹ Verres a man of great lust.¹
 (d) The cooks were getting the party ready amid conversation and merriment.
 (e) Verres and his friends were drinking in the Greek way.
 (f) The people of Lampsacum were beating the door with their fists and at the same time shouting at the top of their voices².

¹ Translate each phrase in two different ways

² Use abl. s. of *summa uox*

2 Reread the text of 4B(iii), then translate this passage into Latin
 Philodamus was a man of great seriousness, but¹ nevertheless always much more hospitable than others. He invited Rubrius and his friends to a party. They did so very quickly. They were drinking amid conversations and merriment. But suddenly Rubrius ordered Philodamus to call his daughter. Philodamus said that he would not call her. Then there was a scene.

FACTS 1000

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building: revision

Suffixes

Abstract nouns are formed with the suffixes -tudo, -itudo and -tio, e.g.

artifici-um i 2n trick

consili-um i 2n plan

conuiu-um i 2n feast

perniciēs pernici-ō i 5t destruction

Word exercise

Give the meaning and Latin connections of: calamity, hospitable, clarity, turpitude, cupidity, use, vim, negligence, reception, gravity, sermon, convenient, intellect, oration, retention, bibulous, celerity, usurious, concurrent.

Everyday Latin

(a) Some ablative usages

A.D. = *annō Domini* 'in the year (abl. of time) of our Lord'
bonā fidē 'in good faith'
in tōtō 'in the whole', 'entirely'
s.p. (attached to an epitaph) = *suā pecūniā* '(buried) at his own expense'
mōre suō 'after his own manner' '(he did it) his way'
prīmā faciē 'at first sight', 'apparently'

(b) Uses of ipse

ipsō factō 'by the very fact itself'
ipsissima uerba 'the very words themselves' (note the superlative of *ipse*)
 An *ipse dixit* lit. 'he himself said it' i.e. an authoritarian assertion, dogmatic statement

(c) Uses of inter

inter alia 'among other things'
inter aliōs 'among other persons'
inter sē 'among/between themselves'
inter vivōs lit. 'between living people' i.e. 'from one living person to another'
inter nōs 'between ourselves'
inter pōcula lit. 'between cups', i.e. 'over a glass'

Real Latin

Horace¹

damnōsa quid nōn imminuit diēs?
aetās parentum, peior auīs, tulit
nōs nēquiōrēs, mox datūrōs
prōgeniem uitīōsiōrem. (Odes 3.6.45ff.)

¹ Quintus Horātius Flaccus 65–8 B.C.

4th illustration	1	auī	}	past
	2	aetās parentum		
	3	nōs	}	present
	4	prōgeniēs		

<i>damnos-us a um</i>	<i>aetās aetāt-is</i> 3f. age	<i>nēquior nēquiōr-is</i> worse
detrimental, causing	<i>parēs parēt-is</i> parent 3m	<i>prōgeniēs progeniēs-is</i> 5f
loss [Hold until solved, by diēs]	or f.	offspring
<i>imminuō</i> 2 I diminish	<i>au-us ī</i> 2m. grandfather	<i>uitiō-us a um</i> corrupt

Real Latin howlers

Not everyone could handle Latin as Cicero did. It is comforting to know that ordinary Romans and later ordinary clerics made all sorts of mistakes in speech and in writing. Here are a few examples.

In Petronius' *Satyricon* (1st century A.D.) an ex-slave uses the forms *loquis* (active for *loqueris* deponent) and *uīnus* (m. for *uīnum* n.).

Suetonius (first century A.D.) reports that the emperor Augustus dismissed a scribe for spelling *ipsī* as *ixī*.

Graffiti written on the walls of Pompeii buried by the eruption of Vesuvius (24 August 79 A.D.) are full of spelling errors, e.g.

Felix ad ursōs pugnābet (= *pugnābit*) 'Felix will fight against bears'
futui fōrmōsa fōrmā puella (= *fōrmōsam . . . puellam*) 'I laid a beautiful girl'
Paris isse (= *ipse*) 'Paris himself'

The Appendix Probi (third or fourth century A.D.) lists correct pronunciations and spellings alongside common incorrect versions, e.g.

frīgida nōn frīda
aqua nōn acqua (cf. Italian: *acqua*)
auris (= 'ear') *nōn oricla* (cf. Italian: *orecchio*)

Later things got even worse. This inscription on a gravestone in Pannonia (3rd century A.D.?) shows not just spelling errors, but the accusative being used as the subject!

hīc quēscunt duās mātērēs (= *hīc quīēscunt duae mātērēs*) 'here lie two mothers'

Boniface (c. 700 A.D.) heard a priest carrying out a baptism:

in nōmine patriā et filiā et spīritūs sancti (= in nōmine patris et filiī et spīritūs sācti)

One MS. of Petronius' *Satyricon*, written in the mediaeval period, writes *abbās sēcrēuit* 'the abbot hid' instead of *ab asse crēuit* 'he grew from nothing' (lit. 'from a penny')

A fuller account of the development of Latin from the first century A.D. to the twelfth appears in *Reading Medieval Latin*.¹

The Roman general Crassus left for Parthia in 55 never to return. He died at Carrhae in 53. After the event, Cicero said he should have listened to the fig-seller on the quayside as he boarded ship. He was crying *cauneās* ('figs'). But what he was really saying, said Cicero, was *cauē nē eās* 'beware lest you go!' This joke has been used as evidence for the pronunciation of Latin.

¹ Keith Sidwell, Cambridge 1995. For a brief survey, see Appendix p. 54H

Section 4C

Running vocabulary for 4C(i)

<i>absūm abesse</i> I am away from, I am absent	<i>dedūxerat</i> 'he had brought (down)' (plupf. of <i>dēdūcō</i>)	<i>Lilybaeō</i> (abl.) from Lilybacum
<i>argent-um</i> ī 2n. silver; silver-plate	<i>Diodōr-us</i> ī 2m. Diodorus	<i>Lilybaeum</i> (acc.) to Lilybacum
<i>artifici-um</i> ī 2n. skill	<i>fēcerant</i> '(they) had made' (plupf. of <i>faciō</i>)	<i>Lilybitān-us</i> ī 2m. person from Lilybacum
<i>ausus erat</i> 'he had dared' (plupf. of <i>audeō</i>)	<i>fēcerat</i> '(he) had made' (plupf. of <i>faciō</i>)	<i>Meluae</i> (locative) in Malta
<i>cognouerant</i> '(they) had become acquainted with', '(they) knew' (plupf. of <i>cognōscō</i>)	<i>genus gener-is</i> 3n. family, stock	<i>Melitam</i> (acc.) to Malta
<i>collēgerat</i> 'he had collected' (plupf. of <i>colligō</i> 3 <i>collēgī</i>)	<i>grātōs-us a um</i> popular	<i>Melitēnsis Melitēns-is</i> 3m person from Malta, Maltese
<i>constituerat</i> '(he) had decided' (plupf. of <i>constituō</i> 3 <i>cōstitui</i>)	<i>habūbat</i> : tr. 'had been living'	<i>mentō mentōn-is</i> 3f mention
	<i>inflammāt-us a um</i> inflamed, on fire	<i>mentionem facere</i> to make mention (of x: gen.)
	<i>Lilybaei</i> (locative) at Lilybacum	<i>Mentōr Mentōr-is</i> 3m Mentor

nāt-us a um (+abl.) born of, from
pauc-ī ae a few
paulisper for a while
perlegō 3 *perlēgī* I read through, peruse
pōcul-um ī 2n. cup
potius quam rather than
propinqu-us ī 2m. relative
quae (acc. pl. n.) which; (and) these

quam (acc. s. f.) which
quās (acc. pl. f.) which, (and) this (sc. letter)
quem (acc. s. m.) whom
qui (nom. s. m.) who
quibus (abl. pl. f.) which, (and) this
quid (acc. s. n.) which; (and) this
quōrum (gen. pl. n.) of which

quōs (acc. pl. m.) whom
seruō I I keep safe, preserve
splendid-us a um fine, excellent
Verre praetōre 'with Verres (as) praetor' (abl.)

Learning vocabulary for 4C(i)

Nouns

argent-um ī 2n. silver; silver-plate; money

genus gener-is 3n. family, stock, tribe

pōcul-um ī 2n. cup

Adjectives

inflammāt-us a um inflamed, on fire

nāt-us a um (+abl.) born of, from

Verbs

absūm abesse *afui* *āfutūrus* I am away from, I am absent
cōstituō 3 *cōstitui*

cōstituō I decide
perlegō 3 *perlēgī* *perlēctus* I read through, peruse

seruō I I keep safe, preserve

Others

potius quam rather than

Running vocabulary for 4C(ii)

absēns absent-is absent, away
careō 2 (+abl.) I do without, lack, stay away from
caueō 2 I am wary, am on guard, take care
circum (+acc.) around
circumeō *circumire* I go round

cognōuerat 'he had got to know' 'he knew' (plupf. of *cognōscō*)
collēgerat 'he had collected' (plupf. of *colligō* 3 *collēgī*)
commōuerat '(he) had moved' (plupf. of *commoueō* 2 *commouī*)
castra commōuerat '(he)

had moved camp' (metaphor used ironically)
concupīuerat '(he) had desired' (plupf. of *concupiscō* 3)
condemnō I I find guilty, condemn
conquīrō 3 I look for, search out

conseruō 1 I save, keep safe
crīmen crīmin-is 3n charge, accusation
dīcam 'should I say'
Diodōr-us ī 2m. Diodorus
excōgitō 1 I think up, devise
fiet-us a um trumped-up
furor furōr-is 3m. passion, anger, rage
gerere: sē gerere lit. 'to conduct himself', i.e. 'to behave'
hōc ūnō crīmine 'as a result of this single accusation' (abl.)
insān-a ae 1f. madness, lunacy
īsanō 4 I am mad
īnudiōs-us a um unpopular
lacrimor 1 dep I burst into tears, cry
mediocr-is e moderate, ordinary

metū 'from fear' (abl.)
mod-us ī 2m. way, fashion, manner
palam openly, publicly
patrōn-us ī 2m. patron (see Text p. 87)
pereō perīre perū peritum 1 perish, am done for
perspicu-us a um clear, obvious
postremō finally
potuerat 'he had been able' (plupf of *possum*)
prim-us a um first
prōvinci-a ae 1f. province
pudore 'from shame' (abl.)
quae (acc. pl. n.) which, (and) these (sc. things)
quās (acc. pl. f.) which, (and) this (sc. letter)
quem (acc. s. m.) whom
quī (nom. s. m.) who
quōs (acc. pl. m.) whom
ratio ratiōn-is 3f. plan, reason

reprimō 3 *repressī* 1 restrain, keep a grip on
reuocō 1 I call back
Rōmae (locative) at Rome
sordidat-us a um poorly dressed (a sign of mourning or of being on a charge)
stultē stupidly
timōre 'from apprehension' (abl.)
totā prōvinciā 'over the whole provin...' (abl.)
totā Rōmā 'all over Rome' (abl.)
totā Siciliā 'all over Sicily' (abl.)
trienn-um - 2n a period of three years
uehemēns uehement-is strongly worded
l'erre praetōre 'with Verres (as) praetor' (abl.)

Learning vocabulary for 4C(ii)

Nouns

mod-us ī 2m. way, fashion, manner
prōvinci-a ae 1f. province

ratio ratiōn-is 3f. plan, method; reason; count, list; calculation

Rom-a ae 1f. Rome
Sicili-a ae 1f. Sicily

Adjectives

absens absent-is absent, away

prim-us a um first

Verbs

circumēō circumīre circumī
circumitum 1 go around
colligō 3 *collēgī collēctus* 1 collect, gather; gain, acquire

commoueō 2 *commōuī*
commōtus 1 move; remove; excite, disturb
excōgitō 1 I think up, devise

reuocō 1 I call back

Others

circum (+ acc.) around

postremō finally

stultē stupidly

Grammar and exercises for 4C

104 Pluperfect indicative active 'I had —ed'

	1	2	3
	'I had loved'	'I had had'	'I had said'
1st s.	amāu- <i>era-m</i> (or amāram etc.)	habu- <i>era-m</i>	dix- <i>era-m</i>
2nd s.	amāu- <i>erās</i>	habu- <i>erās</i>	dix- <i>erās</i>
3rd s.	amāu- <i>era-t</i>	habu- <i>era-t</i>	dix- <i>era-t</i>
1st pl.	amāu- <i>erā-mus</i>	habu- <i>erā-mus</i>	dix- <i>erā-mus</i>
2nd pl.	amāu- <i>erā-tis</i>	habu- <i>erā-tis</i>	dix- <i>erā-tis</i>
3rd pl.	amāu- <i>era-nt</i>	habu- <i>era-nt</i>	dix- <i>era-nt</i>
	4	3/4	
	'I had heard'	'I had captured'	
1st s.	audiu- <i>era-m</i> (or audieram etc.)	cēp- <i>era-m</i>	
2nd s.	audiu- <i>erās</i>	cēp- <i>erās</i>	
3rd s.	audiu- <i>era-t</i>	cēp- <i>era-t</i>	
1st pl.	audiu- <i>erā-mus</i>	cēp- <i>erā-mus</i>	
2nd pl.	audiu- <i>erā-tis</i>	cēp- <i>erā-tis</i>	
3rd pl.	audiu- <i>era-nt</i>	cēp- <i>era-nt</i>	

Notes

1 The pluperfect (*plus quam perfectum* 'more than finished') means 'had ed', and pushes the merely 'finished' (*perfectum*) perfect even further back into the past. In other words, the action of the pluperfect occurs before that of the perfect.

2 It is formed by taking the stem of the 3rd p. p. and adding:

-eram
 -erās
 -erat
 -erāmus
 -erātis
 -erant

Note that the normal active personal endings are used (-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt).

3 As we have observed elsewhere (65), the *ue* and *u* can be dropped, giving e.g. amā-*ram amā-rās* etc. and audi-*eram audi-erās* etc.

- 4 Whereas in Latin *ubi* 'when' and *postquam* 'after' are generally followed by the perfect tense, English usually translates with the pluperfect, e.g.

ubi Verrēs haec fēcit, domum rediit 'when Verres had done this, he went home'

105 Pluperfect indicative deponent 'I had —ed'

	1 'I had threatened'	2 'I had promised'	3 'I had spoken'
1st s.	mināt-us a um eram	pollicit-us a um eram	locūt-us a um eram
2nd s.	mināt-us a um erās	pollicit-us a um erās	locūt-us a um erās
3rd s.	mināt-us a um erat	pollicit-us a um erat	locūt-us a um erat
1st pl.	mināt-ī ae a erāmus	pollicit-ī ae a erāmus	locūt-ī ae a erāmus
2nd pl.	mināt-ī ae a erātis	pollicit-ī ae a erātis	locūt-ī ae a erātis
3rd pl.	mināt-ī ae a erant	pollicit-ī ae a erant	locūt-ī ae a erant

	4 'I had lied'	3/4 'I had advanced'
1st s.	mentīt-us a um eram	prōgrēss-us a um eram
2nd s.	mentīt-us a um erās	prōgrēss-us a um erās
3rd s.	mentīt-us a um erat	prōgrēss-us a um erat
1st pl.	mentīt-ī ae a erāmus	prōgrēss-ī ae a erāmus
2nd pl.	mentīt-ī ae a erātis	prōgrēss-ī ae a erātis
3rd pl.	mentīt-ī ae a erant	prōgrēss-ī ae a erant

NB. The deponent pluperfect is formed by taking the perfect participle in *-us -a -um* as appropriate, and adding the imperfect of *sum, eram erās* etc. The perfect participle acts as an adjective and will agree with the subject of the verb (see on perfect deponents 75).

Exercises

- Form and conjugate the pluperfect indicative of these verbs (give the meaning of 1st s. pluperfect): *cōnor, excōgitō, uideor, moneo, ūtor, faciō, absum, colligō, commoueō*, (optional: *cōstituō, reuocō, nōlō, ferō, fruor, cupiō, recipiō, proficiscor, coepī*).
- Translate each verb, then change *s.* to *pl.* and vice versa: *ōrāuerātis, cōspiciātus erās, commōuerat, hortātae erant, peperceram, recordāta*

- erat, recēperāmus, amplexus eram, ceciderās, oblītī erāmus, neglēxerant, prōgressī erātis*, (optional: *āfuerant, cōnātus eram, circumierās, suspiciāta erat, reuocāuerātis, passi erant, excōgitāuerat, ausa erās, cōstituerāmus, precātae erātis, cognōueram, uīsī erāmus*)
- Give the Latin for: I had decided; you (*s. m.*) had suffered; they had called back; they had remembered; he had become acquainted with; she had obtained; we had devised; you (*pl. m.*) had embraced; we had collected; you (*s.*) had disturbed (optional: he had cut; you (*s. m.*) had spoken; we had besought; they (*f.*) had set out; you (*pl.*) had run together; she had gone out; they had understood; we had forgotten).
 - Give 3rd s. and pl. of the following verbs in present, future, imperfect, perfect and pluperfect indicative: *reuocō, teneō, arbitror, uideor, neglegō, sentiō, ūtor, patior, fiō, nōlō, sum, colligō, cōstituō*, (optional: *circumeō, commoueō, cognōscō, adgredior, faciō, precor, mentior, fruor, cupiō, absum, polliceor*).
 - Locate and translate the pluperfects in this list, stating the tense of each of the other verbs: *excōgitābam, reuocāuerat, passus est, collēgerās, circumibit, commouet, perlēgerant, cognōscet, cōnātus erās, āfuērunt, fuerātis, recēpit, ēgressī erant, ingressa est, pōnit, ūtētur, ceciderāmus*, (optional: *obsecrāuerunt, ōrāuerās, suspiciātus sum, amplectar, hortātus erat, dēducēbātis, cupiueram, precābimur, pollicita es, oblītus eram, fruēmur, secūtī erant, audēbis, audiēbam, ausus erās*).

106 The relative pronoun *quī quae quod* 'who', 'which'

	<i>s.</i>			<i>pl.</i>		
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
<i>nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>gen.</i>	← cūius →			quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>dat.</i>	← cui →			← quībus (quīs) →		
<i>abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	← quībus (quīs) →		

Notes

- The forms of *quī* relative are identical with those of the interrogative adjective *quī* 'who?', 'what?' (29).
Punctuation will normally tell you whether you are dealing with a form of the interrogative.

2 The function of a relative is *adjectival*: it is to identify or describe a noun. It does this by means of a complete subordinate clause, i.e. a clause with a finite verb of its own, e.g.

(a) 'I see the cat which is sitting on the mat': 'which . . . mat' is the relative clause, describing 'cat'.

(b) 'the barge (which) she sat in, like a burnished throne, burned in the water': relative clause '(which) she sat in' describing barge. Note how English can omit the relative. Latin *never* does.

(c) ' . . . the oars were silver

Which to the tune of flutes kept stroke, and made
The water which they beat to follow faster

'which . . . stroke': relative clause describing 'oars'; 'which . . . beat': relative clause describing 'water'

(Anthony and Cleopatra II.ii, describing Cleopatra's barge)

3 'Antecedent' (*antecēdō* 'I go before') is the technical term for the word which the relative refers back to, e.g. 'I dropped the books which I was carrying' ('books' = antecedent); 'the cups which belonged to Diodorus went to Verres' ('cups' = antecedent)

4 The relative takes its gender (m. f. or n.) and its number (s. or pl.) from the antecedent. When you come across a relative in Latin, you must check that it is the same *gender* and *number* as the word you think is its antecedent. The *case* of the antecedent is irrelevant.

5 The relative takes its case *not* from the antecedent, but from its function inside the relative clause. Consider the following sentences

(a) 'Verres hated Diodorus, who wanted to keep his own property' 'who' is m. and s., because the antecedent is Diodorus. But while Diodorus is object of 'hated' (in Latin *Diodōrum*), 'who' is subject of 'wanted' (since Diodorus, the person meant by 'who', 'wanted to keep his own property'). The relative form will therefore be m., s. and nom., i.e. *quī*.

Verrēs ōderat Diodōrum, quī sua seruāre uolebat.

(b) 'Diodorus, whom Verres hated, was afraid' 'whom' will be m. and s., since it refers back to Diodorus, but will be accusative in case, since it is the object of 'Verres hated' ('Verres hated Diodorus', the person represented by 'whom').
Diodōrus, quem Verrēs ōderat, timēbat.

(c) Now determine the case of the relative for the examples in n. 3 above

107 The connecting relative

A relative at the start of the sentence, referring *back* to something or somebody in the *previous* sentence, is best translated by English 'this', 'he', 'she', 'it'; e.g.

hominēs audīuī, quōs ubi audīuī, . . . 'I heard the men. Which (men) when I heard, . . . ' i.e. 'when I heard these men / them'

Note in particular the *order of words*. The relative comes first, to emphasise that it is picking something up from the previous sentence, even though it may belong to an *ubi* 'when' or *postquam* 'after' clause. Cf.

ad amīcum litterās mīsit, quās ubi ille perlēgit, . . . 'he sent a letter to a friend. When that man had read it . . . ' (Latin word-order 'which when that man had read . . .')

EXERCISES

1 Translate these sentences and locate the antecedent of *quī* in each:

- Diodōrus parua pōcula, quae Mentōr fēcerat, habēbat
- litterae, quās scripserat, mox in Siciliam peruēnērunt.
- uirōs, quī sē Rōmae esse affirmāuerant, reuocābat.
- rēs scelestā est quam excōgitāuistī
- Diodōrus, quem Verrēs pōcula quaedam pulcherrima habēre sciēbat, abierat
- Diodōrus genere nōbilī nātus erat, quod clārum numquam factum erat

2 In these sentences, the antecedent is underlined, but the correct part of *quī* is omitted and replaced by the English. Insert the correct part of *quī* and translate the sentences.

- uir erat (whom) omnēs fēminae amābant.
- fēmina erat (to whom) omnis uir placēbat.
- uirgō, (whom) Verres amāre uoluerat, nōbilis erat.
- multī hominēs, (who) Verris comites facti erant, filii nōbilium erant.

- (e) pōcula parua, (which) Verris comitēs cōspicātī erant, Mentōr fēcerat.
 (f) multī hominēs, (whose) cupiditātem cūēs bonī maximam esse arbitrātī erant, ad Verrem ibant.
 (g) Verris comitēs simulācrum, (which) ille cupīre ausus erat, ē templō sustulērunt.
 (h) comitēs, (whom) Verrēs Lilybaeum sēcum dēdūxerat, Diodōrī pōcula cōspicātī erant.

3 Say which noun is the antecedent of the given relative:

quae: poculīs, annum, praetōrēs, templum
 quem: fēminam, mulieris, uirōs, seruus
 cuius: litterās, hominum, genus, prōuinciās
 quī: filiō, ratiōne, cupiditātī, lēgēs
 quibus: senātū, fāna, uirtūtis, amīcum

4 Translate these ubi clauses (see 104⁴), which all begin with a connecting relative (107). E.g. quem ubi uīdit . . . 'and when he had seen him . . .'

- (a) quod ubi audiuit . . .
 (b) quae ubi nārrāuit . . .
 (c) quās ubi reuocāuerunt . . .
 (d) quōs ubi cōspicātī sunt . . .
 (e) cui ubi minātus est . . .

108 More uses of the ablative

1 Under 'true' ablative: 'ablative of origin, or source' ('from'):

nātus genere nōbilī 'born from a good family'

2 Under 'instrumental-accompanying' ablative: 'ablative of cause', showing why an action was carried out ('out of', 'because of', 'from'):

timōre hoc fēcit 'he did this from fear' (i.e. because of his fear).
 Verrēs hominem argentī cupiditāte accūsāuit 'Verres accused the man out of desire for silver'.

109 The ablative absolute

If you come across a noun in the ablative in agreement with another noun or adjective (especially a participle) in the ablative, regard it as an ablative

of 'attendant circumstances' and translate 'with' or 'in the circumstances of', e.g.

Verre praetōre 'with Verres (as) praetor', 'in the circumstances of Verres (as) praetor'
tē praetōre 'with you (as) praetor', 'in the circumstances of you (as) praetor'
mē amīcō 'with me (as) friend', 'in the circumstances of me (as) friend'

You can then retranslate to make a better English phrase or clause which points up the circumstances more clearly, e.g.

Metellō et Afrāniō cōsulibus 'with Metellus and Afranius as consuls' → 'in the consulship of Metellus and Afranius', 'when Metellus and Afranius were consuls'.

(This expression is used to date events: the year indicated here is 60, where Horace dated the origin of the civil wars.)

110 The locative

Names of towns and one-town islands (e.g. *Melita* = 'the town of Malta') do not use a preposition to express 'in(to)', 'towards', 'at' and 'from'. In this way they follow the example of *domus*, which you have already met, for which *domum* = to home, *domī* = at home, *domō* = from home.

Such words use the *accusative* to express 'to', e.g. *Rōmam* 'to Rome'; *Carthāginem* 'to Carthage'.

They use the *ablative* to express 'from', e.g. *Rōmā* 'from Rome'; *Carthāginē* 'from Carthage'.

They use the *locative* to express 'at'. Here are the locative endings:

1st decl. s. -ae	} = gen. s.	pl. -īs	} = abl. pl.
2nd decl. s. -ī		pl. -īs	
3rd decl. s. -ī		pl. -ibus	

Some examples:

'at Rome' *Rōmae*
 'at/from Athens' (pl.) *Athēnīs*
 'at Carthage' *Carthāginī*

Note

- 1 With certain sorts of word (denoting place or district) the ablative without a preposition is used to express 'at' or 'in', e.g. *eo loco* 'in that place'. Note the common phrase *terra marique* 'on land and sea'.
- 2 'To from the vicinity of' a town is expressed by *ad ab*, e.g. *ad Rōmam* 'to the vicinity of Rome'; *a Rōmā* 'from the vicinity of Rome'.
- 3 There are a very few locatives of common nouns (cf. *domi*). Note *rūrī* (from *rus* 3n) 'in the country', *humī* (*humus* 2f) 'on the ground', *bellī* (*bellum* 2n) 'in war'; *mīltiae* (*militia* 1f) 'in war', 'on military service', *animī* (*animus* 2m.) 'in the mind'.

Exercises**1 Translate these phrases and sentences:**

- (a) uirgō fāmae optimae
- (b) Cicerōne et Antōniō cōsulibus (*the year 63*)
- (c) mē duce
- (d) uirginēs nātae genere nobilī
- (e) audāciā et cupiditāte aurum sustulit
- (f) Rōmā.
- (g) domī
- (h) Lilybaeo
- (i) tōta prōuinciā.
- (j) praetōribus absentibus

2 Give the Latin for (NB. the previous exercise will help)

- (a) A man of great courage (2 ways)
- (b) In Verres' praetorship.
- (c) Under your (s) leadership
- (d) A boy born of a noble family
- (e) He acted thus from lust
- (f) At Rome
- (g) From home.
- (h) To Lilybaeum
- (i) In the whole of Sicily
- (j) In the absence of the rest

3 Translate these sentences:

- (a) quī multum habet, plūs cupit. (*Seneca*)
- (b) non qui parum habet, sed quī plus cupit pauper est. (*Seneca*)
- (c) dīmidium factī qui coepit habet. (*Horace*)
- (d) nihil ēripit fortūna nisi quod dedit. (*Seneca*)
- (e) quae fuit dūrum pati, meminisse dulce est. (*Seneca*)
- (f) nūper erat medicus, nunc est uespillo Diaulus.
quod uespillo facit, fēcerat et medicus. (*Martial*)

quī = he who

parum (s) lit. a

dīmidium ī 2n half

factum ī 2n. deed

ēripio 3,4 I snatch away

fortūna ae 1f. fortune

quod and quae = what

diaulus ī 2m bird

memini (perf.)

I remember

dulcis ē sweet, pleasant

nūper recently

medicus ī 2m doctor

Diaulus ī 2m Diaulus

uespillo uespillon-is 3m

undertaker

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Diodōrum Melitēsem, quī multō ante Melitā ēgressus erat et illō tempore Lilybaei habitabat, iste cupiditāte sua a prōuinciā reppulit. ille apud Lilybitānos, quī eum summa uirtute uirum esse cognōuerant, uir multī honoris fuerat, sed Verre praetore, domō caruit prope triennium propter pocula quaedam pulchra, quae habēbat. isti enim comites, quōs sēcum, ubi ad prōuinciā peruēnit, dūxerat, Diodōrum haec pocula habēre nūntiāuerant; quod ubi cognōuit, cupiditāte inflammātus iste ad sē Diodōrum uocāuerat et pōcula poposcerat. Diodōrus autem, quī pōcula amittere nōlēbat, ea Melitae esse apud propinquum quendam affirmāuerat, sed ubi Verrēs ad propinquum illum litterās, in quibus pōcula rogābat, scrīpsit, ille ea paucīs illis diēbus Lilybaeum mīsisse dīxerat. intereā Diodōrus Lilybaeō abierat.

English-Latin**1 Translate into Latin:**

- (a) Diodorus, who possessed many beautiful cups, had gone away from Lilybaeum to Rome.
- (b) In Verres' praetorship, in the whole province men were able to devise wicked crimes.
- (c) Verres, who was born of a noble family, always acted from lust, rather than from courage.

- (d) The friends, whom Verres had brought with him to the province, were scoundrels

2 Reread the text of 4C(ii), then translate this passage into Latin.

When Verres heard this¹, from madness he decided to accuse Diodorus in his absence². In the whole province the matter was well known. The story was that Verres through greed for silver had accused an innocent man in his absence². Diodorus, who was at this time in Rome, told his patrons everything which he had heard. When Verres' father learned this¹, he sent a letter to him. In this¹ letter³ he said that everyone throughout the city knew that Verres was a scoundrel. When Verres had read this¹, he held back his lust, from fear, rather than from shame

¹ Use a part of *quī* at the beginning of the sentence

² Use *absēns*, *absentis* agreeing with 'Diodorus', 'man'

³ Place *in* after part of *quī* and before 'letter'

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building

Suffixes

-ēnsis frequently makes an adjective out of a place-name, e.g. *Melita* (Malta) → *Melitēnsis*, *Londonium* → *Londoniensis*, *Cantabrigia* (Cambridge) → *Cantabrigiēnsis* etc.

-ānus can also serve this function, e.g. *Rōma* → *Rōmānus* 'Roman', but has a wider range too, e.g. *mōns mont-is* 'mountain' → *montānus* 'from the mountains'.

Revision

-i-a ae 1f. forms an abstract noun, e.g. *īnsānus* 'mad' → *īnsānia* 'madness'; *miser* 'wretched' → *miseria* 'wretchedness'.

-or (or -ōs) -ōr-is 3m. forms abstract nouns of condition, e.g. *furor* 'madness', *amor* 'love', *timor* 'fear', *honor* (or *honōs*) 'respect', etc.

Word exercises

Give the meaning and Latin connections of: generation, literal (note change of spelling in mediaeval Latin from *litterae* to *literae*), ante-natal, mode,

rational, primary, constitution, revoke, circuit, circumlocution, conservation, commotion, collection

Everyday Latin

(a) Relative usages

quī facit per alium facit per sē 'he who acts through another is himself responsible' (lit. 'acts through himself')

qui tacet cōsentit 'he who keeps silence consents'

q.v. = *quod vidē* 'which see', 'see this'

q.e.d. = *quod erat dēmōstrandum* 'which was to-be-proved' (and now has been)

quod ubīque, quod semper, quod ab omnibus 'that which everywhere, that which always, that which by all (sc. has been believed)' – definition of orthodoxy by St Vincent of Lérins

sine quā nōn 'without which not', i.e. an absolute essential *status quo* (ante) 'the position in which (things were before)'

(b) Ablative absolute usages

ceterīs paribus '(with) other things (being) equal'

vīvā vōce 'with living voice'

mē iūdice 'with me being judge', 'in my opinion'

(c) Others

etc. = *et cētera* 'and the rest'

The Classical degree at Oxford is called *lit. hum.* = *litterae hūmāniōrēs* 'humane letters' (lit. 'more human literature' as opposed to theology, originally)

Mottoes

In all of these, the relative comes first, and means 'he who, she who, the thing(s) which' etc. Here are some examples, with translation.

quae habet, manus tenēbit ('What things (or the things which) it has, my hand will hold': Templeman)

quod sors fert, ferimus ('What/that which fate brings, we bear': Clayton)

quī patitur, vincit ('(He) who endures, wins': Kimmaud)

Note the verb 'to be' is often omitted, e.g. quae rēcta, sequor ('The things which (are) right, I follow': Campbell)

quae moderāta, firma (Ogilvie)
 quae sērāta, sēcūra (Douglas)
 quae sursum, volō (Macqueen, Quin)
 quae vult, valdē vult (Wilmor)
 quī invidet, minor est (Cadogan, Leigh, Pugh)
 quī mē tangit, poenitēbit (Gillespie, Macpherson)
 quī plānē, sārē vādīt (Taylor)
 quī stat, caveat (Domville)
 quod Deus vult, fiet (Dimsdale)
 quod Deus vult, volō (Mountford)
 quod dīxī, dīxī (Dixie, Dixon)
 quod faciō, valdē faciō (Holmes)
 quod honestum, ūtile (Lawson)
 quod iūstum, nōn quod ūtile (Philips)
 quod potuī, perfēcī (Dundas, Turner)
 quod tibi vīs fierī, fac alterī (Ram)
 quod tuum, tenē (Cheetham)
 quod vērūm, tūtūm (Courtenay, Sim)
 quod volō, erit (Wright)

moderāt-us a um moderate
 firm-us a um permanent
 sērāt-us a um locked
 sēcūr-us a um safe
 sursum above in Heaven
 valdē strongly

invidēō 2 I am envious
 tangō 3 I touch
 poenitē 2 he regrets (it)
 plānē plainly
 sārē safely
 vādō 3 I go

caveat 'let him beware'
 honest-us a um honourable
 ūtil-is e profitable
 iūst-us a um just
 tūt-us a um safe

Real Latin

ō fortunātā nātā mē consule Rōmān. (Cicero)
 fortunat-us a um lucky

nīl despērāndū Teucrō dāce et auspice Teucro (Horace, Odes I 7 27)

de spērandū 'should be
 despaired of'
 auspex auspex-is 3m augur
 interpreter of omens

Teucer Teucr 2m Teucer
 brother of Ajax, he is
 comforting his men as
 they face another leg
 of their journey into
 exile from Salamis

quī vitia ōdit, et hominēs ōdit. (Pliny)

vitia-vitiā 2n vice ōd-ī (perf.) I hate

nūllūm quod tetigit nōn ōrnāvit (Dr Johnson's epitaph on Goldsmith)

tangō 3 tetigī I touch ōrnō 1 I enhance

Unreal Latin

Revise all the cases with the following horrendous 'poem' about the Motor Bus by A. D. Godley. Note that he envisages *Mōtor* as a 3rd. decl. m. noun, *Bus* as 2m.; and observe what the poem tells you about one school of Latin pronunciation in the early 20th c. Would your pronunciation give these rhymes?

Motor Bus

What is this that roareth thus?
 Can it be a Mōtor Bus?
 Yes, the smell and hideous hum
 Indicat Mōtōrem Būm!
 Implet¹ in the Corn and High² 5
 Terror mē Mōtōris Bī:
 Bō Mōtōrī clāmitābō
 Nē Mōtōre caedar³ ā Bō –
 Dative be or Ablative
 So thou only let us live: 10
 Whither shall thy victims flee?
 Spare us, spare us, Mōtor Be!
 Thus I sang; and still anigh
 Came in hordes Mōtōrēs Bī,
 Et complēbat⁴ omne forum 15
 Cōpia Mōtōrum Bōrum.
 How shall wretches live like us
 Cincti⁵ Bīs Mōtōribus?
 Domine, dēfende nōs
 Contrā⁶ hōs Mōtōrēs Bōs! 20

¹ implet 'fills'
² in the Corn and High Street
³ caedar 'I may let be cut'
⁴ complēbat 'filled up'
⁵ cincti 'surrounded'
⁶ contrā 'against'

Section 4D

Running vocabulary for 4D(i)

<i>ā/ab</i> (+abl.) by (after passive verbs)	<i>distribūtī sunt</i> '(they) were divided up among' (+dat.) (perf. passive of <i>distribuō</i> 3 <i>distribui distribūtus</i>)	<i>nuntiātum est</i> 'it was announced' (perf. passive of <i>nuntiō</i>)
<i>abducō</i> 2 <i>abduxī</i> <i>abductus</i> 1 appropriate, withdraw, remove	<i>ēbri-us a um</i> drunk	<i>P. = Pūbliō</i> (<i>Pūbli-us</i> ī 2m.) Publius
<i>abducta est</i> '(it) was appropriated' (perf. passive of <i>abducō</i>)	<i>erigō</i> 3 <i>erēxī</i> 1 draw up, lift up	<i>percussī sunt</i> '(they) were struck' (perf. passive of <i>percutiō</i> 3 4 <i>percuti percutus</i>)
<i>abductī (sunt)</i> '(they) were removed' (perf. passive of <i>abducō</i>)	<i>exhibēri</i> 'to be put on display' (pres. infin. passive of <i>exhibeō</i> 2)	<i>pīrāt-a ae</i> 1m. pirate
<i>act-a ae</i> 1f. shore	<i>expectātur</i> lit. '(it) is awaited' (pres. passive of <i>expectō</i> 1) [Translate as past tense]	<i>port-us ūs</i> 4m. harbour
<i>appellitur</i> lit. '(it) is brought to shore' (pres. passive of <i>appellō</i> 3) [Translate as past tense]	<i>formōs-us a um</i> handsome	<i>praedō praedōn-is</i> 3m. pirate
<i>archipīrāt-a ae</i> 1m. pirate chief	<i>habiti sunt</i> '(they) were held, regarded' (perf. passive of <i>habeō</i>)	<i>praefect-us ī</i> 2m. captain, prefect
<i>artifex artific-is</i> 3m. craftsman	<i>iaceō</i> 2 1 lie	<i>secūris secūr-is</i> 3f. axe (abl. <i>s. secūri</i>)
<i>Carsēti-us ī</i> 2m. Caesetius	<i>inventa est</i> '(it) was found' (perf. passive of <i>invenio</i>)	<i>implen-us a um</i> ha f-tull, undermanned
<i>capta est</i> '(it) was captured' (perf. passive of <i>capio</i>)	<i>liberātum esse</i> 'to have been freed' (that) (he) had been freed (perf. passive infin. of <i>libero</i> 1)	<i>supplici-um ī</i> 2n. punishment, death penalty
<i>classis class-is</i> 3f. fleet	<i>missi sunt</i> '(they) were sent' (perf. passive of <i>mitto</i> 3 <i>missi missus</i>)	<i>symphoniac-us ī</i> 2m. musician
<i>cohort cohort-is</i> 3f. governor's retinue	<i>miserent-a ae</i> 1f. woman (with sneering tone)	<i>Syracūs-ae arum</i> 1f. Syracuse
<i>datam esse</i> 'to have been given' (that) (it) had been given' (perf. passive infin. of <i>dare</i>)	<i>naut-a ae</i> 1m. sailor	<i>Tadi-us ī</i> 2m. Tadius
<i>dati sunt</i> '(they) were given' (perf. passive of <i>dare</i>)		<i>vestis vest-is</i> 3f. clothes
<i>deform-is e</i> misshapen, ugly		<i>videbantur</i> '(they) seemed' (imperf. passive of <i>videō</i> lit. 'they were seen' (sc. 'as'))
		<i>visus est</i> '(he) was seen' (perf. passive of <i>videō</i>)

Learning vocabulary for 4D(i)

Nouns

classis class-is 3f. fleet
cohort cohort-is 3f.
 governor's retinue
 cohort
naut-a ae 1m. sailor

pīrāt-a ae 1m. pirate
port-us ūs 4m. harbour
praedō praedōn-is 3m.
 pirate, robber

praefect-us ī 2m. captain, prefect; (adj.) in charge of (+dat.)

Adjectives

ēbri-us a um drunk

Verbs

expectō 1 1 await, wait for

iaceō 2 1 lie

liberō 1 1 free, release

Others

ā/ab by (usually a person, after passive verbs); (away from)

Running vocabulary for 4D(ii)

<i>abducti erant</i> '(they) had been removed' (plupf. pass. of <i>abducō</i>)	<i>capta est</i> '(it) was captured' (perf. passive of <i>capio</i>)	<i>desum desce</i> 1 am missing, lacking
<i>abductī (sc. sunt)</i> '(they) were removed' (perf. passive of <i>abducō</i>)	<i>capti erant</i> 'they had been captured' (plupf. passive of <i>capio</i>)	<i>feriebantur</i> '(they) were being struck' (imperf. passive of <i>ferio</i> 4)
<i>ablāt-a um</i> sc. <i>est</i> 'it was taken away' (perf. passive of <i>auferō</i>)	<i>carcer carcer-is</i> 3m. prison	<i>1 mae</i> [Gen. follows <i>aliquid</i> cf. <i>utrum</i> and the note on it]
<i>ante</i> formerly, previously	<i>cognoscitur</i> 'they were recognized' (imperf. passive of <i>cognosco</i>)	<i>1 mae</i> [Gen. follows <i>aliquid</i> cf. <i>utrum</i> and the note on it]
<i>arguo</i> 3 1 censure, charge	<i>committis</i> <i>esse</i> 'to have been linked' (that) 'they were linked' (perf. passive infin. of <i>commungō</i> 3 <i>communxi comminctus</i>)	<i>1 mae</i> [Gen. follows <i>aliquid</i> cf. <i>utrum</i> and the note on it]
<i>artifex artif-is</i> 3m. craftsman	<i>corīdiē</i> daily	<i>1 mae</i> [Gen. follows <i>aliquid</i> cf. <i>utrum</i> and the note on it]
<i>artificium ī</i> 2n. skill, the gen. <i>artificis</i> depends on <i>aliquid</i> , 'some skill' – cf. <i>satis</i> , <i>nimis</i> with gen. (31 and 102)	<i>dēfendēbantur</i> '(they) were defended' (imperf. passive of <i>dēfendō</i>)	<i>1 mae</i> [Gen. follows <i>aliquid</i> cf. <i>utrum</i> and the note on it]
<i>āuersum</i> (sc. <i>est</i>) '(it was) stolen' (perf. passive of <i>āuerto</i> 3 <i>āverti āuersus</i>)		<i>1 mae</i> [Gen. follows <i>aliquid</i> cf. <i>utrum</i> and the note on it]

missi (sc. *sunt*) '(they were) sent' (perf. passive of *mitto*)
nefari-us a um wicked, vile, criminal
num-er-us ī 2m. number
percu-ssī (sunt) '(they were) executed' (perf. passive of *percutio* 3/4 *percu-ssī percussus*)
perit-us a um knowledgeable, skilful

praeclār-us a um very famous, outstanding, brilliant
popul-us ī 2m. the people
remōtī (erant) '(they) had been got out of the way' (plupf. pass. of *remoueo* 2 *remou-remōtus*)
rēm-us ī 2m. oar
secur-is secur-is 3f. axe

Sertoriān-us a um of Sertorius (Roman who led a revolt against the Roman dictator Sulla from Spain in 83 and gained some support See Text 4F(ii))
substituō 3 I substitute
symphoniac-us ī 2m musician
uestis uest-is 3f. clothing
uoluntās uoluntāt-is 3f will, wish

Learning vocabulary for 4D(ii)

Nouns

num-er-us ī 2m. number

secur-is secur-is 3f. axe

uestis uest-is 3f. clothes, clothing, dress

Adjectives

fōrmōs-us a um handsome, good-looking

nefari-us a um wicked, vile, criminal

praeclār-us a um very famous, outstanding, brilliant

Verbs

desum deesse deesse *deesse* I am missing, lacking, fail, abandon (+ dat.)

ferio 4 I strike, beat; kill (no 3rd or 4th principal parts – these tenses are supplied by *percu-ssī, percussus*, from *percutio* 3/4 I strike, beat; kill)

Others

aut . . . aut either . . . or
cotidie daily

Grammar and exercises for 4D

111 The passive

The active 'voice' (as it is called) usually indicates that the subject is doing something e.g. 'Tom hits the ball'. The passive voice is used to say exactly the same thing, only another way round, this time with the subject *having something done to it* (cf. *passus* 'having undergone, suffered' from *patior*) e.g. 'The ball is hit by Tom'. The subject 'ball' here is not doing anything – it is having something done to it *by Tom* (who is called (when he functions like this in a sentence) 'the agent', lit. 'the doer', 'person doing' (from *agō*)).

Here are the forms of the passive, with meanings, of all four conjugations, in present, future, imperfect, perfect and pluperfect indicative, the present, perfect and future infinitive, and the present imperative. It should not be too long before you recognise that the *forms* of the passive and the *forms* of the deponent are ABSOLUTELY IDENTICAL. Consequently, THERE IS VIRTUALLY NOTHING NEW TO LEARN HERE.

112 Present indicative passive (all conjugations): 'I am being —ed'

	1	2	3
	'I am (being) loved'	'I am (being) held'	'I am (being) said'
1st s.	am-o-r	habe-o-r	dic-o-r
2nd s.	amā-ris (-re)	habē-ris (-re)	dic-e-ris (-re)
3rd s.	amā-tur	habē-tur	dic-i-tur
1st pl.	amā-mur	habē-mur	dic-i-mur
2nd pl.	amā-mini	habē-mini	dic-i-mini
3rd pl.	amā-ntur	habē-ntur	dic-ūntur
	4	3/4	
	'I am (being) heard'	'I am (being) captured'	
1st s.	audi-or	capi-o-r	
2nd s.	audi-ris (-re)	cáp-e-ris (-re)	
3rd s.	audi-tur	capi-tur	
1st pl.	audi-mur	capi-mur	
2nd pl.	audi-mini	capi-mini	
3rd pl.	audi-ūntur	capi-ūntur	

NB. Latin sometimes uses the 'vivid' present tense, where in English we would naturally use a past tense. Consequently, do not hesitate to translate a Latin present tense into the past in English if it suits the passage better. E.g. *nāvis pīrātārum Syracūsās . . . appellitur* in 4D(i) means 'a pirate-ship was brought to shore at Syracuse'.

113 Future indicative passive (all conjugations): 'I shall be —ed'

	1	2	3
	'I shall be loved'	'I shall be held'	'I shall be said'
1st s.	amā-bo-r	habē-bo-r	dīc-er
2nd s.	amā-be-ris (-re)	habē-be-ris (-re)	dīc-eris (-re)
3rd s.	amā-bi-tur	habē-bi-tur	dīc-er-tur
1st pl.	amā-bi-mur	habē-bi-mur	dīc-er-mur
2nd pl.	amā-bi-mini	habē-bi-mini	dīc-er-mini
3rd pl.	amā-bū-ntur	habē-bū-ntur	dīc-er-ntur

	4	3/4
	'I shall be heard'	'I shall be captured'
1st s.	audi-a-r	capi-a-r
2nd s.	audi-ē-ris (-re)	capi-ē-ris (-re)
3rd s.	audi-e-tur	capi-e-tur
1st pl.	audi-ē-mur	capi-e-mur
2nd pl.	audi-ē-mini	capi-e-mini
3rd pl.	audi-ē-ntur	capi-e-ntur

114 Imperfect indicative passive (all conjugations): 'I was being —ed'

	1	2	3
	'I was being loved'	'I was being held'	'I was being said'
1st s.	amā-ba-r	habē-ba-r	dīc-e-ba-r
2nd s.	amā-bā-ris (-re)	habē-bā-ris (-re)	dīc-e-bā-ris (-re)
3rd s.	amā-ba-tur	habē-ba-tur	dīc-e-ba-tur
1st pl.	amā-ba-mur	habē-ba-mur	dīc-e-ba-mur
2nd pl.	amā-bā-mini	habē-bā-mini	dīc-e-bā-mini
3rd pl.	amā-bā-ntur	habē-bā-ntur	dīc-e-bā-ntur

	4	3/4
	'I was being heard'	'I was being captured'
1st s.	audi-ē-ba-r	capi-ē-ba-r
2nd s.	audi-ē-bā-ris (-re)	capi-ē-bā-ris (-re)
3rd s.	audi-ē-ba-tur	capi-e-bā-tur
1st pl.	audi-ē-bā-mur	capi-ē-ba-mur
2nd pl.	audi-ē-bā-mini	capi-ē-bā-mini
3rd pl.	audi-ē-bā-ntur	capi-ē-bā-ntur

115 Perfect indicative passive (all conjugations): 'I was —ed', 'I have been —ed'

	1	2	3
	'I was loved', 'I have been loved'	'I was held', 'I have been held'	'I was said', 'I have been said'
1st s.	amāt-us a um sum	hābit-us a um sum	dīct-us a um sum
2nd s.	amāt-us a um es	hābit-us a um es	dīct-us a um es
3rd s.	amāt-us a um est	hābit-us a um est	dīct-us a um est
1st pl.	amāt-ī ac a sūmus	hābit-ī ac a sūmus	dīct-ī ac a sūmus
2nd pl.	amāt-ī ac a ēstis	hābit-ī ac a ēstis	dīct-ī ac a ēstis
3rd pl.	amāt-ī ac a sunt	hābit-ī ac a sunt	dīct-ī ac a sunt

	4	3/4
	'I was heard', 'I have been heard'	'I was captured', 'I have been captured'
1st s.	audīt-us a um sum	cāpt-us a um sum
2nd s.	audīt-us a um es	cāpt-us a um es
3rd s.	audīt-us a um est	cāpt-us a um est
1st pl.	audīt-ī ac a sūmus	cāpt-ī ac a sūmus
2nd pl.	audīt-ī ac a ēstis	cāpt-ī ac a ēstis
3rd pl.	audīt-ī ac a sunt	cāpt-ī ac a sunt

NB. As with deponent verbs, the perfect participle acts as an adjective and will agree with the subject in gender, number and case.

116 Pluperfect indicative passive (all conjugations): 'I had been —ed'

	1	2	3
	'I had been loved'	'I had been held'	'I had been said'
1st s.	amāt-us eram	hābit-us eram	dīct-us eram
2nd s.	amāt-us erās	hābit-us erās	dīct-us erās
3rd s.	amāt-us erat	hābit-us erat	dīct-us erat

1st pl.	amāt ī erāmus	hābit-ī erāmus	dict-ī erāmus
2nd pl.	amāt-ī erātis	hābit-ī erātis	dict-ī erātis
3rd pl.	amāt-ī erant	hābit-ī erant	dict-ī erant

4
'I had been heard' 'I had been captured'

1st s.	audīt-us eram	cāpt-us eram
2nd s.	audīt-us erās	capt-us erās
3rd s.	audīt-us erat	cāpt-us erat
1st pl.	audīt-ī erāmus	capt-ī erāmus
2nd pl.	audīt-ī erātis	capt-ī erātis
3rd pl.	audīt-ī erant	cāpt-ī erant

NB. See perfect passive (115) for agreement of perfect participle with the subject.

117 Passive imperative (all conjugations): 'be —ed'

1	2	3	4	3/4
'be loved!'	'be held!'	'be said!'	'be heard!'	'be captured!'
ama-re	habē-re	dic-e-re	audī-re	cap-e-re
pl. amā-mini	habē-mini	dic-i-mini	audī-mini	cap-i-mini

118 Passive infinitive (all conjugations)

Present 'to be —ed'

1	2	3	4	3/4
'to be loved'	'to be held'	'to be said'	'to be heard'	'to be captured'
amā-rī	habē-rī	dic-ī	audī-rī	cāp-ī

Perfect 'to have been —ed'

1	2	3
'to have been loved'	'to have been held'	'to have been said'
amāt-us a um esse	hābit-us a um esse	dict-us a um esse

4	3/4
'to have been heard'	'to have been captured'
audīt-us a um esse	cāpt-us a um esse

Form traditionally described as 'future infinitive passive': used only in indirect statement (acc. + inf.)

1	2
'that there is a movement to love'	'that there is a movement to have'
amātum īrī	hābitum īrī
3	4
'that there is a movement to say'	'that there is a movement to hear'
dictum īrī	auditum īrī
3/4	
'that there is a movement to capture'	
cāptum īrī	

Notes

- 1 *īrī* is the impersonal passive infinitive of *eō* 'I go', i.e. 'to be gone'. In the context of an acc. + inf. clause, this means 'that there is a movement'.
- 2 The forms *amātum*, *hābitum* etc. are called 'supine'. Basically, the supine expresses purpose, e.g. *amātum* 'to love', *auditum* 'to hear' etc. Cf. *cubitum* it 'he goes to lie down', *sessum* it 'he goes to sit', *Vārus mē nūsum dūxerat* 'Varus had brought me to see' (Catullus).
- 3 Consequently, the literal meaning of the so-called 'future infinitive passive' is 'that there is a movement to . . .', e.g.

putant sē auditum īrī 'they think that there is a movement to hear them' i.e. 'that they will be heard'

fēmina negat sē amātum īrī 'the woman denies that there is a movement towards loving her', i.e. 'that she will be loved'

- 4 The supine has a fixed form (ending -um). Its stem is the same as that of the 4th p.p. See A7

Exercises

- 1 Form and translate the 'future infinitive passive' of: *capīō*, *liberō*, *iubeō*, *auferō*, *reperiō*
- 2 Translate these sentences:
 - (a) *Verrēs praedōnēs captum īrī dixit.*
 - (b) *Verrēs cūis Rōmānōs negābat liberātum īrī.*

- (c) Verrēs Diodōrī pōcula ablātum īrī affirmat.
 (d) Diodōrus pōcula ā Verre repertum īrī negat
 (e) Verrēs amīcōs dīxit pōcula reperīre iussum īrī
 (f) ībō uīsum sī domī est. (Terence)
 (g) lūsum it Maecēnās, dormītum ego Vergiliusque. (Horace)

lūdō 3 supine lūsum I play Maecēnās (nom.) Vergilius Virgil
 Maecenas

119 Irregular ferō, transitive compounds of eō

Present

- 1st s. fēr-o-r 'I am (being) carried'
 2nd s. fer-ris
 3rd s. fer-tur
 1st pl. fer-imur
 2nd pl. fer-imini
 3rd pl. fer-untur

Present infinitive

fēr-rī 'to be carried'

Imperative

- s. fēr-re
 pl. fer-i-mī } 'be carried!'

NB. *ferō* is regular in the formation of all its other tenses. Its principal parts are *ferō ferre tulī lātus*

Present

- 1st s. ād-eo-r 'I am (being) approached'
 2nd s. ad-ī-ris (-re)
 3rd s. ad-ī-tur
 1st pl. ad-ī-mur
 2nd pl. ad-ī-mini
 3rd pl. ad-eū-ntur

Future

ad-ī-bo-r etc. 'I will be approached'

Imperfect

ad-ī-ba-r etc. 'I was being approached'

Perfect

ad-it-us sum etc. 'I was / have been approached'

Notes

- The forms of the passive are identical with those of deponents. But while deponent verbs only have an active meaning (e.g. *sequor* 'I follow' (you cannot say 'I am being followed' using *sequor*)), active verbs will have an active meaning when they use active forms, and a passive meaning when they use passive forms, e.g. *amō* 'I love', *amor* 'I am loved'
- 'By' a person in Latin is expressed by *ā/ab* + abl.; 'by'/'with' a thing is expressed by the plain ablative (ablative of instrument – see 100A(c))
 E.g.

'The boat was captured by Tadius' *nāvis ā Tadiō capta est*

'They were being hit by/with an axe (i.e. executed)' *feriebantur*
scutis

If a person is seen as a tool, or is unwillingly involved, *ā/ab* can be dropped, e.g.

uxōre paene cōstrictus 'almost strangled by his wife'

ab uxōre would mean she meant it

- uideor* 'I seem' is actually the passive of *uideō* and not a real deponent verb. It can also, therefore, mean 'I am seen'. *uīsurus* is fut. participle of *uideō*, and means 'about to see' (never 'about to seem')
- fiō fieri factus sum* is the passive of *faciō*, meaning 'I am made' (as well as 'I become', 'I happen')

Exercises

- Form the passive parts of these verbs as specified in the bracket. Conjugate imperatives and indicatives. Translate imperatives, infinitives and 1st s. of indicatives: *liberō* (pres.), *adiuuō* (impf.), *iubeō* (fut.), *uideō* (pres.), *ferō* (plupf.), *caedō* (perf.), *reuocō* (pres. inf.), *cōfirmō* (perf. inf.) *recipiō* (pres.), *dīcō* (fut.), (optional: *commoueō* (imperative), *colligō* (pres.), *uideō* (perf. inf.), *recipiō* (pres. inf.), *sentio* (pres.), *dēducō* (imperative), *accūsō* (plupf.), *relinquō* (impf.), *auferō* (perf.), *pōnō* (fut.))

- 2 These verbs include both deponents and passives. Say which each is and translate: *secūta est, accūsātur, ablāta sunt, relictus est, portātur, loquitur, mentitus est, cōspiciābātur, arbitrābitur, cōnābitur, nārrābitur, nūntiātum est, uisum est, ausum est, (optional: fertur, adipiscitur, dicitur, fruētur, colligētur, orābātur, opīnabātur, passus erat, iussus erat, amplexus est, caesus est, relinqui, sequi, dicere, ūtere)*
- 3 Give the Latin for: he will be captured, to be freed; they were being struck; it had been taken away; to have been called back; it has been read through
- 4 Transform these English sentences from active to passive, e.g.
- The pirate found the ship (*active*)
The ship was found by the pirate (*passive*)
- (a) Our fleet did not capture the ship
(b) A messenger announced the news to Verres
(c) The sailors brought the ship to Syracuse
(d) Verres took away the craftsmen
(e) The Romans executed the pirates with an axe
- 5 Translate these sentences
- (a) nihil ā Verre dictum erat
(b) nāvis ā praedōne capta est
(c) iuuenēs ā Verre Rōmam mittuntur
(d) nāvis praedonum ā nostris abducēbātur
(e) amicis thesaurus meus dabitur
(f) Verri nūntiātum est nāvem captam esse et praedonēs secūri neciri
- 6 Transform these sentences from active to passive, e.g. *praedō nāvem inuenit* 'the pirate found the ship'; *nāvis ā praedōne inuenta est* 'the ship was found by the pirate'
- (a) Rōmānī hominēs dēfendēbant
(b) tū numerum praedonum cognōuisti
(c) Verrēs pecūniam dedit.
(d) Verrēs ciuis Rōmānōs secūri ferit
(e) ille nautās liberābit.
(f) Diodōrus pōcula abstulerat.

Reading exercise / Test exercise

P. Caesētiō et P. Tadiō praefectis nāvem pīrātārum quandam captam esse Verri nūntiātum est; plēnam esse eam nāvem iuuenum fōrmōssimōrum, argentī, uestium. Verrēs nāvem Syrācūsās ā nautis appellī iussit. tum expectābātur ab omnibus supplicium. sed quamquam senēs statim necātī sunt, iuuenēs tamen fōrmōsī ab eō abductī et amicis datī sunt. nēmo praedonēs liberātum iri arbitrātus erat. hoc tamen ā Verre factum est

sed postea facinus multo scelestius ab isto factum est. nam in locum praedonum, qui liberati erant, Verrēs ciuis Rōmānōs substituere coepit, qui in carcerem antea coniecti erant. quamquam illi ā multis cogniti erant, secūri tamen feriēbantur

English-Latin

1 Translate these sentences into Latin

- (a) The ship was found by Romans
(b) Money was being given to Verres by the pirates.
(c) Young men are being sent to Rome
(d) It had been announced that the ship had been captured and was being brought¹ to Syracuse.
(e) No one had realised that the pirates would be captured.
(f) Verres will be accused at Rome.

¹ Use *appellō* 3

2 Reread the text of 4D(ii), then translate this passage into Latin:

The Syracusans had an account of the pirates who had been executed. This¹ account had been made² from the number of oars which had been taken. A large number of pirates was missing, because many had been set free by Verres. However, in the pirates' place Roman citizens were substituted. Verres claimed that they had been soldiers of Sertorius. Although they were known³ by many Syracusans, they were killed with the axe

¹ Use connecting relative *quī, quae, quod*

² Use *habeō*

³ Use pluperfect of *cognoscō*

The achievements of Augustus

From now on till the end of the Verres texts, each grammar section will contain a passage from the *rēs gestae* (lit. 'things done', i.e. 'achievements') of the first Roman emperor Augustus, written by himself to commemorate himself. He ordered them to be inscribed on bronze tablets and set up in front of his mausoleum.

The period of Roman history in which the Verres story is set was one of increasing turmoil. The Roman republic was passing more and more into the domination of army-backed factions, led by men like Sulla, Pompey, and later Julius Caesar, whose power brought them the leading positions in the state. In 49, civil war broke out between Caesar and Pompey, and Caesar emerged as victor. But on the Ides of March 44, Julius Caesar was murdered by a group of pro-republican activists (led by Brutus) who felt that Rome was becoming a one-man state. In the ensuing civil war, two factions emerged: that of Gaius Octavius, known as Octavian, the adopted son of Julius Caesar, and that of Marcus Antonius (Mark Antony), who looked to the East and the wealth of the Egyptian queen Cleopatra to support his bid for power. At the battle of Actium in 31, Octavian emerged triumphant, but he faced problems as serious as those faced by Julius Caesar, i.e. how to reconcile the Roman aristocracy, with their implacable hatred of any idea of 'monarchy', to the fact that the old-style 'Republic' was dead, and that the rule of one man was Rome's only hope of survival. Granted the additional name 'Augustus' by a grateful Roman people and senate in 27, he succeeded by making himself the embodiment of Roman standards, ideals and above all, stability, and by presenting the new order, which was in fact the foundation of an imperial dynasty, to make it look like the old republic restored, though he was in fact in control of it. As we shall see, he restored ancient rituals and customs and temples, and engaged writers (like Virgil and Horace) to play their part in propagating his image and ideals, but the most authentic 'statement' about what he stood for is his own – the *rēs gestae diuī Augustī* ('the achievements of the divine Augustus'), which he wrote himself.

These extracts are adapted only by the excision of the more difficult passages, so you are reading here Augustus' actual words.

Rēs gestae diuī Augustī

rēs gestae diuī Augustī, quibus orbem terrarum imperiō populī Rōmānī subiēcit, et impēnsae quās in rem pūblicam populumque Rōmānum fēcit.

annōs undēuīgintī nātus exercitum priuātō cōsiliō et priuātā impēnsā comparāuī, per quem rem pūblicam¹ a dominātiōne fac-
tōnis ²oppressam in libertātem uindicāuī. senātus in ordinem suum mē
adlēgit, C. Pānsā et A. Hirtio cōsulibus, et imperium mihi dedit.
populus eōdem annō mē cōsulem et triumuirum creāuit

cūriam templumque Apollinis, aedem diuī Iulī, Lupercal, porticum ad
circum Flāminium, aedēs in Capitoliō Iouis Feretrī et Iouis Tonantis,
aedem Quirinī, aedēs Mineruae et Iūnōnis Rēgīnae et Iouis Libertātis in
Auentinō, aedem Larum in summā sacrā uiā, aedem deum Penātium in
Velīā, aedem Iuuentātis, aedem Mātris Magnae in Palātiō fēcī

Capitolium et Pompēium theātrum refēcī sine ulla inscriptiōne
nōminis mei. riuōs aquarum complūribus locis uetustate labentis refēcī.
forum Iūlium et basilicam, quae fuit inter aedem Castoris et aedem
Sātūrnī, perfēcī.

ter mūnus gladiātōrium dedī, quibus mūneribus dēpugnāuerunt
hominum circiter decem mīllia

uēnātiōnēs bēstiārum Africānarum in circō aut in forō aut in
amphitheātris populō dedī sexiēns et uīciēns, quibus cōfecta sunt
bēstiārum circiter tria mīllia et quīngentae. (*Rēs gestae* 1–4, 19–23)

NB. The glossaries for these passages contain both vocabulary and hints on how to read each sentence as it comes. The instruction 'hold' suggests that the meaning of the word cannot be finally decided at that point in the sentence; you are asked to keep information about the word in mind until it is 'solved' by later developments.

rēs gestae *rērum gestarum* 5f. pl + 1/2

adj. (lit.) things done; achievements

diu-us a um divine

August-us ī 2m. Augustus

quibus [Pl., so what must it pick up?

Dat or abl., but why? Hold]

orbis orb-is 3m. circle

(+ *terrarum* = 'circle of the lands', i.e.

world) [Acc., but why? Hold]

imperi-um ī 2n. command, rule,

authority. [Dat. or abl., but why?

Hold]

popul-us ī 2m. people

subiciō 3/4 *subiēcī* subject x (acc.) to y

(dat.) [This should solve *imperiō* and

quibus (abl. of means)]

impēns-a ae 1f. money, expense

quās [f. pl., so what must it pick up?

Acc., but why? Hold]

rēs pūblica *rēi pūblīcae* 5f + 1/2 adj.

republic

fēcīt [Explains *quās* in the acc.]

ūndēuīgintī nineteen

nāt-us a um born, aged [Nom., m, but

who does it refer to? Hold]

- prīuāt-us a um* his own [*prīuātō* is dat. or abl., but why? Hold]
- 5 *comparō* 1 I put together, gather, raise [Person (tells you who *nātus* is)? Explains why *exercitum* in acc. Solves *prīuātō* . . . *impēnsā*]
- per quem* ['through whom' (i.e. through me) or 'through which' (referring to the army)? Wait]
- dominātiō dominatiōn-is* 3f. tyranny
- factiō factiōn-is* 3f. political clique
- oppress-us a um* crushed, ground under
- in libertātem vindicō* 1 I free (lit. 'I claim into freedom') [Person? Shows that *quem* must = army, solves case of *rem publicam*]
- adlegō* 3 *adlēgē* 1 enrol
- C. Pansā et A. Hirtiō consulibus* i.e. 43
- triumuir triumuir-ī* 2m. triumvir, member of commission of three
- creō* 1 I elect
- cūrī-a ae* 1f. senate house [Acc., but why? You will not solve this sentence till you come to the very last word! So this is an important exercise in holding on]
- templ-um ī* 2n. temple [Since it is linked by *-que* to *cūriam*, one assumes it also is acc. But what is the function of the accusatives? This question will not be asked again – but you must ask it]
- Apollō Apollin-is* 3m. Apollo
- dīu-us a um* divine
- Iūli-us ī* 2m. Julius (Caesar)
- Lupercal* 3n. the Lupercal
- portic-us ūs* 4f. portico
- 10 *circ-us ī* 2m. circus
- Flāminī-us a um* of Flaminius
- Capitoli-um ī* 2n. the Capitol (hill)
- Feretri-us a um* Feretrian
- Tonāns Tonant-is* thunderer
- Quirīn-us ī* 2m. Quirinus (= Romulus deified)
- Minerv-a ae* 1f. Minerva (Athena)
- Iūnō Iūnōn-is* 3f. Juno (Hera), wife of Jupiter
- Rēgīn-a ae* 1f. queen
- Libertās Libertāt-is* 3f. freedom
- Auentīn-um ī* 2n. the Aventine (hill)
- Larēs Lar-um* 3m. pl. the Lares (household gods)
- deum* [Gen. pl., not acc. s.]
- Penātēs Penāt-ium* 3m. pl. the Penates (household gods)
- Veli-a ae* 1f. The Velian ridge, connecting two hills in Rome
- Iuuentas Iuuentāt-is* 3f. youth
- Māter Magna Matr-is Magn-ae* Cybele
- Palātī-um ī* 2n. the Palatine (hill)
- fēcī* [At last! Solves all the accusatives]
- Capitoli-um ī* 2n. the Capitol (hill)
- Pompēi-us a um* of Pompey
- theātr-um ī* 2n. theatre [Nom., or acc.? Hold . . . but not for long]
- reficiō* 3/4 *refēcī* 1 rebuild, restore
- īnscripitiō īnscripitiōn-is* 3f. inscription
- 15 *riū-us ī* 2m. *aquārum* aqueduct [Why acc.? Hold]
- complūr-ēs ium* very many, several
- uetustās uetustāt-is* 3f. age [Why abl.? Hold]
- labēns labent-is* collapsing (explains *uetustāte*)
- Iulī-us a um* of Julius (Caesar) [Nom. or acc.?]
- basilic-a ae* 1f. courtyard (used for business and law-courts) [Its case shows that *forum Iūlium* must also be acc.]
- inter* (+ acc.) in between
- Castor Castor-is* 3m. Castor (god, brother of Pollux)
- Sāturn-us ī* 2m. Saturn (ancient Roman god, = Greek Kronos)
- ter* three times
- mūnus mūner-is* 3n. public show [Neuter, so hold whether nom. or acc.]
- gladiātōri-us a um* involving gladiators
- dedī* [Solves *mūnus*]
- quibus mūneribus* [Connecting relative. But why dat. or abl.? Hold]
- dēpugnō* 1 I fight [Plural: will there follow a subject which tells us who fought? *hominum* 'of men' – it looks like it]

- ciriter* about
- decem* 10
- mīllia* (usually *mīlia*) thousands [So we have 'quibus numeribus about 10,000 men fought'. Now translate *quibus mūneribus*]
- 20 *uenātīō uenātiōn-is* 3f. hunt [Nom. or acc.? Hold]
- hēstī-a ae* 1f. wild animal
- Āfricān-us a um* from Africa
- circ-us ī* 2m. circus
- amphitheatr-um ī* 2n. amphitheatre
- sexiēns et uicēns* six and twenty times
- quibus* [Pl], so it must pick up – *quātiōnēs? bēstiarum? amphitheatrī* . Wait]
- conficio* 3/4 *confēcī confect-us* 1 destroy [Passive, so something 'was destroyed'; *sunt* shows pl., but why *confect-a* neuter? Wait for subject]
- tria mīllia* (neuter!) three thousands
- quīngent-ī ae a* 500 [But why *-ae* feminine? So we have 'quibus 3,500 (of) animals were destroyed'. Now tr. *quibus*]

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building

Suffixes

-cul-us a um and *-ol/ul-us a um* often indicate diminutives, which can be endearing or condemnatory, e.g.

mulier 'woman' *muliercula* 'silly woman'
homo 'man' *homunculus* 'little jerk'
Vērānius *Vērāniolus* 'dear Veranius'

Word exercises

Give the meaning and Latin connections of: class, decimate, juvenile, prefect, inebriated, adjacent, liberate, vest, nefarious, quotidian.

Everyday Latin

contraria contrariis curantur 'opposites are cured by opposites'
data et accepta 'expenditures and receipts' (lit. 'things given and received')
Graecum est non legitur 'it is Greek it is not read' (found beside Greek words in medieval MSS – when knowledge of the language was rare)
negatur 'it is denied'
probatum est 'it has been proved'

Real Latin

Lucretius¹

(On the nature of the gods)

sēmōta ab nostrīs rēbus sēiūnctaque longē;
nam priuāta dolōre omnī, priuāta perīclīs,
ipsa suis pollēns opibus, nīl indiga nostrī,
nec bene prōmeritis capitur neque tangitur irā.

(Dē rērum nātūrā 2.648ff.)

sēmōta removed [It is f., referring to diuum nātūra 'the nature of the gods' a few lines earlier]	dolor dolōr-is 3m. pain; grief perīclīs = perīculīs pollēns pollent-is powerful suis . . . opibus 'in (respect of) their own resources'	indig-us a um in need of (+ gen.) bene prōmerit-a (ōrum 2n pl.) good deeds capiō (here) I win over tang- 3 I touch, move, affect ir-a ae 1f. anger
sēiūncta separated priuātus a um (+abl.) relieved of	nīl 'in no way'	

¹ C. 95–c. 50. Philosopher poet, author of *Dē rērum nātūrā* 'On the nature of matter', 'On the nature of the universe'.

Publilius Syrus¹

- (a) amāns irātus multa mentitur sibi.
(b) auārus ipse causa miseriae suae.
(c) amāre iuuenī fructus est, crīmen senī.
(d) amāre et sapere uix deō concēditur.
(e) amōris uulnus idem sānat quī facit.
(f) amōrī finem tempus, nōn animus, facit.

¹ First writer of stage 'mimes', full of wit and satire and memorable quotes, c. 44

amāns amant-is 3m. lover auār-us ī 2m. miser fruct-us ūs 4m. enjoyment crīmen crimin-is 3n. reproach	sapere 'to be wise' uix scarcely concēdō 3 I yield, grant uulnus uulner-is 3n. wound	sānō 1 I heal idem is antecedent of quī finis fin-is 3m. end
--	--	--

Martial

septima iam, Philerōs, tibi conditur uxor in agrō.
plūs nullī, Philerōs, quam tibi reddit ager. (10.43)

septim-us a um seventh Philerōs (voc.) Phileros 'friend of Eros'	tibi 'by you' (dative of agent)	condō 3 I bury reddō 3 I yield, return
--	------------------------------------	---

Part of the Creed

(Christ) quī propter nōs hominēs et propter nostram salūtem dēscendit dē
caelis.

Et incarnātus est dē spīritū sāctō ex Mariā uirgine; et homo factus est.
Crucifixus etiam prō nōbīs, sub Pontiō Pilātō passus et sepultus est.

Et resurrēxit tertiā diē secundum scrīptūrās.

salūs salūt-is 3f. salvation dēscendō 3 dēscendī 1 descend dē (+abl.) from cael-a ōrum 2n. pl. heaven(s) incarnātus est 'he was made flesh'	crucifixus (sc. est) 'he was crucified' sub (+abl.) under passus (sc. est) 'he suffered' sepultus est 'he was buried'	resurgō 3 resurrēxī 1 rise again tert-i-us a um third secundum (+acc.) according to scrīptūr-a ae 1f. scripture
--	---	--

Section 4E

Running vocabulary for 4E(i)

adeuntis (acc. pl. m.) '(as they were) approaching' (pres. part. of adeō) adpulsā esset 'had landed' (plup. subj. of adpellor) aduolāuisset '(it) had flown' (plup. subj. of aduolō 1) aggredior 3/4 I attack (lit. 'I go up to') agrest-is e wild amāns (nom. s. m.) 'making love' (pres. part. of amō) ancor-a ae 1f. anchor-cable Anthrōpin-us ī 2m Anthropinus Apollōniēns-is e from Apollonia (a town in Sicily)	capta esset '(it) had been captured' (plup. subj. pass. of capiō) cib-us ī 2m food Cleomenēs Cleomen-is 3m. Cleomenes cuius (gen. s.) 'whose', 'of which' cum when (ll. 204, 210 and 217); although (l. 212) dēnique finally egentēs (nom. pl. m.) 'lacking', 'needing' (pres. part. of egeō 2 (+abl.) I need, lack) egentibus (abl. pl. m.) '(as they were) lacking, needing' (pres. part. of egeō 2 (+abl.) I need, lack)	ēgredientem (acc. s. m.) '(as he was) leaving' (pres. part. of ēgredior) erigō 3 I erect fugiēns (nom. s. f.) 'fleeing' (pres. part. of fugiō) fugientēs (nom. pl. m./f.) 'fleeing', 'as they were fleeing' (pres. part. of fugiō) Haluntin-us ī 2m. person from Haluntium (a town in N. Sicily) Helōr-us ī 2f. Helorus (city on east coast of Sicily) imperātor imperātor-is 3m. leader, general, commander
---	---	---

incredibil-is *e* amazing,
unbelievable
litus litor-is 3n. shore
māl-us *ī* 2m. mast
muliercul-a *ae* 1f. woman
(sneering tone)
nāugō 1 *ī* sail
nītor 3 dep. *nīxus* (+ abl.)
I lean on
occidō 3 *occidī occīsus* I kill
Odyssē-a *ae* 1f. Odyssea (a
promontory on the
southern extremity of
Sicily)
Pachyn-us *ī* 2m */f*.
Pachynus (the south-
eastern promontory of
Sicily)

pallū-us *ī* 2n Greek cloak
palm-a *ae* 1f palm-tree
paulō slightly, rather
Phylarch-us *ī* 2m.
Phylarchus
popul-us *ī* 2m. people
postrēm-us *a um* last
pōtāns (nom. s. m.)
'drinking' (pres. part.
of *pōtō* 1)
pōtante (abl. s. m.)
'drinking' (pres. part.
of *pōtō* 1)
praecidō 3 *ī* cut
prīnceps prīncip-is 3m
leader; (adj.) first
purpure-us *a um* purple;
crimson

quīnt-us *a um* fifth
rādīx rādīc-is 3f. root
sēmplen-us *a um* half-full,
under-manned
sequentiēs (nom. pl. m.)
'following' (pres. part.
of *sequor* 3 dep.)
sequentīs (acc. pl. f.)
'following', 'as they
were following' (pres.
part. of *sequor* 3 dep.)
soleāt-us *a um* be-
slipped, in slippers
tard-us *a um* slow
uidisset 'he had seen'
(plup. subj. of *uideō*)

popul-us *ī* 2m. people
prīnceps prīncip-is 3m.
leader, chieftain; (adj.)
first

Learning vocabulary for 4E(i)

Nouns

cib-us *ī* 2m. food
Cleomenēs Cleomen-is 3m.
Cleomenes

imperātor imperātōr-is 3m.
leader, general,
commander
litus litor-is 3n. shore

Adjectives

postrēm-us *a um* last
quīnt-us *a um* fifth

Verbs

aggredior 3/4 dep. *aggressus*
I attack (go up to)
egēō 2 *egū* (+ abl. or
gen.) I lack, need, am
in want of

nāugō 1 *ī* sail
nītor 3 dep. *nīsus* or *nīxus*
(+ abl.) I lean on; I
strive, exert myself

occidō 3 *occidī occīsus* I kill

Others

dēnique finally; in a word
paulō slightly (cf. *multō*
(by) much: both
ablatives expressing
'amount of difference')

Running vocabulary for 4E(ii)

accipio 3/4 *accepī acceptus* I
sustain, meet with
admittō 3 *ī* let in
amor amor-is 3m. love,
passion
ante earlier, before (adv.)
ausus esset 'he had dared'
(plup. subj. of *audeō*)
calamitōs-us *a um*
disastrous
cant-us *ūs* 4m. song,
singing
concurō 1 *ī* rush together
cōnflagrantem (acc. s. m.,
f.) 'as he/it was'
burning' (pres. part. of
cōnflagrō 1)
cōnflagrantis (acc. pl. f.)
'burning', (pres. part.
of *cōnflagrō* 1)
cuius (gen. s.) 'whose', 'of
which'
cum when (ll. 220); since
(ll. 222 and 226)
disciplin-a *ae* 1f. order,
control
dormientem (acc. s. m.)
'(while he was)
sleeping' (pres. part. of
dormio)

ēicio 3/4 *ēicī* I throw out;
mē ēicio I throw myself
out
excito 1 *ī* rouse
exeuntem (acc. s. m.)
'departing' (pres. part.
of *exeō*)
fluctuantem (acc. s. f.)
'tossing about' (pres.
part. of *fluctuō* 1)
grau-is *e* serious,
important, weighty
Helōr-us *ī* 2f Helorus
(city on east coast of
Sicily)
Heracleō Hēracleōn-is 3m.
Heracleo
incendi-um *ī* 2n. fire
incendō 3 *incendī incēsus* I
burn
includō 3 *inclūsi* I shut up
inflammō 1 *ī* set on fire
manente (abl. s. m.)
'remaining' (pres. part.
of *manēō*)
mare mar-is 3n. sea (abl. s.
marī)
marī (abl. s.) on the sea
multitudō multitudin-is 3f
crowd, number

nēquitia *ae* 1f. wickedness
ō oh! (exclamation
followed by acc.)
peruenisset 'he had
reached' (plup. subj. of
perueniō)
praetōri-um *ī* 2n.
governor's residence
pūblic-um *ī* 2n. public
place
quārum (gen. pl. f.) 'of
which', '(and) of these'
quō to where
quōrum (gen. pl. m.)
'whose'
reliqu-us *a um* remaining,
left
seuēr-us *a um* strict
symphon-a *ae* 1f. band
tard-us *a um* slow
uidissent 'they had seen'
(plup. subj. of *uideō*)

Learning vocabulary for 4E(ii)

Nouns

incendi-um *ī* 2n. fire
mare mar-is 3n. sea (*marī*
(abl. s.) 'on the sea')

multitudō multitudin-is 3f
mob, crowd, number

nēquitia *ae* 1f. wickedness

Adjectives

grau-is *e* serious,
important, weighty

reliqu-us *a um* remaining,
left

tard-us *a um* slow

Verbs

accipio 3/4 *accēpī acceptus* I
sustain, meet with,
(receive, welcome;
learn; obtain)

cōnflagrō 1 I burn
(intrans.)

incendō 3 *incendī incēnsus* I
set fire to, burn (trans.)

Others

ante (adv.) earlier, before;
(+ acc.) before, in
front of)

quō to where, whither (in
direct q. = whither? to
where?)

Running vocabulary for 4E(iii)

accēdō 3 *accessī* I approach,
reach

acerb-us a um bitter

Carthāginiēns-is e

Carthaginian, Punic

commoratī essent 'they had
waited' (plup. subj. of
commoror 1 dep.)

cōnflagrantīs (acc. pl. f.)
'burning' (pres. part. of
cōnflagrō)

cum when (l. 241)

fact-um ī 2n. achievement

glōri-a ae 1f. glory,

renown, fame

Helōrī (locative) at

Helorus

immortāl-is e everlasting,
immortal

lūdbriō esse to be a
laughing-stock/joke (to
x dat.) [*lūdbriō* is
predicative dative from
ludibri-um ī 2n.]

mentiō mentiōn-is 3f
mention

met-us ūs 4m. fear

moenia moen-ium 3n. pl
walls

ō oh! (exclamation

followed by acc.)

penetrō 1 I penetrate,

reach into

peruagor 1 dep. I rove

freely about

pirā ...-us a um (of a)
pirate

plurimum possum I am
very powerful

prō! in the name of!
Pūnic-us a um Punic.

Carthaginian

quorum (gen. pl. n.) 'of
which

saepe often

Siciliēn-us e Sicilian

spectācul-um ī 2n. sight

statuō 3 *statuī* I decide,
determine

tot so many (indecl.)

videlicet presumably

usque right up as far as

Verbs

accēdō 3 *accessī accessum* I
approach, reach

commoror 1 dep. I delay,
wait

possum posse potui
(+ adv.) I am
powerful, have power.
(am able, can)

Others

cum (+ subj.) when; since;
although; (+ abl. with)

saepe often

Grammar and exercises for 4E

120 Present participles '—ing', 'while —ing'

Present participles of both active and deponent verbs are formed in the same way – with *-ns* added to the stem (+ key vowel *-e-* in 3rd, 4th and 3rd/4th conjugations). They are declined like *ingēns* (*ingent-*), e.g.

	s.		pl	
	m./f.	n.	m./f.	n
nom.	āmā-ns	āmā-ns	amānt-ēs	amānt-ia
acc.	amānt-em	āmā-ns	amānt-īs (-ēs)	amānt-ia
gen.	←amānt-is→		←amānt-ium (-um)→	
dat.	←amānt-ī→		←amānt-ibus→	
abl.	←amānt-e (-ī)→		←amānt-ibus→	

So in conspectus we get:

Active

1	2	3	4	3/4
'loving'	'having'	'saying'	'hearing'	'capturing'
āmāns	hábēns	dícēns	aúdiēns	cápiēns
amānt-	habént-	dícént-	audiént-	capiént-

Deponent

1	2	3	4	3/4
'threatening'	'promising'	'speaking'	'lying'	'advancing'
mínāns	póllicēns	lóquēns	méntiēns	prōgrēdiēns
minánt-	pollicént-	loquént-	mentiént-	prōgrediént-

Learning vocabulary for 4E(iii)

Nouns

glōri-a ae 1f. glory,
renown, fame

mentiō mentiōn-is 3f.
mention

moenia moen-ium 3n. pl
walls, fortifications

met-us ūs 4m. fear, terror

Adjectives

tot so many (indecl.)

Notes

- 1 Observe that the very word 'present' is itself a participle form (*praesēns praesentis*) from *praesum* 'I preside'; so the word 'present' is in itself a clue to the form and meaning of present participles. (Cf. 'future', which gave the clue to the *-ūr-us* ending of future participles, 81).
- 2 Present participles mean '—ing', and indicate that the action of the participle is going on at the same time as the verb of the clause.
- 3 As with future participles and deponent past participles, present participles act like adjectives in agreeing with the person 'doing' in gender, number and case. But they are most often used predicatively. See 77.
- 4 The ablative s. usually ends in *-e*, and the gen. pl. in *-ium*. The ablative s. ends in *-ī* when the verb is being used *adjectivally*. (Cf. English 'a charming man came here', 'I saw a man charming snakes': the first participle is being used adjectivally, the second with verbal force — predicatively. See 77).
- 5 Note the irregular *iēns, eunt-is* 'going' (from *eō*).
- 6 Note the common use of a noun in the ablative with a present participle (in s. always ending in *-e*), to mean 'while x is/was —ing', e.g. *Cleomenē pōtante* 'while Cleomenes was drinking'. Cf. the ablative absolute with nouns/adjectives, 109

Exercises

Morphology

- 1 Form the present participle of each of these verbs. Give also gen. s. and translate: *reuocō, incendō, accipiō, sentiō, iubeō, adipiscor, ēgredior, fruor, recordor, exeō*, (optional: *loquor, intellegō, commoror, cōnflagrō, egeō, nitor, nāuigō, mentior, obliuiscor, cōnor*).
- 2 Say with which noun(s) in each line the given present participle agrees.

inspicientī: *seruae, muliere, militis, uirō*
accēdentem: *imperātorum, principem, multitudīne, incendium*
nītente: *Verrī, mulieris, seruā, imperātōrēs*
commorantum: *populum, mulierum, manum*
cōnflagentibus: *moenibus, cibus, nāuīs, cēterīs*
circumiēns: *Iouis, Cicerō, mulier, imperātōrēs*

3 Translate these sentences:

- (a) *Verrēs muliere nītēns in litore stābat.*
- (b) *illis rogantibus praedō respondit sē nāuīs fugientīs uīdisse.*
- (c) *nautīs cibō egentibus, Cleomenēs nihil fēcīt.*
- (d) *Verre mulierem amante, nūntiatum est nāueni captam esse.*
- (e) *nāuem incendiō cōnflagentem uidēre potes.*
- (f) *reliquōs paulō tardius sequentīs cōspicātī sunt.*
- (g) *Syrācūsīs commorantēs praedōnēs moenia urbis uīderunt.*
- (h) *Verrēs negāuit nāuīs sē ad portum accēdentīs uīdisse.*
- (i) *nūllus agentī¹ diēs longus est. (Seneca)*
- (j) *nīl difficile amantī. (Cicero)*

¹ *agō* 3 I am busy

- 4 Translate into Latin (using ablative absolute with present participle). E.g. as the leader delayed *prīncipe commorante*.

in Verres' absence; while the sailors were following; with the people watching; as the ships were burning; with Cleomenes delaying; although the crowd was encouraging the leader.

121 Pluperfect subjunctive active ('had —ed')

	1	2	3
1st s.	<i>amāu-isse-n</i> (or <i>amāssem</i> etc.)	<i>habu-isse-m</i>	<i>dix-isse-m</i>
2nd s.	<i>amāu-issēs</i>	<i>habu-issēs</i>	<i>dix-issēs</i>
3rd s.	<i>amāu-isset</i>	<i>habu-isset</i>	<i>dix-isset</i>
1st pl.	<i>amāu-issē-mus</i>	<i>habu-issē-mus</i>	<i>dix-issē-mus</i>
2nd pl.	<i>amāu-issētis</i>	<i>habu-issētis</i>	<i>dix-issētis</i>
3rd pl.	<i>amāu-issent</i>	<i>habu-issent</i>	<i>dix-issent</i>
	4	3/4	
1st s.	<i>audiu-isse-m</i> (or <i>audissem</i> etc.)	<i>cēp-isse-m</i>	
2nd s.	<i>audiu-issēs</i>	<i>cēp-issēs</i>	
3rd s.	<i>audiu-isset</i>	<i>cēp-isset</i>	
1st pl.	<i>audiu-issē-mus</i>	<i>cēp-issē-mus</i>	
2nd pl.	<i>audiu-issētis</i>	<i>cēp-issētis</i>	
3rd pl.	<i>audiu-issent</i>	<i>cēp-issent</i>	

Notes

- 1 Remember pluperfect subjunctive active as formed from the perfect infinitive active plus the normal personal endings (*-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt*).

- 2 Observe how the *-ui-* can drop out (cf. 65, 104¹), e.g. *amā-ssem, dēlē-ssem* (*dēlēuissem*) etc.

122 Pluperfect subjunctive deponent ('had —ed')

	1	2	3
1st s.	mināt-us a um éssem	pollicit-us a um éssem	locūt-us a um éssem
2nd s.	minat-us a um éssēs	pollicit-us a um éssēs	locūt-us a um éssēs
3rd s.	mināt-us a um éssēt	pollicit-us a um éssēt	locūt-us a um éssēt
1st pl.	mināt-ī ae a essēmus	pollicit-ī ae a essēmus	locūt-ī ae a essēmus
2nd pl.	minat-ī ae a essētis	pollicit-ī ae a essētis	locūt-ī ae a essētis
3rd pl.	minat-ī ae a essent	pollicit-ī ae a essent	locūt-ī ae a essent
	4	3/4	
1st s.	mentīt-us a um éssem	prōgrēss-us a um éssem	
2nd s.	mentīt-us a um éssēs	prōgrēss-us a um éssēs	
3rd s.	mentīt-us a um éssēt	prōgrēss-us a um éssēt	
1st pl.	mentīt-ī ae a essēmus	prōgrēss-ī ae a essēmus	
2nd pl.	mentīt-ī ae a essētis	prōgrēss-ī ae a essētis	
3rd pl.	mentīt-ī ae a essent	prōgrēss-ī ae a essent	

NB. The pluperfect subjunctive deponent is formed from the perfect participle in *-us -a -um* (agreeing with the subject) and the auxiliary verb *essem essēs esset* etc. (imperfect subjunctive of *sum*).

123 Pluperfect subjunctive passive ('had been —ed')

	1	2	3
1st s.	amāt-us éssem	hābit-us éssem	dict-us éssem
2nd s.	amāt-us éssēs	hābit-us éssēs	dict-us éssēs
3rd s.	amāt-us éssēt	hābit-us éssēt	dict-us éssēt
1st pl.	amāt-ī essēmus	hābit-ī essēmus	dict-ī essēmus
2nd pl.	amāt-ī essētis	hābit-ī essētis	dict-ī essētis
3rd pl.	amāt-ī essent	hābit-ī essent	dict-ī essent
	4	3/4	
1st s.	audīt-us éssem	cāpt-us éssem	
2nd s.	audīt-us éssēs	cāpt-us éssēs	
3rd s.	audīt-us éssēt	cāpt-us éssēt	
1st pl.	audīt-ī essēmus	cāpt-ī essēmus	
2nd pl.	audīt-ī essētis	cāpt-ī essētis	
3rd pl.	audīt-ī essent	cāpt-ī essent	

NB. For formation of the pluperfect subjunctive passive, see note on plupf. deponent above, 122.

124 *cum* + subjunctive 'when', 'since', 'although'

cum followed by the pluperfect subjunctive means 'when' or 'since x had —ed' (it can sometimes mean 'although').

Here are two examples of *cum* + pluperfect subjunctive:

cum abiissent, laetus eram 'when/since they had gone, I was delighted'

cum haec locūtī essent, abiērunt 'when/since they had said this, they left'

Notes

- 1 Distinguish *cum* = 'with' (followed closely by an ablative) from *cum* = 'since', 'when', 'although'.
- 2 Remember *mēcum* 'with me', *tēcum* 'with you', *nōbiscum* 'with us' etc., and *quōcum, quibuscum* 'with whom'.
- 3 *cum* 'although' is often signposted by e.g. *tamen* or *nihilōminus* in the main clause, e.g. *cum sapiēns esset, stultē tamen sē gessit* 'though he was wise, all the same he acted foolishly'.
- 4 It is common for conjunctions like *cum*, *sī* 'if', *ubi* 'when' etc. to drift towards the verb, i.e. away from the start of the sentence, e.g. *ad templum cum peruēnisset*, 'when he had reached the temple'. Be prepared for this when you translate.

Exercises

- 1 Form and conjugate the pluperfect subjunctive of these verbs (form passive only where asked): *egeō, cōnflagrō, commoror, sequor, accipio* (passive), *incendō* (passive), *nitor, occidō, sentiō, liberō* (passive), *accēdō*, (optional: *dēsum, circumeō, nōlō, ferō* (passive), *recordor, audeō, cōspicor, iaceō, cōstituō* (passive), *excōgitō, nāuigō*).
- 2 Translate these sentences (taking care over the meaning of *cum* = 'when, since, although'):
 (a) *cum Cleomenēs fūgisset, ceterī secūtī sunt.*
 (b) *cum praedōnēs celerrimē prōgressī essent, nāuēs Rōmānōrum postrēmae in periculō principēs erant.*

- (c) cum imperātor ad litus celeriter accessisset, ceteri tamen tardius nāuigābant.
 (d) Cleomenēs ad litus cum nāue cum peruēnisset, sē domī cēlāuit.
 (e) ceteri quoque, cum marī nūllō modō praedōnēs effugere potuissent, nāuīs reliquērunt
 (f) praedōnum dux nāuīs, cum captae essent, incendi iussit

3 Translate into Latin (using cum + pluperfect subjunctive)

- (a) When the commander had sailed to the shore
 (b) Since the ships had been burned .
 (c) Although the pirates had delayed at Syracuse
 (d) When the walls had been examined .
 (e) Although the crowd had caught sight of the fire
 (f) Since the sailors had lacked food

4 Say which of these verbs are subjunctive, which indicative: eguit, cōnflagrasset, tulerat, recordātus essēs, cōstituisse, excōgitauerās, accepissent, captus esse, occisī essent, cōspicātī sunt, (optional: iacustī, commorātī sunt, secūta esset, fuisse, fūgissent, cēlauerant, nāuigāssent, nōluistis, potuissēs, incēsus esse).

125 3rd decl. neuter -i- stem nouns in -al, -ar, -re and -le, e.g. mare mar-is 3n. 'sea'

All these nouns decline in the same way, like mare.

	s.	pl.
nom.	māre	mār-ia
acc.	māre	mār-ia
gen.	mār-is	mār-ium (mar-um is found)
dat.	mār-ī	mār-ibus
abl.	mār-ī (māre is found)	mār-ibus

Cf. animal 'animal', calcar 'spur' and cubile 'couch'.

NB. Abl. s. in -ī, nom. acc. pl. in -ia, gen. pl. in -ium – exactly like other neuter i-stems (see 44). Cf. 12 and contrast 26.

126 Relative pronoun in the genitive

cuius and quōrum quārum quōrum nearly always mean 'whose', 'of which' or 'of whom', e.g.

nāuīs cuius imperātor erat Phylarchus 'the ship the captain of which was Phylarchus'
 hominēs quōrum argentum Verres cupiuit 'the men whose silver Verres desired'

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Here is a slightly cut (but otherwise unadapted) passage from the original text of 4E(ii). Read the passage, analysing explicitly your procedure as you go. End, after translation, with a reading aloud of the Latin.

ita p̄ma Haluntinōrum nāuis capitur, cui praeerat Haluntinus homo nōbilis, Phylarchus, quem ab illis praedōnibus Locrēnsēs¹ postea publicē redēmērunt² . . . deinde Apollōniēnsis nāuis capitur, et eius praefectus Anthrōpinus occiditur. haec dum aguntur, interea Cleomenēs iam ad Helōrī litus peruēnerat; iam sēsē in terram ē nāuī ēiēcerat, 5 quadrirēmemque³ fluctuantem in salō (=marī) reliquerat. reliquī praefectī nāuium, cum in terram imperātor exisset, Cleomenem persecūtī⁴ sunt. (From Cicero, In Verrem II 5, 34.90–35.91)

¹ Locrēnsis Locrēns-is 3m. person from Locri

² redimō 3 redēmī 1 ransom, buy back (thus English 'redeem')

³ quadrirēmis quadrirēm-is 3f. ship - with 4 banks of oars

⁴ per- intensifies the simple verb sequor

English-Latin

1 Translate these sentences into Latin:

- (a) The crowd caught sight of the ships as they were burning.
 (b) When Cleomenes had disembarked, the rest of the ships' captains followed him.
 (c) Cleomenes, whose wife was on the shore with Verres, left harbour with the ships following.
 (d) Since they had not been able to escape the pirates by sea, the captains followed their leader and disembarked.

2 Read the text of 4E(iii) again, then translate this passage:

When the ships had been set on fire, the pirates decided to go to Syracuse. They had heard that the harbour of the Syracusans was very beautiful and knew that they would never see it except in Verres'

praetorship. When they had decided this,¹ they sailed to Syracuse. A pirate ship, in Verres' praetorship, while our ships were burning, came up to the actual harbour of the Syracusans. Ye gods! What a vile deed!

¹ Use connecting relative (*quī quae quod*)

Rēs gestae dñi Augusti

mare pācāuī ā praedōnibus. iūrāuit in mea uerba tōta Italia sponte suā, et mē bellī quō uicī ad Actium ducem dēpoposcit; iūrāuerunt in eadem uerba prōuinciae Galliae, Hispāniae, Africa, Sicilia, Sardinia. omnium prōuinciārum populī Rōmānī quibus finitimae fuērunt gentēs quae nōn pārērent imperiō nostrō finīs auxī. Galliās et Hispāniās prōuinciās, item Germāniā pācāuī. Alpēs ā regiōne eā quae proxima est Hadriānō marī ad Tuscūm pācificāuī. classis mea per Oceanum ab ostiō Rhēnī ad sōlis orientis regiōnem usque ad finīs Cimbrōrum nāuigāuit. Aeg̃yptum imperiō populī Rōmānī adiēcī. plūrimae aliae gentēs expertae sunt p. R. fidem, mē prīncipe, quibus antea cum populō Rōmānō nūllum exstiterat lēgatiōnum et amicitiae commercium. (*Rēs gestae* 25–7)

pacō I bring peace to x (acc.) from (ā + abl.) y

praedo praedon-is 3m. pirate

iurō I in uerba I take the oath of allegiance [Await subject, if there is one quoted]

sponte suā of its own accord, willingly

mē bellī [Wait to solve both these]

quō . . . Actium [Relative clause, *quō* picks up *bellī*]

Acti-um ī 2n. (battle of) Actium, 31, when Octavian–Augustus defeated Mark Antony and Cleopatra and became sole ruler of Roman world

ducem [Acc. – with *mē*? Yes: *mē ducem bellī* solves *bellī*]

dēpoposcō 3 *dēpoposci* I demand [Solves case of *mē ducem*. Who 'demanded'?

Ans.: *tota Italia* from the previous clause]

iurāuerunt [Pl., so 'they' – but who? Await subject(s)]

prōuinci-a ae 1f. province [Ah – here come(s) the subject(s)]

Galli-ae arum 1f. pl. the provinces of Gaul

268

Hispāni-ae arum 1f. pl. the provinces of Spain

omnium . . . populī Rōmānī [A long phrase in the genitive. Probably 'of all . . .', but hold till a suitable noun which it can qualify emerges]

quibus . . . nostrō [Two sub-clauses here – first *quibus . . . gentēs*, then *quae nostrō*. Hold tight]

finitim-us a um close to (+ dat.) [Solves *quibus* – 'to which were close . . .']

gens gent-is 3f. tribe, people

quae [By position probably picks up 'tribes'. Nom., so 'the tribes which . . .']

parērent '(they) obeyed' (+ dative)

finēs fin-ium 3f. pl. boundaries [Nom. or acc.?

augeō 3 *auxī* I increase, enlarge [Solves *finīs*. But whose *finīs*? Ans.: *omnium* . . . ; so we only solve *omnium . . .*

populī at the end of the sentence]

item similarly

Germāni-a ae 1f. Germany

Alpēs Alp-ium 3f. pl. the Alps [Nom. or acc.? Hold]

regiō regiō-is 3f. area

proxim-us a um closest (to + dat.)

Hadriān-us a um Adriatic

Tusc-us a um Tuscan (sc. mare)

pācificō 1 I pacify, bring peace to

Ocean-us ī 2m. Ocean, i.e. the North Sea

osti-um ī 2n. mouth

Rhēn-us ī 2m. Rhine

sōl oriēns sōl-is orient-is rising sun, East

usque ad (+ acc.) right up to

Cimbr-i ōrum 2m. pl. the Cimbri, a German tribe (modern Denmark)

Aeg̃ypt-us ī 2f. Egypt [Case? Hold, hold also *imperiō*]

adiēcō 3'4 *adiēcī* I add x (acc.) to y (dat.)

experior 4 dep. *expert-us* I experience

p. R. = *populī Rōmāni*

10 *fidēs fidē-i* 5f. protection, trustworthiness

quibus [Pl., so who must it refer to? Case = dat. or abl. Hold]

anteā previously

nullum [But no what? Wait]

exsistō 1 *exstīti* exist [What had existed? Since 'exist' cannot have a direct object, one assumes *nullum* must be a subject, so 'quibus previously no something had existed']

lēgatiō lēgatiō-is 3f. embassy, i.e. international relations

amiciti-a ae 1f. friendship

commerc-i-um ī 2n. [Ah! *nullum*]

exchange [So 'quibus previously no exchange of . . .'] Translate *quibus*]

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building

Suffixes: revision

-bil-is e is the suffix often used to form adjectives with passive force, e.g. *amābilis* 'lovable', *crēdibilis* 'credible', 'which can be believed'. Cf. English '-ble'.

Exercise

Give the meaning of: *stabilis*, *mōbilis*, *laudābilis*, *dūrābilis*, *nāuigābilis*.

Present participles

Many English words are based on the present participle stem in *-ent* and *-ant*, and these frequently tell you what conj. the verb is. If *-ant*, the verbs are 1st conj., if *-ent*, 2nd/3rd conj., if *-ient*, 4th or 3rd/4th conj.

Discuss the origins of: *gradient*, *intelligent*, *permanent*, *Vincent*, *inhabitant*, *tangent*.

Some words, however, come through French, whose present participle always ends in *-ant*. So: *descendant*, *defendant*, *tenant*, *attendant*.

But we sometimes use the French form as a noun e.g. 'a dependant', the Latin as an adjective, 'dependent' (*dēpendeō* 2 I hang from).

Word exercises

- 1 The following words all use the stem of a Latin noun you should know. Say what is the nom. s. of the noun in each case: legal, pacify, military, ducal, capital, custodian, pedal.
- 2 Give an English word derived from the stem of: tempus, uōx, nōmen, opus, litus¹, pīnceps, multitūdō.

¹ Clue: double the -t-

Everyday Latin

Ablative absolutes and present participles

D V. = *Deō uolente* '(with) God willing'

nem. con. = *nēmīne contrādicente* '(with) no-one contradicting', 'unanimously'

A *locum* in medical parlance means someone who takes the place of a doctor who is away for whatever reason. Its origin is *locum tenēns* '(one) taking the place' (cf. French 'lieu-tenant', identical in formation)

et seq. = *et sequēns* 'and (the one) following', *et seqq.* = *et sequentēs* 'and (the ones) following'. Note how a double letter indicates the plural. Cf. *ex.* = example; *exx.* = examples.

timeō Danaōs, et dōna ferentīs 'I fear the Greeks even (though they are) bearing gifts' (Virgil, *Aeneid* 2, 49).

volentī nōn fit iniūria 'to one willing, injury does not happen' (i.e. no wrong is done to one who consents). An important legal principle at the heart of many cases involving e.g. rape.

Adapted mediaeval Latin: St Columba subdues the Loch Ness Monster¹

ōlim sānctus Columba in prōuinciā Pictōrum per aliquot diēs manēbat et necesse habuit transire fluuium Nēsam. ubi ad rīpam aduēnit, aliquōs ex incolīs huius regiōnis aspiciat humanēs miserum homunculum quem, ut ipsī incolae dicēbant, natantem paulō ante in fluuiō aquātīlis bēstia dentibus magnīs momorderat. uir sānctus haec audiēns iussit ūnum ex comitibus suis natāre ad alteram rīpam et nāuigium, quod ibi stābat, ad sē

reducere. comes ille, nōmine Lugneus Mocumin, sine morā uestimenta exuit et, tunicam sōlam gerēns, immittit sē in aquās.

sed bēstia quae in profundō flūminis latuerat, sentiēns aquam super sē turbātam, subitō ēmergēns ad hominem in mediō flūmine natantem cum ingentī fremitū, apertō ōre, properāuit. inter Lugneum et bēstiam nōn amplius erat quam longitūdō ūnūs contī. tum uir beātus haec uidēns, dum barbarī et frātres timōre pauent, sānctam manum ēleuāns, signum crucis in āere facit dicēns bēstiae: 'nōlī ultrā prōcēdere; nōlī hominem tangere sed celeriter abī.' tum uērō bēstia iussū sānctī uirī retrō uelōciter fūgit tremefacta. frātres cum ingentī admirātiōne glōrificāuerunt Deum in beātō uirō, et barbarī, propter mīraculum quod ipsī uiderant, Deum magnificāuerunt Christiānōrum.

olim one day

sānct-us a um holy, Saint

Columb-a ae 1m. Columba

Pict-ī ōrum 2m. pl. Picts

aliquot several

necesse habeo I find it necessary

transēō transire I cross

rip-a ae 1f. bank

fluui-us ī 2m. loch (lit. river)

incol-a ae 1m. inhabitant

regiō regiōn-is 3f. region

aspiciō 3/4 I spot

humō I I bury

natō I I swim

aquātīl-is bēsti-a ae 1f. monster, water beast

5 dēns dent-is 3m. tooth

mordeō 2 momordī I bite

nāuigi-um ī 2n. boat

Lugne-us ī 2m. Lugneus

(Mocumin = indecl.)

mor-a ae 1f. delay

uestiment-um ī 2n. clothes

exuō 3 I take off

tunic-a ae 1f. tunic

gerō 3 I wear

immittō 3 I hurl into

profund-um ī 2n. depths

medi-us a um middle of

flumen flūmin-is 3n. loch (lit. river)

lateō 2 I lie hidden

10 turbāt-us a um disturbed

ēmergō 3 I emerge

fremu-us ūs 4m. roar

apert-us a um opened

ōs ōr-is 3n. mouth

properō 1 I hurry

amplius more

longitūdō longitūdīn-is 3f. length

cont-us ī 2m. pole

beāt-us a um blessed

barbar-ī ōrum 2m. pl. locals

timor timōr-is 3m. fear

pauēō 2 I shake, tremble

ēleuō 1 I raise

crux cruc-is 3f. cross

āēr āer-is 3m. air

ultrā any further

prōcēdō 3 I advance

15 iussū 'at the command'

retrō back

tremefact-us a um terrified

admirātiō admirātiōn-is 3f. wonder

glōrificō 1 I glorify

mīracul-um ī 2n. miracle

magnificō 1 I magnify

Christiān-us ī 2m. a Christian

¹ Adapted by Sidney Morris (*Fons perennis*) from Adomnan's Life of St Columba, the Irish saint, who was the founder of the monastery of Iona. St Columba lived from about 545 to 615. The original of this passage can be read in Keith Sidwell, *Reading Medieval Latin* (Cambridge 1995), pp. 89–90.

Section 4F

Running vocabulary for 4F(i)

<i>abiciō abicere abiēcī abiectus</i> I throw down	<i>compleō 2 complēui</i> <i>complētus</i> I fill
<i>abutor</i> 3 dep. (+abl.) I misuse	<i>concidō 3 concidī</i> I fall down, collapse
<i>accidit ut</i> (+subj.) it happened that	<i>cui</i> 'to whom', 'whose'
<i>ad</i> (+acc.) for the purpose of, to fulfil (l 280)	<i>Cupidō Cupidin-is</i> 3m (statue of) Cupid
<i>adesset</i> (impf. subj. of <i>adsum adesse</i>) '(he) was present'	<i>dē</i> (+abl.) from
<i>adfluō</i> 3 I flow, drip	<i>dētis</i> (pres. subj. of <i>do</i>) '(to) give' '(that) you (pl.) should give'
<i>adiret</i> (impf. subj. of <i>adeo</i> <i>adire</i>) '(to) come (sc. to him)' '(that) he should come (sc. to him)'	<i>diligēns diligent-is</i> careful
<i>agō causam</i> I plead a case, conduct a case before (+dat.)	<i>expectetis</i> (pres. subj. of <i>expecto</i>) '(not to) await', '(and that) you (pl.) should (not) await'
<i>argente-us a um</i> (of) silver	<i>fortūn-a ae</i> 1f. fortune
<i>argument-um ī</i> 2n. proof	<i>iacentī</i> 'to the disadvantage of him as he lay': tr. 'as he lay'
<i>bon-a ōrum</i> 2n. pl. goods	<i>immortal-is e</i> immortal
<i>C. = Gaiōs Gai-us ī</i> 2m Gaius	<i>latus later-is</i> 3n. side
<i>caederent</i> (impf. subj. of <i>caedō caedere</i>) '(to) beat', '(that) they should beat'	<i>lepōs lepōr-is</i> 3m. charm
<i>caus-a ae</i> 1f. case; reason	<i>liCTOR liCTOR-is</i> 3m magistrate's attendant, lictōr
<i>circumsisterent</i> (impf. subj. of <i>circumsistō</i> <i>circumsistere</i>) '(to) stand round' '(that) they should stand round'	<i>Lilybae-um ī</i> 2n Lilybacum (locative <i>Lilybaei</i>)
<i>clāmantī</i> 'to the disadvantage of him, as he kept shouting': tr. 'as he shouted'	<i>loqueretur</i> (impf. subj. of <i>loquor</i> 3 dep.) '(he) talked'
	<i>moriōr</i> 3/4 dep. <i>mortuus</i> I die
	<i>nēne</i> 'and (that x should) not . . .'
	<i>nihilōminus</i> nevertheless
	<i>nocturn-us a um</i> night- time, nocturnal

<i>persuādeō 2 persuāsi</i> I persuade x (dat.) (to: <i>ut</i> + subj.; not to <i>nē</i> + subj.)
<i>pertineō</i> (ad) 2 I am relevant (to)
<i>proxim-us a um</i> nearest
<i>quā in causā</i> and in this case
<i>quibus</i> 'to whom', 'before whom'
<i>quibus modis</i> '(and) by these means'
<i>responderet</i> (impf. subj. of <i>respondeō respondere</i>) '(to) reply', '(that) he should reply'
<i>salūs salut-is</i> 3f. safety
<i>sanguis sanguin-is</i> 3m blood
<i>semimortu-us a um</i> half- dead
<i>Servili-us ī</i> 2m Servilius
<i>Sexti-us ī</i> 2m. Sextius
<i>sit</i> (pres. subj. of <i>sum</i>) '(to) be' '(that) it should be'
<i>soci-us ī</i> 2m. ally
<i>taceret</i> (impf. subj. of <i>taceō</i> <i>tacere</i>) '(and not to) be silent' '(and that) he should (not) be silent'
<i>testis test-is</i> 3m. witness
<i>tunderet</i> (impf. subj. of <i>tundō tundere</i>) '(to) beat' '(that) he should beat'
<i>tundō</i> 3 I beat
<i>vehementer</i> strongly
<i>Venere-us a um</i> devoted to Venus

Vener-is 3f. Venus
veniret (impf. subj. of
veniō venire) '(to) come'
'(that) he should come'
venustas venustat-is 3f
elegance, desirability

uerber uerber-is 3n. blow
uirg-a ae 1f. rod (symbol
of a lictor's authority
when bound in a
bundle (also called
fascēs))

ut-um ī 2n. vow
ut (+subj.) 'to . . .', 'that
should'

Learning vocabulary for 4F(i)

Nouns

caus-a ae 1f. case; reason
liCTOR liCTOR-is 3m
magistrate's attendant,
lictōr

salūs salut-is 3f safety
sanguis sanguin-is 3m
blood

testis test-is 3m. witness
uerber uerber-is 3n. blow;
whip

Adjectives

proxim-us a um nearest,
next

Verbs

abiciō abicere abiēcī abiectus
I throw down/away
accidit 3 *accidit* (ut/ut
nōn + subj.) it happens
(that/that not)

concidō 3 concidī I fall,
collapse; am killed
moriōr 3,4 dep. *mortuus* I
die, am dying

persuādeō 2 persuāsi
persuasum I persuade x
(dat.) (*ut/nē* + subj.
'that/that . . . not' 'to
(not to)')

Others

ad (+acc.) for the pur-
pose of (towards; at)
dē (+abl.) from; down
from, (about,
concerning)

nēne 'and (that x should)
not . . .', 'and not to'
vehementer strongly

ut (+subj.) 'to . . .', 'that
. . . should' (negative
nē 'not to . . .', 'if it
. . . should not')

Running vocabulary for 4F(ii)

ā quō by whom
agō 3 I drive
ardeō 2 I blaze
atrociter appallingly
audiretur (impf. subj. pass.
of *audiō audire*) '(it) was
heard'

caedant (pres. subj. of
caedō 3) '(to) beat'
'(that) they should
beat'
caedatur (pres. subj. pass.
of *caedō* 3) 'should be
beaten'

caederet (impf. subj. of
caedō caedere) '(not to)
beat' '(that) he should
(not) beat'
caederetur (impf. subj.
pass. of *caedō caedere*)
'(he) was beaten'

128 Present subjunctive deponent

	1	2	3
1st s.	mun-er	pollice-a-r	loqu-er
2nd s.	mun-eris (-re)	pollice-eris (-re)	loqu-eris (-re)
3rd s.	mun-er-tur	pollice-a-tur	loqu-a-tur
1st pl.	mun-e-mur	pollice-a-mur	loqu-a-mur
2nd pl.	mun-e-mini	pollice-a-mini	loqu-a-mini
3rd pl.	mun-entur	pollice-antur	loqu-antur

	4	3/4
1st s.	menti-a-r	progredi-er
2nd s.	menti-eris (-re)	progredi-eris (-re)
3rd s.	menti-er-tur	progredi-er-tur
1st pl.	menti-a-mur	progredi-a-mur
2nd pl.	menti-a-mini	progredi-a-mini
3rd pl.	menti-antur	progredi-antur

Notes

- 1 Observe the regular personal endings *-r -ris (-re) -tur -mur -mini -ntur*
- 2 For notes on regularities and ambiguities, see notes 2-4 of the active above.

129 Present subjunctive passive

	1	2	3
1st s.	am-e-r	habe-a-r	dice-r
2nd s.	am-e-ris (-re)	habe-eris (-re)	dice-ris (-re)
3rd s.	am-e-tur	habe-er-tur	dice-a-tur
1st pl.	am-e-mur	habe-a-mur	dice-i-mur
2nd pl.	am-e-mini	habe-i-mini	dice-i-mini
3rd pl.	am-entur	habe-antur	dice-antur

	4	3/4
1st s.	audi-a-r	capi-a-r
2nd s.	audi-a-ris (-re)	capi-a-ris (-re)
3rd s.	audi-a-tur	capi-a-tur
1st pl.	audi-a-mur	capi-a-mur
2nd pl.	audi-a-mini	capi-a-mini
3rd pl.	audi-antur	capi-antur

Notes

- 1 See under deponent (above) for notes.
- 2 Learn these irregular subjunctives.

	<i>sum</i>	<i>possum</i>	<i>uolō</i>	<i>nōlō</i>	<i>mālō</i>
1st s.	s-i-m	pōs-sim	uēl-i-m	nōl-i-m	māl-i-m
2nd s.	s-ī-s	pōs-sis	uēl-i-s	nōl-i-s	māl-i-s
3rd s.	s-i-t	pōs-sit	uēl-i-t	nōl-i-t	māl-i-t
1st pl.	s-i-mus	pōs-simus	uēl-i-mus	nōl-i-mus	māl-i-mus
2nd pl.	s-i-tis	pōs-sitis	uēl-i-tis	nōl-i-tis	māl-i-tis
3rd pl.	s-i-nt	pōs-sint	uēl-i-nt	nōl-i-nt	māl-i-nt

- 3 The subjunctive of *eō* is regular: *e-a-m, e-ā-s* etc.

130 Imperfect subjunctive active

	1	2	3	4	3/4
1st s.	amāre-m	habere-m	dicere-m	audire-m	cāpere-m
2nd s.	amārē-s	habērē-s	dicerē-s	audirē-s	cāperē-s
3rd s.	amāre-t	habere-t	dicere-t	audire-t	cāpere-t
1st pl.	amārē-mus	habērē-mus	dicerē-mus	audirē-mus	cāperē-mus
2nd pl.	amārē-tis	habērē-tis	dicerē-tis	audirē-tis	cāperē-tis
3rd pl.	amāre-nt	habere-nt	dicere-nt	audire-nt	cāpere-nt

Notes

- 1 Remember the imperfect subjunctive as formed from the present infinitive plus the personal endings. Thus *amāre-m amārē-s* etc. Even irregulars follow this rule, e.g. *sum* → *esse* → *essem*; *eō* → *īre* → *īrem*; *ferō* → *ferre* → *ferrem*; cf. *uellem, nōllem, māllem, possem*. Cf. pluperfect subjunctive active, 121¹.
- 2 Note the alternative impf. subjunctive of *sum*: *fore-m, forē-s, fore-t* etc. (formed from the future inf. *fore*: see 97³).

131 Imperfect subjunctive deponent

	1	2	3
1st s.	munāre-r	pollicēre-r	loquere-r
2nd s.	munārē-ris (-re)	pollicērē-ris (-re)	loquerē-ris (-re)
3rd s.	munārē-tur	pollicērē-tur	loquerē-tur
1st pl.	munārē-mur	pollicērē-mur	loquerē-mur
2nd pl.	munārē-mini	pollicērē-mini	loquerē-mini
3rd pl.	munārē-ntur	pollicērē-ntur	loquerē-ntur

	4	3/4
1st s.	mentīre-r	prōgredere-r
2nd s.	mentīrē-ris (-re)	prōgrederē-ris (-re)
3rd s.	mentīrē-tur	prōgrederē-tur
1st pl.	mentīrē-mur	prōgrederē-mur
2nd pl.	mentīrē-minī	prōgrederē-minī
3rd pl.	mentīrē-ntur	prōgrederē-ntur

NB. The imperfect deponent subjunctive may be regarded as formed by taking a hypothetical ACTIVE infinitive, and adding the deponent personal endings, e.g. not *minārī* but *mināre* giving *mināre-r -ris -tur* etc. Likewise with *pollicērī* → *pollicēre-r*, *loquī* → *loquere-r*, *mentīrī* → *mentīre-r*, *prōgredī* → *prōgredere-r*.

132 Imperfect subjunctive passive

	1	2	3
1st s.	amāre-r	habēre-r	dīcere-r
2nd s.	amārē-ris (-re)	habērē-ris (-re)	dicerē-ris (-re)
3rd s.	amārē-tur	habērē-tur	dicerē-tur
1st pl.	amārē-mur	habērē-mur	dicerē-mur
2nd pl.	amārē-minī	habērē-minī	dicerē-minī
3rd pl.	amārē-ntur	habērē-ntur	dicerē-ntur

	4	3/4
1st s.	audīre-r	caperē-r
2nd s.	audīrē-ris (-re)	caperē-ris (-re)
3rd s.	audīrē-tur	caperē-tur
1st pl.	audīrē-mur	caperē-mur
2nd pl.	audīrē-minī	caperē-minī
3rd pl.	audīrē-ntur	caperē-ntur

For notes, see deponent (above).

133 Summary of subjunctive forms

Present subjunctive

Present stem + key vowel + personal endings. Key vowels: 1st conj. -e-, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, 3rd/4th -a-. Personal endings, active: -m -s -t etc.; deponent/passive: -r -ris (-re) -tur etc. Irregular: *sim*, *uēlim*, *nōlim*, *mālim*, *possim*.

Imperfect subjunctive

Active infinitive + personal endings (active -m -s -t etc.; deponent/passive -r/-ris (-re) -tur etc.)

Deponent verbs are constructed on a hypothetical active infinitive.
e.g.

- 1st conj. *minārī* becomes *mināre*-
- 2nd conj. *pollicērī* becomes *pollicēre*-
- 3rd conj. *loquī* becomes *loquere*-
- 4th conj. *mentīrī* becomes *mentīre*-
- 3rd/4th conj. *prōgredī* becomes *prōgredere*-

Exercises

Morphology

- Form and conjugate the present and imperfect subjunctive of these verbs (where '(passive)' is written, give active and passive; for other active verbs give only active tenses): *concidō*, *hortor*, *moriōr*, *sum*, *timeō*, *auferō* (passive), *reuocō* (passive), *nāuigō*, (optional: *abiciō* (passive), *cōnor*, *egeō*, *uolō*, *dēsum*, *perlegō* (passive), *excōgitō*, *ūtor*).
- Say which of these verbs is subjunctive, which indicative or infinitive (state tense of all verbs): *clāmet*, *amat*, *dormīret*, *auferret*, *cōspicātus esse*, *cōnātī essent*, *dat*, *dīcētur*, *excōgitat*, *cūret*, *nescīrem*, *cupīuisse*, *loquitur*, *abstulisset*, *moneāris*, *accidat*, *aget*, *persuādet*, *perficiās*, (optional: *commorātur*, *moriātur*, *placēret*, *redībat*, *rogāssent*, *concliderēmus*, *accūsētis*, *parcēmus*, *profūgissee*, *nītātur*, *proficīscitur*, *oppugnantur*, *uocant*, *uincant*, *uincientur*, *uocāuissētis*).
- Form 3rd s. of present, imperfect and pluperfect indicative and subjunctive of these verbs (where '(passive)' is written, give active and passive; for other active verbs give only active tenses): *agō* (passive), *perficiō*, *commoror*, *liberō* (passive), *iaceō*, *sequor*, *nōlō*, *accidit*, (optional: *īnspiciō* (passive), *circumeō*, *mālō*, *ōrō*, *persuādeō*, *recordor*, *patior*, *caedō* (passive)).

134 Indirect (reported) commands *ut/nē* + subjunctive

Observe the following sentences:

- (a) *Caesar imperat milītibus ut prōgrediantur* 'Caesar gives orders to the soldiers that they should advance' or 'to advance'.

- (b) *eōs hortātus sum nē hoc facerent* 'I urged them that they should not do this' or 'not to do this'.
 (c) *mihi persuādēbit ut sēcum ambulem* 'he will persuade me that I should walk with him' or 'to walk with him'.

To express these *reported* commands (the original command of (a) was 'Soldiers, advance!', of (b) 'Do not do this' etc.), Latin commonly adopts the form 'that x should' (*ut* + subjunctive) or 'that-not x should' (*nē* + subjunctive).

English does use this construction with verbs like e.g. ordain (e.g. 'he ordained that I should go'), though English more commonly uses the straight 'to / not to' form: e.g. (a) above is most easily translated 'Caesar gives orders to the soldiers to advance'.

Translate literally to start with, then convert to normal English.

Which verbs take *ut/nē*?

hortor + *ut/nē* 'I urge x (acc.) that he should / should not'
orō + *ut/nē* 'I beg x (acc.) that he should / should not'
imperō + *ut/nē* 'I give orders to x (dat.) that he should / should not'
persuādeō + *ut/nē* 'I persuade x (dat.) that he should / should not'
petō + *ut/nē* 'I beg *ā/ab* x (abl.) that he should / should not'
postulō + *ut/nē* 'I demand *ā/ab* x (abl.) that he should / should not'
rogō + *ut/nē* 'I ask x (acc.) that he should / should not'

monēō 'I advise', *obsecrō* 'I beseech', *precor* 'I pray' also take *ut/nē*.

Exceptions

iubeō 'I order' and *vetō* 'I forbid', 'tell x not to' both, like English, usually take a plain present infinitive. Compare:

iubeō tē abire
imperō tibi ut abeās } 'I order you to go'
vetō uōs manēre
imperō uōbis nē maneātis } 'I tell you not to stay'

Notes

- 1 The subjunctive will be *present* when the main verb is 'primary', *imperfect* when it is 'secondary/historic' (see A–G Intro. (a)).
 2 Any reference, inside the *ut/nē* clause, to subject of main verb will be *reflexive*, e.g.

Caesar imperat nobīs ut sibi pāreāmus 'Caesar gives orders to us to obey him (= Caesar)'

- 3 Note that 'that no-one' = *nē quis*, 'that nothing' = *nē quid*, e.g.

imperat nē quis exeat 'he orders that no-one should go out'

For the forms of *quis* (indefinite) see I4. Cf. 'that never' = *nē umquam*; 'that none', 'not any' = *nē ullus*; 'that nowhere' = *nē usquam*

Exercises

- 1 Translate these sentences (remember *ut* + indicative means 'as' or 'when' and that *ut* may be used without a verb to mean 'as'):

- (a) Verrēs Seruiliō persuāsīt ut Lilybaeum adīret.
 (b) Seruilius, ut Lilybaeum peruēnit, ā lictōribus caesus est.
 (c) Verrēs lictōribus imperāuerat ut uirum caederent.
 (d) Seruilius, ut ciuis Rōmānus, Verrem orat nē sē caedat nēue necet
 (e) ut Verrēs ciuis Rōmānōs caedit, ita ipsum affirmō ā ciuibz Rōmānis caesum iri.
 (f) Verrēs seruōs quōsdam hortātur nē Seruiliō parcant nēue oranti auxilium dent

- 2 Translate the underlined words into Latin (using *ut/nē* + subjunctive); take care to get the correct sequence (see 134¹):

- (a) Verres orders Servilius to come to Lilybaeum.
 (b) I beg you (pl.) not to go away.
 (c) Verres ordered the lictors to beat Servilius.
 (d) In the end Verres persuaded Servilius not to keep quiet.
 (e) How can I persuade you to believe me?
 (f) I ordain¹ that no one shall escape and that you (pl.) shall not go away.

¹ *dē, emō* 3

135 *accidit, perficiō ut* + subjunctive

accidit ut (nōn) 'it happens that (not)', and *perficiō ut (nōn)* (and *nē*) 'I bring it about that (not)' are followed by the subjunctive, e.g.

accidit ut perfugeret 'it happened that he escaped' (= so-called 'result' clause – see 144)
perficiam ut effugiam 'I shall bring it about that I escape' (= so-called 'purpose' clause – see 145).

In primary sequence the subjunctive is *present*; in secondary, *perfect* (still to be met) or *imperfect*.

Exercises

1 Translate these sentences (take care to check the tense of subjunctive in clauses introduced by *accidit*, since *accidit* may be present or perfect):

- accidit ut Seruilius de Verris nequitia paulo liberius loquatur.*
- Verrēs perfecit ut Seruilius Lilybaeum adiret.*
- accidit ut Seruilius, cum Lilybaeum peruēnisset, a lictoribus caederetur.*
- Gaius, cum in uinculis Syracusis esset, dixit se perfecturum ut profugeret Messanamque perueniret.*
- Verrēs perficiet ut ciues Rōmāni necentur.*

2 Prefix each of these statements with *perficiam ut* (following rules for primary sequence) and *accidit ut* (following rules for secondary sequence). You will thus need to change the verbs to present subjunctive (for *perficiam ut*) and imperfect (for *accidit ut*). Translate the new sentences:

- Verrēs Lilybaeum adit.*
- uir a lictoribus caeditur.*
- serui eum ad terram abiciunt.*
- uerberibus moritur.*
- socii Rōmam profugiunt.*

136 Present participle

When a participle is used on its own, and in agreement with no other word, there are two ways in which it may be being used:

- As a noun 'a/the person —ing', e.g.

iacet corpus dormientis ut mortui 'The body of a person sleeping lies like (that) of a dead person' (Cicero)

Cf. *morituri te salutant* 'men about to die salute you'

- Agreeing with a noun or pronoun which has been left out, referring to a person already mentioned, e.g.

haec dicentis latus hasta transfixit 'He pierced with a spear the side of (the man) as he was saying this' (Curtius). Note that 'the man' must be known to us already (he has just spoken *haec*).

137 Relative pronoun (dat. and abl.)

- cui* and *quibus* (dat.) normally mean 'to whom, for whom', e.g.

puer cui pecuniam dedi 'the boy to whom I gave the money'

But since the verb in the relative clause may control a dative, or require a dative of disadvantage etc, it will usually be necessary to 'hold' the relative pronoun until it is 'solved' by the construction, e.g.

navis cui praeerat Phylarchus 'the ship of which Phylarchus was in charge' (because *praesum* 'I am in charge of' takes a dat.)

uir cui Verrēs pocula abstulerat 'the man from whom Verres had taken the cups' (because *auferō* has its meaning completed by a dative of disadvantage)

- quō/quā* and *quibus* (abl.) bear a very wide range of meanings, but 'by', 'with', 'in/at' and 'from' should all be kept in mind. It will often be necessary to 'hold' the abl. relative pronoun until 'solved' by the construction (as with the dative). E.g.

incendium quō urbs incensa est 'the fire by which the city was burned'

genus quō natus erat 'the family from which he was born'

celeritas quā nauem cepit 'the speed with which he took the ship'

Bear in mind again that some verbs put objects in the ablative, e.g.

cōsiliū quō ūsus sum 'the plan which I used' ('which' is object of *utor*; *utor* takes the abl.)

- quō* very often means '(to) where'; *quā* can mean 'where'.

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Gaius hic, quem dicō, Cōnsānus, cum in illō numerō ciuium Rōmānōrum ab istō in uincla coniectus esset et nesciō quā ratione clam ē

lautumius profūgisset Messānamque uēnisset, quī tam prope iam Italiam et moenia Rēginōrum, ciuium Rōmānōrum, uidēret, et ex illō metū mortis ac tenebrīs quasi lūce libertātis et odōre aliquō lēgum recreātus reuīxisset, loquī Messānae et querī coepit sē ciuem Rōmānum in uincla coniectum, sibi rēctā iter esse Rōmam, Verrī sē praestō aduenienti futūrum. (Cicero, in Verrem II 5, 61.160 (original of F(ii)))

Cōnsān-us a um from Consa
nesciō quis (lit. 'I do not know who')

some (or other)

quī + subj. = 'since he'

Itali-a ae 1f. Italy

Rēgin-ī ōrum 2m. pl. inhabitants of
Rhegium (on the toe of Italy)

5 tenebr-ae ārum 1f. pl. darkness, shadows

quasi as if

lūx lūc-is 3f. light

libertās libertāt-is 3f. liberty

odor odōr-is 3m. smell, scent

recreāt-us a um renewed

reuīnō 3 reuīxī 1 revive, come back to

lit.

Messānae: locative of Messān-a ae 1f

Messana

queror 3 dep. 1 complain

coniectum understand

rēctā directly

iter iter-is 3n. way, route

praestō 'to face' (+ dat. + part of esse)

adueniō 4 1 arrive

futūrum: understand esse

English-Latin

Read the text of 4F(ii) again and translate this passage into Latin.

Verres had thrown into chains a man whose name was Gavius¹. This² Gavius had managed to escape and arrive at Messana³. He declared that he would accuse Verres at Rome. Verres, however, when he had heard this, ordered his slaves to capture the man. They⁴ dragged him back as he was embarking⁵ and took him to the magistrate. When Verres had arrived at Messana³, he gave orders that Gavius be stripped in the middle of the forum and beaten. The lictors did not spare the man⁵ although he was begging and kept asserting⁵ that he was a Roman citizen. In this way it happened that a Roman citizen was murdered by Verres.

¹ Use dative with *sum*. Remember that the idiom is to put the name into dative also.

² 'This': use connecting relative.

³ 'at Messana': use accusative, since movement towards is indicated, although English idiom is different

⁴ 'They': change of subject; use part of *ille*

⁵ 'him as he was embarking' use present participle on its own; 'the man although he was begging and kept asserting', use present participles and join 'begging' to 'kept asserting' with *et* or *-que*

Rēs gestae dīuī Augustī

quī parentem meum trucidāuerunt, eōs in exilium expulī iūdicīis lēgitimis ultus eōrum facinus, et postea bellum inferentis rēi publicae uicī bis aciē

bella terrā et marī ciuilia externaque tōtō in orbe terrārum saepe gessī, uictorque omnibus ueniam petentibus ciuibz pepercī. externās gentīs, quibus tātō ignōsci potuit, cōseruāte quam ex cōdite milia in triumphīs meis ductī sunt ante currum meum rēgēs aut rēgum liberī nouem.

cum ex Hispāniā Galliāque, rēbus in iīs prōuinciīs prosperē gestīs, Rōmam redī, Ti. Nerōne P. Quīntiliō cōsulibus, āram Pācis Augustae senātus prō reditū meō cōsacrandam cēnsuit ad campum Mārtium, in quā magistrātūs et sacerdōtēs uirginēsque Vestālēs anniuersārium sacrificium facere iussit.

lānum Quirīnum, quem clausum esse maiōrēs nostrī uoluērunt cum per tōtum imperium populī Rōmānī terrā marīque esset parta uictōriīs pāx, cum, priusquam nāscerer, ā conditā urbe bis omnīnō clausum fuisse prodātur memoriae, ter mē prīncipe senātus claudendum esse cēnsuit.

lēgibus nouīs mē auctōrē lātīs, multa exempla maiōrum exolēscētia iam ex nostrō saeculō redūxī et ipse multārum rērum exempla imitanda posterīs trādidi. (Rēs gestae 2-4, 12-13, 8)

quī [To be picked up by eōs]

parentem [I e. Julius Caesar (by adoption)]

trucidō 1 1 slaughter

exili-um ī 2n. exile

expellō 3 expulī 1 drive out

iūdic-um ī 2n. tribunal [But why dat./abl? Hold]

lēgitim-us a um legal

ulciscor 3 ultus 1 punish [Explains iūdicīis - the means by which he acted]

postea afterwards

bellum [Nom. or acc.? Wait]

inferō 3 1 bring, wage x (acc.) against y (dat.) [Participle, so possibly

'waging war'. Case is acc. pl. (-īs).

Does it agree with anyone? Yes.

with eōs 'them', which is not

repeated. So it must mean 'them

waging war' - in the ac]

rēi publicae [Must surely be dat. after bellum inferō]

uicī [Subject and verb, explaining why inferentis is acc.]

bis twice

aciēs aciē-ī 5f. battle-line [Why abl?]

bella [Nom. or acc. pl.? Wait]

ciuil-is e civil

extern-us a um foreign

orbis orb-is 3m. (terrārum) the world

5 uictor uictōr-is 3m. victor

omnibus [Dat. or abl. pl.? And who are these 'all'?

ueni-a ae 1f. pardon

petentibus [What are the 'all' doing?]

ciuibz [Ah. Who the 'all' are]

parcō 3 pepercī 1 spare (+ dat.) [Explains omnibus . . . ciuibz]

gēns gent-is 3f. nation [externās confirms it must be acc., so wait]

quibus . . . potuit lit. 'to whom it could safely be pardoned' i.e. 'whom one

could pardon safely'

cōseruō 1 1 protect, preserve

quam than [Await verb taking infinitive + quam]
 excidō 3 I exterminate
 triumph-us ī 2m. triumph
 ducti sunt ['some masculine plurals were led wait to find out who]
 curr-us ūs 4m. chariot
 liber-ī ōrum 2m. pl. children
 nouem nine
 cum [Followed by ablative? No. So 'when', 'since', 'although']
 Hispani-a ae 1f. Spain
 Galli-a ae 1f. Gaul
 rēhus . . . gestis [Looks suspiciously like an abl. abs., and so it is]
 prosperē successfully
 Nerō Nerōn-is 3m. Nero
 Quintili-us ī 2m. Quintilius [i.e. the year 13]
 ar-a ae 1f. Pācis altar of peace [Why acc.? Wait]
 August-us a um of Augustus
 10 redit-us ūs 4m. return
 cōsacrādam (esse) 'should be consecrated' [Acc. and (inf.) after cēnsuit. Since cōsacrādam is acc. s f., it must agree with aram]
 cēnsēō 2 I vote
 camp-us Marti-us camp-ī Mart-ī 2m. the Campus Martius (of Mars), in Rome [in quā (f.), so refers back to what?]
 magistrāt-us ūs 4m. magistrate [But nom. or acc. pl.? Do any of the following nouns (to Vestālēs) tell you definitely?]
 sacerdot-s sacerdot-is 3m. or f. priest(ess)
 uirgō Vestāl-is uirgin-is Vestāl-is 3f. + 3 adj. Vestal Virgin [Sull problem whether these nom. or acc., so continue to hold]
 anniuersari-us a um yearly
 sacrifici-um ī 2n. sacrifice [Also nom. or acc., so hold]
 iussit [Singular. So magistrātūs . . . uestālēs cannot be the subject. A 'yearly sacrifice' cannot 'order'. So 'senate' must be the understood subject from the previous clause]

Hence 'on which the senate ordered . . .'
 Ian-us ī Quirīn-us ī 2m. the archway (or arched passage) of Janus Quirinus in the forum, with doors at both ends, forming the god's shrine [Why acc.? Hold, till the end of the sentence]
 claudō 3 clausi claus(us)us 1 close
 maiōrēs maior-um 3m. pl. ancestors
 pariō 3/4 peperī partus 1 win, gain [Hold parta]
 uictoriis [Abl. of means after parta]
 15 pax [Solves parta]
 cum although
 priusquam [+ subj.] before
 nāscor 3 dep. I am born
 condita urbs the founded city i.e. the foundation of the city
 his two
 omnino in all
 prodō 3 I transmit x (acc.) to y (dat.) [The dative is given by memoriae 'to history memory': but what is the subject of cum prodatur? No subject is quoted, so try 'it', i.e. 'although it is transmitted to memory/history', when clausum fuisse becomes acc. and inf., i.e. 'that (it) had been closed']
 ter thrice
 claudendum esse 'that it should be closed' [What is 'it'? Back to the start of the sentence – Ianum Quirinum]
 nou-us a um new
 auctor auctor-is 3m. initiator
 exempl-um ī 2n. example
 maiōrēs maior-um 3m. pl. ancestors
 exolēscō 3 I go out of fashion
 saccul-um ī 2n. age
 reducō 3 reduxi I bring back
 imitanda 'to be copied' [Refers to exempla. But still hold case]
 poster-ī ōrum 2m. pl. future generations
 tradō 3 tradidi I hand down x (acc.) to y (dat.)

Deliciae Latinae

(Word-building, word exercises and everyday Latin sections are no longer supplied. From now on there will be further reading in real Latin in the *Deliciae Latinae* sections.)

Martial

ut recitem tibi nostra rogās epigrammat nōlō.
 nōn audire, Celer, sed recitare cupīs. (163)

recitō 1 I read out loud epigramma epigrammat-is
 recite my own poetry p 2 am

Elio Giulio Crotti c. 1564

NARCISSUS

(who fell in love with himself, looking at his reflection in a pool)

hicne amor est? hicne est furor? aut insānia mentis?
 nōlo, uol. . . atque iterum nōlō, iterumque uolō.
 hicne gelū est? hicne est ignis? nam spiritus aequē
 mī ignēscit, gelidō et torpet in ōre anima.
 uerum nōn amor aut furor est, ignisue gelūue: 5
 ipse ego sum, quī mē mī ēripui ac rapui.

amor amor-is 3m. love
 insān-a ae 1f. madness
 mētis ment-is 3f. mind
 gelū n 1c.
 spirit-us ūs 4m. spirit
 aequē equally
 uol. uolui (dat. of advant. disadvantage)

ignēscō 3 I catch fire
 gelid-us a um cold
 torpeō 2 I am numb
 anim-a ae 1f. breath
 ēripui 3,4 ēripui I tear x (acc.) away from y (dat.)
 rapiō 3/4 rapui I seize, snatch

Notes

- 1 Crotti uses much elision (cutting off a final vowel before a following vowel). In l. 1 *hicn(e) est*; l. 2 *atqu(e) iterum, nōl(ō) iterumque*; l. 3 *gel(ū) est, hicn(e) est*; l. 4 *m(ī) ignēscit, gelid(ō) et . . . ōr(e) anima*; l. 6 *ips(e) ego . . . m(ī) ēripui ac . . .*
- 2 He also shortens a long vowel in l. 2: *nōlo* for *nōlō*.
- 3 See p. 318 for rules of Latin metre and 185 for the elegiac couplet (the metre Crotti uses here).

Section 4G

Running vocabulary for 4G(i)

<i>actum</i> [Understand <i>esse</i> : perf. inf. pass.]	<i>dūcāris</i> '(you) (s.) were to be led' (pres. subj. pass of <i>dūcō</i>)
<i>adesset</i> '(he) were present' (impf. subj. of <i>adsum</i>)	<i>dulc-is e</i> sweet
<i>antēā</i> before (adv.)	<i>effugi-um</i> ī 2n. escape
<i>archipirāt-a</i> ae 1m. chief pirate	<i>eximi-us a um</i> excellent
<i>assecūtūrum</i> [Understand <i>esse</i> fut. inf.]	<i>extrēm-us a um</i> farthest
<i>assequor</i> 3 <i>assecūtus</i> 1 achieve, gain	<i>futūram</i> [Understand <i>esse</i> fut. inf.]
<i>at enim</i> 'but, one may object'	<i>Gavi-us</i> ī 2m. Gavius
<i>audiret</i> 'he were hearing' (impf. subj. of <i>audiō</i>)	<i>haereō</i> 2 I stick
<i>captam</i> [Understand <i>esse</i> : perf. inf. pass.]	<i>ignōscō</i> 3 (+ dat.) I forgive
<i>civitas civitat-is</i> 3f. state	<i>immortāl-is e</i> immortal
<i>clāmēs</i> 'would you shout' (pres. subj. of <i>clamō</i>)	<i>incensam</i> [Understand <i>esse</i> perf. inf. pass.]
<i>clāmītō</i> 1 I keep on shouting	<i>Indi-a</i> ae 1f. India
<i>cōnfiteor</i> 2 dep. I confess, acknowledge	<i>iudicāret</i> 'he were judging' (impf. subj. of <i>iudicō</i>)
<i>cōstituās</i> 'you (s.) were to decide' (pres. subj. of <i>cōstituō</i>)	<i>iūs iūr-is</i> 3n. law, justice
<i>content-us a um</i> happy, satisfied	<i>liberatum</i> [Understand perf. inf. pass.]
<i>crux crue-is</i> 3f. cross	<i>libertās libertat-is</i> 3f. freedom
<i>dīcās</i> 'you (s.) were to say' (pres. subj. of <i>dīcō</i>)	<i>mor-a</i> ae 1f. delay
<i>diceret</i> 'would he be saying' (impf. subj. of <i>dīcō</i>)	<i>neglegenti-a</i> ae 1f. carelessness
	<i>ō</i> oh! [Exclamation]
	<i>obscur-us a um</i>
	<i>undistinguished, mean</i>
	<i>omittō</i> 3 I pass over
	<i>ops op-is</i> 3f. help
	<i>orbis (orb-is</i> 3m.) <i>terrārum</i> the world
	<i>per</i> (+ acc.) in the name of

<i>percussōs</i> [Understand <i>esse</i> : perf. inf. pass.]
<i>Pers-ae</i> ārum 1m. pl. the Persians
<i>petō</i> 3 I seek
<i>petēs</i> 'you (s.) would think' (pres. subj. of <i>possum</i>)
<i>petēs</i> 'would he be (impf. subj. of <i>possum</i>)
<i>praecludas</i> 'you (s.) would shut off' (pres. subj. of <i>praecludō</i> 3)
<i>praesidi-um</i> ī 2n. protection, defence [<i>praesidiō</i> predicative dat., lit. 'for a protection']
<i>putēs</i> 'you (s.) would think' (pres. subj. of <i>puto</i>)
<i>quaerō</i> 3 I seek, look for
<i>rēgn-um</i> ī 2n. kingdom
<i>speculātor speculātōr-is</i> 3m. spy
<i>supplic-um</i> ī 2n. punishment
<i>tenu-is e</i> small, humble
<i>tollās</i> 'you (s.) were to remove' (pres. subj. of <i>tollo</i>)
<i>ueni-a</i> ae 1f. pardon
<i>virg-a</i> ae 1f. lictor's rod

Learning vocabulary for 4G(i)

Nouns

libertās libertāt-is 3f.
freedom, liberty

mor-a ae 1f. delay
neglegenti-a ae 1f.
carelessness

praesidi-um ī 2n.
protection, defence,
guard

Adjectives

immortāl-is e immortal

tūt-us a um safe

Verbs

clāmītō 1 I keep on
shouting (= *clāmō* + *it-*)
cōnfiteor 2 dep. *cōfessus* 1
confess, acknowledge

ignōscō 3 (+ dat.) *ignōui*
ignōrum 1 forgive
petō 3 *petiui* *petitus* 1 seek

quaerō 3 *quaesivi* *quaesitus*
I seek, look for; ask

Others

antēā before (adv.; cf.
ante)

per (+ acc.) in the name
of (through, by)

Running vocabulary for 4G(ii)

appellō 1 I call
besti-a ae 1f. beast
caus-a ae 1f. cause
civitas civitat-is 3f. state
cognitor cognitōr-is 3m. one
who would support
(him), referee
cognōsceret '(he) had
recognised' (impf. subj.
of *cognōscō*)
commouērentur '(they)
would be moved'
(impf. subj. of
commouēō)
commun-is e common
conqueror 3 dep. I
complain of
cōstituērēs 'you would
have established' (impf
subj. of *cōstituō*)
crux crue-is 3f. cross
deprecārī 1 I denounce

dīcam 'should I say' (pres
subj. of *dīcō*)
dign-us a um worthy
eques equit-is 3m. 'knight'
(member of Roman
business class)
Gavi-us ī 2m. Gavius
ignōraret 'he had not
known', 'he had been
unacquainted with'
(impf. subj. of *ignōrō* 1)
inanim-us a um inanimate
infest-us a um hateful,
hostile
inimic-us a um hostile,
enemy
iūs iūr-is 3n. law, justice
Lūci-us ī 2m. Lucius
mut-us a um mute, dumb
nominō 1 I name
nov-us a um new

parricidi-um ī 2n.
parricide; treason
quamvis (+ subj.)
although
Raeti-us ī 2m. Raecius
remitterēs 'you would
have remitted' (x (acc.)
from *ν* (*dē* + *abl*))
(impf. subj. of *remittō*)
supplic-um ī 2n.
punishment; *sumum*
supplicium the death
penalty
tollerēs 'you would have
lifted' (impf. subj. of
tollō)
uellem 'I were wishing'
(impf. subj. of *uolō*)
uidēretur 'it had seemed
right' (impf. subj. pass.
of *uideō*)

Note

1. 334 *sed quid ego plura dē Gaiō? sc. dīcam* (pres. subj.); tr. 'But why should I say more ...'

Learning vocabulary for 4G(ii)

Nouns

<i>caus-a</i> de 1f. cause; (case; reason)	<i>eques equit-is</i> 3m. 'knight'; (member of Roman business class)	<i>iūs iūr-is</i> 3n. law, justice
<i>cīuitās cīuitāt-is</i> 3f. state	(horseman; pl. cavalry)	<i>supplicium</i> 2n. punishment, <i>summum supplicium</i> the death penalty

Adjectives

<i>inimīc-us</i> a um hostile, enemy	<i>nov-us</i> a um new
--------------------------------------	------------------------

Grammar and exercises for 4G

138 The subjunctive: special usages

Subjunctive means 'subordinated' (*subiungō subiūctus* 'I join under'), and came to be used in clauses just because they were subordinate (e.g. *cum* + subjunctive 124, which always took the indicative in early Latin, and does occasionally in classical). But it does have a specific meaning of its own: to simplify, it indicates that the speaker wants an action to take place (because he thinks it should or because it is his desire that it should) or that the speaker thinks it possible that under certain conditions it *could* take place. (Sometimes, but rarely, it indicates that the speaker expects the action to take place, but this function is normally carried out by the future indicative.)

Observe how the subjunctives met so far fit into these categories. indirect commands ('he ordered him to go': *ut/nē* + subjunctive) use the subjunctive to express the speaker's *will* that something should happen; 'it happens that' (*accidit ut* (*nōn*) + subjunctive) uses the subjunctive to indicate that *conditions make it possible* for x to happen; 'I bring it about that' (*perficiō ut/nē* + subjunctive) often expresses the speaker's *intentions* that something should happen.

139 Conditionals with subjunctive verbs ('if x were ... y would')

Given the above functions of the subjunctive, it is not surprising that Latin uses the subjunctive in conditional sentences where the conditions stated are *unreal* or *unfulfilled*, i.e. they contain the words 'would' or 'should' in English. E.g.

'If I were rich, I would not (now) be working' (referring to present time)

'If I were to become rich, I would give all my money to the poor' (referring to future time)

Consider the Latin translations:

sī dīues essem, nōn labōrārem

sī dīues fīam, omnem pecūniam pauperibus dem

Observe that the imperfect subjunctive is used in *both* clauses where reference is to the present time, and the present subjunctive in *both* clauses where the reference is to the future time. Study the following examples and check this rule:

sī pater adesset, quid dīceret? 'if father were (now) here, what would he (now) be saying?'

sī Verrī ignōscātis, nēmo uōbīs ignōscat 'if you were to pardon Verres (some time in the future), no-one would pardon you'

sī fugiant, sequāmur 'if they were to flee, we would follow'

sī mentīrēris, tē caederem 'if you were (now) lying, I would (now) be beating you'

So the basic rules are:

sī + subjunctive (followed by a main clause with subjunctive verb) indicates conditions with 'would' or 'should'

sī + imperfect subjunctive (main clause verb in imperfect subjunctive): 'if x were (now) the case, y would (now) be the case'

sī + present subjunctive (main clause verb in present subjunctive) 'if x were to be (in the future) the case, y would be the case'

We say 'basic' rules, because Latin is flexible and can mix subjunctive and indicative in these clauses.

Notes

- 1 *sī quis* = 'if anyone', e.g. *sī quis exeat, puniātur* 'if anyone were to go out, he would be punished' (cf. on *nē quis* 134³ and 145²; forms I4).
- 2 *nisi* 'if not', 'unless' follows the same rules, e.g. *nisi pulcher essēs, tē nōn amārem* 'if you were not (now) so handsome, I would not (now) be in love with you'. *nisi quis* = 'unless anyone', see n.1 above.
- 3 In some instances, the imperfect subjunctives refer to the past, e.g. *sī Raecius cognōsteret hominem, aliquid . . . remitterēs* 'if Raecius had recognised the fellow, you would have remitted something'.
- 4 Quite often, a statement includes only the main clause of a condition omitting the *sī* clause, e.g. *uidērēs* 'you would have seen', *uelim* 'I would like'.

Exercises

Morphology/syntax

1 Translate these sentences

- sī Verris pater adesset, filium suum ciuitātī nostrae hostem esse iudicāret* (2 possibilities).
- sī Verrī ignōscāmus, stultī sīmus.*
- sī Verrēs mea pōcula postulet, ego sine morā ad eum litterās mittam*
- etiam animālia, sī haec audīrent, commouērentur* (2 possibilities).
- nisi tē ciuem Rōmānum esse clāmitēs, necēris.*
- sī hoc praesidium habērēs, etiam hostēs tibi parcerent* (2 possibilities).
- sī esset prouidentia, nūlla essent mala.* (Gellius)
- uīna parant animum Venerī, nisi plūrima sūmās.* (Ovid)

prouidentia ae 1f

foresight, providence

uīn-um ī 2n. wine

Venus Vener is 3f. Venus.

love-making

sūmō 3 I take

2 Give the Latin for the following (remember reference to future 'were to' = present subjunctive, and 'would' also = present; 'were —ing', 'were (now)' = imperfect subjunctive; 'would have' also = imperfect subjunctive):

- If I were (now) a Roman citizen . . .
- If he were to demand protection . . .

- If there were not (now) a delay . . .
- If our friends were to be moved . . .
- If we were asking for protection . . .
- If I were to keep shouting . . .
- I would like to say . . .
- I would have liked to ask . . .
- I would have demanded . . .
- I would be moved . . .

140 Subjunctive in relative clauses

The subjunctive can be used in relative clauses as well, sometimes with virtually no change in meaning at all, but note the following specific usages.

- 1 Consecutive (so-called 'generic'): establishing conditions for possible action, especially common after (a) *est quī / sunt quī* 'there exists/exist the sort of person/people who', (b) *is quī* 'the sort of person who', e.g.

- sunt quī sciunt* 'there are (those of the sort) who know'
- ea nōn est quae hoc faciat* 'she is not the one who does this' = 'not the sort of person who . . .'

- 2 Causal, i.e. the relative clause shows the reason why something is happening, e.g.

sānus tū nōn es quī mē fūrem uocēs (Plautus) 'you are not sane who call me a thief' = 'because you call me a thief'

This usage is sometimes strongly 'signposted' by the addition of the fixed form *quippe* 'in as much as', e.g.

sōlis candor inlūstrior est quam ūllius ignis, quippe quī immēnsō mundō tam longē lātēque conlūceat (Cicero) 'The brightness of the sun is more brilliant than that of any fire, inasmuch as it shines so far and wide in an immeasurable universe'

141 cum, quamuis + subjunctive

- 1 We have already met *cum* + pluperfect subjunctive meaning 'when', 'since', 'although' 'x had —ed' (124). *cum* is also used with the imperfect subjunctive, to mean 'when', 'since', 'although' 'x was —ing', and with the present subjunctive, to mean 'since', 'although' 'x is —ing'. (NB. NOT 'when'.)

- 2 *quamvis* means 'although' (really 'however') and takes the subjunctive, e.g. *quamvis fortis esset ab hostibus fugit* 'although he was courageous, he fled from the enemy' (really 'however brave he might have been, he still fled from the enemy'). Contrast *quamquam* 'although', which takes the indicative.)

142 Subjunctive in reported speech

In reported speech subordinate clauses have their verb in the subjunctive. Since this is simply a way of showing that the clause belongs in the indirect quotation, the meaning is the same as the indicative, e.g.

Direct: 'because I am handsome, everyone loves me' *quod pulcher sum, omnes me amant*

Indirect (past): 'he said that, because (as he said) he was handsome, everyone loved him' *dixit omnis se, quod pulcher sum, amari*

Indirect (present): 'he says that, because he is handsome, all love him' *dicit omnis se, quod pulcher sit amare*

Cf. *Gaium . . . dicis . . . clamitasse se ciuem Romanum esse quod moram mortis quaereret* 'you say that Gaius shouted continually that he was a Roman citizen because he was seeking a delay to his death'

Note

Generally speaking, it will be obvious from context what tense in the original statement is represented by the subjunctive. Here is a summary of the main rules determining the tense of the subjunctive

	Subjunctive used in 'reported' speech	
	Primary sequence	Secondary sequence
If the 'unreported' verb was originally present indicative	Present	Imperfect
If the 'unreported' verb was originally future indicative	-urus (i.e. fut. part.) + <i>sim</i> (sometimes present)	-urus <i>essem</i> (sometimes imperfect)
If the 'unreported' verb was originally past indicative	Perfect	Pluperfect

143 Infinitives without *esse* in reported speech

In accusative and infinitive constructions, *esse* is often dropped, e.g.

dixit se moriturum (esse) 'he said that he would die'

dixerunt urbem captam (esse) 'they said that the city had been captured'

negat se secuturam (esse) 'she says that she will not follow' (how do you know it is 'she'?)

Here are two examples from *Text*, 4G(i)

si audiret a te ciuis Romanos securi percussos 'if he heard that Roman citizens had been executed by you'

arbitrati . . . hanc rem sibi praesidio futuram 'thinking that this would be a protection for them'

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Here is part of the original of section 4F(ii). Gavius has just been arrested at Messana. Remember that Latin literature was composed to be read aloud. The final product of your study of each passage should be a well-phrased recitatio ('reading aloud')

itaque ad magistratum Mamertinum statim deducitur Gavius, eoque ipso die casu Messanam Verrēs uenit. res ad eum defertur, esse ciuem Romanum qui se Syracusis in lautumis fuisse quereretur; quem iam ingredientem in nauem et Verrē nimis atrociter minitantem ab se retractum esse et adseruatum . . . agit hominibus gratias et eorum beneuolentiam erga se diligentiamque conlaudat, ipse inflammatus scelere et furore in forum uenit; ardēbant oculi, toto ex ore crudelitas eminebat . . . repente hominem prōripī atque in foro mediō nudari ac deligari et uirgās expediri iubet. clamabat ille miser se ciuem esse Romanum municipem Consanum; meruisse cum L. Raecio, splendidissimo equite Romano, qui Panhormi negotiaretur, ex quo haec Verrēs scire posset. tum iste, se comperisse eum in Siciliam a ducibus fugitiuorum esse missum . . . deinde iubet undique hominem uehementissimē uerberari. caedebatur uirgis in mediō foro Messanae ciuis Romanus, iudicēs, cum interea nullus gemitus, nulla uox alia illius miseri inter dolorem crepitumque plagarum audiebatur nisi haec 'ciuis Romanus sum'. hac se commemoratiōne ciuitatis omnia uerba depulsurum cruciatumque a corpore deiecturum arbitrabatur; is non modo hoc non perfecit, ut uirgarum uim deprecaretur, sed cum

implōrāret saepius ūsūrpāretque nōmen cīuitātis, crux – crux, inquam – 20
infēlicī et aerumnōsō, quī numquam istam pestem uiderat,
comparābātur. (Cicero, In Verrem II 5, 62.160–2)

Māmerīn-us a um of Messana

cāsū 'by chance'

esse cīuem . . . [Acc. + inf. after *defertur*]

sē [Hold – expect reflexive verb or
acc. + inf.]

lautumī-ae ārum 1f. pl. stone-quarries

queror 3 dep. I complain

quem [Connecting relative – who is the
antecedent?]

Verri [Hold: it will be governed by
minitātem]

minitor 1 dep. I threaten continually
[minor + -it-]

c. i. c. the people reporting to Verres]

5 retrahō 3 retraxī retractus I drag back

[Subject of *agit* is Verres]

beneuolenti-a ae 1f. good will

ergā (+ acc.) towards

diligenti-a ae 1f. care

conlaud-ō 1 I praise

ardeō 2 I burn (intrans.)

crūdēlītās crūdēlītāt-is 3f. cruelty

ēmineō 2 I stand out

prōripio 3/4 I drag forward

deligō 1 I bind

uirg-a ae 1f. rod

expediō 4 I get ready

ille miser [i. e. Gavius]

municeps municip-is 3m. citizen of a
municipium (= free town)

Cōnsan-us a um of Consa

meruisse [Acc. + inf. construction

continues with *sē* still as subject]

mereō 2 I serve (in the army)

splendid-us a um distinguished

Panorm-us ī 2f. Palermo [Cf. Lilybaei
for ease]

negōtor 1 dep. I do business

haec [Hold]

iste [Change of subject to Verres. The
introductory verb for the acc. + inf.

se comperisse is omitted – supply

dixit]

comperio 4 comperi I find out, learn

eum [i. e. Gavius]

fugitiu-us ī 2m. deserter

undique from all sides

15 gemit-us iis 4m. groan

[Note lack of *et* between *nullus gemitus*,
nulla uox (though they are to be taken
together) – this is called *asyndeton*. see
p. 314(c)]

dolor dolor-is 3m. pain

crepit-us iis 4m. noise

plāg-a ae 1f. blow

sē [Hold: it is part of an acc. + inf
phrase (in unemphatic position: see
98*)]

commemoratiō commemoratiōn-is 3f.
mention

cīuitās cīuitāt-is 3f. (here) citizenship

depulsūrum [Understand *esse*]

deplō 3 + pl. alī depulsus I turn away,
prevent

cruciāt-us iis 4m. torture [i. e. *crux cruc-*
is]

corpus corpor-is 3n. body

deiectūrum [Understand *esse*]

deiciō 3/4 deieci deiectus I drive away

hoc [Refers forward to the *ut* clause]

deprecor 1 dep. I ward off (by earnest
prayer)

implōrō 1 I implore, beseech

usurpo 1 I use

crux cruc-is 3f. cross

infēlix infēlic-is unfortunate [Used as
noun here]

aerumnōs-us a um miserable [Used as
noun here]

pestis pest-is 3f. curse, bane [Refers to
crux]

English–Latin

Reread the text of 4G(ii) and then translate this passage into Latin

Although¹ Gavius had named Raecius as his guarantor, you did not send
a letter to him. I would like² you to tell me, Verres, this. Why did you
delay? Why did you not send him a letter at once? Did not Gavius say³, 'If
you were to⁴ send a letter to Raecius, he would⁵ say that I am a Roman
citizen. If he were⁵ present, here, he would⁵ declare that I, whom you are
accusing⁶, am innocent.' But you, Verres, with the utmost disregard for
Gavius, got a cross ready. If I were telling⁵ this story⁷ to wild beasts, even
they would⁵ be moved.

¹ *quamquam* + indicative, *quammis* or *cum* + subjunctive

² Potential – use present subjunctive. See 139*

³ 'say': open inverted commas and start the next part before inserting *inquit*

⁴ 'were to . . . would': present subjunctives

⁵ 'were . . . would': use imperfect subjunctives

⁶ Subordinate clause in indirect speech: use present subjunctive verb

⁷ 'story': use n. s. or pl. of *hic*, or use *rēs*

Rēs gestae dīuī Augustī

in cōsulātū sextō et septimō, postquam bella cīuilia exstinxeram, per
cōsēsum ūniuersōrum potitus rērum omnium, rem pūblicam ex meā
potestāte in senātūs populīque Rōmānī arbitrium trānstulī. quō prō
meritō meō, senātūs cōsultō, Augustus appellātus sum et laureīs postēs
aedium meārum uestītī pūblicē corōnaque cīuica super iānuam meam 5
fixa est et clupeus aureus in cūriā Iūliā positus, quem mihi senātum
populumque Rōmānum dare uirtūtis clēmentiaeque et iūstitiae et pietātis
caussā testātum est per eius clupeī īnscrip̄tiōnem. post id tempus,
auctōritāte omnibus praestitī, potestātis autem nihilō amplius habuī
quam cēterī quī mihi quōque in magistrātū conlēgae fuērunt. 10

tertium decimum cōsulātum cum gerēbam, senātus et equester ōrdō
populusque Rōmānus ūniuersus appellāuit mē patrem patriae, idque in
uestibulō aedium meārum īscribendum et in cūriā Iūliā et in forō Aug.
sub quadrīgīs quae mihi ex s.c. positae sunt cēnsuit. cum scripsī haec,
annum agēbam septuagēsumum sextum. (Rēs gestae 34–5) 15

cōsulāt-us ūs 4m
 consulship
sext-us a um sixth
septim-us a um seventh
 } 28 and 27
postquam after
civil-is e civil
exstinguō 3 *exstinxī* I put out
cōsēns : *ūs* 4m agreement
omnēs : *ōrum* 2m, pl. everyone
potior 4 dep. (+ gen.) I gain control of
potestās potestāt-is 3f. power
arbitri-um ī 2n. judgement, arbitration
trānsferō 3 *trānsulī* I transfer
quō [Connecting relative, governed by *pro*]
merit-um ī 2n. good deeds
consult-um ī 2n. decree
appellō 1 I call
laure-a ae 1f. laurel-wreath [Dat. or abl? Hold]
postus post-is 3m. doorpost
 5 *vestis* 4 I clothe [Solves *laureis*]
publicē publicly
civis : *us a um* civic
super (+ acc.) above
figō 3 4th p p. *fix-us* I place, fix
clupe-us ī 2m. shield [see *frontispiec.*]
cūri-a ae 1f. senate-house
iulī-us a um Julian
quem . . . *dare* lit. 'which (that) the senate and the Roman people gave to me'
clēmentī-a ae 1f. mercy
iūstitī-a ae 1f. justice
pietās pietāt-is 3f. respect for gods, family and homeland

caus(s)ā (+ gen.) for the sake of
 [Follows the noun(s) it qualifies]
testatum est 'it was witnessed'
inscriptiō inscription : *s* 3f. inscription
post (+ acc.) after
auctoritās auctoritat-is 3f. authority, prestige
praestō 1 *praestitī* I excel x (dat.) in y (abl.)
nihilō amplius nothing more, no more
 [Governs *potestātis*]
 10 *magistrāt-us ūs* 4m. office
colleg-a ae 1m. colleague
tertī-us decim-us a um thirteenth
cōsulāt-us ūs 4m. consulship
 [i.e. 2]
equester : *estr-is e* of knights
ordō ordin-is 3m. order
patri-a ae 1f. fatherl. nat.
omnēs-us a um whole
uestibul-um ī 2n. forecourt
inscribendum to be inscribed [Wait to solve *inscribendum* and *id*, which agree, till end of sentence]
Aug = *Augustō*, from *August-us a um* of Augustus
quadrig-ae arum 1f. pl. four-horse chariot
senātus cōsultō (: *consult-um ī* 2n. decree)
cēnsēō 2 I vote [Solves *id inscribendum*. Subject of *cēnsuit*?]
 15 *agō* 3 I pass, live
sextim-us : *consum-us* : *sext-us a um* seventy-sixth

SECTION FIVE

Section 5A

Notes

- 1 From now on you will find notes on new grammar at the end of each running vocabulary. Consult these as you read the chapter.
- 2 Names are given only on their first occurrence in this section. Consult the list on *Text* pp. 89–92 if you forget them.

Running vocabulary for 5A(i)

adeō to such an extent
agitō 1 I stir up, discuss
 [See note]
Antōm-us ī 2m. Gaius Antonius
C. = *Gai-us ī* 2m. Gaius
Catilin-a ae 1m. Catiline
ensor cēnsōr-is 3m. censor (official appointed every 5 years to vet senate)
Cicerō Cicerōn-is 3m. Cicero
comiti-a ōrum 1 n. pl. elections
concutiō 3/4 *concussī*
concussus I shake, alarm
coniūratiō coniūratiōn-is 3f. conspiracy
coniūrator coniūrator-is 3m. conspirator
cōnsuetūdō cōnsuetudin-is 3f. amorous association (+ gen. 'involving')

cōsulāt-us ūs 4m. consulship
Curr-us ī 2m. Quintus Curius
declaro 1 I declare
dedit-us a um devoted to (+ dat.)
efficiō 3/4 *effeci* effectus I bring (it) about (that. ut + subj.)
ēgregi-us a um outstanding
fact-um ī 2n. deed, happening
Faesul-ae arum 1f. pl. Faesulae (Fiesole)
ferōx ferōc-is savage, wild
Fulvi-a ae 1f. Fulvia
glōrior 1 dep. I boast
grāt-us a um pleasing (to x: dat.)
in diēs day by day
in primis especially
insolēns insolent-is arrogant
insolenti-a ae 1f. arrogance

insum mēsse inīai (+ dat.)
 I am in
interdum sometimes
invidi-a ae 1f. envy, hatred
invid-us a um envious
Itali-a ae 1f. Italy
libidō libidin-is 3f. lust
mandō 1 I entrust (x acc. to y dat.)
M = *Marc-us ī* 2m. Marcus
Mānli-us ī 2m. Manlius
minuō 3 I diminish, weaken
mōns mont-is 3m. mountain
moneō 2 I remove (x acc. from y abl.)
namque for, in fact
narratae 'told' (nom. pl. f)
narrō 1 I tell, relate
nōbilitās nōbilitāt-is 3f. nobility

obnoxius a um servile (to x, dat.) [see note on l. 9]
obscurus a um ignoble (lit. dark)
opportūnus a um strategic
parō 1 I get ready [See note]
periculōsus a um dangerous
plēnusque plēraque
plērumque the majority of
polluō 3 I pollute
portāre [See note]
post '(put) behind (them)'

Q. = *Quintus* *ī* 2m
Quintus
quaecumque whatever (things) (acc. pl. n)
quavis however [See note]
rēs public-a rē-ī public-ae (5f. + 1/2 adj.) state
reticeō 2 I keep quiet (about)
stupr-um ī 2n. sexual intercourse [Outside marriage, and frowned upon because of Fulvia's status]

superbi-a ae 1f. pride, arrogance
Tulli-us ī 2m. Tullius
uānitās uanitat-is 3f. vanity, boasting
uetus ueter-is old, long-established (like *diues*, See 47)
ut (+ subj. preceded by *adeō*, *tantus*, *tam* indicating result) that

Notes

- l. 2 *adeō* points forward to *ut* (= 'that': result).
- ll. 3, 4 *tanta* points forward to *ut* (= 'that': result)
- l. 6 *tam* points forward to *ut* (= 'that': result).
- l. 7 *adeō* points forward to *ut* (= 'that': result).
- l. 8 *tam* points forward to *ut* (= 'that': result).
- l. 9 *nisi* . . . *esset* reports his conditional statement 'if you don't lick my boots, I'll . . .' Translate 'if she were not . . .'
- l. 10 *causā cognitā* 'with the reason having been found out' (ablative absolute). *tam* points forward to *ut* (= 'that': result)
- l. 13 *tam* points forward to *ut* (= 'that': result)
- l. 14 *nouus homo* i.e. a man whose family had not previously held a consulship. *nōllent* is pl. because *plēraque nōbilitās* 'most of the nobles'.
- l. 15 *quavis* qualifies *ēgregius*: 'a *homo nouus* however *ēgregius*'.
- ll. 16–17 *comitiis habitis* 'with the elections having been held' (ablative absolute).
- l. 19 *agitāre*: infinitive, but used as main verb: translate 'he stirred up'.
- l. 20 *parāre*: infinitive but used as main verb: translate 'he got ready'.
- l. 21 *portāre*: infinitive but used as main verb: translate 'he conveyed'

Learning vocabulary for 5A(i)

Nouns

<i>arm-a ōrum</i> 2n. pl. arms; armed men	<i>conspirator conspirator-i</i> 3m. conspirator	<i>mōns mont-is</i> 3m. mountain
<i>conspiratio conspiration-is</i> 3f. conspiracy	<i>cōsulāt-us ūs</i> 4m. consulship	<i>rēs public-a rē-ī public-ae</i> (5f. + 1/2 adj.) state, republic

Adjectives

grāt-us a um pleasing (to x, dat.)

uetus ueter-is (like l. 47) old, long-established

Verbs

agitō 1 I stir up, incite (*agō* + *-it-*)
efficiō 3/4 *effeci effectus* 1 bring about (often followed by *ut* + subj.); cause, make; complete

insim mēsse inīui 1 am in (x; dat.)
mandō 1 I entrust (x acc to y dat.)
moveō 2 *movei motus* 1 remove; move; cause, begin

narrō 1 I tell, relate (x acc. to y dat.)
parō 1 I prepare, get ready; provide; obtain

Others

adeō to such an extent
in diēs day by day
in primis especially

quavis however, ever such a (qualifying an adj., cf. *quavis* + subj. although')

Running vocabulary for 5A(ii)

absurd-us a um foolish, silly
accēns-us a um on fire, aroused
adiungō 3 *adiunxi adiunctus* 1 join (x acc. to y dat.)
aes alien-um aer-is alien-i (3n. + 1/2 adj.) debt (lit. 'someone else's bronze')
aetās aetāt-is 3f. age
aliquot several
cant-us ūs 4m. singing
cār-us a um dear
committō 3 *commisi* 1 commit
decus decor-is 3n. honour
doct-us a um skilled (in x; abl.)
faciē-ae ārum 1f. pl. wnt
fortūnat-us a um fortunate

(in x; abl.)
incidō 3 *incidi* 1 fall into (in + acc.)
ingem-um ī 2n. intellect
interficiō 3, 4 *interfeci*
interfectus 1 kill
ioc-us ī 2m. joke (*iocum* *monere* = 'to crack a joke')
Latīn-us a um Latin
lepōs lepor-is 3m. charm
liber-ī ōrum 2m. pl. children
libidō libidin-is 3f. lust
litter-ae ārum 1f. pl. literature
mātrōn-a ae 1f. lady, wife and mother
modest-us a um chaste
moll-is ē gentle
petō 3 I proposition, court

procāx procāc-is bold, forward
prōrsus in a word
pudicit-a ae 1f. chastity
quaest-us ūs 4m. living
saliatiō saltatiōn-is 3f. dancing
Semprōn-a ae 1f. *Sempronia*
solicitō 1 I stir up
stupr-um ī 2n. prostitution
tolerō 1 I sustain
uel . . . uel . . . uel either or . . . or
uers-us ūs 4m. verse, (pl) poetry
uirīl-is ē of a man
urbān-us a um of the city
ut (+ subj.) in order that, to [See notes ll. 25–6]
ut (+ subj.) that [Result see note on l. 33]

Notes

- II. 25-6 *ut* + subjunctive = 'in order to' (purpose).
 II. 30-1 *genere atque fōrmā*, . . . *uirō atque liberis*: ablatives (of respect) – await *fortūnāta* to solve them.
 II. 31-2 *litteris Graecis et Latinis* and then *cantū et saltātiōne*: ablatives of respect – await *docta* to solve them.
 I. 33 *sic* 'so' points forward to *ut* ('that': result). Supply *erat* with *accēnsa*.
 I. 34 *uērūm* . . . *absurdūm*: no verb, so supply *erat* or *fuit*.
 I. 35 *posse*: infinitive, but used as main verb, so translate 'she could'.
 I. 36 *inerat* is governed by both *facētia* and *lepōs*, but it is singular by attraction to the last-mentioned nominative noun. A common phenomenon.

Learning vocabulary for 5A(ii)

Nouns

<i>aes aliēn-um aēr-is aliēn-ī</i> 3n. + 1/2 adj. debt (lit. 'someone else's bronze')	<i>liber-ī ōrum</i> 2m. pl. children <i>libidō libidin-is</i> 3f. lust <i>litter-ae ārum</i> 1f. pl. literature; (letter)	<i>mātrōn-a ae</i> 1f. wife, mother; lady <i>uers-us ūs</i> 4m. verse; (pl.) poetry
<i>aetās aetāt-is</i> 3f. age; lifetime; generation		

Adjectives

<i>doct-us a um</i> skilled (in x: abl.), learned	<i>fortūnāt-us a um</i> fortunate, lucky (in x: abl.)	<i>Latīn-us a um</i> Latin <i>modest-us a um</i> chaste, modest, discreet
---	---	--

Verbs

<i>adiungō</i> 3 <i>adiūnxī adiūctus</i> I join (x acc. to y dat.)	<i>interficiō</i> 3/4 <i>interfēcī interfectus</i> I kill	<i>petō</i> 3 <i>petiui petitus</i> I proposition, court; (beg; seek); attack, make for
---	---	---

Others

<i>aliquot</i> several	<i>uel</i> . . . <i>uel</i> either . . . or
------------------------	---

Running vocabulary for 5A(iii)

<i>agere</i> [See note on I. 44] <i>arm-um a um</i> armed C. = <i>Gai-us ī</i> 2m. Gaius <i>collocō</i> 1 I place [For <i>collocāre</i> see note on I. 44] <i>comiti-a ōrum</i> 2n. pl. elections <i>conuocō</i> 1 I call together, summon Corneli-us ī 2m. Gaius Cornelius <i>dē imprōuīsō</i> : see <i>imprōuiso</i> <i>diuers-us a um</i> different <i>euītō</i> 1 I declare, announce (x acc. to y dat.) <i>esse</i> [See note on I. 45] <i>euītō</i> 1 I avoid <i>Faetul-ae ārum</i> 1f. pl. Faesulae (Fiesole) <i>fatigō</i> 1 I tire [For <i>fatigārī</i> see note on I. 47] <i>festināre</i> [See note on I. 46] <i>frustrā</i> in vain <i>honorārī</i> [See note on I. 46] <i>impediō</i> 4 I impede, hinder <i>impendeō</i> 2 I hang over, threaten (x dat.) <i>imprōuīsō</i> : <i>dē imprōuīsō</i> unexpectedly	<i>initi-um ī</i> 2n. beginning <i>insidi-ae ārum</i> 1f. pl. ambush, trap <i>insomni-a ae</i> 1f. sleeplessness (pl. = bouts of sleeplessness) <i>intenti-us a um</i> vigilant <i>intro-eō (-ire)</i> I go in <i>Itali-a ae</i> 1f. Italy <i>itaque</i> and so, therefore <i>item</i> likewise L. = <i>Lūci-us ī</i> 2m. Lucius <i>labor labor-is</i> 3m. toil, hard work <i>nē</i> (+subj.) in order that . . . not [See notes on II. 51, 57] <i>nilominus</i> nevertheless <i>obsideō</i> 2 I besiege [See note on I. 45 for <i>absidere</i>] <i>oper-a ae</i> 1f. service <i>opportuni-us a um</i> strategic <i>parāre</i> [See note on I. 44] <i>parāt-us a um</i> prepared <i>pars part-is</i> 3f. part <i>perterrit-us a um</i> terrified <i>petō</i> 3 I stand for <i>postquam</i> after <i>praemittō</i> 3 <i>praemisi</i> I send in advance	<i>primo</i> first <i>prōcedō</i> 3 <i>prōcessī</i> I go forward, succeed <i>prōdō</i> 3 I betray, reveal <i>prohibeō</i> 2 <i>prohibui</i> <i>prohibitus</i> I keep x (acc.) away from y (abl.) <i>properē</i> hastily <i>quiet-us a um</i> quiet <i>repuls-a ae</i> 1f. defeat <i>repulsam ferre</i> to be defeated <i>senātor senātor-is</i> 3m. senator <i>soci-us ī</i> 2m. ally <i>suscepiō</i> 3/4 <i>suscepi</i> I undertake <i>tēl-um ī</i> 2n. weapon <i>Varguntē-us ī</i> 2m. Lucius Vargunteius <i>uigilō</i> 1 I stay awake [For <i>uigilāre</i> see note on I. 47] <i>uiuō</i> 3 I am alive, live <i>ut</i> (+subj.) in order to [See notes on II. 39, 42, 55]
---	---	--

Notes

- I. 37 *hīs rēbus comparātīs* 'with these things having been prepared' (ablative absolute).
 I. 39 *ut* . . . (*euītāret*) 'in order to . . . ' (purpose).
 I. 42 *ut* . . . (*habēret*) 'in order to . . . ' (purpose).
 I. 44 *agere*: infinitive but used as main verb: translate 'he did'. Similarly *collocāre* 'he placed', *parāre* 'he prepared'.

- l. 45 *obsidēre* 'he besieged'. *esse* 'he was' (i.e. 'went around').
 l. 46 *hortārī* 'he urged'. *festināre* 'he hurried'.
 l. 47 *uigilāre* 'he stayed awake'. *fatigārī* 'he was made weary'.
 ll. 49–50 *quī* . . . *faciant* 'to make' (purpose: *quī* + subjunctive).
 l. 51 *nē* . . . (*impediat*) 'in order that . . . not' (negative purpose).
 l. 52 *perterritis ceteris coniuratoribus* 'with the rest of the conspirators terrified' (ablative absolute).
 l. 55 *ut* . . . *interficerent* 'in order to . . .' (purpose).
 l. 57 *nē* . . . *interficerentur* 'in order that . . . not' (negative purpose).

Learning vocabulary for 5A(iii)

Nouns

<i>insidi-ae</i> ārum 1f. pl. trap. ambush	<i>oper-a</i> ae 1f. service (attention)	<i>pars part-is</i> 3f. part <i>soci-us</i> 2m. ally, friend <i>tel-um</i> ī 2n. weapon
<i>Itali-a</i> ae 1f. Italy		

Adjectives

<i>armāt-us</i> a um armed	<i>diuers-us</i> a um different	<i>opportūn-us</i> a um strategic, suitable, favourable
----------------------------	---------------------------------	--

Verbs

<i>collocō</i> 1 I place, station <i>conuocō</i> 1 I summon, call together <i>impediō</i> 4 I prevent, impede, hinder	<i>petō</i> 3 <i>petiui</i> <i>petitus</i> I stand for (public office); (beg, seek, proposition, court; make for, attack)	<i>prohibeō</i> 2 I prevent, hinder, keep x (acc.) away from y (abl. or ā (ab) + abl.)
---	---	---

Other

<i>frustrā</i> in vain <i>itaque</i> and so, therefore	<i>postquam</i> after (+ indicative – usually perfect; translate 'after . . . had —ed')	<i>pr̄us</i> before, previously, first
---	--	---

Grammar and exercises for 5A

144 Result (or 'consecutive') clauses: 'so . . . that'

Result clauses are expressed in Latin by an introductory word such as *tam*, *adeō*, *sic*, *ita* (all 'so'), *tot* 'so many', *tantus* 'so big' picked up by *ut* 'that'

(negative *ut nōn/numquam/nēmo/nūllus* etc.) The verb in the *ut* clause is in the subjunctive (present or perfect (to be met) in primary sequence, perfect or imperfect in secondary sequence).

Diagrammatically

as word	that (not)
<i>tam</i> 'so'	
<i>adeō</i> 'to such an extent'	
<i>ita</i> 'in such a way'	
<i>tantus</i> 'so great'	
<i>tot</i> 'so many'	
<i>tālis</i> 'of such a kind'	
	<i>ut (nōn) + verb in subjunctive</i>

E.g.

tam ferōx est ut omnēs eum timeant 'he is so fierce that everyone fears him'

tam pauper erat ut fēminīs grātus nōn esset 'he was so poor that he was not attractive to women'

sic . . . Deus dilēxit mundum, ut . . . daret 'God so loved the world that he gave . . .' (John 3.16)

Cf. this example from Text 5A(i):

huic hominī tanta uānitās inerat ut nōn posset reticēre quae audierat
'There was so much vanity in this man that he could not keep quiet what he had heard'

Notes

- 1 These are often called 'consecutive' clauses – from *cōsequor cōsecūtus* 'I follow closely' – because the result follows closely on, is the consequence or result of, the action.
- 2 Compare this construction with *accidit ut* (135). Both establish the conditions that make the result possible, and so fall within the range of specific usages of the subjunctive (138). Compare *est/sunt quī* and *is quī* 140.1 and *perficiō ut* 135.
- 3 Similar constructions are:

longē abest ut + subjunctive 'he is far from —ing', e.g. *longē abest ut timeat* 'he is far from being afraid'

fieri potest ut + subjunctive 'it can come about that', e.g. *fieri potest ut rem perficiat* 'it can happen that he will achieve his ends'

Exercises

1 Translate into English:

- (a) Catilinae tantus furor inerat ut in diēs plūra agitāret.
- (b) tantum periculum est ut Fulvia omnia cōsulī nārrāre uelit.
- (c) Sempronia litterīs Latinīs tam docta erat ut uersūs faceret.
- (d) coniūratiō tanta facta est ut hominī nōbilī cōsulātus nōn mandārētur.
- (e) Catilina furōre adeō incenditur, ut cōsulibus insidiās collocet, sociōs saepe hortētur, ipse cum tēlō sit, numquam dormiat.

2 Translate into Latin the underlined words:

- (a) So great (s. f.) was the senate's anxiety, that the consulship was entrusted to a new man.
- (b) Sempronia is so clever that she writes poetry.
- (c) Catiline was inflamed to such an extent by his eagerness for revolution, that he placed armed men in strategic spots throughout Italy.
- (d) Curius was so vile, that he was removed from the Senate.
- (e) The conspirators are undertaking such an important crime, that no-one can sleep.

145 Purpose (or 'final') clauses: 'in order that/to', 'to'

Purpose (or 'final': *finis* 'end') clauses in Latin are expressed by *ut* ('in order that, in order to, to') or its negative *nē* ('lest', 'in order that . . . not', 'in order not to', 'not to'), followed by the subjunctive: present subjunctive in primary sequence, imperfect subjunctive in secondary sequence. E.g.

hoc facit ut grātus sit 'he is doing this (in order) to be popular', '(in order) that he may be popular'

hoc fecit nē inuidiōsus esset 'he did this (in order) not to be unpopular', 'lest he be unpopular', '(in order) that he might not be unpopular'

(Observe how English favours 'may' in primary sequence, and 'might' in secondary.)

Cf. this example from *Text 5A(ii)*:

igitur sē Catilinae adiūnxērunt ut sē aere aliēnō liberārent 'They joined Catiline in order to free themselves from debt'

The construction falls within the scope of specific usages of the subjunctive. It shows the speaker's *intention* that something should happen. Cf. *perficiō ut* (135).

Notes

- 1 Any references to the subject of the main verb inside the *ut/nē* clause will be reflexive, e.g.

'Cicero said this in order that Catiline should fear him (= Cicero)' *Cicerō haec dixit ut Catilina sē timēret*

- 2 The Latin for 'in order that no-one' is *nē quis* (lit. 'lest anyone'); 'in order that nothing' is *nē quid* (lit. 'lest anything') etc. E.g.:

'Euchio hides the gold in order that no-one may see it' *Euchiō aurum cēlat nē quis id uideat*

See 134³ for *nē quis* in Indirect Command, and 14 for forms.

- 3 *quī quae quod* + subjunctive can express purpose, especially after a main verb of motion, e.g.

nūntiōs mīsit quī nūntiārent . . . 'he sent messengers who would announce' . . . to announce
cōsiliū patefecit quō effugerent 'he revealed the plan by which they might escape', 'for them to escape by'
locum petit unde (= ex quō) hostem inuadat 'he is looking for a position from which to attack the enemy'

Cf. this example from *Text 5A(iii)*:

praemīsī . . . aliōs . . . quī initium bellī faciant 'I have sent ahead others to begin the war'

Exercises

1 Translate into English:

- (a) mulierēs aliquot sē Catilinae adiūnxēre ut sē aere aliēnō liberārent.
- (b) Catilina Mānlium ad exercitum mīsit, quī bellum parāret.
- (c) Cornēlius et Varguntēius ad Cicerōnem eunt ut eum interficiant.

- (d) custōdēs Cicerōnis domūs Cornēlium et Varguntēium ianuā prohibuērunt, nē consul necarētur
 (e) Fulvia omnia quae audierat cōsulī nārrāuit, ut ille magnum periculum effugeret.
 (f) scribēbat Aelius ōrātiōnēs¹ quās aliī dicerent. (Cicero)
 (g) nihil tam absurdē² dicī potest quod nōn dicātur ab aliquō philosophōrum³ (Cicero)

¹ ōrātiō ōrātiōnis 3f. speech

² absurdē stupidly. See 140.1 for the construction in this use.

³ philosoph-us ī 2m philosopher

2 Translate the underlined words into Latin (take care to get the right sequence of tenses – see 145)

- (a) Curius went to Fulvia to ask for money
 (b) Catiline sent two comrades to¹ kill Cicero
 (c) Curius told Fulvia everything, so that she would believe him²
 (d) Fulvia relates the story to the consul, so that he will not be killed.
 (e) In order not to be attacked by the conspirators, Cicero orders the guards to lock the door.

¹ Use quī + subjunctive

² 'him' use part of sē

146 The historic infinitive

In places where the narrative is drawn in rapid, broad strokes, especially where one action follows swiftly upon another, Latin can use the *infinitive* where we would expect an indicative (usually perfect or imperfect). The infinitive tells us what the verbal action is; subject is nominative, tense has to be gathered from the broad context. E.g.

intereā Catilīna Rōmae multa simul agere; insidiās collocāre, parāre incendia, loca obsidēre, ipse cum tēlō esse.

'Meanwhile, Catiline put many schemes into operation simultaneously in Rome, he set up ambushes, prepared fires, laid siege to places, went around himself under arms'.

Note the atmosphere of busy activity, in which historic infinitives most commonly occur.

Exercise

Translate these sentences and say whether the infinitive is *prolative* (i.e. completes the meaning of a verb, e.g. uolō, possum etc.), reporting speech (accusative and infinitive), or historic:

- (a) nōbilēs Catilīnae cōsulātum mandāre nōluērunt
 (b) Fulvia multīs Catilīnam coniūrātiōnem parāre dīxerat
 (c) Catilīna in diēs plura agitāre, arma collocāre, pecūniam ad Mānium mittere
 (d) coniūrātiōnem sē facere negat Catilīna
 (e) Semprōnia uersūs facere, sermōne uī modestō
 (f) Cicerō Cornēlium et Varguntēium in aedīs suās intrāre uetuit.

147 Ablative of respect: 'in point of'

A common use of the ablative, especially in poetry, is to specify the *respect* in which something is the case. E.g.

numquam uictus est uirtūte 'he was never conquered in point of / in respect of courage'

litterīs Latīnīs docta 'learned in point of / in respect of Latin literature'

genere fortunāta 'lucky in point of / in respect of her birth'

Exercise

Translate these sentences; pick out ablatives, distinguishing ablatives of respect from other usages

- (a) Semprōnia, genere nōbilī nāta, litterīs Latīnīs docta erat.
 (b) uir quidam, Curius nōmine, eō tempōre Fuluiam amābat.
 (c) nōn tōtā rē, sed temporibus errāsti.¹ (Cicero)
 (d) eā nocte Cornēlius et Varguntēius Cicerōnis ianuā prohibiti sunt.
 (e) Catilīna, quamuis genere atque fōrmā fortūnātus esset, uir tamen minimā sapientiā fuit.

¹ errō I am wrong

Reading: ut

You have now met *ut* as a conjunction in several different senses.

ut + indicative

- (a) 'how!'
- (b) 'as', 'when'.

ut + subjunctive

- (a) Indirect command (after e.g. *imperō*, *persuādeō* etc.) 'to . . .'
- (b) Result (after e.g. *tam*, *tantus*, *adeō* etc.) 'so . . . that'.
- (c) Purpose 'in order that/to'.
- (d) After *perficiō* 'I bring it about that', *accidit* 'it happens that'.

To solve *ut*, watch out for: (i) indicative or subjunctive? (ii) if subjunctive, a verb of commanding will suggest (a), a 'flag' such as *tam*, *tantus* will suggest (b), and a negative *ut nōn* will suggest (b) or (d), while the negative *nē* will suggest (a) or (c). E.g.

Cicerō custōdibus imperat ut . . . 'Cicero to the guards gives orders that . . .'

solves itself very quickly. But

Cicerō ut custōdibus . . . leaves doubts about *ut* and *custōdibus*, so hold these words till solved.

NB. *ut* is also found in the meaning 'as', qualifying a noun. e.g. *canem et fēlem ut deōs colunt* 'They worship the dog and the cat as gods'.

Exercise

Read these sentences, making explicit your steps in understanding, especially when you reach *ut* (or equivalent). State the moment when you can solve *ut*:

- (a) *eōs ut armātī essent hortābātur*.
- (b) *Semprōnia tam docta est ut uersūs facillimē faciat*.
- (c) *ut ego iubēbō, ita tū faciēs*.
- (d) *hōrum contumeliās¹ sapiēns² ut iocōs accipit*. (Seneca)
- (e) *Cicerō effēcit ut nōn interficerētur*.

¹ *contumeliā* ae lf. 'insult'

² *sapiēns* nom. s. m. 'wise man'.

- (f) *nē cōsulem Catilinae socii necarent, rem tōtam Fulvia amicis suis narrāuit*.
- (g) *ut fortunāta Semprōnia est!*

Reading: quī

quī too has different meanings, as follows.

quī + indicative

This is the descriptive relative 'who', 'which', 'what', 'that'.

quī + subjunctive

- (a) Purpose (with verbs of motion).
- (b) Consecutive (*est quī, is quī*) 'the sort of person who'.
- (c) Causal, 'since'.
- (d) Indirect speech, where it may = ordinary relative, unless context demands otherwise.
- (e) Concessive 'although' e.g. *uir quī fortis esset tamen effūgit* 'the man, who was brave, nevertheless fled' i.e. 'the man, although he was brave, fled'.

Exercise

Read these sentences, using the information just outlined. State the moment when *quī* is solved:

- (a) *Catilina Rōmam sociōs mittit, quī urbem incendant*.
- (b) *Semprōnia, quae uirōs semper petēbat, mātōna Rōmāna erat*.
- (c) *Clūsini¹ lēgātōs Rōmam, quī auxilium ā senātū peterent, mīsere*. (Livy)
- (d) *multī arbitrābantur coniūrātiōnem uiam esse, quā aere aliēnō sē liberāre possent*.
- (e) *fēminae etiam aliquot sē coniūrātiōnī adiūnxērunt, quae in aes aliēnum maximum conciderant*.
- (f) *quī rēi pūblīcae sit hostis, fēlix² esse nēmo potest*. (Cicero)
- (g) *tē amō quī sīs tam fortis*.

¹ *Clūsini* 2m. pl. 'the people of Clusium'.

² *fēlix* *fēlicis* 'fortunate'

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Catiline has just made a speech to his fellow conspirators, rousing them to action. Sallust describes their demand for a clear-cut goal and Catiline's promises of various rewards.

postquam accēpēre ea hominēs, quibus mala abundē omnia erant, sed neque rēs neque spēs bona ūlla, tametsī illis quiēta mouēre magna mercēs uidēbatur, tamen postulāuēre plērique ut prōpōneret condiciōnēs belli et praemia. tum Catilīna pollicērī tabulās nouās, prōscriptiōnem locuplētium, magistrātūs, sacerdotia, rapinās, alia omnia, quae bellum atque libidō uictōrum fert. (Sallust, Catiline 21, slightly adapted)

ea [Refers back to Catiline's speech]

abundē plentifully

spēs spēs-ī 5f. hope

tametsī although

quiēt-us a um quiet, peaceful

mercēs mercē-is 3f. reward

plērique plēraque plēraque the majority

prōpōnō 3 I state

condiciō condiciō-is 3f. term

praemium ī 2n. reward

Catilīna pollicērī [Note (1) case of

Catilīna (2) What part of the verb

pollicērī is: refer, if necessary, to 146]

tabul-ae ārum 1f. pl. accounts [tabulae

nouae implies the cancellation of

existing debts]

prōscriptiō prōscriptiō-is 3f. proscription

(i.e. notice proclaiming someone an

outlaw, and confiscation of his

goods)

5 locuplēs locuplēt-is rich

sacerdotium ī 2n. priesthood

rapina ae 1f. plunder, forcible seizure

of property

uictor uictor-is 3m. victor

English-Latin

Re-read the text of 5A(iii), then translate this passage:

Although Catiline¹ had got ready the conspiracy, he nevertheless stood for the consulship again. Meanwhile, he kept attempting to persuade his allies to attack Cicero. Cicero, however, had made plans in order to escape the danger. Through Fulvia and Curius he had managed to hear of Catiline's plans.

Again the nobles were so afraid that they did not entrust the consulship to Catiline. He then decided to wage war. He stationed his supporters in various parts of Italy. Meanwhile at Rome he set a trap² for the consul, went around² with a weapon, and³ encouraged² his supporters to be brave.

¹ Catiline is subject of both clauses, so place him before the conjunction

² Use historic infinitives.

³ Omit – use asyndeton (no connections. see p. 314(c))

Roman poetry

Introduction

Consider the following lines from Pope's *Epistle to a Lady* (1735):

Pleasures the Sex, as Children Birds, pursue,
Still out of Reach, but never out of View

Put bluntly, it means 'The (female) sex pursues pleasures as children pursue birds; the pleasures remain out of reach, but never out of view.' The utterance is different from prose in a number of important ways:

- It is in metre.
- The word-order is different from prose.
- It is very compressed ('pursue' serves for both limbs of the first line)
- It is cleverly balanced (e.g. the balance of 'Pleasures [object] the Sex [subject] as Children [subject] Birds [object]').
- The image is striking: women pursuing pleasure as children pursue birds.

Until one gets used to it, reading this sort of poetry, even in English, is quite hard work. Balance, compression, striking word-order and powerful imagery are all features of Latin poetry too, and since Latin is an inflected language, the dislocation of expected symmetry by means of calculated asymmetry (= *uariatiō*) can be that much more violent. But no less important to a Roman poet is balance. Consider the following haunting lines from Virgil:

tum pingues agnī, et tum mollissima uīna,
tum somnī dulcēs, dēnsaeque in montibus umbrae

'then fat the lambs, and then most sweet the wine,
then sleep (is) sweet, and deep on the mountains (are) the shadows'

Observe the compression (no verbs), and the balance with variety. Of the four *cōla* (limbs), three start with *tum*, but not the fourth; the first line runs adjective-noun, adjective-noun, the second runs noun-adjective, adjective (prepositional phrase) noun. The metre adds to the effect by being slow and heavy, and allowing, unusually, two adjacent vowels (*agnī et*) their full value. (Note that in l. 2 *dēnsaeque* in the -e of -que is, as normally, lost before the following *i*.)

- (j) Hyperbaton: a figure in which the natural word-order is upset, e.g.

Milton (translating Horace's *ridentem dicere uerum quid uetat?*):
'Laughing to teach the truth, what hinders?'

i.e. 'What hinders one-who-is-laughing from teaching the truth?' The Latin word-order, however, is normal.

Poetic word-order

Adjectives and nouns

One of the most frequent word-orders in poetry is adjective, then something else, then the noun with which the adjective agrees, e.g.

Lauīnaque uēnit lītora 'and he came to the Lavinian shores'
altae moenia Rōmae 'the walls of high Rome'
Trōiānō ā sanguine 'from Trojan blood'
Rōmānam condere gentem 'to found the Roman race'
quem dās finem? 'what end do you give?'
noua pectore uersat cōsilia 'she turned over new plans in her heart'

Here is a double example:

saeuae memorem lūnōnis ob iram 'on account of the unforgetting anger of savage Juno'

The best tactic to adopt is to register the adjective and *move on*: concentrate your attention on nouns and verbs first and foremost, and try to solve them as you come to them. This will lay clear the bare bones of the sentence. You can then reread, concentrating on the adjectives and seeing where they fit. Thus a first reading should concentrate on the underlined words:

ingentia cernē
moenia surgentemque nouae Karthāginis arcem

'(something about 'large') you will see the walls and (something about 'rising' and 'new') the citadel of Carthage'.

Then reread, concentrating on *ingentia*, *surgentem* and *nouae*, seeing where they agree:

'you will see the *huge* walls and *arising* the citadel of *new* Carthage'

NB. When adjectives precede and are separated from their nouns in prose, the effect is to emphasise strongly one element or the other (usually the first).

Exercise

Translate the following (adjectives underlined):

- Tyriam quī aduēneris urbem.*
- templum lūnōnī ingēns.*
- uidet Iliacās ex ordine pugnās.*
- bellaque iam famā tōtam uulgāta per urbem.*
- feret haec aliquam tibi fama salūtem.*
- animum pictūrā pascit inānī.*
- ardentisque auertit equos.*
- iuuat ire et Dōrica castra*
dēsertōsque uidere locōs.
- summā decurrit ab arce.*
- tacitae per amīca silentia lūnae.*

Tyri-us a um Carthaginian
quī aduēneris 'since you
have come to'
lūnō lūnōn-is 3f. the
goddess Juno
Iliac-us a um of Troy,
Trojan
fām-a ae 1f. rumour
uulgāt-us a um spread
aliquam (acc. s. f.) some

fām-a ae 1f. reputation
pictūr-a ae 1f. scene
pāscō 3 I feed
inān-is e illusory
ardēs ardent-is fiery
auertō 3 I turn aside
equ-us ī 2m. horse
iuuat it gives pleasure
Dōric-us a um Greek
dēsert-us a um abandoned

summ-us a um top (of)
decurrō 3 I run down
arx arc-is 3f. citadel
tacit-us a um quiet
amīc-us a um friendly
silenti-a ōrum 2n. pl.
silences
lūn-a ae 1f. moon

Verbs

It is extremely common for verbs to come early in the sentence, sometimes well before the quoted subject. So you must hang on to the person of the verb and wait for a subject to appear, e.g.:

obstupuit primō aspectū Sīdōnia Dīdō 'he/she/it fell silent at the first look' – ah, that is 'Carthaginian Dido fell silent . . .'
conticuēre omnēs 'they fell silent' – ah, 'everyone fell silent'

NB. Verb-subject is also a common order in prose.

Word groups

We have 'phrased' together words that can usefully be taken in groups together, e.g.

tālībus ōrantem dictīs ārāsque tenentem
audiit Omnipotēns

'the one begging (acc.) with such words and holding (acc.) the
 altars the All-powerful (i.e. Jupiter) heard'

Delayed introductory word

Conjunctions like *cum*, *dum*, *ubi*, *sī*, *sed*, *et* are often held back in the sentence, (as in prose: see 124⁴) e.g.

namque sub ingentī lūstrat dum singula templō 'for while he surveys
 individual items under the great temple'
magnum rēginae sed enim miserātus amōrem 'but pitying the queen's
 great love'

Latin metre

Latin metre is more complex than English because in Latin metre every syllable counts (cf. English, where metre depends largely on stress).

For the purpose of metre, every syllable in Latin counted as either heavy (—) or light (v). Heavy syllables may be compared to longer notes in music, light to shorter.

Heavy and light syllables

Here are some basic rules:

- (a) A syllable is heavy if its vowel is pronounced long e.g. *pōnō*, *īrātō*
- (b) A syllable is heavy if the vowel is followed by two consonants or a double consonant (x, z) e.g. *īngentēs*.

Word division makes no difference, e.g. *et* is 'light', but *et fugit* would make *et* heavy, because the *t* is followed by an *f*, making two consonants.

- (c) A syllable is heavy if it contains a diphthong, e.g. *aēdēs*. (cf. 1 above).
- (d) A syllable is light if it contains a short vowel followed by only one consonant (or none), e.g. *et omnibūs*. Contrast *et veniā*

Elision

If a word ends in a vowel or in -m, and the next word begins with a vowel (or h), the final vowel or -m syllable is 'elided' ('crushed out of existence') and does not count for the purposes of the metre, e.g.:

eg[o] et tū
virtūt[em] et
c[um] habeās

Notes

- 1 The 'heaviness' or 'lightness' of a vowel has no effect on its natural pronunciation. Thus the *et* of *et fugit* may count as heavy for the purposes of scansion, but it would not be pronounced *ēt* as a consequence. To help you to see the difference between vowel length and syllable quantity we have continued to mark long vowels (immediately above the letter), as well as setting out the metrical pattern (above the line), e.g. *cōrrī pīdēre* indicates that the first vowel (-o-) is pronounced short, but belongs in a heavy syllable (because followed by two consonants -rr-); the fourth vowel, however (-ē-), is pronounced long (the syllable will therefore be heavy).
- 2 Verse was read with the normal word stress (see p. xv). Do not allow the rhythmic stress of the metre to distort the natural stress of the words.

The hexameter: Virgil's metre

The hexameter has six feet, consisting of a mixture of dactyls (— v v) and spondees (— —), on the following pattern:

1 2 3 4 5 6

Here are the first three lines of the first Virgil passage scanned for you:

cōrrīpū|ēre ūi|[am] īntere|ā, quā| sēmīta| mōnstrāt|
īamqu[e] āscendē|nt collē|n, quī| plūrimū|s ūrbī|
īmmīnēt| āduers|āsqu[e] āspēctāt| dēsūpēr| arcēs.

Notes

- 1 Foot 5 is usually a dactyl, very occasionally a spondee.
 2 The line usually has a word-division (*caesūra*, lit. 'cutting') in the middle of the third foot or the fourth. E.g. the *caesura* in the above examples is after *intereā* (4th foot), *ascendēbant*, *aduersāsqu(e)* (3rd foot).

Exercise

Scan the next ten lines (p. 321), adding the correct word stress (see rule, p. xv). Mark foot divisions with |, caesuras with {. Then read aloud, thinking through the meaning as you read.

Virgil reading exercises: introduction

Pūblius Vergilius Marō (Virgil) was born in 70 near Mantua. He early on established powerful connections, notably with the governor of Cisalpine Gaul, C. Asinius Pōlliō, himself a scholar and poet. It was Pōlliō who introduced him to Octavian. In the early 30s Virgil became a member of the circle of Maecēnās, the great literary patron and powerful political ally of Octavian.

Virgil was the author of three major works. The first two were the *Bucolics* (or *Eclogues*), and *Georgics*, whose apparently rural themes have political overtones, e.g. at the end of *Georgics* I, there is an appeal to the native gods of Italy to allow Octavian to come to the aid of the civil-war-stricken land. His final work, begun around 30 and still undergoing final revision at his death in 19, was the *Aeneid*, an epic in twelve books, relating how Aeneas, mythical founder of the Roman race, escaped from the burning city of Troy and finally established a foothold in Italy, after defeating the Rutulian King Turnus in single combat. The ancients saw the purpose of Virgil in this work as twofold: to rival Homer (on whose *Iliad* and *Odyssey* the poem draws heavily) and to glorify Augustus. The latter he achieved in three ways. First he accepted and stressed the family connection between Aeneas and the *gēns Iūlia* (family of Julius Caesar and Augustus), so that the early history of the Roman race is also the family history of Augustus. Secondly, he introduced mentions of Augustus into the poem in prophecies (by Jupiter in Book I and Anchises in Book VI) and on the shield of Aeneas (Book VIII). Thirdly, he reflected the old Roman values which Augustus propagated and supported even by

legislation, in the characters of his epic, especially that of Aeneas, a man distinguished by his *pietās* (respect for gods, family, home and country).

Virgil's *Aeneid*

*Aeneas, storm-tossed from Troy, arrives after many adventures off the North African coast, and is led by his divine mother, Venus, to Carthage. Here he sees the city of Carthage being built.*¹

corripuēre uiam intereā, quā sēmīta mōnstrat,
 iamque ascendēbant collem, quī plūrimus urbī
 imminet aduersāsque aspectat dēsūper arcēs.
 mīrātur mōlem Aenēās, māgālia quondam,
 mīrātur portās strepitumque et strāta uiārum. 5
 īstant ārdentēs Tyriī: pars dūcere mūrōs
 mōlirīque arcem et manibus subuoluere saxa.
 pars optāre locum tectō et conclūdere sulcō;
 iūra magistrātūsque legunt sānctumque senātum.
 hīc portūs aliī effodiunt; hīc alta theātrīs 10
 fundāmenta locant aliī, immānīsque columnās
 rūpibus excīdunt, scaenīs decora apta futuris,

quālis apēs aestāte nouā per flōrea rūra
 exercet sub sōle labor, cum gentis adultōs
 edūcunt fētūs, aut cum liquenta mella 15
 stīpant et dulcī distendunt nectare cellās,
 aut onera accipiunt uententum, aut agmine
 factō
 ignāuum fīcōs pecus ā praesēpibus arcent;

They were like bees at the beginning of summer, busy in the sunshine in the flowery meadows, bringing out the young of the race just come of age or treading the oozing honey and swelling the cells with sweet nectar, or taking the loads as they came in or mounting guard to keep the herds of idle drones out of their farmstead

feruet opus redolentque thymō fragrantia mella.
 'ō fortūnātī, quōrum iam moenia surgunt!' 20

Aenēās ait et fastīgia suspicit urbis. (*Aeneid* 1.418–37)

¹ In all the Virgil extracts, phrases which you should take as a whole are marked with

corripio 3/4 *corripui* I seize, devour,
hasten along

quā where

sēmit-a ae 1f. path

mōnstrō 1 I show

ascendō 3 I climb

collis coll-is 3m. hill

quī plurimū 'which in its great bulk'
[Register nom., so subject]

urbī [Why dat? Wait]

immineō 2 (+ dat.) I overlook, loom
over [Solves *urbī*]

aduersus a um facing [The *-que* suggests
another clause or phrase, so 'and the
facing . . .', but *aduersās* is acc. pl. f.,
so we are waiting for a noun which
can be described as 'facing', and
then (presumably) a verb which
explains the acc. case]

aspectō 1 I look at, observe [So
probably 'and looks at the
facing . . .']

dēsuper from above

arx arc-is 3f. citadel, stronghold [Solves
aduersās]

mīror 1 dep. I marvel at

mīratur [Subject? Wait]

mōlēs mōl-is 3f. mass, bulk, size (of the
city)

Aenē-ās ae 1m. [Greek declension, see
H6] Aeneas [Subject]

magalia māgāl-ium 3n. pl. huts

quondam once upon a time

5 *port-a* ae 1f. gate

strept-us ūs 4m. hustle and bustle

strāt-um ī 2n. (lit. 'laid flat') paving

instō 1 I press on [Subject? Wait]

ardēs ardent-is enthusiastic, eager

Tyr-us ī 2m. Carthaginian [Subject]

pars part-is 3f. some [So we may be
waiting for 'others']

dūrō 3 (here) build [Infinitive, so why?
Wait]

mūr-us ī 2m. wall

mōlior 4 dep. I work at [Note
infinitive]

manibus [Dat. or abl. pl., but since the
men are working, probably abl.]

subuoluō 3 I roll uphill [Note infinitive]

sax-um ī 2n. stone [Solved infinitive
ver?]

pars [Must mean 'others']

optō 1 I decide on [Note: still
infinitive]

tect-um ī 2n. building, house

concludō 3 I contain, mark out, enclose
[Infinitive]

sulc-us ī 2m. furrow, trench [But why
these infinitives? There appears to be
no controlling verb. So they must
be – what sort of infinitives?]

iūs iur-is 3n. law [Subj. or obj? No
clue. Wait]

magistrātūs [Subj. or obj? No clue
Wait]

legō 3 I select [Do 'laws and
magistrates' select?]

sāct-us a um holy, revered [Case?
What does this suggest about *iura*
etc?]

10 *port-us ūs* 4m. harbour [Case? So wait]

ali [Looks like another string of the
pars sort above. Await another *ali*]

effodiō 3/4 I dig

hic [So here is another place where
they are working: we can surely
expect another *ali* soon]

alt-us a um deep [Case? Many
possibilities. Wait]

theatr-um ī 2n. theatre [Cannot agree
with *alta*, so register dat. or abl. pl.
and wait. So far 'here, something
about deep things, something about
theatres']

fundāment-um ī 2n. foundation [Solves
alta 'here, something about deep
foundations' So what case is *theatrūs*,
with what meaning, probably?]

locō 1 I place [And *ali* follows, solving
the whole thing]

immān-is e gigantic [Register case, pl.]

column-a ae 1f. column [Immediate

agreement, happily]

rūpes rūp-us 3f. rock [Dat. or abl. pl.
Something about 'rocks']

excidō 3 I cut out, quarry [All solved
(note force of *ex-*)]

scenīs [Register cases, wait]

decus decor-is 3n. ornament, decoration

apt-us a um fit for (+ dat.) [That solves
scenīs]

feruō 2 I seethe

redoleō 2 I give off a smell (of x: abl.)
[Plural, so await subject. 'They give
off a smell']

thym-um ī 2n. thyme (plant noted for
its nectar) [Case? Construe with
redolent? Or wait?]

fragrans fragrant-is sweet [Make *thymum*
depend on *fragrantia*?]

mel mell-is 3n. honey [Pl. for s. A
common poetic device]

20 *fortunāt-us* ī 2m. lucky man, person

moenia moeni-um 3n. walls

urgō 3 I rise

ait said

fastig-um ī 2n. roof, height

suspiciō 3/4 I look up to [Aeneas has by

now descended the hill]

SECTION 5B

Running vocabulary for 5B(i)

adducō 3 *adduxi* *adductus* 1
lead to, draw to

adducti (nom. m. pl.)
(having been) drawn
into

Allobrogēs Allobrog-um
3m. pl. Allobroges
[Gaulic tribe, see name
list, Text p. 91 and
map]

ampl-us a um large, great

aperiō 4 I reveal

arcessō 3 I summon

auaritia ae 1f. avarice,

greed

aucloritās aucloritāt-is 3f

weight, authority

bellicōs-us a um warlike

cas-us ūs 4m. fortune

cōspiciō 3/4 *cōspexi* 1

catch sight of

dimitto 3 I send away

existimo 1 I think,

consider

fore ut (+ subj.) 'that
it would happen
that . . .'

Gabini-us ī 2m. P

Gabinus Capito

Galli-a ae 1f. Gaul

Gallic-us a um Gallic

gens gent-is 3f. race

idone-us a um qualified

(for), suitable (for)

(+ dat.)

impellō 3 I urge, persuade

innoxi-us a um innocent

Lentul-us ī 2m. P

Cornelius Lentulus

Sura

misereor 2 dep. I take pity

on (+ gen.)

miseri-a ae 1f. misery,
distress

nātūr-a ae 1f. nature

negōtiō 1 dep. I do
business

nōminō 1 I name

nōscō 3 *nōui* *notus* 1 get to
know (*nōui* = I know)

nōt-us a um known (to x:
dat.)

noxae rēs nouarum rerum
(1/2 adj. + 5f. noun)

revolution (lit. 'new
things')

P = *Publ.*, *Publi-ūs* ī 2m.
Publius

pauci ae a a few

perducō 3 I bring to

plērique pleraeque plēraque
the majority of

praecipio 3, 4 *praecipio* I
instruct, order
praesens praesent-is present
privatum individually
propinqu-us a um near (to
x: dat.)
publice publicly, as a state
queror 3 dep. I complain
quicumque quaecumque
quodcumque whoever,
whatever (declines like
qui quae quod)

quo + comparative +
subjunctive 'in order
that . . . more' [See
notes on ll. 75–76, 77–
8]
remedi-um ī 2n. cure
requiro 3 I seek out
sicuti (+ indicative) just as
societas societāt-is 3f.
alliance, partnership
(+ gen. expressing

sphere of alliance; tr.
'in x')
sollicito 1 I rouse up,
incite to revolt
spēs spē-ī 5f. hope
stat-us ūs 4m. state
ubi primum as soon as
Umbren-us ī 2m. Publius
Umbrenus

Notes

- l. 62 *belli* governed by *societas* and completing the idea of partnership by expressing what the partners will share in.
l. 63 *oppressōs*: sc. *esse* (see 143 for the suppression of *esse* in reported speech).
l. 69 *quod* . . . *esset*: subjunctive within reported speech (see 142)
l. 71 *quā* . . . *effugiātis*: note the mood of the verb. See 145³.
l. 72 *orāre*: historic infinitive.
l. 73 *quod* . . . *factūri essent*: subjunctive within reported speech (see 142). There is strong emphasis on the future, hence the composite future subjunctive (= fut. participle + subj. of *sum*)
ll. 75–6, 77–8 *quō maior* . . . *inesset* } All express purpose, with a com-
quō facilius . . . } parative idea: 'in order the more
persuādēret } —ly to —' (adv.); 'in order that
quō . . . *amplior esset* } more —' (adj.)

Learning vocabulary for 5B(i)

Nouns

auctoritas auctoritāt-is 3f.
weight, authority

gens gent-is 3f. tribe; race;
family; people
nātūr-a ae 1f. nature

spēs spē-ī 5f. hope(s),
expectation

Adjectives

ampl-us a um large, great
idōne-us a um suitable
(for), qualified (for)
(+ dat.)

nōt-us a um known, well-
known
pauc-ī ae a (pl.) a few, a
small number of

plērique plēraque plēraque
the majority of

Verbs

aperio 4 *aperui apertus* I
open; reveal
dimittō 3 *dimisi dimissus* I
send away (dis-
+ mittō)
existimō 1 I think,
consider (ex + aestimō
= I value)

Others

ubi primum as soon as
(with perfect
indicative)

nōscō 3 *nōnī nōtus* I get to
know (perfect tenses = I
know etc.)
queror 3 dep. *questus* I
complain

requirō 3 *requisiui requisitus*
I seek out; ask for (re-
+ quaero)
sollicito 1 I stir up, arouse;
incite to revolt

Running vocabulary for 5B(ii)

cert-us a um sure, certain
cōsiderō 1 I ponder,
consider
diū for a long time
Fabi-us ī 2m. Fabius
[Quintus Fabius Sanga]
fortū-a ae 1f. fortune
incert-us a um uncertain
manifest-us a um in the
open, caught in the act,
plainly guilty

mercēs mercēd-is 3f. profit,
reward
nōndum not yet
opēs op-um 3f. pl.
resources
patrōn-us ī 2m. patron
praecipio 3 I give
instructions to (x dat.:
to do y: ut + subj.)
praemi-um ī 2n. reward,
prize
prō (+ abl.) instead of

Q. = *Quintō*; *Quint-us* ī
2m. Quintus
quam maximē as much as
possible
Sang-a ae 1m. Q. Fabius
Sanga
simulō 1 I feign
studi-um ī 2n. enthusiasm
(for) (+ gen.)
tūt-us a um safe
uoluō 3 I turn over,
reflect on
ut = *ut*

Notes

- l. 82 *at in alterā*: supply *parte* and *erant*.
l. 86 *cōsiliō cognitō*: 'with the plan having been discovered' (abl. abs.).
l. 87–8 *simulent* . . . *adeant* . . . *polliceantur dentque*: all verbs in the *ut* clause introduced by *praecipit* (l. 86).
l. 87 *bene polliceantur*: tr. 'make fine promises'.

Learning vocabulary for 5B(ii)

Nouns

fortū-a ae 1f. fortune,
luck; (pl.) wealth

opēs op-um 3f. pl.
resources; wealth (s. *ops*
op-is help, aid)

praemi-um ī 2n. prize,
reward
studi-um ī 2n. enthusiasm,
zeal

Adjectives

cert-us a um sure, certain

manifest-us a um in the
open; obvious, clear;
caught in the act**Verbs**cōnsiderō 1 I consider,
ponderpraecipio 3/4 praecēpi
praeceptus I instruct,
give orders to (x dat
to do y: ut + subj)
(prae + capiō)

im- 1 I feign

Othersdiū for a long time
(comp. diūtius, sup
diutissime)nōdum not yet
prō (+abl.) instead of
(for, in return for; on
behalf of; in front of)quam + superlative adv. as
is possible
utī = ut**Running vocabulary for 5B(iii)**actiō actiōn-is 3f. public
action

adit-us ūs 4m. approach

Bēsti-a ae 1m. Lucius

Bestia

caedēs caed-is 3f. carnage,
slaughter

Cethēg-us ī 2m. C.

Cornelius Cethegus

contiō contiōn-is 3f. public
meeting; contiōnemhabēre to hold a public
meeting

am- 1 3 I divide

duodecim twelve

ērupō 3 I break out, rush
outexsequor 3 dep. exsecutus I
carry outfrangō 3 frēgī fractus I
break (down)

L. - 1 m- 1 us ī 2m. Lucius

nobilitās nobilitāt-is 3f
nobility

obsideō 2 I besiege

parens parent-is 3m. parent

percellō 3 perculi percussus I
scare, unnervepropius nearer (comp. of
prope)quō + comp + subj. 'in
order that . . . more'

[See note on ll. 95-6]

Statili-us ī 2m. L. Statilius

l. 97 iānuā frāctā: 'with the door having been broken (down)' (ablative
absolute). filiī familiārum i.e. sons subject to patria potestās. The power
of a father over his children was absolute: he could even kill them with
impunity

l. 98 urbe incēnsā: 'with the city having been burned' (ablative absolute).

l. 99 Cicerōne necātō: 'with Cicero having been killed' (ablative absolute).
percussis omnibus: 'with everyone unnerved (by . . .)' (ablative
absolute).**Learning vocabulary for 5B(iii)****Nouns**dēs caed-is 3f. slaughter,
carnageparēns parent-is 3m. father,
parent; f. mother**Adjectives**

duodecim twelve

Verbsfrangō 3 frēgī fractus I
breakobsideō 2 obsēdi obsessus I
besiege (ob + sedeō)**Grammar and exercises for 5B****148 Purpose clauses: quō + comparative + subjunctive 'in order that . . . more'**When a purpose clause contains a comparative (adverb or adjective), it is
introduced NOT by ut but by quō, e.g.hoc fecit quō celerius perueniret 'he did this (in order) to arrive more
quickly'

Cf.

quō facilius aditum ad cōsulem fieret 'in order that there might be an
easier approach to the consul'The verb in the quō clauses follows the normal rule, and will be either
present or imperfect subjunctive. This construction is not difficult to
spot, since it has three markers in a sentence: (i) quō (ii) a comparative (iii)**Notes**l. 90 parātīs . . . magnīs cōpiīs: 'with great forces having been got ready'
(ablative absolute).ll. 91, 92 (eā) contiōne habitā: 'with a (this) public meeting having been
held' (ablative absolute).ll. 95-6 quō facilius . . . fieret: 'in order that there might be . . . an
easier . . .' (purpose with comparative idea).

verb in the subjunctive. Remember, when these clues are given, to translate *quō* by 'in order that/to'.

149 *fore ut* + subjunctive 'that it will/would come about that. . .'

Latin often 'talks its way round' (the technical term for this is 'periphrasis') the so-called future infinitive passive (see 118) by using *fore ut* + subjunctive. e.g.

dixit sē captum irī 'he said that he would be seized' (lit. 'he said that there was a movement towards seizing him')

could also be expressed thus:

dixit fore ut (fixed form) *caperetur* lit. 'he said that it would come about that he would be seized'

Thus both *dicit eōs remissum irī* and *dicit fore ut remittantur* mean 'he says that they will be sent back'.

So in reported speech, watch out for *fore ut* (*nōn*) + subjunctive, and translate literally 'that it will/would (not) come about that', then retranslate for smoother final effect.

Exercise

Translate these sentences:

- Catilīna sociis suis nūntiāuit fore ut incendium et caedēs in urbe fierent.
- Vmbrēnus Gabīnium uocāuit, quō facilius Allobrogibus uerbis suis persuādēret.
- Allobrogēs, quippe quī praemia bellī magna fore arbitrārentur, rem diū cōsiderābant.
- sed lēgātī tandem sēserunt fore ut opibus ciuitātis Rōmānae facillimē uincerentur
- igitur Allobrogum lēgātī Cicerōnī omnia nārrāuerunt, quō maius auxilium ciuitātī suae ferrent.

150 Ablative absolute

You have already seen (109, 120⁶) how Latin likes to put a noun with another noun, adjective or present participle in the ablative as a separate phrase in a sentence, e.g. *Verre praetōre* 'with Verres as praetor', *Cleomenē ebriō* 'with Cleomenes drunk', *Cleomenē pōtante* 'with Cleomenes drinking'.

The most common usage, however, is to put the noun with a *past participle*, e.g.

nāuibis captis '(with) the ships having been captured'
hominibus interfectis '(with) the men having been killed'

151 Past (perfect) participle passive

The past (or perfect) participle of deponent verbs is *active* in meaning, e.g. *morātus* 'having delayed', *locūtus* 'having spoken' etc. (Cf. *locūtus sum* 'I have spoken'.)

The past (or perfect) participle of all other verbs is *passive* in meaning, e.g. *amātus* 'having been loved', *audītus* 'having been heard', *factus* 'having been made', *captus* 'having been captured' etc. (Cf. *captus sum* 'I have been captured'.) Like deponents, they act as 1/2 adjectives (*amāt-us a um*) in agreeing with the person or thing 'having been —ed' and in describing action prior to the main verb. But they are most frequently used predicatively (see 77). E.g.

mulieris amatae 'of the woman having-been-loved', 'of the woman when she had been loved'
lēgātī audītī 'the ambassadors having-been-heard', 'the ambassadors after they had been heard'
nāuis capta 'the ship having-been captured', 'the ship after it had been captured'

Watch out for this usage in the ablative absolute construction, e.g.

nāue captā '(with) the ship having been captured'
uirō necātō '(with) the man having been killed'
signō uīsō '(with) the signal having been seen'

This style of ablative absolute construction is very common indeed in Latin. Since it is not very common in English, it is best not to settle for a wholly literal translation. Try the following suggestions:

signō uīsō, coniūrātōrēs fūgērunt (lit.) 'with the signal having been seen, the conspirators fled'

This can be translated as

'Because/when/after they saw the signal, the conspirators fled'

'The conspirators saw the signal and fled'

'The signal was seen and the conspirators fled'

'After/when/because the signal was seen, the conspirators fled'

Notes

- 1 Sometimes 'although' will be the best translation for an abl. abs., e.g. *militibus captīs, Catilīna tamen pugnābat* 'though the soldiers were taken, Catiline fought on'. As with *cum* = 'although' and *quī* = 'although', some word for 'nevertheless' (*tamen, nihilōminus* etc.) will often be found. Cf. *exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit* 'though only a small part of the summer remained, Caesar hastened to set out for Britain' (Caesar)
- 2 The construction is called 'absolute' (*absoluō absolutus* 'having been released': note the passive past participle!) because the phrase does not appear to be integral to its clause, since it qualifies neither subject nor object – it seems to stand all alone, 'released' from its surroundings.
- 3 Cf. *uice uersā* '(with) the position turned/changed'; *pollice uersō* '(with) the thumb turned' (up to indicate death, the evidence suggests).

Exercises

- 1 Form the perfect participle passive of these verbs and translate them: *dimitto, requiro, opprimo, aperio, simulo, considero, frango, obsideo, existimo, sollicito*, (optional: *quaero, peto, tollō, agito, mando, paro, narro, efficio, moueo, interficio*)
- 2 Say which of these perfect participles are deponent and which passive (translating each example): *adiunctus, questus, profectus, impeditus, adeptus, locutus, nixus, conuocatus, prohibitus, collocatus, adlocutus, mortuus, abiectus, actus, perfectus*, (optional: *repulsus, secutus, positus, cultus, solitus, relictus, ausus, uetitus, mentitus, occisus, expectatus, uisus, iratus, passus, acceptus*).
- 3 Translate these ablative absolute phrases (at first use the pattern 'with x having been —ed'):

- (a) *coniūratiōne paratā.*
- (b) *his rebus narrātis.*
- (c) *conuocātis militibus.*
- (d) *exercitū collocātō.*
- (e) *datō signō.*
- (f) *simulātō studiō.*
- (g) *hostibus oppressis.*
- (h) *praemiis cōsideratis.*
- (i) *interfectis parentibus.*
- (j) *paucis dimissis.*

- 4 Translate these sentences. Say whether the ablative absolute is better regarded as temporal ('when — had been —ed'), causal ('because — had been —ed'), or concessive ('although — had been —ed'):

- (a) *Catilinā ex urbe egressō Lentulus nouos socios petēbat.*
- (b) *lēgātis Allobrogum Rōmae manentibus Vmbrēnus ā sociō quōdam uocātus est.*
- (c) *Vmbrēnus, Gabiniō uocātō quō maior auctoritās sermōni inesset, cōsiliū aperuit.*
- (d) *cōsiliō apertō, nōminātis sociis, Vmbrēnus tamen Allobrogibus persuādere nōn poterat ut coniūrātōrēs fierent.*
- (e) *Cicerō cōsiliō cognitō coniūrātōrēs quam maximē manifestōs habere uolēbat.*
- (f) *bene facta male locūta¹ male facta arbitror. (Ennius)*
- (g) *nihil est simul inuentum et perfectum. (Cicero)*

¹ *locūta* 'spoken of', 'described'. (For passive usage of deponent past participle see Reference Grammar C4 Note 2)

English-Latin

- 1 Translate these clauses into Latin, using ablative absolute with past participle:
 - (a) When all hope had been taken away . . .
 - (b) Although the soldiers had been sent away . . .
 - (c) Because allies had been sought out . . .
 - (d) Once things had been pondered . . .
 - (e) Although a reward had been given . . .
 - (f) If the city had been besieged . . .

- 2 Reread the text of 5B(i)–(ii), then translate this passage:

Umbrenus led the ambassadors of the Allobroges out of the forum into a certain person's house. Next he called Gabinius, a man of great

weight, so as to persuade them more quickly. When Gabinius had been¹ called, Umbrenus persuaded the ambassadors to promise their aid. But they had not yet decided to join the conspiracy, inasmuch as they thought that they would be defeated² by the resources of the Roman state. Finally, they revealed the whole matter to Sanga. When Cicero had found out the plan¹ via Sanga, he instructed the Allobroges to feign enthusiasm, so that he might more easily capture the conspirators

¹ Use ablative absolute

² Use *fore ut* + subjunctive ('that it would turn out that . . .')

Virgil's Aeneid

Aeneas, welcomed warmly into Carthage by the queen Dido (who is slowly falling in love with him) is encouraged to tell the story of the destruction of his homeland Troy. Here Aeneas describes how the wooden horse was brought into the city – and laments the blindness of the Trojans.

dīuidimus mūrōs et moenia pandimus urbis.
accingunt omnēs operī pedibusque rotārum
subiciunt lāpsūs, et stuppea uincula collō
intendunt; scandit fātālis māchina mūrōs
fēta armīs. puerī circum innūptaeque puellae 5
sacra canunt fūnemque manū contingere gaudent;
illa subit mediaeque mināns inlābitur urbī.
ō patria, ō dīuum domus Ilium et incluta bellō
moenia Dardanidum! quater ipsō in limine portae
substitit atque uterō sonitum quater arma dedēre; 10
īnstāmus tamen immemorēs caecīque furōre
et mōnstrum infēlix sacrātā sistimus arce.

tunc etiam fātis aperit Cassandra futuris
ōra deī iussū nōn unquam crēdita Teueris.
nōs delūbra deum miserī, quibus ultimus
die dīs, festā uelāmus fronde per urbem.

Even at this last moment Cassandra opened her lips to prophesy the future, but the gods had ordained that those lips were never believed by Trojans. This was the last day for a doomed people, and we spent it adorning the shrines of the gods throughout the city with festal garlands.

(Aeneid 2.234–49)

dīuidō 3 I open up
mūr-us ī 2m. wall
moenia moeni-um 3n. pl. buildings
[Nom. or acc.? Wait]
pandō 3 I reveal, disclose
urbis [Gen., so must qualify moenia]
accingō 3 I get ready for (+ dat.)
pedibusque [-que shows another clause/
phrase, so hold 'and something to
do with feet in the dat./abl.']
rot-a ae 1f. wheel [Can this be 'feet of
the wheels'? Seems unlikely]
subiciō 3/4 I place x (acc.) under y
(dat.) [Are pedibus y?]
lāps-us ūs 4m. slipping [So: 'they place
slippings under the feet'. Can
rotārum construe with 'slippings', i.e.
'they place slippings of wheels under
the feet'? But under whose feet?
Ans.: the feet of whatever is coming
into Troy. In other words
What might 'slippings of wheels'
mean?]
stuppe-us a um made of tow [Hold case
possibilities]
uincul-um ī 2n. halter, rope [Solves
stuppea: n. pl., nom. or acc. Which?
Wait. 'And something about tow
halters']
coll-um ī 2n. neck [Must be 'on the
neck' (dat.)]
intendō 3 I stretch, draw tight x (acc.)
on(to) y (dat.) [Solves it]
scandō 3 I climb [What climbs? Wait]
fātāl-is e deadly
māchin-a ae 1f. device, siege-engine
[Subject]
5 fēt-us a um pregnant with (+ abl.)
[Agreeing with what?]
puerī [Probably subject, but hold]
circum around about
innūpt-us a um unwed
sacra [Cannot agree with 'boys and
girls', whatever else it agrees with]
canō 3 I sing [So 'boys and girls
sing . . . ~ perhaps sacra. What
gender and case is sacra?]

fīnis fīn-is 3m. rope ['And something
to do with a rope in the acc.']
contingō 3 I touch [Infinitive. Why?]
gaudeō 2 I rejoice, delight (to) [Solves
the infinitive]
illa [Change of subject. illa is f. – so
what does it refer to?]
subeō I come up
mediaeque ['and something about the
middle'; numerous case possibilities.
Wait for agreement]
mināns [Something in the nom
'threatening'. Presumably illa is
threatening. minor takes a dat. – is
there one about? Not yet . . .]
inlābor 3 dep. I slide in, slip into
(+ dat.)
urbī [Ah! Dat., and f., so what agrees
with it?]
patri-a ae 1f. fatherland
dīuum = dīuōrum 'of the gods'
Ili-um ī 2n. Troy
inclut-us a um famous [But famous
what? Wait]
bellō [Perhaps shows you in what
whatever-it-is is famous, i.e. 'famous
in war']
moenia moeni-um 3n. pl. walls, town
[Solves it]
Dardanid-ae 1m. pl. (gen. Dardanidum)
Trojans
quater four times
limen limin-is 3n. threshold
port-a ae 1f. gate(way)
10 subsistō 3 substiti I stop, halt [What
must the subject be?]
uter-us ī 2m. belly, womb [Case?
Hold]
sonit-us ūs 4m. sound [Register case]
arma [Subject? Object? Probably
subject, since sonitum must be obj.
So the weapons do something to a
sound. H'm]
dedēre = dedērunt [Of course, that's what
they do to the sound! This should
now solve uterō]
īnstō 1 I press on

immemor immemor-is mindless(ly), forgetful
caec-us a um blind
furor furor-is 3m. madness [Dependent on *caeci*?]
mōnstr-um ī 2n. monster [Subject or object? Hold]

infelix (n.s.) catastrophic, ill-boding
sacrāt-us a um sacred [Register case.
 Can you solve it yet? No]
sistō 3 I bring to a halt [Solves
mōnstrum infelix]
arce [Solves *sacrātā*]

Section 5C

Running vocabulary for 5C(i)

ad hoc in addition
aliter otherwise
breuī (sc. tempore) shortly, soon
Cass-us ī 2m. L. Cassius
 Longinus
cūctor 1 dep. I delay, hesitate (+ inf)
eō to that place (i.e. to the Allobroges' territory)
exempl-um ī 2n copy

impellō 3 I drive to, persuade
infim-us a um lowest
infra below
item likewise
iūs iurandum iur-is iurand-ī (3n. + 1/2 adj.) oath
mandāt-um ī 2n. order
nē + subj. don't
perferō perferre 1 carry to
praecept-um ī 2n instruction

prius quam before (+ subj)
propius nearer
repudiō 1 I reject
signāt-us a um sealed (signō)
societās societāt-is 3f alliance
T = Titō Tit-us ī 2m Titus
Vulturci-us ī 2m. Titus Vultureius

Notes

- l. 103 *quod . . . perferant*: note mood of verb (*quī + subj.* expressing purpose).
- l. 104 *fore ut*: assume a verb of saying before this, 'they said'.
- l. 105 *uentūrum*: *esse* has been suppressed.
- l. 111 *intellegās*: subjunctive 'you should understand', 'understand'.
- l. 112 *cōsiderēs*: subjunctive 'you should consider', 'consider'. *petās*: subjunctive 'you should seek', 'seek'.
- l. 115 *accipiās*: subjunctive 'you should take on', 'take on'. *proficīscāris*: subjunctive 'you should set out', 'set out'.

Learning vocabulary for 5C(i)

Nouns

exempl-um ī 2n. copy, example

iūs iurandum iur-is iurand-ī (3n. + 1/2 adj.) oath

Verbs

cūctor 1 dep. I delay, hesitate (+ inf)

Others

breuī shortly, soon (sc. tempore)

eō to that place
item likewise

propius nearer

Running vocabulary for 5C(ii)

citō quickly
cohortor 1 dep. I encourage
comitāt-us iūs 4m. retinue
cūct-us a um the whole (of)
deprehendō 3 I capture, arrest
dēsērō 3 dēsērui dēsertus 1 desert

diffidō 3 I distrust, despair of (+ dat)
ēdoct-us a um having been informed (of x: acc.)
exorior 4 dep. *exortus 1* arise
Gall-ī ōrum 2m. pl. the Gauls
gladi-us ī 2m. sword
itum est 'they went' (pf. pass. of *eō*) [see note]

militār-is e military
Mulv-us a um Mulvian
occultē secretly, in hiding
pōns pont-is 3m. bridge
sicut as
sicutī just as
timid-us a um frightened
tradō 3 I hand over
tumult-us iūs 4m. noise
velut as, just as

Notes

- l. 117 *quā proficīscerentur*: note mood of verb (*quī + subj.* indicating purpose.)
- l. 118 *cūcta ēdoctus*: verbs which take two accusatives in the active (like *doceō* 'I teach x y') often retain one of them in the passive: here it expresses the thing taught.
- l. 120 *itum est*: lit. 'it was gone'; tr. 'they went', 'there was a general movement to the bridge'.
- l. 121 *praeceptum erat*: note the gender of the part.
- l. 122 *ad id locī*: 'to that place' (cf. *quid cōsili*).

Learning vocabulary for 5C(ii)

Nouns

gladi-us ī 2m. sword
pons pont-is 3m. bridge

Pronouns

quis who
quid what

Adjectives

militār-is e military
timid-us a um frightened,
 fearful

Verbs

hortor 1 dep 1
 encourage, exhort (con-
 + hortor)

exorior 4 dep. *exortus* 1
 arise (*ex* + *orior*)

tradō 3 *trādidi* *trāditus* 1
 hand over; hand down,
 relate (*trāns* + *dō*)

Others

sicuti or *sicut* (just) as
velut as, just as

Running vocabulary for 5C(iii)

aduocō 1 1 summon
afferre = *adferre*
anxi-us a um worried,
 anxious

committō 3 *commisi* 1
 commit

Concordi-a ae 1f. Concord
cōficiō 3/4 *cōfēcī* *cōfectus*
 1 finish

cōstāns *cōstant-is*
 resolute, steady
cōstanti-a ae 1f.

resolution, steadiness
decei it is fitting (for x
 acc. to do y inf.)

declārō 1 1 declare, report
dēdecorī est it is a disgrace
 (to x dat.)

dederō 'I shall have given'
 [Tr. 'I gave'] (fut. pf.
 of *dō*)

dēprehendō 3 *dēprehendi*
dēprehēsus 1 catch,
 detect

eōdem to the same place
ēripio 3/4 *ēripui* *ēreptus* 1
 rescue x (acc.) from y
 (dat.)

Flacc-us ī 2m. L. Valerius
 Flaccus

interfecti erunt '(they) will
 have been killed' [Tr.
 '(they) are killed'] (fut.
 pf. pass. of *interficiō*)

intrōducō 3 1 bring in, lead
 in

iussū by the order (of x
 gen.)

laetor 1 dep 1 rejoice, am
 happy

nihilōminus nevertheless
noceō 2 1 harm (+ dat.)

occupō 1 1 seize
oneri est it is a burden (to
 x dat.)

paenitet 2: *mē* *paenitet* 1
 regret (x gen.)

patefaciō 3/4 *patefēcī*
patefactus 1 reveal,
 expose

perducō 3 1 lead

poen-a ae 1f. penalty

porrō furthermore, besides

postulāterō 'I shall have
 demanded' [Tr. 'I
 demand'] (fut. perf. of
postulō)

praebeō 2 1 show (*mē*
 myself [to be] y acc.)

praepōnō 3 1 put x (acc.)
 before y (dat.)

properē hastily
pūniō 4 1 punish
pūniti erunt 'they will
 have been punished'
 [Tr. 'they are
 punished'] (fut. pf.
 pass. of *pūniō*)
quod si but if

saltem at least
sententi-a ae 1f. opinion
servāverō 'I shall have
 saved' (fut. pf. of *servō*)
uocāuerimus 'we shall have
 called' [Tr. 'we call']
 (fut. pf. of *uocō*)

Notes

ll. 134–5 *si eīs ā nobīs parcātur, magnō sit rēi pūblicaē dēdecorī*: remember
 the rule for *si* + pres. subj. (if x were to happen, y would happen). *eīs ā*
nobīs parcātur: *parcō* takes dative in active forms; in passive 'it' is the
 subject; *eīs* the people to be spared, *ā nobīs* the agent (the people
 sparing). *dēdecorī* is further defined by *magnō*.

l. 136 *noceātur*: passive of a verb which takes dative object in active. 'It' is
 subject (cf. *parcātur*), *rēi pūblicaē* the thing to be harmed

l. 141–2 *ut huius cōstantiae mē unquam paeniteat*: *mē* *paenitet* = I regret,
 taking a genitive of what is regretted.

Learning vocabulary for 5C(iii)

Nouns

poen-a ae 1f. penalty
sententi-a ae 1f. opinion,
 judgement, sentence,
 maxim

Verbs

committō 3 *commisi*
commisus 1 commit
cōficiō 3/4 *cōfēcī* *cōfectus*
 1 finish

ēripio 3/4 *ēripui* *ēreptus* 1
 snatch away, rescue (x
 acc. from y dat.)

Others

iussū by the order (of x:
 gen.)

noceō 2 1 harm (+ dat.)
occupō 1 1 seize
patefaciō 3/4 *patefēcī*
patefactus 1 reveal,
 expose, throw open

praebeō 2 1 show, display
 (myself to be x
mē + acc. adj. or noun)
pūniō 4 1 punish

nihilōminus nevertheless

porrō besides, moreover

Predicative dative phrases

dedecorū est it is a disgrace (for x: dat.) *onerī est* it is a burden (to x: dat.)

Grammar and exercises for 5C**152 Jussive subjunctives**

Jussive subjunctives (*iubeō iussus* 'ordered') are so called because the subjunctive in these cases acts as an imperative (cf. on specific usages of the subjunctive 138). A subjunctive in this sense stands on its own as the main verb of a sentence (it is thus an 'independent' use), e.g.

(1st pl.) *audiāmus* 'let us listen'; *interficiāmus* 'let us kill'; *eāmus* 'let's go'

(2nd s./pl.) *accipiās* 'please welcome', 'welcome!', 'see that you welcome' (often used in poetry)

(3rd s./pl.) *fiat* 'let there become' 'may there be' (cf. *fiat lux* 'let there be light' (Genesis))

Cf. phrases very often used in English: *habeās corpus* 'you may have the body'; *caueat emptor* 'let the buyer beware'; *stet* 'let it stand'

Notes

1 When a jussive subjunctive occurs in a question, it is known as 'deliberative' (from *dēliberō* 1 'I weigh carefully', 'consider'), e.g.

quid scribam? 'What am I to write?' (Plautus)

utrum Karthāgō diruatur . . . ? 'Should Carthage be destroyed . . . ?' (Cicero)

quid ego faciam? maneam aut abeam? 'What should (shall) I do? Should (shall) I stay, or leave?' (Plautus)

In these circumstances, the negative is *nōn*. The imperfect subjunctive indicates past time here, e.g.

'nōn ego illī argentum redderem?' *'nōn redderēs.'* 'Shouldn't I have paid the money to him?' 'You shouldn't have paid it.' (Plautus)

2 The negative for jussives is *nē*, e.g. *nē ueniant* 'let them not come'.

Exercises**1 Translate:**

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| (a) <i>abeās.</i> | (g) <i>ueniat.</i> |
| (b) <i>commorēmur.</i> | (h) <i>abeāmus.</i> |
| (c) <i>maneāmus.</i> | (i) <i>quid dicerem?</i> |
| (d) <i>nē querātur.</i> | (j) <i>quid dīcam?</i> |
| (e) <i>nē praemium requirant.</i> | (k) <i>quid faceret?</i> |
| (f) <i>nē frūstrā moriāmur</i> | |

2 Translate these sentences:

- (a) *moriāmur et in media arma ruāmus.* (Virgil)
 (b) *uiuāmus, mea Lesbia, atque amēmus.* (Catullus)
 (c) *nē difficilia optēmus.* (Cicero)
 (d) *cautus sis, mī Tīrō.* (Cicero)
 (e) *faciāmus hominem ad imāginem et similitūdinem nostram et praesit piscibus maris . . .* (Genesis)
 (f) *et dixit Deus: 'fiat lux!' et lux facta est.* (Genesis)
 (g) *dixit quoque Deus: 'fiat firmamentum in mediō aquarum et diuidat aquas ab aquis.'* (Genesis)
 (h) *sapiās, uīna liquēs, et spatiō breuī spem longam resecēs.* (Horace)
 (i) *quid faciat?*¹ *pugnet? uincētur fēmina pugnāns. clāmet? at in dextrā quī uetet, ēnsis erat.* (Ovid)
 (j) *haec cum uidērem, quid agerem, iūdicēs?* (Cicero)

¹ The subject of the verbs *faciat*, *pugnet*, *clāmet* is 'she'

ruō 3 I rush

optō 1 I wish for

caut-us a um careful (perf. participle of *caueō*)

imāgō *imāgin-is* 3f. image

similitudō *similitudin-is* 3f. likeness

piscis *pisc-is* 3m. fish

firmament-um 1 2n. prop. firmament

dīuīdō 3 I divide

sapiō 3/4 I am sensible

uīn-um 1 2n. wine

liquō 1 I strain

spati-um 1 2n. space, distance

resecō 1 I cut back, prune

dextr-a ae 1f. right hand

quī + subj. expressing purpose

ēnsis *ēns-is* 3m. sword

153 Subjunctives expressing wishes and possibility

There are two other independent uses of the subjunctive.

1 Expressing wishes

This usage is often marked by *utinam* (negative *utinam nē*). The tenses are used as for conditions (see S2(c)).

Present is used to express a wish for the FUTURE, e.g.

ualeant cūes meī! 'May my fellow-citizens fare well!' (Cicero)

Imperfect is used to express a wish for the PRESENT (see also Note), e.g.

illud utinam nē uērē scriberem 'Would that I were not writing this in all truth' (Cicero)

Pluperfect is used to express a regret about what happened (or did not happen) in the PAST, e.g.

utinam susceptus nōn essem 'I wish I'd never been reared!' (Cicero)

NB. Imperfect subjunctive, as with conditionals and jussives, sometimes refers to the past. See 139³, 152¹

2 Expressing possibility – the 'potential' subjunctive (cf. 138)

The range of expressions covers much of what is expressed in English by 'may/might', 'can/could', 'should' and 'would'. In 1st s. we have:

uelim 'I would like'

nōlim 'I would not like'

mālim 'I would prefer'

These are commonly followed by another subjunctive, e.g.

uelim adsīs 'I should like you to be here'

Other 1st s. expressions are

ausim 'I would dare' (from *audeō*; normal subjunctive *audeam*)

possim 'I would be able'

(Note the imperfect *uellem* 'I would have wished' etc.)

2nd s. is used in 'generalising' statements, e.g.

(present) *haud inueniās* 'you (=one) may scarcely find'

(imperfect) *crēderēs* 'you (=one) would have believed'

3rd s. expressions include, e.g.

(present) *dīcat aliquis* 'someone may say' (Livy) (see 171)

(imperfect) *quis arbitrārētur* 'who would have thought . . .?' (Cicero)

Exercise

Translate.

(a) *uellem mē ad cēnam inuitāssēs*¹. (Cicero)

(b) *putārēsne umquam accidere posse ut mihi uerba dēessent?* (Cicero)

(c) *utinam populus Rōmānus ūnam ceruicem*² *habēret.* (Caligula)

¹ I invite
² neck

154 Impersonal verbs: active

These impersonal verbs appear *only in the 3rd person singular active*, but in any tense (present, future, imperfect, perfect etc.) in indicative or subjunctive. They also possess an infinitive form, so that they can appear in accusative and infinitive constructions.

You have already met (88.5) *licet licēre licuit* (or *licitum est*) 'it is permitted to x (dat.) to y (inf.)', e.g.

illīs licuit exīre 'it was permitted to them to leave', 'they were allowed to leave'

and *placet placēre placuit* (or *placitum est*) 'it is pleasing to x (dat.) to y (inf.)', e.g.

mihi placēbit sequī 'it will be pleasing for me to follow', 'I shall vote to follow'

negat sibi placuisse hoc dīcere 'he denies that it was pleasing (lit. 'it to have been pleasing') to him to say this', 'he denies that he voted to say this'

and (4B(iii)) *oportet oportēre oportuit* 'it is right/proper for x (acc.) to y (inf.)' 'x should/ought', e.g.

mē oportuit abīre 'it was right for me to leave', 'I ought to have left'

Now learn the following, some of which take a slightly different construction

decet decēre decuit 'it is fitting for x (acc.) to y (inf.)'

dēdecet dēdecēre dēdecuit 'it is unseemly for x (acc.) to y (inf.)'

paenitet paenitēre paenituit 'it repents x (acc.) of y (gen.)' or 'it repents x (acc.) to y (inf.)' (i.e. 'x regrets / is dissatisfied with y')

miseret miserēre miseruit 'it moves x (acc.) to pity at/for y (gen.)'
pudet pudēre puduit 'it moves x (acc.) to shame for y (gen.)' (i.e. 'x is ashamed at/for y')

libet libēre libuit (or *libitum est*) 'it is pleasing/agreeable for x (dat.) to y (inf.)' 'x chooses to'

Examples of these are:

uōs decēbit nihil dīcere 'it will be fitting for you to say nothing'
tē dēdecet audīre 'it is unseemly for you to hear'

eōs paenituit illius uerbī 'it repented them of that word', 'they regretted that word'

tē paenitēbit hoc facere 'it will repent you to do this', 'you will repent/regret doing this'

hominēs miseruit poenae 'it moved the men to pity at the punishment', 'the men were moved to pity / felt sorry at the punishment'

mē eius miseret 'it moves me to pity for him', 'I feel sorry for him'
miseret tē aliōrum, tuī tē nec miseret nec pudet 'you feel sorry for others, but for yourself you have neither pity nor shame' (Plautus)

libet mihi tē accusāre 'it is pleasing to me to accuse you', 'I want to accuse you', 'I choose to accuse you'

NB. Differentiate *licet* 'it is permitted' (cf. licence) from *libet* 'it is agreeable' (cf. libidinous; *ad lib.* = *ad libitum* 'to the point that pleases').

Exercises

1 Translate into English:

- mē decet hanc sententiam dīcere.*
- abīre tē oportēbat.*
- lēgātis placuit studium coniūratiōnis simulāre*
- Lentulum illius iūris iūrāndī paenitēbit.*
- omnibus licet spem habēre.*
- nōn omnibus eadem placent.* (Pliny)

2 Translate into Latin.

- I regret my enthusiasm for the conspiracy
- Catiline decided to leave Rome.
- You may complain
- You (pl.) ought to hand yourselves over to the consul.
- It is fitting for a man to die in battle

155 Impersonal verbs: passive

Verbs which control any other case than the plain accusative (such as e.g. *parcō* (+ dat.) 'I spare') only occur in the passive in the 3rd person singular, e.g.

mihi parcēbātur lit. 'it was being spared to me', i.e. 'I was being spared', 'clemency was being extended to me'

eīs nocētur lit. 'it is being harmed to them', i.e. 'they are being harmed', 'harm is being done to them'

eī nōn crēdētur lit. 'it will not be trusted to him', i.e. 'he will not be trusted', 'there will be no trust extended to him'

Hint: when a verb controlling the dative appears in the passive, LOOK FOR THE DATIVE TO BE THE SUBJECT

Notes

- Note the common impersonal passive idiom with verbs of 'going' and 'coming' to denote general movement, e.g.

ītur lit. 'it is being gone', i.e. 'people are going'

itum est lit. 'it was gone', i.e. 'people went'

uentum est lit. 'it has been come', i.e. 'there has been an arrival'

- There is a passive impersonal infinitive, for use in accusative and infinitive constructions, e.g.

dixit militibus imperārī lit. 'he said it to be being ordered to the soldiers', i.e. 'he said that orders were being given to the soldiers', 'he said that the soldiers were being given their orders'

nescit fūmīnāe fauūm esse lit. 'he does not know it to have been favoured to the woman', i.e. 'he does not know that the woman was favoured / given support'

See 149 for futures, where *fore ut* is always used.

- 3 The *agent* (person by whom the action of the passive verb is done) is expressed, as usual, by *ā/ab* + *abl.* e.g.

ā militibus mihi crēditum est 'I was believed by the soldiers'

Exercises

1 Translate into English

- concurritur. (*Horace*)
- diū pugnātum est.
- ad forum uentum est
- itur ad arma
- tibi nōn crēditum est
- ā nōbīs nōn parcētur labōrī.¹ (*Cicero*)
- comur. tōribus ciuitātī nocēbitur
- nōbīs imperātum est, ut in proelium inirēmus
- cibus, somnus,² hīdō – per hunc circulum³ curritur.⁴ (*Seneca*)

¹ *labur* *labōr*-is 3m work toil

² *somn*-us ī 2m sleep

³ *circul*-us ī 2m unending cycle

⁴ *currō* 3 I run continue, go on

2 Translate into Latin

- Fighting is going on.
- There was a rush.
- You (s.) will not be spared.
- Catiline was not believed by Cicero.
- An instruction had been given to Lentulus

156 Future perfect indicative active 'I shall have —ed'

	1	2	3
	'I shall have loved'	'I shall have had'	'I shall have said'
1st s.	amāu-er-ō (amārō etc.)	habu-er-ō	dix-er-ō
2nd s.	amāu-eris	habu-eris	dix-eris
3rd s.	amāu-erit	habu-erit	dix-erit
1st pl.	amāu-erimus	habu-erimus	dix-erimus
2nd pl.	amāu-eritis	habu-eritis	dix-eritis
3rd pl.	amāu-erint	habu-erint	dix-erint

	4	3/4
	'I shall have heard'	'I shall have captured'
1st s.	audiu-er-ō (audiero etc.)	cep-er-ō
2nd s.	audiu-eris	cep-eris
3rd s.	audiu-erit	ceperit
1st pl.	audiu-erimus	cep-erimus
2nd pl.	audiu-eritis	cep-eritis
3rd pl.	audiu-erint	cep-erint

Notes

- 1 The fut. perf. means 'I shall have —ed'. It is often best translated into English either as the plain present or as the plain perfect ('I have —ed'), because English does not express the strict temporal relationship between two future events, one of which is prior to the other, as Latin usually does, e.g.

ubi cōsulēs uocauerō, sententiam dicam 'When I (shall) have called the consuls, I shall speak my mind'

nisi pūnītī erunt, rēi pūblicae nocēbō 'unless they are (= shall have been) punished, I shall be hurting the republic'

- 2 The future perfect active is formed by taking the stem of the 3rd p.p. and adding: -erō -eris -erit -erimus -eritis -erint. Note that the normal active personal endings (-ō, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt) are used.
- 3 Note the alternative forms of 1st and 4th conjugation *amārō* and *audierō*, where -u- has been dropped. This also occurs with some other verbs, e.g. *dēlērō* = *dēlēuerō*.

157 Future perfect indicative deponent 'I shall have —ed'

	1	2	3
	'I shall have threatened'	'I shall have promised'	'I shall have spoken'
1st s.	mināt-us a um érō	pollicit-us a um érō	locūt-us a um érō
2nd s.	mināt-us a um éris	pollicit-us a um éris	locūt-us a um éris
3rd s.	mināt-us a um érit	pollicit-us a um érit	locūt-us a um érit
1st pl.	mināt-ī ae a érimus	pollicit-ī ae a érimus	locūt-ī ae a érimus
2nd pl.	mināt-ī ae a éritis	pollicit-ī ae a éritis	locūt-ī ae a éritis
3rd pl.	mināt-ī ae a érint	pollicit-ī ae a érint	locūt-ī ae a érint
	4	3/4	
	'I shall have lied'	'I shall have advanced'	
1st s.	mentit-us a um érō	prōgrēss-us a um érō	
2nd s.	mentit-us a um éris	prōgrēss-us a um éris	
3rd s.	mentit-us a um érit	prōgrēss-us a um érit	

1st pl.	mentīt-ī ac a érimus	prōgrēss-ī ac a érimus
2nd pl.	mentīt-ī ac a éritis	prōgrēss-ī ac a éritis
3rd pl.	mentīt-ī ac a érunť	prōgrēss-ī ac a érunť

NB. The future perfect deponent is formed by taking the stem of the perfect participle, adding the appropriate endings -us -a -um etc. to agree with the subject, and adding *erō eris erit erimus eritis erunt*, the future of *sum*

158 Future perfect indicative passive 'I shall have been —ed'

	1	2	3
	'I shall have been loved'	'I shall have been held'	'I shall have been said'
1st s.	amāt-us érō	hābit-us érō	dict-us érō
2nd s.	amāt-us éris	hābit-us éris	dict-us éris
3rd s.	amāt-us érit	hābit-us érit	dict-us érit
1st pl.	amāt-ī érimus	hābit-ī érimus	dict-ī érimus
2nd pl.	amāt-ī éritis	hābit-ī éritis	dict-ī éritis
3rd pl.	amāt-ī érunť	hābit-ī érunť	dict-ī érunť
	4	3/4	
	'I shall have been heard'	'I shall have been captured'	
1st s.	audīt-us érō	cāpt-us érō	
2nd s.	audīt-us éris	cāpt-us éris	
3rd s.	audīt-us érit	cāpt-us érit	
1st pl.	audīt-ī érimus	cāpt-ī érimus	
2nd pl.	audīt-ī éritis	cāpt-ī éritis	
3rd pl.	audīt-ī érunť	cāpt-ī érunť	

NB. For formation of the future perfect indicative passive, see note on future perfect deponent (above) 157.

Exercises

- Form and conjugate these verbs in the future perfect tense (where 'passive' is written, give active and passive — give deponent and passive in *m.* form). *cūctor*, *trādō*, *occupō* (passive), *ēripiō*, *praebeō*, *committō* (passive), *exorior*, *sum*, (optional: *cohortor*, *pūniō* (passive), *nōlō*, *adeō*, *patefaciō* (passive), *ūtor*, *patior*, *noceō*).
- Translate these future perfects, then change *s.* to *pl.* or vice versa: *mōuerit*, *infueritis*, *parāta erit*, *conuocātī erunt*, *putāuerint*, *cōnātus eris*.

impediūerimus, *uīxerō*, *exorta erunt*, *potuerint*, (optional: *adiūnxerit*, *mandāuerimus*, *agitātus erit*, *petiuerint*, *nārrāta erunt*, *recordātus eris*, *prohibuerō*, *simulātum erit*, *profectī eritis*, *questa erit*).

- Give the Latin for: I shall have lived; he will have attacked; they will have thought; she will have been sought out; it will have seemed; you (*pl.*) will have handed over; they will have been seized; you (*s.*) will have punished; (optional: it will have arisen; they will have hesitated; I shall have rescued; it will have been revealed; she will have committed; we will have finished; you (*pl.*) will have besieged; they (*n.*) will have been broken)
- Locate and translate the future perfects in this list (say which tense the others are): *cupiueram*, *cohortātī erunt*, *parāuerās*, *pūnīta eris*, *seruāuissent*, *ērepta erit*, *imperāuistī*, *exortī eritis*, *trādīdistis*, *uocāuerātis*, *nocuerō*, *cōnsiderāuerit*, *liberāuimus*, *cūctāta esset*, *praeberit*, *questus erō*, *aperuistis*, *nārrāuerunt*, *simulāuerint*, *requīsīuit*, *adierimus*, *aggressus esset*, *efflēcērit*, *uīsum erat*
- Translate these sentences
 - nisi cōsulibus Rōmānōs in periculō esse nūntiāuerimus, coniūrātōrēs rem pūblicam occupābunt.*
 - cōsul ubi ciuīs malōs pūniuerit, omnibus nūntiābit rem pūblicam saluam esse.*
 - sī coniūrātōrēs in templum Concordiae ire iusserō, illī nōn cūctābuntur*
 - paucīs diēbus illī interfectī erunt*
 - ubi coniūrātōrēs occīsī erunt, Cicerōnī poena eōrum onerī erit.*
 - nisi cōstituerit cōsul fore ut coniūrātōrēs necentur, ciuitās in magnō periculō erit*
 - sapiētī¹ nōn nocētur ā paupertāte,² nōn ā dolōre.³ (Seneca)*

¹ *sapiēns* *sapiēt-is* 3m. wise man

² *paupertās* *paupertāt-is* 3f. poverty

³ *dolor* *dolōr-is* 3m. pain

159 Numerals: cardinal 11–90 and ordinal 1st–10th

Cardinal

11	XI	ūndecim
12	XII	duodecim
13	XIII	trēdecim
14	XIV	quattuordecim
15	XV	quīndecim

16	XVI	sēdecim
17	XVII	septēdecim
18	XVIII	duodēuigintī
19	XIX	ūndēuigintī
20	XX	uigintī
30	XXX	trīgintā
40	XL	quādrāgintā
50	L	quīnquāgintā
60	LX	sexāgintā
70	LXX	septuāgintā
80	LXXX	octōgintā
90	XC	nōnāgintā

Ordinal

1st	prīmus (prior)
2nd	secūndus (āter)
3rd	tērtius
4th	quārtus
5th	quīntus
6th	sēxtus
7th	sēptimus
8th	octāuus
9th	nōnus
10th	dēcimus etc.

Notes

- 1 Ordinals decline like *mult-us a um*.
 2 See 54 for cardinals 1–10, 100–1,000.

English–Latin

Reread the text of 5C(iii), then translate this passage into Latin:
 Cicero was seized by great anxiety¹. He therefore spoke to himself as follows: 'You should realise² that you have saved the state from danger. Do not hesitate to demand the death-penalty from the conspirators. If they are spared^{3,4} by you, the state will be harmed³. If Roman citizens are killed⁴ on the say-so of a consul, this death-penalty will be a burden on you. Nevertheless, you ought to be bold. I think that you won't regret⁵ this boldness. For you will have saved the state.'

¹ Turn the sentence into the active, with 'anxiety' as subject, 'Cicero' as object

² Use jussive subjunctive.

³ Remember that *noceō/paŕcō* take dative, so you must use impersonal passives here ('they' and 'the state' will be dative; 'by you' *ā* + abl.).

⁴ Use future perfect tense

⁵ Use *fore ut* + subjunctive.

Virgil's Aeneid

Aeneas, still telling the story of the fall of Troy, recounts how Achilles' son Pyrrhus (also called Neoptolemus) caught up with Troy's aged king Priam and slaughtered him at the very altar where he and his family had been taking refuge. His headless corpse now lies on the beach.

hic fātus senior tēlumque imbelles sine ictū
 coniecit, raucō quod prōtinus aere repulsum
 et summō chpeī nequiquam umbōne pependit
 cū Pyrrhus: 'referēs ergō haec et nuntius ībis
 Pēlidae genitōrī, illi mea tristia tacta
 dēgeneremque Neoptolemum nārrāre memento
 nunc morere.'

With these words the old man hurled his spear, but it did no damage. There was no strength in it. It rattled on the bronze of Pyrrhus' shield without penetrating, and hung there useless, sticking in the central boss on the surface of the shield. Pyrrhus then made his reply. 'In that case you will take this message from me and go with it to my dead father Achilles. Describe my cruelty to him and remember to tell him that Neoptolemus [= Pyrrhus] is a disgrace to his father. Now, die.'

hoc dīcēns altāria ad ipsa trementem
 trāxit et in multō lāpsantem sanguine nātī,
 implicuitque comam laeuā, dextrāque coruscum 10
 extulit ac laterī capulō tenuis abdidit ēnsem.
 haec finis Priamī fātōrum, hic exitus illum
 sorte tulit Trōiam incēnsam et prōlāpsa uidentem
 Pergama, tot quondam populis terrisque superbum
 rēgnātōrem Asiae. iacet ingēns lītore truncus, 15
 āuulsumque uimeris caput et sine nōmine corpus.

(Aeneid 2.544–58)

hoc dīcēns [Take together to solve hoc (n.) at once]
 altāri-um ī 2n. altar
 tremō 3 I tremble [With age not fear, here. Present participle in acc., so something or someone is 'trembling'. If no noun, 'the person trembling'. Await subject and verb]
 trahō 3 trāxī I drag [Solves trementem: and who is it who is 'trembling'?]
 in multō [But multō what? Wait]

lāpsō 1 I slip [Surely the same person as trementem]
 sanguine [Solves multō]
 nāt-us ī 2m. son [Priam's son Polites had just been killed by Neoptolemus]
 10 implicō implicū 1 I wrap x (acc.) in y (abl.)
 com-a ae 1f. hair
 laeu-a ae 1f. left hand
 dextr-a ae 1f. right hand

corusc-us a um gleaming [But what? 'something gleaming, nom. or acc.']
extulit [Probably what he does to whatever it is that is gleaming]
exferō 3 *extulī* I take out
latus later-is 3n. side [Register dative, wait]
caput-us ī 2m. hilt [Dat. or abl. Wait]
tenu (+abl.) as far as, right up to [Solves *capulo*]
abdō 3 *abdidī* I bury
ēnsis ēns-is 3m. sword [So 'he buried the sword right up to the hilt *laterī*': whose *laterī*? Can you now solve *coruscum*?]
finis fin-is 3f. end [Sc. *fuit*]
fāt-a ōrum 2n. pl. fate, destiny
exit-us ūs 4m. death
illum [Presumably Priam, in acc., Wait]
sort sort-is 3f. allocation, lot, fate [Hold]
tulit [So 'this death took him off *sorte*'. Meaning of *sorte*?]
Trōiam incēsam [What is this acc doing? The meaning appeared to be complete, but we now have an unaccountable acc., Be patient. 'Something about "burned Troy" in the acc.']
prōlābor 3 *prōlāpsus* I collapse, fall [Probably acc. pl. n., to complement *Trōiam* in the acc. So 'and something fallen']
videntem [Acc. s. m. At last! Who must this agree with? What does it solve?]

Pergam-a ōrum 2n. pl. the citadel of Troy [Solves *prōlāpsa*]
tot [Here we go again, when we thought the sense complete]
quondam once upon a time
populis terrisque [Probably with *tot* Hold dat. or abl.]
superb-us a um proud, splendid [Could this be acc. s. m. referring to Priam, who has just seen Troy burnt (etc.)? Wait]
15 *rēgnātor rēgnatōr-is* 3m. ruler [Acc. s. m., so *superbum rēgnatōrem* looks very much as if it does refer to Priam]
Asiae [Confirms the above]
iaceō 2 I lie [Who? Probably Priam . . . but wait. *ingēns* 'mighty Priam'? Wait]
litus litōr-is 3n. shore
trunc-us ī 2m. torso [Ah. 'He lies, a mighty torso, *litore*.' How did it get *litore*? One tradition held Priam was killed at Achilles' tomb on the shore, so Virgil has moved from palace to shore to accommodate it. There may be another reason: Pompey was beheaded on a beach in Egypt (see 6C(iii)). Virgil may be reminding his readers of that]
auellō 3 *auulsi auuls-us* I rip ['Something ripped']
umer-us ī 2m. shoulder [Abl., perhaps 'ripped from']

Deliciae Latinae

From the 'Life of Aurelian'

A ditty composed by fellow-soldiers of Aurelian (Emperor A.D. 270) on the basis of his exploits against the Sarmatians (before his principate). He was reported to have slain over 950 in the course of just a few days.

mille mille mille decollauimus.
 unus homo! mille decollauimus.
 mille bibat quī mille occidit.
 tantum uinī habet nemo, quantum fudit sanguinis.

mille 'a thousand men'
 (acc.)
 decollō I I behead,
 decapitate

tantum . . . quantum as
 much . . . as [cf. *satis*]
 nimis + gen. 31]
 uin-um ī 2n. wine

fundō 3 *fūdī* I spill, shed
 (the subject is Aurelian,
 who is also the *unus*
 homo of l. 2)

The Vulgate: *creātiō caelī et terrae*

in principiō creauit Deus caelum et terram. terra autem erat inānis et uacua, et tenebrae erant super faciem abyssi, et Spīritus Deī ferēbātur super aquās. dixitque Deus, 'fiat lūx', et facta est lūx. et uīdit Deus lūcem quod esset bona: et diuīsit lūcem ā tenebrīs. appellāuitque lūcem Diem, et tenebrās Noctem: factumque est uespere et māne, diēs unus. 5

dixit quoque Deus, 'fiat firmāmentum in mediō aquārum: et diuidat aquās ab aquis.' et fēcit Deus firmāmentum, diuīsitque aquās, quae erant sub firmāmentō, ab hīs, quae erant super firmāmentum. et factum est ita. uocāuitque Deus firmāmentum Caelum: et factum est uespere et māne, diēs secundus. 10

dixit uērō Deus, 'congregentur aquae, quae sub caelō sunt, in locum unum, et appāreat ārida.' et factum est ita. et uocāuit Deus āridam Terram, congregātiōnēque aquārum appellāuit Maria. et uīdit Deus quod esset bonum. et ait, 'germinet terra herbam uirentem et facientem sēmen, et lignum pōmiferum faciēns fructum iuxtā genus suum, cuius sēmen in sēmetipsō sit super terram.' et factum est ita. et prōtulit terra herbam uirentem, et facientem sēmen iuxtā genus suum, lignumque faciēns fructum, et habēns unumquodque sēmentem secundum speciem suam. et uīdit Deus quod esset bonum. et factum est uespere et māne, diēs tertius. 15 20

dixit autem Deus, 'fiant lūmināria in firmāmentō caelī, et diuidant diem ac noctem, et sint in signa et tempora, et diēs et annōs; ut lūceant in firmāmentō caelī, et illūminent terram.' et factum est ita. fēcitque Deus duo lūmināria magna: lūmināre maius ut praeesset diēi: et lūmināre minus ut praeesset nocti. et posuit eas in firmāmentō caelī, ut lūcerent super terram et praeessent diēi ac nocti, et diuiderent lūcem ac tenebrās. et uīdit Deus quod esset bonum. et factum est uespere et māne, diēs quārtus. 25

dixit etiam Deus, 'prōducant aquae rēptile animae uiuentis et uolātile

super terram sub firmamentū caeli * creavitque Deus cetera grandia, et omnem animam viventem atque motibilem, quam produxerant aquae in species suas, et omne volatile secundum genus suum: et vidit Deus quod esset bonum. benedixitque eis, dicens, 'crescite, et multiplicamini, et replēte aquas maris: avesque multiplicentur super terram' et factum est vespere et mane, dies quintus.

dixit quoque Deus, 'producat terra animam viventem in genere suo, amenta, et reptilia, et bestias terrae secundum species suas.' factumque est ita: et fecit Deus bestias terrae iuxta species suas, etumenta, et omne reptile terrae in genere suo: et vidit Deus quod esset bonum: et ait, 'faciamus hominem ad imaginem et similitudinem nostram, et praesit piscibus maris, et volatilibus caeli, et bestis: universaeque terrae, omnique reptili, quod movetur in terra.' et creavit Deus hominem ad imaginem suam: ad imaginem Dei creavit illum: masculinum et feminam creavit eos: benedixitque illis Deus, et ait, 'crescite et multiplicamini, et replēte terram, et subicite eam, et domamini: paculus maris, et volatilibus caeli, et universis animantibus quae moventur super terram.' dixitque Deus, 'ecce dedi vobis omnem herbam afferentem semen super terram, et universa ligna quae habent in semetipsis semen: et in genere suo, ut sint vobis in escam: et cunctis animantibus terrae, cunctaque volueri caeli, et universis quae moventur in terra, et in quibus est anima vivens, ut habeant ad vescendum.' et factum est ita: viditque Deus cuncta quae fecerat: et erant valde bona: et factum est vespere et mane, dies sextus.

igitur perfecti sunt caeli et terra, et omnis ornatus eorum: complēvitque Deus die septimō opus suum, quod fecerat: et requievit diē septimō ab universō opere quod patrārat, et benedixit diē septimō et sanctificavit illum, quia in ipsō cessauerat ab omni opere suo quod creavit Deus ut faceret. (*Genesis 1.1–2.3*)

creatio creatiōn-is 3f. creation
cael-um ī 2n. heaven, sky; pl. *cael-i ōrum* 2m
principi-um ī 2n. beginning
creo ī 1 create
inān-is ē empty
vacu-us a um void
tenebr-a ānō, 1f pl. shadows, darkness
fontēs fontē-ōrū 3f. fountains
abyss-us ī 2i depths of the sea
super (+ acc) over, above
spirit-us ī 4m spirit, breath
lux luc-is 3f. light

quod that (+ subj) [*Also in* ll. 14, 19, 27, 33, 39]
dividō 3 *divisi* 1 divide
appellō 1 I call
5 *vespere* n. evening
mane m. morning
unus = *primus*
firmament-um ī 2n. prop., sky, sky above the earth
sub (+ abl) underneath
11 *congrego* 1 I gather
appareo 2 I appear
arid-a ae 1f. dry land

congregatio congregatiōn-is 3f. gathering
ait 'he said'
germinō 1 I produce
herb-a ae 1f. grass
virens virēt-is green
15 *semen* sēmin-is 3n. seed
lign-um ī 2n. wood, tree
pomifer pōmifer-a um fruit bearing
fruct-us ūs 4m. fruit
iuxta (+ acc) in accordance with
genus gener-is 3n. kind, type
semetipso 'itself' (Pl. 1.48. *semety* = 'themselves')
preferō p̄ferre p̄ferri 1 produce
unumquodque each one
sementis sēment-is 3f. sowing
secundum (+ acc) in accordance with
speciēs speciei-ō 3f. species
20 *huminate* luminār-is 3n. light
ad (+ acc) for the purpose of [*Also* 1.49]
lūcēō 2 I shine
exornat ī 1 I light up
25 *stell-a* ae 1f. star
produo 3 *produxi* 1 produce, bring forth
reptile reptil-is 3n. crawling creature
anim-a ae 1f. soul, anima
volatilis volatīl-is 3n. flying creature
30 *ceteri* n. pl. sea-beasts, monsters

grand-is ē huge, vast
motabil-is ē moving
in (+ acc) in accordance with
benedico 3 *benedixi* 1 bless (+ dat)
crescō 3 I increase
multiplicor 1 dep. I multiply
34 *repleō* 2 I fill
avis av-is 3f. bird
ument um ī 2n. beast
besti-a ae 1f. wild beast
imago imagin-is 3f. image
40 *similitudo* similitudin-is 3f. likeness
piscis pisc-is 3m. fish
univers-us a um whole, all
mascul-us ī 2m. male
subicio 3/4 I subdue
45 *dominor* 1 dep. I rule (+ dat, *in escam* 'for food')
volucris volucr-is 3f. bird
51 *ad vescendum* 'for eating'
cunct-us a um every, all
valde very
ornat-us ūs 4m. decoration, trimmings
compleo 2 *complevi* 1 finish
requiesco 3 *requievi* 1 rest
patro 1 I effect
sanctifico 1 I sanctify
cessō 1 I stop, cease

Section 5D

Running vocabulary for 5D(i)

acerb-us a um bitter
ait see *utrum*
arce ī 3 I summon
arx arc-is 3f. citadel
aspect-us ūs 4m. appearance

atrocitas atrocitat-is 3f. harshness
attribuō 3 I assign, give x (+ acc) to y (dat) (as his share)

baehor 1 dep. I rave, revel, act like a Bacchant
clemens clement-is merciful
coniūgo 1 I unite
coniūx coniug-is 3f. wife

contrā (+ acc.) against
crūdēl-is *e* cruel
dīrīpiend-us *a um* to be
 torn apart (*dīrīpiō* 3/4)
dolor dolōr-is 3m. pain,
 anguish
domicili-um ī 2n. dwelling
dūcend-us *a um* to be led
etenim for in fact, and
 indeed
ēuertend-us *a um* to be
 overturned (*ēuertō* 3)
ferre-us *a um* made of
 iron, unfeeling
fug-a *ae* 1f. flight
fundament-um ī 2n.
 foundation
Gall-ī *ōrum* 2m. pl. Gauls
hūmānitās hūmānitāt-is 3f.
 humanity, kindness
idcirco for this reason,
 therefore
importūn-us *a um* cruel,
 savage
incendend-us *a um* to be
 burned
inhūmān-us *a um* cruel,
 savage
interficiend-us *a um* to be
 killed

lāmentātiō lāmentātiōn-is 3f.
 lamentation
lēniō 4 I soothe
lūx luc-is 3f. light
māter familiās matr-is
familiās 3f. mother (of
 the household)
miserand-us *a um* to be
 pitied
miseriordi-a *ae* 1f. pity
misericors misericord-is
 compassionate
mīl-is *e* gentle, mild
necand-us *a um* to be
 killed
neglegend-us *a um* to be
 ignored
orbis terrārum orb-is
terrārum 3m. the world
 (lit. the circle of lands)
pater familiās patr-is
familiās 3m. father
 (head of the household)
perhorresco 3 I shudder
 greatly at, have a great
 fear of
prōpōnō 3 I imagine (*mihī*
prōponō = I set before
 my mind's eye)

rēgnō 1 I rule (as king)
remiss-us *a um* mild, slack
seuer-us *a um* strict, stern
sīn but if
singulār-is *e* unparalleled,
 extraordinary
singul-ī *ae* *a* individual
sumō 3 I take
suppl-um *sumere* to exact
 the penalty (from *x*
de + *abl.*)
timend-us *a um* to be
 feared
trucidō 1 I butcher
uāstand-us *a um* to be and
 waste (*uāstō* 1)
uehemēns uehement-is
 violent
uersor 1 dep. I stay
Vestāl-is *e* Vestal
 (belonging to the
 goddess Vesta)
uexātiō uexātiōn-is 3f. ill-
 treatment
ūnuers-us *a um* whole,
 entire
utrum . . . *an* = double
 question, i.e. A or B?

Notes

- l. 153 *in uestrā caede* 'in your slaughter' = 'in slaughter of you'. Possessive adjectives are often used in this way.
 ll. 159–62 *sī* . . . *sūmat*, . . . *uideātur*: note mood of verbs, and remember *sī* + pres. subj., pres. subj. = 'if x were to happen, y would happen.'
 l. 160 *quam acerbissimum* 'as bitter as possible'. See learning vocabulary 5B(iii)
 ll. 163–4 *uideātur* . . . *nisi* . . . *lēniat*: see note on ll. 159–62. *nocentis* 'of the person who harmed him': pres. part. used as a noun.
 ll. 170–1 *ad ēuertenda fundāmenta*: tr. 'to overturn the foundations'
 l. 171 *ad incendendam urbem*: tr. 'to set the city on fire'.
 l. 172 *ad dūcendum* . . . *exercitum*: tr. 'to lead an army'.

Learning vocabulary for 5D(i)

Nouns

arx arc-is 3f. citadel

dolor dolōr-is 3m. pain,
 anguish

fug-a *ae* 1f. flight
lūx lūc-is 3f. light

Adjectives

crūdēl-is *e* cruel

miserand-us *a um* to be
 pitied

misericors misericord-is
 compassionate
seuer-us *a um* strict, stern
uehemēns uehement-is
 impetuous, violent

Vestāl-is *e* Vestal
 (belonging to the
 goddess Vesta)

Verbs

arcessō 3 *arcessūi arcessitus*
 1 summon

attribuō 3 *attribuī attribūtus*
 1 assign, give
 (*ad* + *tribuō*)

propono 3 *prōposuī*
propositus 1 set before;
 imagine; offer
 (*prō* + *pōnō*)

sumō 3 *sūmpsī sūmptus* 1
 take; put on; eat;
supplicium sūmere dē
 (+ *abl.*) to exact the
 penalty from *x*

Others

contrā (+ acc.) against
idcirco for this/that reason,
 therefore

utrum . . . *an* = double
 question, i.e. A or B?
 (negative: *annōn*, i.e. A
 or not?)

Running vocabulary for 5D(ii)

acerb-us *a um* bitter

adit-us *ūs* 4m. entrance

commūn-is *e* shared, in
 common

cōscript-us *a um* chosen,
 elected

cōseruand-us *a um* to be
 preserved (*cōseruō* 1)

cum . . . *tum* both . . . and

diligenti-a *ae* 1f. diligence
genus gener-is 3n. kind,
 type

impert-um ī 2n. power,
 authority, dominion

nē (+ subj.) that, lest
nefand-us *a um* impious,
 execrable

ōrdō *ōrdīn-is* 3m. rank
patrēs cōscripti

senātōrēs senators

patri-a *ae* 1f. fatherland
prōuideō 2 *prōuidī prōuisus*
 1 take care of

remissiō remission-is 3f.
 remission, relaxation

retinend-us *a um* to be
 retained (*retineō* 2)

timend-us *a um* to be
 feared (*timeō* 2)

trānsigend-us *a um* to be
 accomplished (*trānsigō*
 3)

uerend-us *a um* to be
 feared (*ueeor* 2 dep.)

ueeor 2 dep. I fear, am
 afraid ('that': *nē* +
 subj.; 'that not': *ut* +
 subj.)

uoluntās uoluntāt-is 3f.
 will, wish

ut (+ subj.) (after *ueeor*)
 'that . . . not'

Notes

- ll. 174, 175, 177 *nē* following *timeō* or *vereor* – '(I am afraid) that x will happen'.
 l. 175 *senēriōrēs*: remember that comparatives may mean 'rather' and 'too' as well as 'more'.
 ll. 178–9 *uerērī . . . ut*: 'be afraid that x will not happen'.
 l. 179 *ad cōsilia . . . trānsigenda*: tr. 'to accomplish your plans'.
 l. 180–1 *cum . . . tum*: 'both . . . and' – a favourite construction in Cicero.
 l. 181–2 *ad summum . . . retinendum*: tr. 'to retain the sovereign power'.
 l. 182 *ad commūnīs . . . cōseruandās*: tr. 'to preserve the fortunes we share'.

Learning vocabulary for 5D(ii)

Nouns

<i>genus gener-is</i> 3n. type, kind (family; stock, tribe)	<i>ōrdō ordin-is</i> 3m. rank (i.e. section of society or line of soldiers)	<i>patri-a ae</i> 1f. fatherland
<i>imperi-um ī</i> 2n. power, authority, dominion (order, command)	<i>patrēs cōscriptī</i> = <i>senātōrēs</i> senators	<i>uoluntās uoluntāt-is</i> 3f. will, wish

Adjectives

<i>acerb-us a um</i> bitter	<i>commūn-is e</i> shared in, common, universal
-----------------------------	---

Verbs

<i>cōseruō</i> 1 I keep safe, preserve (<i>con</i> + <i>seruō</i>)	<i>prōuideō</i> 2 <i>prōuidī prōuīsus</i> I take care (often followed by <i>nē</i> + subj.) (<i>prō</i> + <i>uideō</i>)	<i>vereor</i> 2 dep. <i>ueritus</i> I fear, am afraid (usually followed by <i>nē</i> /ut + subj.)
--	---	---

Others

cum . . . tum both . . . and (especially common in Cicero)

Running vocabulary for 5D(iii)

<i>aspect-us ūs</i> 4m. appearance	<i>dēfendend-us a um</i> to be defended (<i>defendō</i> 3)	<i>parāt-us a um</i> prepared (to: <i>ad</i> + acc. – <i>parō</i> 1)
<i>cār-us a um</i> dear, valued	<i>dignitās dignitāt-is</i> 3f. position	<i>perhorrēscō</i> 3 I shudder greatly at
<i>concordi-a ae</i> 1f. harmony	<i>diligenti-a ae</i> 1f. care, diligence	<i>possessio possession-is</i> 3f. possession
<i>coniungō</i> 3 I bring x (acc.) to support y (<i>ad</i> + acc.)	<i>dulc-is e</i> sweet	<i>quantum</i> as much as
<i>cōsentio</i> 4 I agree	<i>iūcund-us a um</i> pleasant	<i>tribūn-us ī aerariūs</i> 2m. citizen of the class below <i>equitēs</i>
<i>cōseruand-us a um</i> to be preserved (<i>cōseruō</i> 1)	<i>par par-is</i> equal	

Notes

- l. 186 *in quā . . . sentiant*: the subjunctive is generic (see 140.1).
 ll. 187–8 *ad salūtem . . . dēfendendam dignitātemque cōseruandam*: tr. 'to defend the safety . . . and preserve the position'.
 ll. 186–8 *quī nōn . . . cōsentiat*: the subjunctive is generic (see 140.1).
 ll. 188, 189 *quis eques: quis tribūnus aerariūs*: *quis* is used here as an adjective (cf. 102³).
 ll. 188–9 *quem . . . nōn . . . coniungat*: the subjunctive is generic (see 140.1).
 l. 190 *dēfendendae rēi pūblīcae*: tr. 'of defending the state'.
 ll. 189–90 *quī nōn . . . conueniat*: the subjunctive is generic (see 140.1).
 ll. 190–1 *cui nōn . . . sit*: the subjunctive is generic (see 140.1).
 l. 192 *nēmo*: here used as an adjective (= *nūllus*).
 ll. 192–4 *quī nōn . . . perhorrēscat, quī nōn . . . cupiat, quī nōn . . . sit*: generic statements, using the subjunctive (see 140.1).
 ll. 193–4 *ad salūtem . . . dēfendendam*: tr. 'to defend . . . the safety . . .'

Learning vocabulary for 5D(iii)

Nouns

<i>concordi-a ae</i> 1f. harmony	<i>dignitās dignitāt-is</i> 3f. distinction, position; honour; rank, high office	<i>diligenti-a ae</i> 1f. care, diligence
----------------------------------	--	---

Adjectives

dulc-is e sweet
iūcund-us a um pleasant

Others

quantum as much as

Running vocabulary for 5D(iv)

<i>anim-a</i> ae 1f. soul, life	<i>immō uērō</i> nay rather	<i>paene</i> almost
<i>ār-a</i> ae 1f. altar	<i>impi-us a um</i> with no respect for gods, parents or fatherland	<i>parāt-us a um</i> prepared
<i>act-us a um</i> increased (in)ger 2		to + d + acc. para 1
<i>benignitas benignitatis</i> 3f. kindness	<i>iudicand-us a um</i> to be judged (<i>iudicō</i> 1)	<i>Penates</i> 1 <i>Penat-um</i> 3m. pl gods of the household
<i>commendo</i> 1 I entrust x (acc.) to y (dat.)	<i>labor labōr-is</i> 3m. toil, hard work, trouble	<i>posthāc</i> after this time, hereafter, in future
<i>coniūx coniug-is</i> 3f. wife	<i>libertās libertāt-is</i> 3f freedom	<i>prōuidend-us a um</i> to be taken care about (<i>prōuideō</i> 2)
<i>cōsentio</i> 4 I agree	<i>memor memor-is</i> mindful of (x: gen.)	<i>sempitern-us a um</i> eternal
<i>cōseruand-us a um</i> to be preserved (<i>cōseruō</i> 1)	<i>mēns ment-is</i> 3f. mind	<i>stabilī-us a um</i> made firm (<i>stabilio</i> 4)
<i>cūrand-us a um</i> to be taken care of (<i>cūrō</i> 1)	<i>nē</i> (+ subj.) after <i>prōuideō</i> 'in case', 'lest'	<i>supplex supplic-is</i> suppliant
<i>dēfendend-us a um</i> to be defended (<i>dēfendō</i> 3)	<i>oblīuiscor</i> 3 dep. <i>oblītus</i> I forget (+ gen. of person)	<i>tendō</i> 3 I stretch forth uel even
<i>fax fac-is</i> 3f. torch, firebrand	<i>obsess-us a um</i> besieged	<i>ūnuers-us a um</i> whole
<i>fundat-us a um</i> established (<i>fundo</i> 1)		<i>Vest-a</i> ae 1f. Vesta (goddess of the hearth)

Notes

- I. 196 *prōuidendum est nē*: lit. 'it is to be taken care about lest . . .'.
 I. 197 *at uitam suam dēfendendam* 'to defend his own life'
 II. 197–8 *ad uestram salūtem cūrandam*: 'to take care of your safety'.
 II. 198–9 *ad cōseruandam rem publicam* 'to keep the state safe'
 II. 200–1 *nōbīs* not solved until *commendat* in I. 8. I r. 'to you herself (obj.) . . .' etc.
 I. 204 *uōbīs iūdicandum est*: tr. 'you ought to judge' (lit. 'it is to-be-judged as-far-as-you-are-concerned')
 II. 209–10 *nē* . . .: 'that', 'lest', picked up by *prōuidendum est*, lit. 'it is to be taken care about'.
 I. 210 *uōbīs prōuidendum est nē* . . .: tr. 'you must take care, lest . . .' (lit. 'it is to-be-taken-care-about as-far-as-you-are-concerned').

Learning vocabulary for 5D(iv)

Nouns

ār-a ae 1f. altar
labor labor-is 3m. toil, hard work; trouble

Adjectives

<i>impi-us a um</i> with no respect for gods, parents or fatherland	<i>memor memor-is</i> remembering (x: gen.), mindful of (x: gen.)	<i>supplex supplic-is</i> suppliant (also a noun)
---	---	---

Verbs

<i>age</i> 2 <i>agere</i> to + acc. I increase, raise, grow	<i>offer</i> 3 <i>offerre</i> to + acc. I offer, direct; travel	<i>tendō</i> 3 <i>tendere</i> to + acc. I stretch (out)
---	---	---

Others

paene almost
uel even (either . . . or)

Grammar and exercises for 5D

160 Gerundives: *-ndus -nda -ndum* 'to be —ed'

The gerundive is an adjective based on a verb and declining like *mud-us a um*. Its meaning is passive, 'to be —ed'. Here is the formation:

1	2	3
<i>ama-nd-us a um</i> 'to be loved'	<i>liber-nd-us a um</i> 'to be had'	<i>dē-nd-us a um</i> 'to be said'
<i>min-nd-us a um</i> 'to be threatened'	<i>pollic-nd-us a um</i> 'to be promised'	<i>loqu-nd-us a um</i> 'to be said'
4	3/4	
<i>audi-nd-us a um</i> 'to be heard'	<i>cap-nd-us a um</i> 'to be captured'	
<i>menti-ē-nd-us a um</i> 'to be lied'	<i>prōgredi-ē-nd-us a um</i> 'to be advanced'	

¹ These verbs, being intransitive, would normally be found only in the neuter. See 161

161 Uses of the gerundive

- 1 As an adjective meaning 'to be —ed', e.g.

trādīdīt nōs necandōs 'he handed us over to be killed'

A number of other verbs take this construction e.g. *dō*, *petō*, *cūrō* etc., e.g.

Caesar pontem in Arare faciendum cūrat 'Caesar saw to the making of a bridge over the Arar.' (Caesar)

- 2 With any tense of *sum*, carrying the idea of obligation, duty, necessity
(i) personally, e.g.

militēs erant reuocandī 'the soldiers were to be called back', 'had to be recalled', 'needed to be recalled'

- (ii) impersonally, in the neuter singular, e.g.

prōuidendum est 'it is to be taken care about', 'care needs to be taken'

eundum est 'it is to be gone', 'one must go'

- 3 With nouns, especially *ad* + acc. to denote purpose, e.g.

ad ēuertenda fundāmenta 'for the foundations to be overturned', i.e. 'for overturning the foundations' / 'with a view to overturning foundations'.

The ablatives *causā/gratiā* 'for the sake of' (which follow the phrase which they govern), are commonly used with a gerundive construction to express purpose, e.g.

templī uidendī causā 'for the sake of the temple-to-be-seen', 'for the sake of seeing the temple', 'to see the temple'.

(Cf. *honōris causā* (or *gratiā*) 'for honour's sake', 'as an honour'; e.g. – *exemplī gratiā* 'for (the sake of) an example'.)

NB. Where awkwardness results from literal translation of the gerundive, turn the phrase into an active form in English, e.g. *ad militēs necandōs* lit. 'with a view to the soldiers to be killed' → 'with a view to killing the soldiers'.

Notes

- 1 The impersonal construction is very common with verbs which do not take a direct object in the accusative. These cannot be used personally in the passive, so appear in the passive impersonally with a number of adjustments (cf. 155), e.g.

parcendum est fēminae 'it is to be spared to the woman', 'the woman must be spared'

Deponents also are used thus, e.g.

ūtendum est sapientiā 'one should use wisdom'

- 2 'By' a person is normally expressed by a plain dative with gerundives, e.g. *omnia sunt paranda Caesarī* 'everything is to be prepared by Caesar'. But where the verb in gerundive form normally takes the dative, *ā/ab* + abl. is used instead, e.g. *parcendum est fēminae ā mē* 'the woman must be spared by me', 'I must spare the woman'.

Exercises

- 1 Form the gerundive of the following verbs and translate (using n.s. for intransitive verbs, 'it must be —ed'): *arcessō*, *dēlēō*, *augeō*, *prōpōnō*, *necō*, *dormiō*, *commoror*, *uereor*, *prōgredior*, (optional: *attribuō*, *sūmō*, *cōseruō*, *tendō*, *praebeō*, *ūtor*, *pūniō*, *cohortor*)

- 2 Translate

- mihi prōuidendum est*
- ad urbem dēlendā*
- labōris agendī causā*
- dux militibus supplicem interficiendum trādidit*
- ad arcem dēfendendam.*
- nōbīs prōgrediendum erat*
- Cicerō ciuīs cōseruandōs cūrat.*
- ad manūs tendendās*
- ducis necandī gratiā*
- tibi eundum erit.*
- Cicerō custōdibus coniūrātōrēs cūrandōs trādet*
- ad ārās dēlendās*
- Catilinae arcessendī causā.*
- ad uoluntātem cōseruandam.*
- Lentulus omnia Catilinae dēlenda attribuit.*
- dēlenda est Karthāgō.*
- arx capienda erat.*
- dolor augendus nōn est.*
- supplicium sūmendum erit.*
- supplicēs trādendī nōn sunt*
- ā tē ciuibis parcendum est.*
- ciuibis ā mē nocendum nōn erat.*

- (w) moriendum est omnibus. (Cicero)
 (x) nīl sine ratiōne faciendum est. (Seneca)
 (y) ōrandum est ut sit mēns¹ sāna² in corpore sānō. (Juvenal)
 (z) nūllī enim nisi audītūrō dīcendum est. (Seneca)

mēns ment-is 3f. mīns

n-us a um hea ths

3 Give the Latin for

- (a) I must go away
 (b) Cicero will have to take care
 (c) To preserve harmony. (Use *ad* + acc)
 (d) For the sake of exacting the penalty. (Use *causā* or *grātiā* + gen after the phrase)
 (e) To summon the citizens. (Use *ad* + acc)
 (f) We had to go forward
 (g) Our fatherland must be preserved
 (h) The conspirators must be punished
 (i) We must not harm our fatherland
 (j) Cicero should spare no conspirator

162 timeō, metuō, vereor 'I am afraid to/that/lest'

These 'verbs of fearing' can take an infinitive or subjunctive construction.

They take an *infinitive* construction when English does, e.g.

timeō ire 'I am afraid to go'

veritū sunt dicere 'they were afraid to say'

They take a *subjunctive* construction with *nē* (negative *ut* or *nē nōn*) when the meaning is 'fear that/lest'. One would expect a subjunctive here: the certainties about the usual conditions and nature of events have disappeared (cf. 138). E.g.

vereor nē Caesar mox redeat 'I am afraid that/lest Caesar will soon return'

timeant ut ad patriam veniant 'they are afraid that they will not reach their fatherland'

metuimus nē Cicerō satis praesidi nōn habeat 'we fear that Cicero does not have enough of a guard'

Observe that

fearing + *nē* = 'fear that/lest' (i.e. what you want *not* to happen may happen)

fearing + *ut/nē nōn* = 'fear that . . . NOT' (i.e. what you want to happen may *not*)

Notes

1 The subjunctive is controlled by rules of sequence (see A–G Intro.(a)).

2 Any verb of effort or precaution (i.e. which expresses the idea of apprehension, worry, danger or anxiety) can use this construction, e.g.

prōvidendum est nē populō Rōmānō dēiis 'care must be taken lest you fail the Roman people'

3 As with purpose clauses, any reference to the subject of the main verb inside the clause will be reflexive; cf. 145¹

Exercises

1 Translate

- (a) vereor nē urbs incendātur.
 (b) prōvidendum est nē hostēs in urbem ingrediantur.
 (c) periculum est nē supplex captus interficiātur.
 (d) Cicerō metuēbat ut satis seuērus esse uidērētur.
 (e) omnēs ordinēs ueritū sunt nē hostēs impiū urbem caperent.
 (f) cūra erat nē uirginēs Vestālēs agitārentur.
 (g) tibi haec omnia dicere vereor.
 (h) multī ciuēs timēbant nē cōsul satis iratus nōn esset.
 (i) ante senectūtem¹ cūrāuī ut² bene uiuerem, in senectūte¹ ut² bene moriar. bene autem morī est libenter³ morī (Seneca)

¹ senectūs senectūt-is 3f. old age

² *ut*. Is the construction 'fearing'?

³ libenter willingly

2 Give the Latin for:

- (a) I am afraid that I will see the flight of our citizens.
 (b) Everyone was afraid to speak.

- (c) Cicero feared that the senate would not be strict enough
- (d) A suppliant does not fear his enemies.
- (e) There is anxiety in case children are killed.
- (f) There was a danger of the city being destroyed.

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Caesar, advancing against the Gallic tribe the Nervii, has pitched camp on the other side of a river-valley from them. As the work of building proceeds, the Nervii launch an unexpected attack.

Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vexillum prōponendum, quod erat insigne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret; signum tubā dandum; ab opere reuocandī milites; quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant arcessendī; acies instruenda; milites cohortandī; signum dandum. quārum rerum magnam partem temporis breuitas et successus hostium impediēbat . . . Caesar, necessariis rebus imperatis, ad cohortandos milites quam in partem fors obtulit decucurrit et ad legionem decimam deuēnit. (*Caesar, De Bellō Gallicō* 2.20.1–2 and 2.21 1)

Caesarī [Hold until solved by agenda]
 vexill-um ī 2n. flag
 prōponendum [Supply erat watch out
 for suppression of esse throughout
 this passage with gerundives]
 insigne insign-is 3n. mark
 concurrī [See 155²]
 tub-a ae 1f. trumpet
 opus oper-is 3n. the work of building a
 camp
 agger agger-is 3m. material for an
 earthwork

prōcē 1i 3 processī 1 advance
 acies acie-i 5f. battle-line
 instruō 3 1 draw up
 5 breuitas breuitat-is 3f. shortness
 success-us us 4m. coming up close,
 approach
 necessari-us a um necessary
 fors fort-is 3f. fortune, luck
 offerō offerre obtulī 1 bring
 decurrō 3 decucurrī 1 run down
 deuēniō 4 deuēni 1 come down

English–Latin

- 1 Translate into Latin (refer back to 140.1 for the grammar of consecutive *qui* clauses):
 - (a) The suppliant stretches forth his hands towards the sort of people who are compassionate.
 - (b) Lentulus is the sort of man everyone fears.
 - (c) He is the sort who performs wicked acts.

- (d) There is no one who doesn't desire the harmony of all the sections of society
- (e) I fear the sort of man who is always complaining

2 Reread the text of 5D(iv), then translate this passage into Latin:

Conscript fathers, you must take care¹, lest you fail the Roman people. I, the consul, am prepared to² defend the safety of the state. All ranks are in agreement. There is not a slave who³ is not prepared to² defend the state. Our land herself stretches forth to you suppliant hands. You must protect⁴ our land. All are afraid that other conspirators may destroy our freedom. You must¹ take care that this cannot happen ever again.

¹ Use impersonal gerundive (n.) + dat. of 'you'

² parātus ad + gerundive construction

³ Use subjunctive

⁴ Use gerundive in nom. with 'land', dat. of 'you'

Virgil's Aeneid

Dido, for all her prayers and entreaties, has fallen irrevocably in love with Aeneas. She lives in his company all day, and when he is absent, clutches Aeneas' son Ascanius to her bosom. All work on the city stops.

heu, uatum ignarae mentēs! quid uota furentem,
 quid delūbra iungant? est mollis flamma medullā,
 interea et tacitum uiuit sub pectore uulnus.
 ūntur infelix Dīdō totāque uagatur
 urbe furēs,

quālis coniecta cerua sagittā,
 quam procul incautam nemora inter Crētia fixit
 pāstor agēns telīs liquitque uolātile ferrum
 nescius, illa fugā siluās saltūsque peragrat
 Dictaeōs, haeret lateri lētāhs harundō

like a wounded deer on the wooded
 hills of Crete. The shepherd who has
 been hunting her has shot his iron-
 tipped arrow from long range and
 caught her by surprise. As she takes to
 flight and runs over the hills and
 woods of Crete, the huntsman does
 not know it but the arrow that will
 bring her to her death is sticking in her
 side

- 1 nunc media Aenēan sēcum per moenia dūcit
 Sidoniāsque ostentat opēs urbemque parātam,
 incipit effārī mediāque in uōce resistit;

nunc eadem lābente diē conuīuia quaerit,
Iliacōsque iterum dēmēns audire labōrēs

15 exposcit pendetque iterum nārrantis ab ōre.

post ubi dīgressī, lūmenque obscura uicissim
lūna premit suādentque cadentia sidera somnōs,
sōla domō maeret uacuā strātisque relictis
incubat.

After they had parted, when the
fading moon was now beginning to
quench its light and the setting stars
seemed to speak of sleep, she was alone
in her empty house, lying in despair on
the couch where Aeneas had lain to
banquet

illum absēns absentem auditque uidetque,

20 aut gremiō Ascanium genitōris imāgine capta
dētinet, infandum sī fallere possit amōrem.
nōn coeptae adsurgunt turrēs, nōn arma iuuentūs
exercet portūsue aut prōpugnācula bellō
tūta parant: pendent opera interrupta minaeque
25 mūrōrum ingentēs aequātaque māchīna caelō.

(Virgil, Aeneid 4.65–89)

Dido, yielding to her passion, gets her sister Anna to act as the go-between with Aeneas. But he will not be moved by their pleas.

tālibus ōrābat, tālisque miserrima flētūs
fertque refertque soror, sed nūllis ille mouētur
flētibus aut uōcēs ūllās tractābilis audit;

fāta obstant placidāsque uirī deus obstruit aurīs.

30 ac uelut annōsō ualidam cum rōbre quercum
Alpinī Boreae nunc hinc nunc flātibus illinc
ēruere inter sē certant, it stridor, et altae
consternunt terram concussō stīpīte frondēs,
ipsa haeret scopulis et quantum uertice ad aurās
35 aetheriās, tantum rādīce in Tartara tendit;

As the North winds off the Alps vie
with each other to uproot a mighty
oak whose timber has strengthened
over long years of life; they blow upon
it from this side and from that and
whistle through it; the foliage from its
head covers the ground and the trunk
of it feels the shock, but it holds on to
the rocks with roots plunging as deep
into the world below as its crown soars
towards the winds of heaven.

haud secus adsiduīs hinc atque hinc uōcibus hērōs
tunditur, et magnō persentit pectore cūrās;
mēns immōta manet, lacrimae uoluuntur inānēs
tum uērō infēlix fātis exterrita Dīdō

40 mortem ōrat.

(Virgil, Aeneid 4.437–51)

heu alas!
uātēs uat-is 3m. seer
ignār-us a um ignorant, blind
mēns ment-is 3f. intellect, mind
quid 'in what respect?
uōt-um ī 2n. prayer [Subject or object?]
furō 3 I am mad [Since the participle is
acc., one assumes uōt-um is subject. So
'in what respect do prayers
something the one-who-is-mad?]
dēlūbr-um ī 2n. shrine [Looks like a
repeat, i.e. 'in what respect do
prayers, in what respect shrines
something one-who-is-mad?']
tūcō I help
uuant [Solves it]
ēst; 3rd s. pres. of edō, I eat, consume
[Await subject]
moll-is e gentle, soft [NB. case. So
hold]
flamm-a ae 1f. flame (of love)
medull-a ae 1f. marrow, inmost being
tactum [New phrase/clause, so hold till
solved]
pectus pector-is 3n. breast
uulnus uulner-is 3n. wound (caused by
love)
4 ūror 3 I burn
infēlix (nom. s.f.) unhappy
Dīdō Dīdōn-is 3f. Dido
uagor 1 (dep) I range, wander
urbe [Solves totāque]
10 4r 'in [Acc. of Aenēās]
Jonī-us a um Carthaginian [Case?
Hold]

ostentō 1 I show off, display
opēs op-um 3f. pl. wealth
incipiō 3/4 I begin
effor 1 (dep) I speak out
resistō 3 I stop
eadem [Nom. s.f. (i.e. Dido)? But why
call her 'the same woman'? What
other form might it be? Hold]
lābor 3 (dep) I slip by
Iliac-us a um Trojan [Acc. pl. m., so
hold]
demens mad [Nom., so whom does it
refer to?]
audire [Why inf.? Hold]
labōrēs [Solves Iliacōs]
15 exposcō I demand to (+ inf.) [Solves
audire]
pendeō 2 I hang on (ab + abl)
nārrantis [Genitive present participle
No noun to agree with it, so 'of the
one narrating']
20 illum . . . absentem [Take together,
absēns 'she, absent' (i.e. not in
Aeneas' presence: subject)]
gremi-um ī 2n. breast, lap [Hold]
Ascani-us ī 2m. Ascanus, son of
Aeneas [Acc., wait for verb]
genitor genitōr-is 3m. father
imagō imagin-is 3f. likeness to (+ gen)
capta: 'Dido, captivated'
dētineō 2 I hold. [So, 'she holds
Ascanus gremio' – must be 'in her
lap']
infand-us a um unspeakable, appalling
[Neuter nom.? Masc. acc.? Hold]

sī sc. 'to see'
fallō 3 I elude, beguile, solve
amōrem {Solves out a time
uōn . . . *adsurgunt*, *adsurgō* 3 I rise
coept-us a um begun
turr-is *turr-is* 3f. tower [Solves *coeptae*]
arma [Nom. or acc. pl? Wait]
iuuent-ūs iuuent-ūs 3f. young men
 [Subject, so *arma* must be acc. So
 'the young men do not — their
 arms']
exerceō 2 I practise with
 -ue or
port-ūs {Case possibilities }
prōpugnācul-um ī 2n. ramparts (of the
 city). [Has this solved case
 problem?]
 ■ *tūt-us a um* safe [Solves *bellō*, 'in time
 of war']
parant {Who must the subject be, even
 though that noun is s.? So what case
 are *portus*, *prōpugnacula*?]
pendeō 2 I hang idle, stand in idle
 suspension {Pl., three subjects
 follow}
interruptus a um broken off
min-ae *arum* 2f. pl. (lit.) menaces,
 threats [But these 'threats' are
 'threats in motion' i.e. threats
 (consisting) of walls', i.e.
 'threatening walls']

Rēs gestae diuī Augustī

In this passage we read how Augustus was offered oversight of public morals. One wonders how he might have responded to Virgil's picture of Aeneas' entanglement with Dido

cōsulibus M. Viniciō et Q. Lucrētiō, et postea P. Lentulō et Cn. Lentulō, et tertium Paullō Fabiō Maximō et Q. Tuberōne, senātū populōque Rōmānō cōsentientibus, ut cūrator lēgum et mōrum summā potestāte sōlus creārer, nūllum magistrātum contrā mōrem maiōrum dēlatum recēpī. (Rēs gestae 6.)

aequāt-us a um raised up to, equal (to
 x dat)
māchin-a ae 1f. crane
cael-um ī 2n. sky

- *tālibus* abl. 'with such (words, prayers,
 pleas)'
talisque [Await agreeing acc. pl]
miserrima 'wretched' [Nom. s. f?
 Hold]
flēt-us *ūs* 4m. tears
refero 3 *retulī* I bring back
soror [miserrima, of course]
tractabil-is e amenable
 ■ *ja* am ī 2 late
placid-us a um gracious, kindly, ready
 to yield [Case? Hold]
obstruō 3 I block up
auris aur-is 3f. ear [Solves *placidas*]
 36 *secus* differently
adsid-ūs a um persistent
hinc a que hinc from this side and that
heros (nom) hero
tundō 3 I pound, assault
persentiō 4 I feel, am aware of
immōt-us a um unmoved
lacrim-a ae 1f. tear
uoluō 3 I roll down
inān-is e useless(ly), (in) vain
 39 *infelix* (nom. s.f.) unhappy
fāt-um ī 2n. fate
exterrit-us a um terrified

postea afterwards
tertium for a third time [The dates are
 19, 18 and 11]
cōsentiriō 4 I agree (ut + subj agree
 that' x should happen)
 'or *cūrator-is* 3m guardian

Section 5E

Running vocabulary for 5E

<i>appellāt-us a um</i> called (<i>appellō</i> 1)	<i>discēdo</i> 3 <i>discessi</i> 1 depart <i>discedo in sententiam</i> (x gen) I go over to x's place, station	<i>nouō</i> 1 I make changes <i>odor odor-is</i> 3m snail, stench
<i>capitāl-is</i> e involving a capital charge, punishable by death	<i>dispositus</i> I place, station	<i>patrici-us</i> ī 2m patrician (member of a select group of families)
<i>carter carcer-is</i> 3m. prison <i>Carō Carōn-is</i> 3m. M. Porcius Cato	<i>dum</i> (+ indicative) while, (+ subjunctive) until	<i>tenebr-ae</i> <i>arum</i> 1f. pl darkness
<i>inter</i> about	<i>tactēs factē-ī</i> 5f appearance	<i>terribil-is</i> e frightful, dreadful
<i>cōsulār-is</i> e consular	<i>fact-um</i> ī 2n. deed	<i>triumvir-ī</i> <i>orum</i> 2m. pl triumvirs (a commission responsible for prisons and executions)
<i>Corneli-ī</i> <i>arum</i> 2m pl the Corneli	<i>foedāt-us a um</i> made foul (<i>foedō</i> 1)	<i>Fullian-um</i> ī 2m Fullianum
<i>dēduct-us a um</i> led down (<i>dēducō</i> 3)	<i>gul-a</i> ae 1f. throat (tr neck)	<i>undex undic-is</i> 3m. punisher
<i>demiss-us a um</i> sent down (<i>demittō</i> 3)	<i>humī</i> in the ground	
<i>depress-us a um</i> sunk (<i>dēprimō</i> 3)	<i>inult-us</i> <i>ūs</i> 4m. neglect	
<i>dign-us a um</i> worthy of (x abl)	<i>ius-us a um</i> ordered (<i>iubeo</i> 2)	
	<i>laque-us</i> ī 2m garotte	

Notes

- ll. 212–13 *nē quid* . . . *nouārētur*: *quid* is accusative of respect. Tr. 'in any respect'. *nouārētur* impersonal passive 'changes might be made' (with the overtone of 'revolution', the expression for which was *rēs nouae*).
 ll. 219–20 *dum* . . . *frangerent* 'until they should break', 'for . . . to break'. *undicēs rerum capitālium*: i.e. the executioners.
 l. 222 *cōsulāre* he had been consul in 71.

Learning vocabulary for 5E(i)

Nouns

carcer *carcer-is* 3m. prison;
barrier

faciēs *faciēs-i* 5f
appearance; face
factum *i* 2n. deed

humus *i* 2f. ground (NB
humum (acc.) to the
ground; *humī* (locative)
or in the ground)

Adjectives

dignus *a um* worthy;
worthy of (x abl)

terribilis *e* dreadful,
frightening

Verbs

discō 3 *discessi* *discessum* 1
depart; (with *m*
sententiam + gen) I go
over to X's view (dis-

pono 3 *disposui* *dispositus*
I set, place (in different
places) (*dis* + *pōno*)

Running vocabulary for 5E(ii)

abduco 3 I lead away
absum *abesse* I am distant
adduco 3 *adduxi* I bring
aduentō 1 I approach,
advance

adversus *a um*
unfavourable
aequus *a um* level
agmen *agmin-is* 3n.
column

antequam (+ subj) before
asper *asper-a um* rough
Celer *Celer-is* 3m (Q.
Metellus) *Celer*

circa about
claudō 3 *clausi* *clausus* I
shut in

communio 1 I share (x
(acc) with y
(*cum* + abl))

conungo 3 I fight (with x;
cum + abl)
conungo 3 *conunxi* I join
(I join x. *mē* *conungō*
+ 3rd)

cōsidō 3 *cōsedi* I take up
position, encamp
cōpi-a *ae* 1f. multitude,
crowd

descēnsus *ūs* 4m. descent
difficultās *difficultāt-is* 3f
difficulty

dilabor 3 dep. I slip away
dum (+ ind.) while,
(+ subj) until (see note
on 1 241), (+ subj)
provided that (1 232)

fugitivus *a um* runaway
Galli-a *ae* 1f. Gaul

instituo 3 *institui* I draw
up

instruō *a um* (1 227)
equipped, (1 237)
drawn up

intercludō 3 I cut off
iter *itiner-is* 3n. journey;

route; *magnum iter*
forced march

lance-a *ae* 1f. lance, spear

Metellus *i* 2m Q.
Metellus *Celer*

modo *a um* sent (mutō 3)
modo at one
time . . . at another

occasio *occasiō-is* 3f
opportunity (for x
gen)

occulte secretly
perfug-a *ae* 1m. deserter

perfugio 3,4 I flee for
refuge

perturbō 1 I disturb
disturbed (*perturbō* 1)

Picēn-us *a um* of Picenum
Pistōniēns-is *e* of Pistoria

praeacūt-us *a um* sharpened
to a point (*praeacūtō* 3)

procul far off
properō 1 I hurry

pugn-a *ae* 1f. battle
Q = Quintus *i* 2m

Quintus

quā where [See 137.3]
quam primum as soon as
possible
radix *radic-is* 3f. foot (lit.
'root')
rapin-a *ae* 1f. plunder

repudiō 1 I reject
spar-us *i* 2m. hunting-
spear
spērō 1 I hope, expect
sub (+ abl) beneath
sudis *sud-is* 3f. stake

temptō 1 I test, try
Trānsalpīn-us *a um* across
the Alps, Transalpine
utpote (*quī*) (+ subj)
inasmuch as, since (he)

Notes

1. 227 *pars quārta* i.e. $\frac{1}{4}$

11. 230–1 *facere* . . . *mouēre* . . . *dare*: see 146.

1. 232 *habitūrum*: *esse* suppressed

11. 234ff. *nūntius*: remember that a noun may generate an indirect
statement quite as easily as a verb, i.e. 'a messenger (with a message to
the effect that . . .)'

1. 236 *sūmptum*: *esse* suppressed

11. 236–7 *quī sē* . . . *coniūnxissent*: causal clause, see 140.2.

1. 241 *dum* . . . *mouēret*: 'until . . . ' 'for . . . to . . . ' (purpose).

11. 245–6 Note *properantī* agreeing with *Catilīnae*, dat. of advantage or
possession

1. 248 *in urbe* i.e. in Rome (often known simply as *urbs*).

Learning vocabulary for 5E(ii)

Nouns

agmen *agmin-is* 3n
column

iter *itiner-is* 3n. journey,
route

occasio *occasiō-is* 3f.
opportunity
pugn-a *ae* 1f. battle, fight

Adjectives

aequus *a um* level (fair,
balanced, equal)
asper *asper-a um* rough

Verbs

absum *abesse* *āfui* I am
distant (am absent,
away)

cōsidō 3 *cōsedi* *cōsessus*
I settle down; encamp

instruō 3 *instruxi* *instructus*
I draw up; prepare,
equip
properō 1 I hurry, make
haste

spērō 1 I hope, expect
temptō 1 I try, test,
attempt, attack

Others

circa about (adv.)

modo . . . *modo* at one
time . . . at another

quam primum as soon as
possible

Grammar and exercises for 5E

163 Passive perfect participles

You have already met passive perfect participles being used in ablative absolute construction (151). They can, of course, be used in agreement with any noun in any case, though they are less often used as adjectives (*nāvis capta* = 'the captured ship') than predicatively (*nāvis capta* = 'the ship, having been captured' . . .). See 77.

militēs captī in carcerem dēductī sunt 'the soldiers, having been captured, were taken off to prison'. (Here *captī* is nom. pl. m. to agree with 'soldiers', the subject of the sentence.)

custōdēs uīsōs secūtī sunt 'they followed the guards after they had been seen', 'they saw the guards and followed them'. (Here *uīsōs* is acc. pl. m. to agree with 'the guards', the object of the sentence.)

mīhi captō auxilium dedit 'he gave help to me having-been-captured', 'though I had been captured, he gave me help'. (*captō* is dat. s. m. to agree with *mīhi*.)

NB. Another common meaning of *nāvis capta* is 'the capture of the ship', e.g.

ab urbe conditā 'from the foundation of the city'
Hannibal uictus Rōmānōs metū liberāuit 'the defeat of Hannibal freed the Romans from fear'

164 Summary of participles

- Present participles, '—ing': 1 *-āns* (-ant-), 2 *-ēns* (-ent-), 3 *-ēns* (-ent-), 4 and 3/4 *-iēns* (-ient-); cf. 120
- Future participles, 'about to —': stem of perfect participle + *-ūrus -ūra -ūrum*; cf. 81–3
- Perfect participles, (deponent) 'having —ed': stem of perfect participle + *-us -a -um*; (others) 'having been —ed'; cf. 77, 151

All are adjectives, and agree with the person or thing they describe.

NB. Only active verbs which take an object in the accusative have a passive participle used as an adjective. For example, *uentus* and *parsus* are impossible in that form because both come from verbs which are

intransitive: *ueniō* takes *ad* + acc., and *imperō* takes a dative. These forms exist only in the impersonal perfect passive e.g. *uentum est* lit. 'it has been come', i.e. 'people have come'; *imperatum est* lit. 'it has been ordered' i.e. 'orders have been given'. You will have noticed that the 4th p.p. of intransitive verbs is always given in the *-um* form.

Exercises

- Translate the participles in this list. Say whether they are deponent or passive: *commorātus*, *coctus*, *mortuus*, *ūsus*, *datus*, *adiūtus*, *agitātus*, *lātus*, *gestus*, *cognitus*, *cōnātus*, *secūtus*, *intellēctus*, *locūtus*, *exortus*, *prōmissus*, *sūmptus*, *frāctus*, *mōtus*, (optional) *portātus*, *pollicitus*, *inuentus*, *hortātus*, *nūntiātus*, *minātus*, *necātus*, *reductus*, *perfectus*, *uocātus*, *amplexus*, *arbitrātus*, *seruātus*, *instructus*, *dispositus*, *ueritus*, *tēsus*, *obsessus*, *questus*

- Translate these sentences:

- Lentulus tenebrās cōspicātus nihilōminus negāuit sē mortem timēre*
- ceterī custōdēs ā cōsulibus dispositōs sequēbantur*
- cōsul sēcum multa locūtus supplicium sūmere cōstituerat*
- Celer ā senātū missus in agrō Picēnō erat*
- agmen ā cōsule instructum Catilīna uidit*
- Catilīnae montibus et cōpiīs hostium clausō¹ fuga erat nūlla*

¹ *claudō* 3 *clausi* *clausus* I shut in, cut off

- Translate into Latin using perfect participles passive to translate 'when' and 'as' clauses. NB. None of these sentences calls for the ablative absolute.

- When they had captured the soldier, the guards killed him.
- After the column had been seen, Catiline hurried towards it.
- When the guards had been set Cicero gave them instructions.
- The appearance of the column as it had been drawn up was not worthy of the commander.
- Catiline's soldiers advanced, using weapons previously¹ captured

¹ Leave out 'previously'

165 *dum, antequam/priusquam*1 *dum* + indicative 'while'

dum takes the present indicative where 'while' means 'at one point during', e.g.

dum Cicerō haec loquitur, Catilīna abiit '(At one point) while Cicero was speaking, Catiline left'

But *imperfect* indicative is used where the 'while' clause covers the whole period described by the main verb, e.g.

dum Cicerō sequēbatur, Catilīna fugiēbat 'while Cicero was following, Catiline was fleeing'

2 *dum* 'until'

dum + indicative indicates the idea of time only, e.g.

manē dum redierō 'wait until I get back'

dum + subjunctive indicates anticipation or intention, e.g.

manē dum redeam 'wait for me to come back'

Cf. *manēbat dum Catilīna castra mouēret* (subjunctive) 'he was waiting for Catiline to move camp'

mānsit dum Catilīna castra mōuit (indicative) 'he waited until Catiline (actually) moved camp'

3 *antequam/priusquam* 'before'

antequam and *priusquam* work rather like *dum*: indicative expresses purely time, subjunctive anticipation or intention, e.g.

with indicative: *antequam abiit, epistolam scrīpsit* 'before he left, he wrote a letter'

with subjunctive: *Catilīna abiit antequam legiōnēs Rōmānae peruenīrent* 'Catiline left before the Roman legions should arrive'

NB. *ante-* and *prius-* are often split from *quam*, e.g. *ante uenī quam uir* 'I arrived before the man' (Ovid).

4 *dum* (*dummodo, modo*) + subjunctive

A specialised meaning of *dum* is 'provided that', 'on condition that', e.g.

omnia faciam dum amīcus frās 'I will do anything provided you become my friend'

166 *utpote quī (quae quod)* + subjunctive

utpote reinforces the causal sense of *quī* i.e. 'as is natural for one who' The verb is subjunctive. Cf. *quippe quī* 140.2. E.g.

miser sum, utpote quem Cynthia amet 'I am wretched, as is natural for one whom Cynthia loves'

NB. *ut quī* is also used in this way.

Exercises

1 Translate into English.

- dum senātus rem cōsiderābat, Catilīna legiōnēs suās instruēbat*
- Catilīna expectābat, dum sociī cōsilia Rōmae perficerent.*
- Catilīna, antequam in Galliam iret, nouās cōpiās ex urbe expectabat*
- dum Catilīna prope Pistōriam manet, Rōmae Cicerōnī sē coniūrātōrēs trādidērunt*
- cōsul lactus est, dum salua sit rēs publica*
- tē omnēs amant mulierēs, quī sīs tam pulcher.* (Plautus)

2 Translate into Latin.

- While this was happening at Rome, Catiline spoke to his soldiers.
- He said, 'I shall wait until our friends arrive.'
- 'Provided they are safe, our plans can be completed.'
- 'I must relate certain matters to Lentulus, before I depart for Gaul.'
- But all the time Catiline was speaking, the consul was preparing war

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Note especially in reading this passage (i) the use of the participle in Latin, where a clause or other formulation would be needed in English; (ii) that accusative future and perfect participles may actually be infinitives without *esse* and form part of an indirect statement.

L. Tarquinius, another captured Catilinarian, gives information to the senate, similar to that of Volturcius.

post eum diem quidam L. Tarquinius ad senātum adductus erat, quem ad Catilinam proficiscentem ex itinere retractum aiebant. is cum se diceret indicātūrum de coniūratiōne, si fides publica data esset, iussus a cōsule quae sciret edicere, eadem ferē quae Volturcius de parātis incendiis, de caede bonōrum, de itinere hostium senātum docet; praeterea se missum quī Catilinae nūtiāret nē eum Lentulus et Cethēgus aliūque ex coniūratiōne dēprehensī terrerent, eoque magis properāret ad urbem adcedere, quō et ceterōrum animōs reficeret et illi facilius ē periculō eriperentur. (Sallust, Catiline 48.3–4)

post (+ acc.) after

adducō 3 adduxi adductus 1 bring (to)

retrahō 3 retraxi retractus 1 drag back

aiō 3 I say

indicō 1 I make a declaration, give information

fides publica (5f. + 1/2 adj.) public pledge (of impunity or protection)

edicō 3 I declare

eadem . . . quae 'the same . . . as'

ferē almost

de parātis incendiis [See 163 Note]

5 doceō 2 I inform (x acc. of y acc.)

quī . . . nūtiāret [Expresses purpose]

dēprehendō 3 dēprehendi dēprehensus 1 capture [Tr. aliī . . . dēprehensi 'the capture of the others . . . ' – what does it mean literally?]

terreō 2 I frighten

eō magis 'by that much the more'

adcedere = accedere

reficō 3/4 I revive, restore

English–Latin

Reread the text of 5E(ii), then translate this passage into Latin.

While at Rome this punishment was being exacted¹ from Lentulus, Catiline drew up his forces. He was waiting until² troops should be sent from his allies. But after it was reported that Lentulus was dead and the conspiracy revealed, he started to make³ his way through the mountains. The consul Antonius, sent by the senate with the purpose of⁴ defeating him in battle, pursued him. Metellus also moved his camp from Picenum, to obstruct Catiline as he hurried towards Transalpine Gaul. After Catiline saw that he was shut in by mountains and enemy troops, he decided to join battle as soon as possible with Antonius, in order to give more⁵ hope to his soldiers.

¹ Use *dum* + present indicative.

² Use *dum* + imperfect subjunctive

³ Use historic infinitive

⁴ Either *eo cōsiliō ut* or *quī* + subjunctive

⁵ *quō* + comparative adjective + subjunctive

Virgil's Aeneid

At the command of the gods, Aeneas abandons Dido (who commits suicide) and continues on his journey. Eventually he arrives in Italy, befriends the local King Latinus, and is offered the hand of his daughter Lavinia in marriage. This causes civil war to break out between Aeneas and Turnus, to whom Lavinia had previously been betrothed. In preparation for this epic contest, Venus has Vulcan make Aeneas a special shield, on which the whole of Roman history to come is foreshadowed. Aeneas gazes in wonder at it; the final scene his eyes rest on is that of Augustus triumphant over his enemies.

at Caesar, triplici inuectus Rōmāna triumphō

moenia, dis Italīs uōtum immortāle sacrābat,

maxima ter centum tōtam dēlūbra per urbem.

laetitiā lūdisque uiae plausūque fremēbant;

5 omnibus in templis mātum chorus, omnibus ārae;

ante ārās terram caesi strāuere iuuenti.

ipse sedēns niueō candentis limine Phoebi

dōna recognōscit populōrum aptatque superbis

postibus; incēdunt uictae longō ordine gentēs,

10 quam uariae linguīs, habitū tam uestis et armis.

hic Nomadum genus et distinctos Mulciber Afrōs,

hic Lelegās Cārāsque sagittarōsque Gelōnās

stinxerat, Euphrātēs ibat iam mollior un-

extrēmūque hominum Mornū, Rhēnusque bicornis,

15 indomitūque Dahae, et pontem indignātus Araxēs,

tāta per clipeum Volcāni, dōna parentis,

mirātur rerūque ignārus imāgine gaudet

atollēns umērō famamque et fāta nepōtum

Here Vulcan had moulded the Nomads and the Africans with their streaming robes; here were the Lelegians and Carians of Asia and the Gelonians from Scythia carrying their quivers, there was the Euphrates moving now with a chastened current; here were the Morini from the ends of the earth in Gaul, the two-horned Rhine, the Scythians from beyond the Caspian, never conquered before, and the River Araxes chafing at his bridge. Such was the shield that Vulcan made, and Venus gave her son. Aeneas marvelled at it, and rejoicing at the things pictured on it without knowing what they were, he lifted onto his shoulder the fame and fates of his descendants.

(Virgil, Aeneid 8.714–31)

Caesar i.e. Augustus
triplex triplis is threefold [*triplicē* and
Rōmāna are both adjectives awaiting
 solution]
invehor 3 dep. *invehus* I am carried
 into, ride into (+ acc.)
triumph-us ī 2m. triumph [Solves —
moenia moen-um 3n. pl. city walls
 [Solves —?]
dīs from *deus* 16 [Cases? Hold]
Ital-us a um of Italy
uōt-um ī 2n. offering
immortāl-is e immortal, everlasting
sacrō 1 I consecrate x (acc.) to y (dat.)
ter centum 300 [*maxima* and *tōtam* both
 await solution]
delubr-um ī 2n. shrine
laetit-a ae 1f. joy
lud-us ī 2m. game, revel
urde ['games of/for the road'? Or is this
 nom. pl.? Answer coming up in
 verb]
plaus-us ūs 4m. applause, cheers [Note
 case and -que, linking it with which
 previous nouns?]
fremō 3 I resound, echo [With x: abl. —
 solves it]
 5 *chor-us* ī 2m. chorus, choir [Sc. est]

Deliciae Latinae

Martial

quem recitās meus^r est, ō Fidentine, libellus.
 sed male cum recitās, incipit esse tuus. (1.38)

recitō 1 I read out, recite *libell-us* ī 2m. book [This *incipiō* 3/4 I begin
Fidentin-us ī 2m. is the antecedent of
Fidentinus quem]

nīl recitās et uīs, Māmerce, poēta uidērī?
 quidquid uīs estō, dummodo nīl recitēs. (2.88)

Māmerc-us ī 2m. *poēt-a ae* 1m. poet *estō* be! (= es, 2nd. s.
Mamercus quidquid whatever imperative of *sum*)

The Vulgate: nātīuitās Christī

factum est autem in diebus illis, exiit edictum a Caesare Augustō ut
 describeretur uniuersus orbis haec descriptio prima facta est ā praeside
 Syriae Cyrinō, et ibant omnēs ut profiterentur singuli in suam ciuitatem
 ascendit autem et Iōsēph ā Galilaeā de ciuitate Nazareth in Iudaeam in
 ciuitatem Dauid, quae uocatur Bethlehem, eō quod esset dē domo et
 familiā Dauid, ut profiteretur cum Mariā dēspōnsatā sibi uxōre
 praegnante factum est autem, cum essent ibi, implētī sunt diēs ut pareret
 et peperit filium suum primōgenitum et pannis eum inuoluit et reclinauit
 eum in praesēpiō, quia non erat eis locus in diuersoriō.

et pāstōrēs erant in regiōne eādē uigilantēs et custōdientēs uigiliās
 noctis super gregem suum. et ecce angelus Dominī stetit iuxtā illōs, et
 clāritās Dei circumfulsit illōs, et timuērunt timōre magnō, et dixit illis
 angelus: 'nōlīte timēre; ecce enim euangelizō uōbīs gaudium magnum,
 quod erit omnī populō; quia nātus est uōbīs hodiē Saluātor quī est
 Christus Dominus, in ciuitate Dauid. et hoc uōbīs signum: inueniētis
 infantem pannīs inuolūtum et positum in praesēpiō. et subitō facta est
 cum angelō multitudō militiae caelestis laudantium Deum et dīcentium:

Glōria in altissimīs Deō,
 et in terrā pāx hominibus bonae uoluntātis. (Luke 2:1–14)

edict-um ī 2n. edict
describō 3 (pass.) I am subject of a
 census
uniuers-us a um all, whole
orbis orb-is 3m. world
descriptiō descriptiōn-is 3f. census
praeses praesid-is 3m. governor
Syr-a ae 1f. Syria
Cyrin-us ī 2m. Quirinius
proptor 2 dep. I make a census return
singul-i ae a (as) individuals
ascendō 3 I go up
Iōsēph nom. Joseph
Galilae-a ae 1f. Galilee
Nazareth [Abl. with ciuitate]
Iudae-a ae 1f. Judaea
 5 *Dauid* (gen.) of David
Bethlehem (nom.) Bethlehem
eō quod + subj. 'for this reason, that'
Mari-a ae 1f. Mary
in- + *ui-* + *at-us a um* betrothed

praegnāns praegnant-is being pregnant
impleō 2 *implēui implētus* I complete
pariō 3/4 *peperi* I give birth (to)
primōgenit-us a um first-born
pann-i ōrum 2m. pl. rags, pieces of
 cloth, swaddling clothes
inuoluō 3 *inuolui inuolūtus* I wrap
praesēpi-um ī 2n. enclosure, pen, fold,
 manger
diuersōri-um ī 2n. hostel, inn
 10 *pāstor pāstōr-is* 3m. shepherd
regiō regiōn-is 3f. area
uigilō 1 I am on watch, keep awake
custōdiō 4 I guard, keep
uigili-ae ārum 1f. pl. watches
grex greg-is 3m. flock
angel-us ī 2m. messenger
iuxtā (+ acc.) beside
clāritas clāritāt-is 3f. clearness, brightness
circumfulgeō 2 *circumfulsi* I shine around
tumor timōr-is 3m. fear

euangelizō I announce, tell good news
gaudī-um ī 2n. joy
saluator saluator-is 3m. saviour
 15 *Christ-us* ī 2m. Christ

infans infantis 3m. child, infant
caelestis ē celestial, heavenly
laudō 1 I praise
alt-us a um high

Section 5F

Running vocabulary for 5F(i)

ā/ab (+abl.) from (the direction of)
addō 3 I add, increase
aduers-us a um hostile
aduocō 1 I summon
attulerit '(it) has brought' (perf. subj. of *adferō*)
cēdō 3 *cessi* I yield
certō 1 I contend, fight
coniō coniōn-is 3f. meeting, assembly
conuocauerim 'I have called together' (perf. subj. of *conuocō* 1)
decus decor-is 3n. honour
dextr-a ae 1f. right hand
diuiti-ae arum 1f. pl. riches
dubi-us a um doubtful
egestās egestāt-is 3f. lack
equidem at any rate
ex [Here = instead of]

ferr-um ī 2n. sword
frument-um ī 2n. corn
fuert '(he) has been' (pf. subj. of *sum*)
Galli-a ae 1f. Gaul
huiusmodi of this kind
ignāui-a ae 1f. laziness; cowardice
ignāu-us a um idle; cowardly
impendō 2 I threaten, overhang (+dat.)
iust-us a um just
memini I remember (perfect in form)
memineritis '(you) remember' (subj. of *memini* 'I remember' – perfect in form)
necessitūdō necessitudin-is 3f. necessity

oratiō oratiōn-is 3f. speech, *oratiōnem habēō* I make a speech
persecuti sint '(they) have pursued' (perf. subj. of *persequor*)
posueritis 'you (pl.) have placed' (perf. subj. of *pōnō* 3)
potenti-a ae 1f. power
pristin-us a um former
quant-us a um how much, how big
quān (+subj.) (ll. 261, 266) after *nōn dubium est* that: (l. 269) 'who, not' [See 140.1]
quō (+subj.) (l. 254) in order to
quōcumque wherever
quōminus (+subj.) from (—ing)
quot how many

Notes

l. 254 *quō pauca monērem*: 'in order to give advice on a few points' lit. 'advise a few things'.

l. 257 *quantum periculī*: see 31.

Learning vocabulary for 5F(i)

Nouns
coniō coniōn-is 3f. meeting, assembly
decus decor-is 3n. honour; beauty
dextr-a ae 1f. right hand

diuiti-ae arum 1f. pl. riches
ferr-um ī 2n. sword, iron
frument-um ī 2n. corn
ignāui-a ae 1f. laziness; cowardice

oratiō oratiōn-is 3f. speech
potenti-a ae 1f. power

Adjectives
aduers-us a um hostile; opposite; unfavourable

ignau-us a um lazy, cowardly

quant-us a um how much, how great

Verbs
addō 3 *addidi* *additus* I add; increase
aduocō 1 I summon
cēdō 3 *cessi* *cessum* I yield; go

certō 1 I struggle, fight, vie
memini *meminisse* (defective: perfect form only) I remember

persequor 3 dep. *persecutus* I pursue, follow after

Others
oratiōnem habēre to make a speech

quōcumque (to) wherever

quot how many

Running vocabulary for 5F(ii)

agō 3 *ēgi* I spend, pass
anim-a ae 1f. life
bon-a arum 2n. pl. goods
caute (+subj. or *nē* +subj.) beware of (—ing)
cōgō 3 *cōēgi* I compel (x acc. to y inf.)
cōsiliū capere to make a plan
conuocauerim 'I have summoned' (pf. subj. of *conuocō* 1)
cruent-us a um bloody
dementi-a ae 1f. madness
dēsperō 1 I lose hope
exili-um ī 2n. exile
foed-us a um disgraceful

intolerand-us a um unbearable
inuidē 2 m. h. I begrudge, envy (+dat.)
inult-us a um unavenged
locutus sim 'I have spoken' (pf. subj. of *loquor*)
lūctuos-us a um grief-stricken, mournful
mōre in the manner of (x: gen.)
necessitūdō necessitudin-is 3f. necessity
necne or not (following *utrum* 'whether')
nē = *nēne* and that . . . not

opus est there is need of (x: abl.)
particeps particip-is sharer in (+gen.)
pecus pecor-is 3n. sheep; cattle
quān (+subj.) from (—ing)
quod si but if
quōminus (+subj.) from (—ing)
rem bene gerere to succeed
trucidō 1 butcher
turpitūdō turpitudin-is 3f. disgrace, dishonour
utrum . . . necne whether . . . or not

Notes

ll. 272-3 *nisi* . . . *facti fuissētis* . . . *ēgissētis*: 'if . . . had not . . . would have'. There are several other examples of this construction. *sī* / *nisi* + pluperfect subjunctive, pluperfect subjunctive. The basic formula is 'if x had / had not happened, y would not have happened'. Other examples are in lines 274-5, 275-6, 278-9, 281-2. See 173, cf. 139³.

Learning vocabulary for 5F(ii)

Nouns

bon-a ōrum 2n. pl. goods *exsili-um ī* 2n. exile *necessitūdō necessitudin-is*
3f. necessity

Verbs

agō 3 *ēgī* *āctus* 1 spend, pass (do, act, drive, lead, direct) *invidēō* 2 *invidī* *invisum* 1 envy, begrudge (+ dat.) *trucidō* 1 I butcher, slaughter

cōgō 3 *cōgī* *cōāctus* 1 force, compel; gather

Others

mōre in the manner of, like (x: gen.)
opus est there is need of (x: abl.)

Grammar and exercises for 5F

167 Perfect subjunctive active

	1	2	3
1st s.	amāu-eri-m (amārim etc.)	habu-eri-m	dix-eri-m
2nd s.	amāu-erī-s	habu-erī-s	dix-erī-s
3rd s.	amāu-erī-t	habu-erī-t	dix-erī-t
1st pl.	amāu-erī-mus	habu-erī-mus	dix-erī-mus
2nd pl.	amāu-erī-tis	habu-erī-tis	dix-erī-tis
3rd pl.	amāu-erī-nt	habu-erī-nt	dix-erī-nt

	4	3/4
1st s.	audiu-eri-m (audierim etc.)	cep-eri-m
2nd s.	audiu-erī-s	cep-erī-s
3rd s.	audiu-erī-t	cep-erī-t
1st pl.	audiu-erī-mus	cep-erī-mus
2nd pl.	audiu-erī-tis	cep-erī-tis
3rd pl.	audiu-erī-nt	cep-erī-nt

Notes

- The perfect subjunctive active is formed by taking the stem of the 3rd p p. and adding *-erim -eris -erit -erimus -eritis -erint*. Observe that, in this respect, it is almost identical in form to the future perfect (see 156). (The only difference is that the future perfect has the 1st s. in *-erō* and usually a short *i* at *-eris, -erimus, -eritis*.) Note the normal active personal endings (*-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt*)
- Note that in 1st and 4th conjugations the forms *amā-rim* etc. and *audi-erim* are common. Cf. *dēlēu-erim* and *dēlē-rim*.

168 Perfect subjunctive deponent

	1	2	3
1st s.	mināt-us a um sim	pollicit-us a um sim	locūt-us a um sim
2nd s.	mināt-us a um sis	pollicit-us a um sis	locūt-us a um sis
3rd s.	mināt-us a um sit	pollicit-us a um sit	locūt-us a um sit
1st pl.	mināt-ī ae a simus	pollicit-ī ae a simus	locūt-ī ae a simus
2nd pl.	mināt-ī ae a sitis	pollicit-ī ae a sitis	locūt-ī ae a sitis
3rd pl.	mināt-ī ae a sint	pollicit-ī ae a sint	locūt-ī ae a sint

	4	3/4
1st s.	mentīt-us a um sim	prōgrēss-us a um sim
2nd s.	mentīt-us a um sis	prōgrēss-us a um sis
3rd s.	mentīt-us a um sit	prōgrēss-us a um sit
1st pl.	mentīt-ī ae a simus	prōgrēss-ī ae a simus
2nd pl.	mentīt-ī ae a sitis	prōgrēss-ī ae a sitis
3rd pl.	mentīt-ī ae a sint	prōgrēss-ī ae a sint

NB. The perfect subjunctive deponent is formed by taking the stem of the perfect participle, adding the appropriate endings *-us -a -um* etc. to agree with the subject, and adding *sim sis sit simus sitis sint*, the present subjunctive of *sum*.

169 Perfect subjunctive passive

	1	2	3	4	3/4
1st s.	amāt-us sim	hābit-us sim	dict-us sim	audīt-us sim	cāpt-us sim
2nd s.	amāt-us sis	hābit-us sis	dict-us sis	audīt-us sis	cāpt-us sis
3rd s.	amāt-us sit	hābit-us sit	dict-us sit	audīt-us sit	cāpt-us sit
1st pl.	amāt-i simus	hābit-i simus	dict-i simus	audīt-i simus	cāpt-i simus
2nd pl.	amāt-i sitis	hābit-i sitis	dict-i sitis	audīt-i sitis	cāpt-i sitis
3rd pl.	amāt-i sint	hābit-i sint	dict-i sint	audīt-i sint	cāpt-i sint

NB. For formation of perfect subjunctive passive, see note on deponent (above) 168.

Summary

Perfect active subjunctive: 3rd p.p. in *-erim -erīs -erit -erimus -eritis -erint*

Perfect deponent/passive subjunctive: perfect participle + *sim sīs sit sīmus sītis sint*.

Exercises

- 1 Form and conjugate the perfect subjunctive of these verbs (form passive only when requested): *dispōnō* (passive), *cohortor*, *perueniō*, *occupō*, *pūniō* (passive), *moucō*, *ūtor*, *cōficiō*, *uereor*, *sūmō* (passive), (optional) *portō*, *obliuiscor*, *eō*, *possum*, *ferō* (passive), *audeō*, *cōsīdō*, *instruō* (passive), *persequor*, *aduocō* (passive)).
- 2 Pick out the perfect subjunctives in this list, detailing tense and mood (i.e. indicative or subjunctive) of the others: *frēgistī*, *curāuerīs*, *mōueris*, *āfueram*, *ēgisset*, *instrūxerō*, *sūmpserim*, *properāuit*, *adlocūtus sit*, *ūsus esset*, *praebuerit*, *rogāuerint*, *arbitrātus erit*, *iussī sītis*, *nōluimus*, *mīseritis*, *dūxerīmus*, *conuocāta sit*, *interfectus erit*, *petīta sīs*, (optional: *uīceram*, *uīnxeīs*, *secūtae sīmus*, *passa est*, *prohibitus sit*, *conuocāuerītis*, *temptāuerīmus*, *impediūissem*, *cōsiderāuīmus*, *exorta essem*, *uīsum sit*, *collocāuerim*, *questus erō*, *oppresserīmus*).

170 Use of perfect subjunctive

It is used in certain constructions already met, e.g.

- (a) Subordinate clauses in indirect speech (142)
- (b) Result clauses, *tam* (etc.) . . . *ut* + subj. '(so) . . . that', 144, e.g.

potest fieri ut iratus dixerit 'it may be that he spoke in anger' (Cicero).

- (c) *cum* + subj. 'since', 'although' 124, 141 (but not usually 'when')
- (d) *qui* + subj. in generic or causal sense, 140
- (e) Fearing clauses (*timeō* (etc.) *nē*), 162.

In these cases it should be translated as a plain past ('I —ed') or perfect ('I have —ed'), whichever fits better.

171 Perfect subjunctive: independent usages

The use of the present subjunctive in an imperative or potential sense has already been met (152 and 153). The perfect subjunctive is also used in these senses, e.g.

- (a) Jussive: *nē petīuerīs* 'do not seek' (= *nōlī petere*).
- (b) Potential: *dixerit aliquis* 'someone may say'
errāuerim fortasse 'I may/could perhaps have been wrong'.

Exercises

1 Translate:

- (a) *tū nē quaesierīs* . . . (Horace)
- (b) *nūllam aciem, nūllum proelium timuerīs*. (Livy)
- (c) *nē hostibus cesserīs*.
- (d) *nūllī inuīderīs*.
- (e) *nē restiterīs*.
- (f) *quis tibi hoc dixerit?*

2 Translate into Latin (using *nē* + perfect subjunctive for prohibitions):

- (a) Do not be daring.
- (b) Do not reveal this plan.
- (c) Do not give yourself up.
- (d) Do not harm the state.
- (e) Do not kill the consul.
- (f) Someone may assert.

172 Indirect (reported) questions

You have already met indirect statements ('I say *that*': 98–9, 143) and indirect commands ('I tell/urge/persuade etc. someone *to*': 134). Consider the following examples:

- (a) *rogō quid faciās* 'I ask what you are doing'.
- (b) *nesciuit cūr uēnisset* 'he did not know why he had come'.
- (c) *quaerō quō itūrus sīs* 'I am enquiring to where you are about to go'.

All these report direct questions: (a) 'What are you doing?' (b) 'Why have you come?' etc. Quite simply, Latin reports these questions in exactly the same way that English does, except that the verb is in the *subjunctive*. All you have to do is to translate the subjunctive as *if it were the identical tense of the indicative*.

Notes

- 1 *num* (or *an*) in indirect questions mean 'if', 'whether'; *num quis* means 'if anyone' (cf. *nē quis, sī quis* 134³, 145², 139¹; forms I4).
- 2 *necne* in indirect questions means 'or not'.
- 3 As with indirect statements and commands, references to the subject of the main verb are reflexive, e.g.

Caesar milites rogauit utrum se audire possent necne 'Caesar asked the soldiers whether they could hear him (= Caesar) or not'

- 4 Where Latin uses future participle + *sim/essem* to express the future, you should translate this into a simpler future in English, e.g.

Strobilus nesciuit ubi aulam celaturus esset 'Strobilus did not know where he was about to hide the pot' i.e. 'would hide the pot'

Exercises

1 Translate these sentences:

- (a) *omnes rogant num seruos acceperit Catilina.*
- (b) *nescit consul utrum ad urbem an ad Galliam Catilina iturus sit.*
- (c) *Metellus sciebat quo Catilina progressurus esset.*
- (d) *nemo scit quot milites habuerit Manlius.*
- (e) *nescio quantam praedam Catilina adeptus sit.*

- (f) *ciues rogant num consul coniuratores punire constituerit.*
- (g) *quis rogauit utrum ignauus esset Lentulus necne?*
- (h) *Sallustius narrat qualis Tulliani facies fuerit.*
- (i) *omnes scimus quot legiones Catilina instruxerit.*
- (j) *consules rogauerunt num copiae Catilinae magnae futurae essent.*
- (k) *scire uelim utrum Catilina an consul uicturus sit.*
- (l) *rogauit utrum Catilina ipse suos milites in proelium duxisset necne*

2 Translate these sentences:

- (a) *scribis te uelle scire qui sit status¹ rei publicae.* (Cicero)
- (b) *quid faciendum sit, a faciente discendum² est.* (Seneca)
- (c) *considerabimus quid fecerit, quid faciat, quid facturus sit.* (Cicero)
- (d) *uiuam an³ moriar, nulla est in me metus⁴.* (Ennius)
- (e) *nihil est difficilius quam quid deceat uidere.* (Cicero)

¹ *status* = the situation

² *discō* 3 I learn

³ *an* or *or* note that there is no preceding *utrum*

⁴ *metus* (unusually) is f. here

3 Translate into Latin (See R3 Note 4 for strict rules):

- (a) I would like to tell you why you have been called together.
- (b) You all know how idle Lentulus has been.
- (c) Do not tell me how many enemies are pursuing us.
- (d) I urge you to remember how much hope you have placed in this battle.
- (e) Someone may ask why we are fighting.

173 Conditional clauses: 'if x had happened, y would have happened'

Where a *si* ('if') clause uses the pluperfect subjunctive and the main clause uses a pluperfect subjunctive, the meaning is 'if x had happened, y would have happened' (cf. 139), e.g.

si Catilinam uidissem, fugissem 'if I had seen Catiline, I would have fled'

si effugissent, Roma delicta esset 'if they had escaped, Rome would have been destroyed'

Notes

- 1 This meaning is sometimes expressed by imperfect subjunctives (see 139³).
- 2 Mixtures of the set formulae are also possible, e.g. *sī hoc fēcissem, laetus essem* 'If I had done this, I would (now) be happy'.

Exercises

1 Translate into English:

- (a) *nisi Lentulus ignāuus fuisset, rēs pūblica magnō in periculō fuisset*
- (b) *sī coniūrātōrēs diuitiās habuissent, Catilīnae sē numquam adiūnxissent*
- (c) *Catilīnae mīlitēs, nisi eōs necessitudō pugnāre coēgisset, effugere cōnatī essent.*
- (d) *uicisset Catilīna, nisi Fortūna eī inuīdisset*
- (e) *sī Catilīnae satis frūmentī fuisset, in montibus manēre cōstituisset.*

2 Translate into Latin:

- (a) You would all have lived your life in exile, if I had not made this plan.
- (b) If Lentulus had been brave, our danger would not now be so great.¹
- (c) If you had possessed wealth, you would now be fighting against me.²
- (d) Catiline would have gone into exile, if he had foreseen the idleness of Lentulus.
- (e) If Catiline had not made a speech, his soldiers would not have realised how much danger there was.

¹ Use *sī* + plup. subj., impf. subj.

² Use *sī* + plup. subj., impf. subj.

174 *quōminus, quīn* + subjunctive

- 1 *quōminus* (= *quō minus*, 'so that . . . not') is used after verbs of preventing, hindering, restraining, obstructing, and is an extension of the purpose or result clause constructions already met (144, 148). The best translation in these circumstances is usually 'from', e.g.

mē impedit quōminus eam 'he hinders me so that I cannot go / from going'
eīs obstitit quōminus īrent 'he stood in their way so that they could not go', 'he opposed their departure'
nāuēs uentō tenēbantur quōminus in portum uenīre possent 'The ships were prevented by the wind from coming (= 'so that they could not come') into the harbour'

NB. See further Reference Grammar S2(f).

- 2 *quīn* (*quī ne* 'how not?') is generally found in a negative context and has a number of usages of deliberative, consecutive and indirect force using the subjunctive

- (a) After negative expressions of preventing e.g. *nīl tē impedit quīn eās* 'nothing prevents you from going / so that you cannot go'.
- (b) Meaning 'but that', 'without', 'that not' in negative contexts, e.g. *numquam eum uideō quīn rīdeam* 'I never see him but that I laugh / without laughing', *numquam ēgressus sum quīn uidērer* 'I never went out but that I was seen / without being seen'; *nēmo tam sapiēns est quīn erret* 'no-one is so wise but that he makes a mistake / that he does not make a mistake'.

Note also the expressions *facere nōn possum quīn* 'I cannot do (a thing) but that' 'I cannot help —ing'; *feri nōn potest quīn* 'it cannot come about but that . . .', 'it is impossible that . . . not'; *nōn multum abest quīn* 'it is not far from being the case that . . .'

- (c) In certain negative expressions of doubting meaning '(but) that', e.g. *dubium nōn est quīn* 'there is no doubt (but) that . . .'; *nōn dubitō quīn* 'I do not doubt (but) that . . .'; *dubitārī nōn potest quīn* 'it cannot be doubted (but) that'.

Examine the following examples:

nōn dubium erat quīn Catilīna uinceretur 'there was no doubt that Catiline was being defeated'

nēmo dubitābit quīn Lentulus ignāuus fuerit 'no-one will doubt that Lentulus was a coward'

nēmo est quīn sciat 'everyone knows'

ferī nōn potest quīn rēs pūblica salua sīt 'it is impossible that the state will not be safe'

Catilīna facere nōn poterat quīn frūstrā loqueretur 'Catiline could not help speaking to no purpose'

NB. See further Reference Grammar Q2(a), S2(a) 3(i)–(iv), S2(e).

Exercises

1 Translate into English:

- (a) impediō quōminus tibi nārrem quid Catilīna dixerit.
- (b) nec aetās impedit quōminus et cēterārum rērum et in primīs agrī colendī studia teneāmus. (Cicero)
- (c) nōn dubium est quīn Catilīna coniūrātor fuerit.
- (d) quīn loquar, numquam mē potes dēterrere.¹ (Plautus)
- (e) dubitārī nōn potest quīn Fortūna Catilīnae inuiderit.
- (f) quis dubitet quīn in uirtūte dīuītiaē sint? (Cicero)
- (g) nēmo est tam senex quī sē annum nōn putet posse uiuere (Cicero)
- (h) nōn potest iūcundē² uiuī nisi cum uirtūte uiuatur. (Cicero)

¹ dēterrē 2 I frighten off, prevent² iūcundē happily

2 Translate into Latin (see Note on 174 for references to Reference Grammar discussions):

- (a) Nothing stops you from speaking.¹
- (b) There is no doubt that² this is true.
- (c) Catiline was prevented from³ leaving the mountains.
- (d) I am being held back by necessity from following the rest of the army.⁴
- (e) There was no doubt that Catiline was forced to fight.

¹ quōminus or quīn² quīn³ nē or quōminus⁴ 'I hold back' = teneō ? nē or quōminus

Reading exercise / Test exercise

In indirect speech there are three basic constructions: (i) statements are expressed by acc. + inf.; (ii) commands by ut/nē + subjunctive; (iii) indirect questions by a question word + subjunctive. As you know, subordinate clauses within it also have subjunctive verbs. You need also to know that in extended passages, indirect commands are often represented by subjunctive alone. In reading, the most important thing is to be aware when such an extended passage begins: once the fact of indirect speech is spotted, the next thing is to remember that the tense of the introductory verb will affect the tense of all subjunctives.

58: Caesar has just won a battle at the river Arar against one canton (pāg-us ī 2m.) of the migrating Helvetii. They send him an embassy, headed by Divico.

is ita cum Caesare ēgit: sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Heluetiis faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset atque esse uoluisset; sīn bellō persequī perseuerāret, reminiscerētur et ueteris incommodī et prīstinae uirtūtis Heluetiōrum. quod imprōuīsō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum eī quī flūmen trānsissent suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae magnopere uirtūti tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret. sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suis didicisse, ut magis uirtūte quam dolō contenderent aut insidiis nīterentur. quārē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōstitissent ex calamitāte populi Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.

(Caesar, Dē Bellō Gallicō 1, 13, 3-7)

- 1. .

agō 3 ēgī I deal, do business [Indirect Speech begins after the colon]

faceret [Indirect: it represents either faciat ('were to make') or faciet ('is going to make')]

itūrōs, futūrōs sc. esse: 'they would go and stay' [Both refer to the Helvetii]

cōstituō 3 cōstitui I place, put
in but if

perseueraret [Indirect: represents either perseueret ('were to continue') or perseuerābit ('is going to continue')]

perseuerō 1 I continue

reminisceretur [Indirect command]

reminiscor 3 dep. I remember (+ gen)
incommodum ī 2m. misfortune [Inflicted by the Helvetii upon L. Cassius in 107]

prīstin-us a um former

quod 'as for the fact that' [The reported speech continues]

imprōuīsō unexpectedly

5 adortus 4 dep. adortus I attack

flūmen flumin-is 3m. river

trāseō trāscire trānsi I cross

nē [introduces an indirect command, negative]

suae [Hold until solved]

tribuō 3 I attribute [I e. 'it', 'the fact that' - the quod clause is the object of this verb]

ipsōs [I e. the Helvetii]

dēspiciō 3/4 I look down on

sē [I e. the Helvetii]

discō 3 didici I learn

contendō 3 I struggle, fight

quārē therefore

nē [introduces another negative indirect command]

committeret [Tr. 'act in such a way']

cōsistō 3 cōstiti I stop

10 interneciō interneciōn-is 3f. killing, slaughter

memori-a ae 1f. remembrance, record

prōdō 3 I hand down, transmit, produce

NB. For rules governing conditions in indirect speech, see Reference Grammar R4(b).

English-Latin

Reread the text of 5F(i), then translate this passage into Latin:

'You can see, soldiers, in what danger our affairs are. Two armies prevent us from leaving these mountains without a battle. If we had not relied

upon Lentulus, we would have already escaped. Now, however, we must fight, for our fatherland, for our liberty and for our lives. Do not be¹ cowards. If we win² there is no doubt that³ safety is ours. If we yield² through fear, nothing will stop us from⁴ being butchered.'

¹ *nē* + perfect subjunctive

² *quī* + subjunctive

³ Use future perfect

⁴ *quōminus* + subjunctive or *quān* + subjunctive

Virgil's Aeneid

Eventually, Aeneas and his rival Turnus come face to face. Aeneas is about to kill him, but Turnus pleads for his life. In this passage, Aeneas is about to yield to Turnus' entreaty, when he sees Pallas' sword-belt glittering on him (see note). Aeneas kills him, and the Aeneid ends.

stetit ācer in armīs

Aenēās uoluēns oculōs dextramque repressit;
et iam iamque magis cūctantem flectere sermō
coeperat, infēlix umerō cum appāruit altō
balteus et nōtīs fulserunt cingula bullīs 5
Pallantis puerī, uictum quem uulnere Turnus
strāuerat atque umerīs inimicum īsigne gerēbat.
ille, oculīs postquam saeuī monimenta dōlōris
exuuiāsque hausit, furiīs accēsus et irā
terribilis 'tūne hinc spoliīs indūte meōrum 10
ēripiāre mihi? Pallās tē hōc uulnere, Pallās
immolat et poenam scelerātō ex sanguine sūmit.'
hoc dicēns, ferrum aduersō sub pectore condit
feruidus; ast illi soluuntur frīgore membra
uītaque cum gemitū fugit indignāta sub umbrās. 15
(Virgil, Aeneid 12.935–52)

stetit [Subject? Wait]

uoluō 3 I roll, shift

reprimō 3 repressi I check, restrain

iam iamque magis 'now more and more'

cūctantem [Refers to Aeneas. Register case and hold]

flectō 3 I bend, persuade

sermō [i.e. the words (of Turnus)]

infēlix infēlic-is ill-starred, disastrous

[Wait for noun for infēlix and introduction word to this new clause]

umer-us ī 2m. shoulder [Dat. or abl.?

Hold]

cum [Introduces the clause]

appāreō 2 I appear, come into view
[Where? umerō]

alt-us a um on the top of

5 balte-us ī 2m. sword-belt

nōt-us a um well-known

fulgeō 2 fulsi I shine, glitter

cingul-a ōrum 2n. pl. baldric

bull-a ae 1f. stud [Solves nōtīs. But what case?]

Pallās Pallant-is 3m. Pallas, the young man entrusted to Aeneas' charge by his father Evander. Turnus killed Pallas in battle (Aeneid 10.439ff.)

uictum quem [quem introduces the clause, object of strāuerat]

uulnus uulner-is 3n. wound

sternō 3 strāuī I lay low

inimic-us a um hostile, of his enemy

īsigne īsign-is 3n. insignia, a sign

gerō 3 I wear [What? Where? Solves umerīs]

ille [i.e. Aeneas]

postquam [Introduces clause]

moniment-um ī 2n. memorial (to + gen.)

exuui-ae ārum 2f. pl. spoils

hausiō 4 hausī I drink in

furi-ae ārum 1f. pl. the spirits of vengeance

accendō 3 accendī accēsus I burn up, consume

ir-a ae 1f. anger

10 spoli-a ōrum 2n. pl. spoils

indūt-us a um dressed in (+ abl.)

meōrum 'of mine' [i.e. 'of my people']

ēripiō 3/4 I snatch away [Deliberative subj. 'are you to be . . .?']

immolō 1 I sacrifice

poenam sūmō 3 I take revenge

scelerāt-us a um villainous

aduers-us a um facing

pectus pector-is 3n. chest

condō 3 I hide, bury

feruid-us a um hot, in passion

a 1 il

illi (dat.) [i.e. Turnus]

frīgus frīgor-is 3n. cold, chill (of death)

membr-um ī 2n. limb

15 gemit-us ūs 4m. groan

indignāt-us a um complaining

sub (+ acc) down to

umbr-a ae 1f. shade

Deliciae Latinae

Martial

quārē nōn habeat, Fabulle, quaeris,
uxōrem Themisōn? habet sorōrem. (12.20)

Themisōn Themisōn-is 3m

Themison [Subject of habeat and habet]

aestiūō seruēs ubi piscem tempore, quaeris?
in thermīs seruā, Caeciliāne, tuīs. (2.78)

aestiū-us a um hot,

summer [Hold aestiūō until solved by tempore]

seruēs deliberative

subjunctive [See 152']

piscis pisc-is 3m. fish

therm-ae ārum 1f. pl. baths

(which were supposed to be hot)

Caeciliān-us ī 2m.

Caecilianus (a bath-keeper)

Section 5G

Running vocabulary for 5G(i)

<i>accendō</i> 3 I fire	<i>interficiendum</i> killing (acc. gerund of <i>interficiō</i>)	<i>post</i> (+ acc.) after; ((adv.) afterwards, later)
<i>aciēs acie-ī</i> 5f. battle-line	<i>latrō latrōn-is</i> 3m. bandit	<i>praeficiō</i> 3/4 <i>praefeci</i>
<i>aeger aegr-a aegr-um</i> ill	<i>lēgāt-us ī</i> 2m. commander	<i>praefectus</i> I put x (acc.) in charge of y (dat.)
<i>amplius</i> more than	<i>locō</i> I I place	<i>prō</i> (+ abl.) in accordance with
<i>appellō</i> I I address	<i>M = Mārcō; Mārc-us ī</i> 2m. Marcus	<i>pugnandum</i> fighting (acc. gerund of <i>pugno</i>)
<i>canō</i> 3 I sound (lit. 'sing')	<i>moriendum</i> dying (acc. gerund of <i>morior</i>)	<i>quemque</i> (acc. s. m.) (l. 301) each; (l. 293) optimum <i>quemque</i> = all the best men; (ll 298, 302) <i>inimū</i>
<i>centuriō centuriōn-is</i> 3m. centurion (commander of a century – actually less than 100 men)	<i>nārrandō</i> by relating (abl. gerund of <i>nārrō</i>)	<i>quemque</i> – ich individual
<i>circumcundō</i> by going round (abl. gerund of <i>circumēō</i>)	<i>nōminandō</i> by naming (abl. gerund of <i>nōmino</i>)	<i>remoueō</i> 2 <i>remōuī remōtus</i> I remove
<i>corn-ū ūs</i> 4n. wing (dat. s. <i>cornū</i>)	<i>nōminō</i> I I name	<i>sign-um ī</i> 2n. (l. 288) trumpet-call, (l. 292) standard
<i>cuiusque</i> (gen. s. m.) of each (man)	<i>parat-us a um</i> prepared (to: <i>ad</i> + gerund)	<i>sinister sinistr-a um</i> left
<i>dexter dextr-a um</i> right	<i>pedes pedis-is</i> 3m. foot-soldier	<i>subsidi-um ī</i> 2n. (or pl.) reserve
<i>exaequō</i> I I make equal	<i>permittō</i> 3 I entrust x (acc.) to y (dat.)	<i>veteran-us a um</i> veteran
<i>Faesusuln-us ī</i> 2m. man from Faesulae	<i>Petret-us ī</i> 2m. M. Petreus	
<i>fac-us ī</i> 2m. hearth		
<i>frōns front-is</i> 3f. front		
<i>inerm-is ē</i> unarmed		

Notes

l. 290 *quō . . . esset* see 148.l. 292 *reliquārum*: sc. '(of the) cohorts'.

Learning vocabulary for 5G(i)

Nouns

<i>acies acie-ī</i> 5f. battle-line, sharp edge, point, keenness (of sight)	<i>latrō latrōn-is</i> 3m. robber, bandit	<i>sign-um ī</i> 2n. standard, trumpet-call (see l. signal, sign; statue)
<i>centuriō centuriōn-is</i> 3m. centurion	<i>lēgāt-us ī</i> 2m. commander (pl. ambassadors)	<i>subsidi-um ī</i> 2n. reserve; help
<i>corn-ū ūs</i> 4n. wing (of army); horn		

Adjectives

aeger aegr-a um ill*dexter dextr-a um* right, favourable*sinister sinistr-a um* left, unfavourable

Verbs

appellō I I name, call, address*cūrō* I I am in command (look after, care for)
nōminō I I name*praeficiō* 3/4 *praefeci*
praefectus I put x (acc.) in charge of y (dat.)

Others

amplius more than (from *ampl-us a um* great)*post* (+ acc.) behind; after (adv. afterwards, later; behind)*prō* (+ abl.) in accordance with (for, in return for; on behalf of; in front of; instead of)

Running vocabulary for 5G(ii)

<i>ācriter</i> fiercely, spiritedly	<i>incurrō</i> I I run into	<i>praetōri-us a um</i> praetorian i.e. the best fighters)
<i>alibi</i> (with <i>aliōs</i>) in different places [See 102']	<i>inducō</i> 3 I lead (x; acc. into y; in + acc.)	<i>pristin-us a um</i> former
<i>cadō</i> 3 I fall, die	<i>infest-us a um</i> hostile; <i>cum infestis signis</i> = 'with standards set for attack'	<i>proelium committere</i> to join battle
<i>comminus</i> to close quarters	<i>instō</i> I I press on, approach	<i>reor</i> 2 dep. <i>ratus</i> I think, believe, suppose
<i>committō</i> [See <i>proelium committere</i>]	<i>integer integr-a um</i> fresh, not wounded	<i>resistō</i> 3 I resist
<i>cōnfert-us a um</i> close-packed	<i>labōrō</i> I I am in difficulties	<i>sauci-us a um</i> wounded
<i>cōnfodiō</i> 3/4 I stab	<i>latus later-is</i> 3n. flank	<i>strēnu-us a um</i> energetic
<i>contrā ac</i> (+ indic.) contrary to what	<i>omitto</i> 3 I leave out, leave aside; let fall	<i>succurrō</i> 3 I run to help (+ dat.)
<i>expedit-us ī</i> 2m. light-armed soldier	<i>paulatim</i> little by little, gradually	<i>tendō</i> 3 I struggle, fight
<i>explōrō</i> I I investigate, reconnoitre	<i>perturbō</i> I I disturb, confuse	<i>tub-a ae</i> 1f. trumpet
<i>exsequor</i> 3 dep. I carry out, perform	<i>pil-um ī</i> 2n. heavy javelin (normally thrown by soldiers before hand-to-hand fighting began)	<i>uersor</i> I dep. I am occupied
<i>ferentārī-us ī</i> 2m. light-armed soldier (armed only with missiles)		<i>veterān-us ī</i> 2m. veteran
<i>fundō</i> 3 <i>fūdī fūsus</i> I rout		<i>unde</i> from where
<i>incedō</i> 3 I advance		<i>uterque</i> (nom. s. m.) each (of two) [Note the pl. verb]
		<i>utrōque</i> (abl. s. n.) each (of the two)

Notes

- l. 307 *ad* 'to that place' 'picked up by *unde* 'from where'
 l. 308 *uentum* *et* } impersonal passives (see 155)
 l. 311 *certatum* }
 l. 311 *instāre* }
 l. 312 *uersārī, succurrere* }
 l. 313 *arcessere, prouidēre, pugnāre,* } historic infinitives.
 l. 314 *ferire* }
 ll. 319 *fūsās . . . relictum; sc. esse.*

Learning vocabulary for 5G(ii)

Nouns

latus later-is 3n. side, flank
pilum ī 2n. heavy javelin

Adjectives

integer integr-a um whole, untouched
pristinus a um former; original
sauci-us a um wounded

Verbs

cadō 3 *cecidī casum* I fall, die
instō I *instī* I press upon; urge, pursue, am at hand, approach; strive after (*in* + *stō*)
omitto 3 *omisi omissus* I give up, let fall, omit, leave aside (*ob* + *mitto*)
reor 2 dep. *ratus* I think, believe, suppose
resistō 3 *resistī* (+ dat.) I resist; stand back, halt; pause (*re* + *sistō*)
succurrō 3 *succurrī*
succursum I run to help, assist (+ dat.) (*sub* + *currō*)
tendō 3 *tetendī tēsus* or *tentus* I strive, fight; (stretch (out); offer; direct, (intrans.) travel)
uersor 1 dep. I am occupied; stay, dwell; am in a certain condition

Others

alibi somewhere else
paulatim little by little, gradually
unde from where, whence

Running vocabulary for 5G(iii)

aduers-us a um in front
anim-a ae 1f. soul, life
cadāuer cadāuer-is 3n. corpse
cernō 3 I see
cognāt-us ī 2n. kinsman, blood-relative
corpus corpor-is 3n. body
ferē almost
gaudi-um ī 2n. joy
hostīl-is e of the enemy
inertent-us a um bloodless

ingenu-us a um free-born
luct-us ūs 4m. mourning
maeror maeror-is 3m. grief
occidō 3 *ocidi* I die, fall
paululum a very little
prōcēdō 3 *prōcessī* I advance, proceed, come forth
pugnandō by fighting (abl. gerund of *pugnō*)
quisquam (nom. s. m.) (l. 325) anyone (pronoun); (l. 328) any (adj.)

quisque (nom. s. m.) (l. 323) each person, (l. 331) strenuousness
pus *p* *e* all the most energetic men
spīrō I I breathe
spoliandī of stripping (corpses) (gen. gerund of *spoliō* 1)
strenu-us a um energetic
tegō 3 I cover
uarie in different ways

uisendī of visiting/viewing
 gen. gerund of *uiō* 3
uiu-us a um living, alive
uolō 3 I turn over (trans.)
uulnerō I I wound
uulnus uulner-is 3n. wound
uult-us ūs 4m. face, expression

Notes

- l. 322 *cernerēs*: referring to the past (see 153.2).
 l. 323 *quem* with *locum*. *locum* picked up by *eum*.
 l. 334 *aliī . . . pars*: 'some . . . others'. A variant of *aliī . . . aliī*.

Learning vocabulary for 5G(iii)

Nouns

anim-a ae 1f. soul, life, breath
luct-us ūs 4m. grief, mourning
corpus corpor-is 3n. body
gaudi-um ī 2n. joy
uulnus uulner-is 3n. wound
uult-us ūs 4m. face, expression

Adjectives

aduers-us a um in front (i.e. facing the enemy) (hostile; opposite; unfavourable)
uiu-us a um alive, living

Verbs

occidō 3 *ocidi* *occāsum* I fall, die (*ob* + *cadō*)
tegō 3 *tēxi* *tēctus* I cover
uolūō 3 *uolui* *uolūtus* I roll, turn (over) (trans.)
uulnerō I I wound

Grammar and exercises for 5G

175 Gerunds: -nd- forms, '-ing'

We have already seen that verbs can form adjectives (i.e. participles and gerundives), when they act like adjectives in agreeing with nouns or pronouns, e.g.

nāue captā nautae effūgērunt 'with the ship captured, the sailors fled'

hic homo monendus est 'this man is to be / must be warned'.

Verbs can also form nouns. As such, verbs take the form of the *infinitive*, or the *gerund*, which has exactly the same forms as the neuters of the *gerundive* (see 160). The declension is as follows (acc. to abl. as for 2n. nouns):

	1 'loving'	2 'having'	3 'speaking'
nom.	amā-re	habē-re	dīc-e-re
acc.	amā-nd-um	habē-nd-um	dīc-e-nd-um
	amā-re	habē-re	dīc-e-re
gen.	amā-nd-ī	habē-nd-ī	dīc-e-nd-ī
dat.	amā-nd-ō	habē-nd-ō	dīc-ē-nd-ō
abl.	amā-nd-ō	habē-nd-ō	dīc-ē-nd-ō

	4 'hearing'	3/4 'capturing'
nom.	audī-re	cāp-e-re
acc.	audi-ē-nd-um	capi-ē-nd-um
	audī-re	cāp-e-re
gen.	audi-ē-nd-ī	capi-e-nd-ī
dat.	audi-ē-nd-ō	capi-e-nd-ō
abl.	audi-ē-nd-ō	capi-ē-nd-ō

Deponents have exactly the same forms and *active* meaning, i.e. *mina-nd-um* 'threatening', *pollice-nd-um* 'promising', *loqu-e-nd-um* 'speaking', *menti-e-nd-um* 'lying', *prōgredi-e-nd-um* 'advancing'.

Usages

- 1 The infinitive is used as a noun-gerund in e.g. *dulce est amāre* 'it is sweet to make love' 'love-making is pleasant'. Here *amāre* is noun-subject. Cf. *cupiō ambulāre* 'I desire to walk' 'I like walking'. Here the infinitive is a noun-object. With prepositions, the -nd- form is used, e.g. *ad amandum* 'with a view to loving'.
- 2 *ad* + acc. 'for the purpose of', e.g. *ad dīcendum* 'for the purpose of speaking', 'with a view to speaking'. The gerund may take an object, e.g. *ad nāuem capiendum* 'to capture the ship'. Cf. 161.3 (gerundives).
- 3 *usā/grātiā* + gen. 'for the sake of', 'for the purpose of', e.g. *dīcendī causā* 'for the sake of speaking' (note word-order), *habendī grātiā* 'for the sake of having', 'in order to have'. Cf. 161.3 (gerundives).
- 4 In the abl., e.g. *dīcendō* 'by speaking', *ambulandō* 'by walking' (cf. *innuendō* 'by hinting'), e.g. *ūnus homō nobīs cunctandō restituit rem* 'one man (i.e. Q. Fabius Maximus Cunctator) restored our fortunes by delaying' (Ennius).

N.B. Remember the irregular gerunds *eund-um* 'going' (*eō*), *oriund-um* 'rising' (*orior*), *faciundum* 'making', 'doing', *gerundum* 'doing' etc. are also found, for *faciendum gerendum*. The key vowel was originally -u-.

Exercises

- 1 Form, translate and decline the gerunds of the following verbs: *exorior*, *dormiō*, *petō*, *nōscō*, *fugiō*, *commoror*, *teneō*, *eō*, (optional: *uoluō*, *uulnerō*, *occidō*, *uersor*, *reperiō*, *agō*, *gerō*, *taceō*).
- 2 Translate
 - (a) *ad ūtendum*
 - (b) *eundī causā*.
 - (c) *discēdendō*.
 - (d) *resistendī grātiā*.
 - (e) *ad uulnerandum*.
 - (f) *uidendō*.
 - (g) *uoluendī causā*.
- 3 Give the Latin for (using gerunds):
 - (a) To wound.
 - (b) For the purpose of delaying.

- (c) By holding
- (d) For the sake of arising.
- (e) To assist.
- (f) Of seeking.
- (g) In doing.

4 Translate these sentences or phrases saying whether gerund or gerundive is being used:

- (a) ad milites vulnerandos.
- (b) mihi eundem est
- (c) progrediendi causa
- (d) militibus nominandis.
- (e) fortiter resistendo.
- (f) ad corpora uolenda.
- (g) saucius ab integris succurrendum erat
- (h) coniuratorum consul praetoribus puniendos tradidit
- (i) discendae gratia.
- (j) ad exercitum instruendum.
- (k) hominis mens¹ discendo² alitur³ et cogitando. (Cicero)
- (l) nihil tam difficile est quin quaerendo inuestigare possit. (Terence)

¹ mens ment-is 3f mind

² discō 3 1 learn

³ alitur 'is fed', 'grows'

⁴ inuestigō 1 1 trace out

176 quisque and quisquam

quisque means 'each and every', 'everyone'. It is often used with the superlative, e.g. *optimus quisque* 'each and every best (male)', 'all the best men'; *pessima quaeque* 'each and every most wicked woman', 'all the most wicked women'.

quisquam means 'anyone', 'any' and is normally found in negative contexts, e.g. *nec quisquam* 'and not anyone', 'and no-one'.

quisque and *quisquam* decline like *quis* (29) + *que/quam*. Note the neuter of *quisquam* is *quicquam* and the neuter of *quisque* is *quidque* or *quodque*.

177 uterque

uterque means 'both', 'each (of two)' and declines as follows:

	s.	f.	n.
nom	utér-que	útr-a-que	utr-úm-que
acc.	utr-um-que	utr-ain-que	utr-um-que
gen.	← utr-ius-que →		
dat.	← utr-ius-que →		
abl.	utr-ō-que	utr-a-que	utr-ō-que

	s.	f.	n.
nom	utr-i-que	utr-ae-que	útr-a-que
acc.	utr-os-que	utr-as-que	útr-a-que
gen.	utr-ōrum-que	utr-ārum-que	utr-ōrum-que
dat.	← utr-is-que →		
abl.	← utr-i-que →		

Cf. *alter*, *nūllus*, *tōtus*, *ūnus*, *sōlus* etc. which also decline exactly like *multi-us a uni* except for the gen. s. in *-ius* and the dat. s. in *-ī*.

178 4th declension neuter cornū ūs 'horn', 'wing of army'

	s.	pl
nom	córnū	córnū-a
acc.	córnū	córnū-a
gen.	córnū-s	córnū-um
dat.	córnū	córn-ibus
abl.	córnū	córn-ibus

NB. The only other noun of this type you are likely to meet is *genū* 'knee' (cf. 'genuflect', to bend the knee).

Exercises

1 Translate these sentences:

- (a) pessimus quisque coniurationi fauet.
- (b) stultissimus quisque haec intellegere potest.

- (c) nec quisquam hoc dicere ausus est.
 (d) interdicitque¹ omnibus nē quemquam interficiant. (Caesar)
 (e) in omni arte² optimum quidque rarissimum³ est. (Cicero)
 (f) remedia utriusque fortunae. (Title of a book by fourteenth-century Italian Petrarch)
 (g) tū mihi uidēris utrumque factūrus. (Cicero)
 (h) aut enim nemo aut, si quisquam, ille sapiens fuit. (Cicero)
 (i) prō sē quisque ad populum loquēbatur. (Cicero)
 (j) . . . nec quisquam ex agmine tantō
 audet adire uirum. (Virgil)

¹ interdico 3 + dat) I forbid

² ars art-is M. art

³ rar-us a uni rare

⁴ sapiens sapient-is wise

2 Give the Latin for:

- (a) All the best men resist their enemies.
 (b) Nor did the commander send anyone wounded into battle.
 (c) The commander of each of the two armies encouraged his soldiers.
 (d) It is not possible to say anything good¹.
 (e) Petreius encouraged each individual.
 (f) By relating each man's deeds he encouraged the soldiers.

¹ Genitive; cf. quid negāri

179 Further comparative clauses

1 atque/ac

atque/ac is used after adjectives or adverbs which express 'likeness' or 'unlikeness', such as *idem* 'the same', *alius* 'different', 'other', *aliter* 'differently', *contrā* 'opposite', 'contrary', *par* 'equal', *pariter* 'equally', *perinde* 'in like manner', *similis* 'like', 'similar'. E.g.

iussērunt simulācrum Iouis, contrā atque antea fuerat, ad orientem conuētere 'they ordered (them) to turn the statue of Jupiter towards the East, contrary to what it had been before'
perinde ēgit ac dixit 'he acted just as he said'

2 Correlatives

You have already met *ut* meaning 'as', which acts as a correlative to *sic* or *ita* 'thus', e.g. *ut tū imperās, sic/ita ego faciō* 'as you order, so I do'. In the same way, *tam* 'so' is answered by *quam* 'as', e.g.

tam beātus erat ille quam miser ego 'he was as (lit. so) happy as I unhappy'

tot 'so many' is answered by *quot* 'as many', e.g.

tot uirī sunt quot fēminae 'so many men there are, as many (as) (there are) women', 'there are as many men as women'

Cf. *tantus* ('so great'), *quantus* ('as great', 'as'); *tālis* ('of such a sort') . . . *quālis* ('of which sort', 'as'), e.g.

tanta sapientia eī inest quanta uīs 'there is so great wisdom in him as great (as there is) force', 'he is as much brain as brawn'
tālem uirtutem praebebat quālem Horātius 'he showed bravery of such a sort as the sort (which) Horatius (showed)'

3 Unreal comparisons

quasi, *uelut*, *tamquam* mean 'as if', 'as though' and (with or without *si* added) take a *subjunctive* where the comparison is unreal or hypothetical. Constructions under 179.1 add *si*. e.g.

ita sē gerit quasi stultus sit 'he is behaving as though he were a fool' (but he is not)
perinde agit ac si hostis sit 'he acts just as though he were an enemy' (but is not)

Exercises

1 Translate into English:

- (a) Catilina aliter ac Petreius ratus erat agēbat.
 (b) tam ignāuus erat Gabinius quam Lentulus.
 (c) perinde atque eī imperātum erat, sic Mānlius ēgit.
 (d) rēs gestae sunt contrā atque expectauerat Petreius.
 (e) loquitur quasi stultus sit.

2 Translate these sentences:

- (a) nihil est hominī tam timendum quam inuidia. (Cicero)
 (b) nihil est tam fallāx quam uīta hūmāna, nihil tam insidiōsum. (Seneca)
 (c) quot hominēs, tot sententiae. (Terence)
 (d) plērique habēre amicum tālem uolunt, quālēs ipsī esse nōn possunt. (Cicero)
 (e) paruī sīc iacent, tamquam omnīnō sine animō sint. (Cicero)

inuidi-a ae 1f. envy,
 hatred
 fallāx fallāx-is decentful

hūmān-us a um human
 insidiōs-us a um dangerous
 paruī = babies

inimicus inimici-is enemy
 complēt-ur completely

3 Give the Latin for (using comparative clause)

- (a) This man is as good as that man.
 (b) My son is acting against my wishes.
 (c) You are the sort of person that your father was.
 (d) He is acting differently from the way he was told to
 (e) I will act in accordance with your commands
 (f) He was walking as though he had been wounded

Reading exercises / Test exercises

- 1 The speaker is Cato the Censor (234–149). He is talking about old age with Gaius Laelius (b. 186) and Publius Scipio Africanus (Minor) (c 185–129), who are pictured as young men at the time of the conversation. His particular theme here is what can be done to overcome what are normally seen as the peculiar drawbacks of old age.

resistendum, Laelī et Scīpiō, senectūtī est eiusque uitia diligentiā compēnsanda sunt, pugnandum tamquam contrā morbum sīc contrā senectūtem, habenda ratiō ualētūdinis, ūtendum exercitātiōnibus modicīs, tantum cibī et pōtiōnis adhibendum, ut reficiantur uīrēs, nōn opprimantur. nec uērō corporī solum subueniendum est, sed mentī atque animō multō magis; nam haec quoque, nisi tamquam lūminī oleum instillēs, exstinguuntur senectūte. et corpora quidem exercitātiōnum defatigātiōne ingrauēscunt, animī autem sē exercendō leuantur. nam quōs ait Caecilius 'cōmicōs stultōs senēs', hōs significat crēdulōs obliuīōsōs dissolutōs, quae uitia sunt nōn senectūtis, sed inertis ignāuae somniculōsae senectūtis. ut petulantia, ut libīdō magis

est adulescentium quam senum, nec tamen omnium adulescentium, sed nōn probōrum, sīc ista senilis stultitia, quae delīratiō appellārī solet, senum leuium est, nōn omnium. (Cicero, Dē senectūte (Catō Maior) 35–6)

senectut-is 3f. old age
 int-um ī 2n. fault, shortcoming
 compensō 1 I balance
 pugnandum sc. est [Note the ellipse of est, which is understood from the previous part of the sentence
 resistendum . . . est (also in l. 3: habenda, ūtendum; l. 4: adhibendum)]

tamquam just as, as though
 morb-us ī 2m. disease
 ratiō ration-is 3f. method, regimen
 ualētūdō ualētudin-is 3f. health
 exercitātiō exercitatio-nis 3f. exercise
 modic-us a um moderate
 pōtiō pōtiō-nis 3f. drink
 adhibeo 2 I use
 reficio 3/4 I refresh

5 corporī [Hold until solved, reading as a phrase with solum]
 subueniō 4 (+ dat.) I help
 mēns ment-is 3f. mind
 lūmen lūmin-is 3n. light
 ole-um ī 2n. oil
 instillō 1 I drop x (acc.) into y (dat.)
 [Note mood of instillēs: subjunctive expressing generalised 2nd s. (see 153.2)]
 exstinguō 3 I quench, put out

quidem indeed [Emphasising corpora]
 defatigatiō defatigatiō-nis 3f. exhaustion
 weariness
 ingrauēscō 3 I grow heavier (i.e. stiffer)
 exerceo 2 I train, exercise
 leuō 1 I relieve [The prevalent metaphor centres on the stems grau- 'heavy', leu- 'light']
 ait '(he) calls

Caecilius = C. Statius, an early Roman comic poet

cōmic-us a um comic
 significō 1 I mean

10 credul-us a um credulous
 obliuīōs-us a um forgetful
 dissolut-us a um slack
 mers mers-is idle

somniculōs-us a um drowsy
 ut [Hold until solved]
 petulantia-a ae 1f. impudence,
 waywardness

adulescēns adulescent-is 3m. youth
 prob-us a um honest, upright
 senil-is e of old men
 stultiti-a ae 1f. foolishness
 delīratiō delīratiō-nis 3f. dementia,
 dotage, madness
 leu-is e frivolous, weak

- 2 The rape of Ceres' daughter Proserpina. She is picking flowers with her girlfriends. Her uncle, the god of the Underworld, Pluto, sees her, falls in love with her and snatches her off to Hades. Suspension of adjective in the first half of the line is particularly noticeable in this piece. (See 185 for the metre)

filia, cōsuētis ut erat comitāta puellīs.
 errābat nūdō per sua prāta pede.
 ualle sub umbrōsā locus est aspergine multā
 ūuidus ex altō dēsihentis aquae.
 tot fuerant illic, quot habet nātūra, colōrēs,
 pictaque dissimili flōre nitēbat humus.
 quam simul aspexit, 'comitēs, accēdite', dixit

'et mēcum plēnōs flōre referte sinūs!
 praeda puellārīs animōs prōlectat inānis,
 et nōn sentitur sēdulitāte labor. 10

Proserpina wanders off, by chance not followed by any of her friends.

hanc uidet et uīsam patruus uēlōciter aufert,
 rēgnaque caeruleīs in sua portat equīs
 illa quidem clāmābat, 'iō, cārissima māter,
 auferor!' ipsa suōs abscideratque sinūs:
 panditur intereā Dītī uia, namque diurnum 15
 lūmen inassuētī uix patiuntur equī
 at chorus aequālīs, cumulātae flōre ministrae,
 'Persephonē', clāmant 'ad tua dōna uenī!
 ut clāmāta silet, montīs ululātibus implent,
 et ferunt maestā pectora nūda manū. 20

(Ovid, Fasti 4.425–34 and 445–54)

cōsuētīs [Hold until solved]
 cōsuēt-us a um usual
 comitō 1 I accompany
 errō 1 I wander
 nūdō [Hold until solved]
 nūd-us a um naked
 prāt-a ōrum 2n. pl. meadows
 uallis uall-is 3f. valley
 umbrōs-us a um shady
 aspergō aspergin-is 3f. spray
 und-us a um wet [Read aspergine multā
 ūuidus as one phrase]
 alt-um ī 2n. high place
 dēsiliō 4 I leap down [Read ex altō
 dēsiliētis aquae as one phrase,
 dependent on aspergine]

5 tot . . . quot as many . . . as
 color colōr-is 3m. colour
 picta [Hold until solved]
 pingō 3 pīnxī pictus I paint
 dissimil-is e diverse
 flōs flōr-is 3m. flower
 niteo 2 I shine
 humus [Remember this is f.]
 simul as soon as
 aspiciō 3/4 aspexī I spot
 plēnōs [Hold until solved: plēnus takes
 gen. or abl. when it means 'full of']

referō referre I bring back
 sin-us ūs 4m. fold of garment, bosom
 puellār-is e girlish
 prōlectō 1 I entice away
 inān-is e vain, empty

10 sentitur [Passive: await subject]
 sēdulitās sēdulitāt-is 3f. earnest
 application, concentration
 uīsam [Refers to Proserpina]
 patru-us 2m. uncle
 uēlōciter swiftly
 rēgna [Hold until solved]
 rēgn-um ī 2n. kingdom, realm
 caeruleīs [Hold until solved]
 caerule-us a um dark
 portat sc. 'her'
 quidem indeed
 iō help!
 cār-us a um dear
 suōs [Hold until solved]
 abscindō 3 abscidī I tear apart
 -que = even

15 panditur [Passive: await subject]
 pandō 3 I open
 Dīs Dīt-is 3m. Hades, Pluto
 [Dītī = dative of agent, 'by']
 namque for in fact

diurn-us a um of the day [Don't stop
 reading at the line-end]
 lūmen lūmin-is 3n. light
 massuētī [Hold until solved]
 massuēt-us a um unaccustomed
 uix with difficulty
 chor-us ī 2m. group
 aequāl-is e of the same age
 cumulō 1 I load
 ministr-a ae 1f. attendant

cumulātae . . . ministrae [In apposition
 to chorus aequālīs]
 Persephonē [Vocative]
 don-um ī 2n. gift
 sileō 2 I am silent
 ululāt-us ūs 4m. cry, wail
 impleo 2 I fill (x acc. with y abl.)
 20 maestā [Hold until solved]
 maest-us a um sad
 pectus pector-is 3n. breast

English-Latin

Reread the text of 5G(iii) and then translate this passage into Latin:

When the fighting¹ was finished, you would have seen many corpses in the place. It was also possible to see² how much daring¹ there had been in Catiline and in his army. Each man had fallen in the place which he had seized by fighting. Nor had anyone run away. Catiline, who had run into the middle of the enemy for the purpose of dying quickly, was found far from his own men. He still retained the ferocity of expression³ he had had³ when⁴ alive. But the victory was not a joyful event for the Romans. All the best men had died or been wounded seriously. Those who had come out for the purpose of stripping corpses found not only enemies, but also friends and relatives as they turned over the cadavers. There were both joy and sorrow in the camp that night.

¹ Do not use a gerund here, but a noun

² Use uideri poterat (lit. 'it could be seen')

³ Do not forget to insert a . . . ī clause here, though English neglects it

⁴ Not needed: use adj. alone, agreeing with subject

Deliciae Latinae

Martial

cūr nōn mitto meōs¹ tibi, Pontiliāne, libelliōs?
 nē mihi tū mittās, Pontiliāne, tuōs. (7.3)

libell-us ī 2m. book

Pontilian-us ī 2m.
 Pontilianus

crās tē uictūrum, crās dicis, Postume, semper.
 dīc mīhi, crās istud, Postume, quando uenit?
 quam longē est crās istud? ubi est? aut unde petendum?
 numquid apud Parthōs Armeniōsque latet?
 iam crās istud habet Priamī uel Nestoris annōs.
 crās istud quantī, dīc mīhi, possit emī?
 crās uiuēs: hodiē iam uiuere, Postume, sērum est
 ille sapit, quisquis, Postume, uixit heri. (5.58)

cras tomorrow	Nestor (Greek warrior-king)
numquid 'can it be that it . . .'	[both renowned for their longevity!]
Parth-i ōrum 2m. pl. Parthians	quantī (gen.) 'at what price'
Armeni-i ōrum 2m. pl. Armenians	emī 3 I buy
lateō 2 I be hidden	sērum too late
5 Priam-us ī 2m. Priam (king of Troy)	sapiō 3/4 I am wise
Nestōr Nestor-is 3m	quisquis who
	heri yesterday

īnscrīpsit tumulis septem「 scelerāta 7 uirōrum
 'sē fēcisse' Chloē, quid pote simplicius? (9.15)

īnscrībō 3 īnscrīpsi I write upon (+ dat.)	scelerāt-us a um infamous	pote (sc. est) 'can be'
tumul-us ī 2m. tomb	Chloē Chloe (Greek f. nom.)	simplex simplic-is straightforward, frank

The Vulgate: sapiēns iūdicium Salamōnis

tunc uēnerunt duae mulierēs meretrīcēs ad rēgem, stetēruntque cōram eō. quārum ūna ait, 'obsecrō, mī domine; ego et mulier haec habitābāmus in domō ūnā, et peperī apud eam in cubiculō. tertiā autem diē postquam ego peperī, peperit et haec; et erāmus simul, nūllusque alius nōbīscum in domō, exceptīs nōbīs duābus. mortuus est autem filius mulieris huius nocte, dormiēns quippe oppressit eum. et cōnsurgēs intempestae noctis silentiō, tulit filium meum dē latere meō ancillae tuae dormientis, et collocāuit in sinū suō: suum autem filium, quī erat mortuus, posuit in sinū meō. cumque surrēxissem māne ut darem lac filiō meō, apparuit mortuus; quem dīligentius intuēns clārā lūce, dēprehendī nōn esse meum quod genueram.'

responditque altera mulier, 'nōn est ita ut dīcis, sed filius tuus mortuus est, meus autem uiuit.' ē contrāriō illa dīcēbat, 'mentīris: filius quippe

meus uiuit, et filius tuus mortuus est.' atque in hunc modum contendēbant cōram rēge.

tunc rēx ait, 'afferte mīhi gladium.' cumque attulissent gladium cōram rēge, 'diuidite', inquit, 'īnfantem uiuum in duās partīs, et date dīmidiam partem ūnī, et dimidiam partem alterī.'

dixit autem mulier, cuius filius erat uiuus, ad rēgem (commōta sunt quippe uiscera eius super filiō suō), 'obsecrō, domine, date illī īnfantem uiuum, et nōlīte interficere eum.' ē contrāriō illa dīcēbat, 'nec mīhi, nec tibi sit sed diuidātur.' respondit rēx et ait, 'date huic īnfantem uiuum, et nōn occidātur: haec est enim māter eius.' audiuit itaque omnis Israel iūdicium quod iūdicāset rēx et timuērunt rēgem, uidentēs sapientiam Deī esse in eō ad faciendum iūdicium. (1 Kings 3.16ff. (Vulgate: III Kings 3.16ff), slightly abridged)

cōram (+ abl.) in the presence of	luc lact-is 3m. milk
ait 'said'	10 appāreō 2 I appear
pariō 3,4 peperī I & ve birth	dīlgens dīlgent-is close, careful
cubicul-um ī 2n. bedroom	intueor 2 dep. I examine
simul = together	lūx luc-is 3f. light
5 excipiō 3/4 excēpi exceptus I except	dēprehendō 3 deprehendī I realise
quippe since [Tends to come late in the clause it controls]	cignō 3 genuī I bear, produce
cōnsurgō 3 I rise, get up	ē contrāriō in reply, contradicting
intempest-us a um middle of, 'dead of'	15 contendō 3 I squabble
silenti-um ī 2n. silence	īnfans īfant-is 3m. baby
ancillae 'that is (of me), your maidservant'	dimidi-us a um half
sin-us ūs 4m. breast, bosom	uiscer-a um 3n. pl. heart, deepest feelings
surgō 3 surrēxi I get up	super (+ abl.) for, over
māne in the morning	Israel (nom.) Israel
	iudici-um ī 2n. judgement
	sapiēti-a ae 1f. wisdom

SECTION SIX

Section 6A

Running vocabulary for 6A(i)

amor amōr-is 3m. love
[See note for meaning
of pl.]
arāne-a ae 1f. cobweb
cachinn-us ī 2m. laugh
candid-us a um beautiful
Catull-us ī 2m. Catullus
cēnō 1 1 have dinner, dine
contrā in return
Cupido Cupid-in-is 3m.
Cupid (god of desire)

dōnō 1 1 give;
dōnāru(n)t = dōnāuērunt
[See Ref. Gr. A4]
ēlegāns ēlegant-is elegant
Fabull-us ī 2m. Fabullus
mer-us a um unmixed,
pure
mī vocative of *meus*
nās-us ī 2m. nose
noster = mī (vocative)
olfaciō 3/4 1 smell

saccul-us ī 2m. little purse
sal sal-is 3m. salt wit
seu or *if* [See note]
suāu-is e sweet
-ue or
1 c . is Vener-is 3f. Venus
(goddess of love)
uenust-us a um charming,
smart [Used as a noun
here]
uin-um ī 2n. wine
unguent-um ī 2n. perfume

Notes

- l. 2 Hold *paucīs* (which is solved by *diēbus*)
- l. 8 *plēnus*: placed early to set up a surprise: remember it takes gen
sacculus: diminutive. See p. 255.
- l. 9 The pl. *amōrēs* in Catullus usually means 'girl-friend': but it can mean
'sexual intercourse' or 'passion'; 'the gods of love' or 'an object
arousing love' are other suggestions you may like to consider.
- l. 10 *seu quid*: after *sī*, *nē* and *num*, *quis* = anyone/anything (see 139¹).
seu = *sīue*. Tr. 'or something that . . .'
- l. 11 *meae puellae*: dative, solved by *dōnāru(n)t*
- l. 14 *tōtum*: with *tē*: the joke is held back until the last word.

Learning vocabulary for 6A(i)

Nouns

amor amōr-is love; (pl.)
girl-friend; sexual
intercourse
uin-um ī 2n. wine

Adjectives

mer-us a um unmixed,
pure

Verbs

dōnō 1 1 give

Running vocabulary for 6A(ii)

aestimātiō aestimātiōn-is 3f.
value
Asin-us ī 2m. Asinius
[See note]
bellē nicely, properly
differt-us a um crammed
with (+ gen.)
Fabull-us ī 2m. Fabullus
faciēti-ae arum 1f. pl wit
furt-um ī 2n. theft
hendecasyllab-us ī 2m.
hendecasyllable [the
Greek metre used for
poems of personal
abuse: the metre also of
this poem: see 180]
Hibēr-ī ōrum 2m. pl
Spaniards
inept-us a um stupid

inuenust-us a um not
smart, charmless
ioc-us ī 2m. joke, joking,
fun
lepōs lepōr-is 3m. charm
linte-um ī 2n. table-napkin
Marrūcīn-us ī 2m.
Marrucinus [See note]
mnēmosyn-um ī 2m.
keepsake (a Greek
word Latinised)
mūnus mūner-is 3n. gift
[*mūnerī* 'as a gift':
predicative dative, see
L(e)2]
mutō 1 1 change
neglegens neglegent-is
careless [Note the
comparative form]

Pōllhō Pōllhōn-is 3m. (C
Asinius) Pollio
quāuis ever such a
quārē therefore
remittō 3 1 send back
Sactab-us a um from
Sactabis (a Spanish
town famous for its
linen goods)
sals-us a um witty, smart
sodālīs sodāl-is 3m. friend
sordid-us a um cheap, low,
dirty
sūdārī-um ī 2n.
handkerchief, napkin
talent-um ī 2n. talent [A
huge sum, see note]
Vērānuol-us ī 2m. dear
Veranius
Vērāni-us ī 2m. Veranius

Notes

- l. 1 Marrūcīnus may be this man's *cognōmen*, normally the last of three –
praenōmen (e.g. Gāius), *nōmen* (e.g. Valērius, the family name),
cognōmen (e.g. Africānus, sometimes from some exploit or ancestor's

exploit). Asinius will be the *nōmen*. *manū sinistrā*: the abl. is solved in l. 2 by *ūteris*.

l. 2 *in iocō atque uīnō* i.e. *in conuīuiō*.

l. 3 *neglegentiōrum*: comp. adj. used as a noun. Tr. 'rather . . .' (not 'more').

l. 4 *fugit tē*: lit: 'it escapes you'. Tr. 'you're wrong'.

l. 7 *talentō*: abl. of the price Pollio would be willing to pay. Tr. 'for a talent'. Reference Grammar L(f)4(v).

l. 8 *uelit*: 'he would like': potential subjunctive, see 153.2.

ll. 8–9 *lepōrum*: hold: it is solved by *differtus* (which also governs *facētiārum*).

ll. 16–17 *haec amem necesse est: ut* has been left out before the clause *haec amem*. This is common: see 6A(iii), ll. 18, 19. Tr. 'that I should . . .' The *ut* in l. 17 means 'as' sc. 'I love'.

l. 17 *Vērāniolum*: diminutive. See p. 255.

Learning vocabulary for 6A(ii)

Nouns

facēti-ae ārum 1f. pl. wit
ioc-us ī 2m. joke, joking,
fun

lepōs lepōr-is 3m. charm
mūnus mūner-is 3n. gift;
duty

sodālis sodāl-is 3m. friend

Verbs

mūtō 1 I change, alter,
exchange (trans.)

Others

quārē therefore (lit. (abl.)
'from which
thing' = wherefore; as
question = why?)

Running vocabulary for 6A(iii)

caue + subjunctive beware
of —ing [See note]
cauētō beware of
(+ infin.) [See note]
conuenit 4 *conuēnit* it is
agreed

dēfess-us a um tired out
dēlicāt-us a um
sophisticated, decadent,
gay
dēspuō 3 I spit out, reject
completely

hestern-us a um yester-
(with *diē*)
indomit-us a um
uncontrollable
iuuat 1 (it) pleases
laedō 3 I harm, do down

lectul-us ī 2m. bed
[Diminutive of *lectus*:
see p. 255]

Licini-us ī 2m. Licinius
[See note]

lūdō 3 *lūsī* I play, have a
good time, make jokes

membr-um ī 2n. limb
mūtū-us a um in return,
reciprocal [Sc. 'verses']

Nemesis f. (Greek word)
Nemesis, goddess of
revenge

numer-us ī 2m. metre

ocell-us ī 2m. (l. 10) eye;
(l. 19) apple of my eye
ōtiōs-us a um at leisure,
enjoying oneself
perspiciō 3/4 I see clearly,
understand fully [See
note]

poēma n. (Greek word)
poem (from the Greek
equivalent of *faciō*)

precēs prec-um 3f. pl.
prayers

quiēs quiēt-is 3f. sleep, rest

reposcō 3 I exact (in
return)

sēmimortu-us a um half-
dead
simul together (sc. with
you)

somn-us ī 2m. sleep
uēmēns = *uehemēns*

uersicul-us ī 2m. scrap of
verse, epigram
[Diminutive of *uersus*:
see p. 255]

uersor 1 (passive) I toss
and turn

Notes

l. 1 *Licini*: C. Licinius Calvus Macer, orator and poet.

l. 5 *illōc*: = *illō*. Cf. *hōc* — in earlier Latin both words had the suffix *-ce*.

l. 6 *per iocum atque uīnum*: cf. *in iocō atque uīno* in 6A(ii) l. 2.

l. 9 *ut*: 'with the result that'.

l. 11 *tōtō*: hold — it is solved by *lectō*, not *furōre*, which is abl. of cause after *indomitus*.

l. 16 *iūcunde*: the adjective is used in the vocative as a noun; cf. *uenuste noster* in 6A(i).

l. 17 *ex quō perspicerēs*: purpose clause introduced by relative pronoun (see 145.3).

ll. 18, 19 *caue sīs* and *caue dēspuās*: 'beware of —ing'. Here you would normally expect *nē* (see S2(d) 'verbs of fearing'), but as with *haec amem necesse est* in 6A(ii) l. 16, the conjunction has been omitted. This is a common idiom with certain words.

l. 21 *cauētō*: future imperative, i.e. 'beware (in future)'. Reference Grammar A2 Note 1.

Learning vocabulary for 6A(iii)

Nouns

membr-um ī 2n. limb

quiēs quiēt-is 3f. sleep, rest

somn-us ī 2m. sleep

Adjectives

ōtiōs-us a um at leisure

Verbs

iuuat 1 *iūuat* it pleases

laedō 3 *laesī laesus* I harm

lūdō 3 *lūsī lusum* I play

Running vocabulary for 6A(iv)

aestimō 1 I value [See note]
as ass-is 3m. as (a com of small value) [Tr. 'penny', 'dime'; see note]
hāst-um ī 2n. kiss
conturbō 1 I confuse; wreck the account of
dein = *deinde*

Lesbi-a ae 1f. Lesbia [See Intro. to 6A]
mī = *mihi*
occidō 3 *occidī* 1 set (other meanings: I fall, die)
perpetu-us a um unending
rūmor rūmōr-is 3m. (piece of) gossip
 unfavourable report

semel once; *cum semel* = as soon as
sōlēs (pl. of *sōl*) = 'light of the sun' 'the sun each day'
usque continually
 without a break

Notes

- l. 2 *rūmōrēs*: acc. – hold until solved (by *aestimēmus*). *seuēriōrum*: cf. *neglegentiōrum* in 6A(ii) l. 3. Tr. 'rather . . .' (not 'more').
 l. 3 *ūnius* . . . *assis*: genitive of price or value after *aestimēmus*. Tr. 'at one penny/dime'
 l. 5 *nōhīs*: hold until solved (by *dormienda*)
 l. 10 *fēcerimus*: future perfect (not perf. subj.), despite the long -i of -*imus*.
 l. 13 *tantum* . . . *bāsiōrum*: cf. *satis/nimis* + gen.(31). Tr. 'so many . . .' (lit. 'such and such an amount of . . .')

Learning vocabulary for 6A(iv)

Nouns

rūmor rūmōr-is 3m
 rumour, (piece of)
 gossip, unfavourable
 report

Verbs

aestimō 1 I value: estimate
occidō 3 *occidī* *occāsum* 1 set
 (intrans.); (I fall; die)

Others

dein = *deinde* then, next
mī = *mihi* [NB. *mī* is also
 vocative of *meus*]

semel once (*cum semel* = as
 soon as)

usque continually,
 without a break
 (often used with *ad* =
 right up to)

Running vocabulary for 6A(v)

aestuōs-us a um sweltering,
 hot
bāsiātō bāsiātōn-is 3f. kiss
 [See note]
hās- 1 I kiss
hāst-um ī 2n. kiss
Batt-us ī 2m. Battus (first
 king of Cyrene)
cūtiōs-us a um inquisitive,
 prying

Cyren-ae ārium 1f. pl.
 Cyrene (city in N.W.
 Libya, or the territory
 of Cyrene)
fascinō 1 I bewitch, cast a
 spell on
fūrtiu-us a um stolen
haren-a ae 1f. sand
lāsarpiſer lāsarpiſer-a um
 silphium-bearing

Libyss-a ae f. adj. African
lingu-a ae 1f. tongue [See
 note]
ōraci-um ī 2n. oracle
pernumerō 1 I tally up
sepulcr-um ī 2n. tomb
sīdus sīder-is 3n. star
super more than enough
 (adv.)
uēsān-us a um crazed,
 maddened

Notes

- l. 1 *bāsiātō*: a sort of abstract noun (!) formed from the usual word *bāsum*.
 l. 3 *quam magnus*: lit. 'how great . . .', picked up eventually by *tam* . . .
multa (l. 9) 'so many'
 l. 5 *inter*: the preposition governs *ōraci-um*: notice the word pattern in ll. 5–6
 l. 7 *quam* . . . *multa*: lit. 'how many', picked up by *tam* . . . *multa* (l. 9) 'so many'. Cf. *quam magnus* (l. 3)
 l. 8 *fūrtiuōs*: hold until solved (by *amōrēs*).
 l. 9 *bāsia bāsiāre*: cf. *pugnā pugnāre* 'to fight a fight'. Note that here *tē* is the object, *bāsia* is an internal or cognate accusative. Eng. 'to give you . . . kisses'
 l. 10 *uēsānō*: hold until solved (by *Catullō*).
 l. 11 *possint*: potential subjunctive (see 153.2).
 l. 12 *mala lingua*: another subject of *possint*.

Learning vocabulary for 6A(v)

Nouns

haren-a ae 1f. sand

lingu-a ae 1f. tongue;
 language

ōrac(u)-um ī 2n. oracle
sepulcr(h)-um ī 2n. tomb
sīdus sīder-is 3n. star

Others

super (adv.) more than
 enough; above, over;
 (prep. + acc /abl) over,
 above; (+abl.) about

Running vocabulary for 6A(vi)

<i>bell-us a um</i> beautiful	<i>inuit-us a um</i> unwilling
<i>candid-us a um</i> bright	[See note]
<i>dēsīnō</i> 3 I cease (from x: infin.) [See note]	<i>locōs-us a um</i> full of fun
<i>dēstināt-us a um</i> stubborn, obstinate	<i>labell-um ī 2n.</i> lip
<i>doleo</i> 2 I grieve, feel anguish	<i>mēns ment-is</i> 3f. mind
<i>dūcō</i> 3 (l. 2) I consider, think [See note]	<i>mordeō</i> 2 I bite
<i>fulgeō</i> 2 <i>fulsi</i> I shine	<i>uēō</i> tr. 'by me' [See note]
<i>ineptō</i> 4 I play the fool, am silly	<i>nūlla</i> (l. 5) 'no woman'; l. 14 'not at all'
<i>impotēns</i> <i>impotent-is</i> powerless (sc. 'as you are')	<i>obstīnāt-us a um</i> resolute, stubborn
	<i>perdō</i> 3 <i>perdidī</i> <i>perditus</i> I lose, destroy

Notes

1. 1 *dēsīnās*: jussive subjunctive (see 152)
1. 2 *quod* tr. 'that which', picked up by *perditum* *dūcīs* jussive subjunctive, cf. *dēsīnās* (see 152).
1. 5 *nōbis* pl. for s is very common in poetry, especially with personal pronouns. The dative expresses the agent (usually expressed by a *ab + abl*).
1. 6 *illa* n. pl. 'those things (sc. I am reflecting on)'. Note *cum* is postponed, though it introduces the clause. *locōsa* is used as a noun.
1. 10 *quae* *fugit*, the clause is introduced by the next word *sectāre*, sc. *eam* to make sense of it.
1. 13 *inuītām*: agrees with *tē* sc. 'since you are ...'
1. 18 *cui* sympathetic dative (!); see 88.2.

Learning vocabulary for 6A(vi)

Adjectives

<i>candid-us a um</i> white; bright, beautiful	<i>inuīt-us a um</i> unwilling
--	--------------------------------

<i>perō</i> <i>perīrē</i> <i>perī</i> I pass away, die	<i>perferō</i> <i>perferre</i> I endure (to the end)
<i>quondam</i> once	<i>sector</i> 1 dep. I keep pursuing
<i>sōlēs</i> (pl. of <i>sōl</i>) 'light of the sun'	<i>uēre</i> + acc. + <i>dis</i> for <i>ad</i> <i>ut</i> <i>it</i> I keep coming (= <i>ueniō</i> + <i>-it-</i>)
<i>uērē</i> truly	<i>uolūt</i> = <i>uult</i>

Verbs

<i>doleo</i> 2 I suffer pain, grieve	<i>ot</i> <i>hūrō</i> 1 I am firm, hold out, persist
<i>dūcō</i> 3 <i>dūxī</i> <i>ductus</i> I think, consider (lead)	<i>pereō</i> <i>perīrē</i> <i>perī</i> <i>peritum</i> I perish, die, (perī I am lost)
<i>fulgeō</i> 2 <i>fulsi</i> I shine	

<i>perfero</i> <i>perferre</i> <i>peritū</i>
<i>perlatus</i> I endure (to the end); complete, carry to, announce

Running vocabulary for 6A(vii)

<i>acquer</i> <i>acquer-i</i> 3m. I & pl. I & sea	<i>Hyrcan</i> (a people dwelling to the S.E. of the Caspian sea)
<i>Alpēs</i> <i>Alp-um</i> 3f. pl. Alps	<i>identidem</i> again and again
<i>alt-us a um</i> high	<i>īlia</i> <i>īl-ium</i> 3n. pl. groin, private parts
<i>Arabs</i> <i>Arab-is</i> 3m. Arab (Greek acc. pl. <i>Arabas</i>)	<i>Ind-ī ōrum</i> 2m. pl. the Indians
<i>arātr-um ī 2n.</i> plough	<i>moech-us ī 2m.</i> adulterer
<i>Aureli-us ī 2m.</i> Aurelius	<i>moll-is ē</i> soft, luxurious, effeminate
<i>Britann-ī ōrum</i> 2m. pl. Britons	<i>moniment-um ī 2n.</i> testimonial
<i>caeliēs</i> <i>caeli-um</i> 3m. pl. gods (lit. 'dwellers in heaven')	<i>Nil-us ī 2m.</i> the River Nile
<i>Caesar</i> <i>Caesar-is</i> 3m. sc. Julius Caesar [See note]	<i>Parth-ī ōrum</i> 2m. pl. the Parthians (a people on Rome's eastern boundaries)
<i>cotero</i> 1 I dye, stain [See note]	<i>penetrō</i> 1 I make my way, penetrate as far as
<i>complexor</i> 3 dep. <i>complexus</i> I embrace	<i>praetereo</i> <i>praeterire</i> I pass by [See note]
<i>culp-a ae</i> 1f. fault (often used of sexual misconduct)	<i>prāt-um ī 2n.</i> meadow, field
<i>dict-um ī 2n.</i> word	<i>quicumque</i> <i>quodcumque</i> <i>quodcumque</i> whoever, whatever
<i>Eō-us a um</i> Eastern, oriental	<i>resenō</i> 1 I re-echo
<i>extrem-us a um</i> furthest	<i>respectō</i> 1 I look for, count on
<i>flōs</i> <i>flōr-is</i> 3m. flower	<i>Rhēn-us ī 2m.</i> the River Rhine [See note]
<i>Fūri-us ī 2m.</i> Furius	
<i>Galli-us a um</i> Gallic, of Gaul	
<i>gradior</i> 3/4 dep. I go	
<i>horribil-is ē</i> terrible, dreadful [See note]	

<i>Hyrcan</i> (a people dwelling to the S.E. of the Caspian sea)	<i>rumor</i> 3 I burst
<i>identidem</i> again and again	<i>Sag-ae arum</i> 1m. pl. the Sacae (a Scythian people dwelling to the N.E. of Rome's borders)
<i>īlia</i> <i>īl-ium</i> 3n. pl. groin, private parts	<i>sagittifer</i> <i>sagittifer-a um</i> arrow-bearing
<i>Ind-ī ōrum</i> 2m. pl. the Indians	<i>septemgemin-us a um</i> sevenfold (i.e. with seven mouths)
<i>moech-us ī 2m.</i> adulterer	<i>seu</i> or (<i>ut</i> , [= <i>sine</i> see note on structure])
<i>moll-is ē</i> soft, luxurious, effeminate	<i>sum</i> together
<i>moniment-um ī 2n.</i> testimonial	<i>sic</i> or (<i>sine</i> <i>seu</i>) whether ... or [See note on structure]
<i>Nil-us ī 2m.</i> the River Nile	<i>tran-</i> (+ acc.) across
<i>Parth-ī ōrum</i> 2m. pl. the Parthians (a people on Rome's eastern boundaries)	<i>tundo</i> 3 I beat, pound
<i>penetrō</i> 1 I make my way, penetrate as far as	<i>ualeo</i> 2 lit. 'I am well' [See note]
<i>praetereo</i> <i>praeterire</i> I pass by [See note]	<i>-ue</i> (added to the end of a word) or
<i>prāt-um ī 2n.</i> meadow, field	<i>uērē</i> truly
<i>quicumque</i> <i>quodcumque</i> <i>quodcumque</i> whoever, whatever	<i>uīsō</i> 3 I go and look at, view, visit
<i>resenō</i> 1 I re-echo	<i>ultim-us a um</i> (l. 11-12) furthest; (l. 23) the edge of
<i>respectō</i> 1 I look for, count on	<i>und-a ae</i> 1f. water, wave
<i>Rhēn-us ī 2m.</i> the River Rhine [See note]	<i>ut</i> (l. 3, + indic.) where

Notes

Structure: in l. 1, Furius and Aurelius are addressed as friends of Catullus, and in ll. 2–12, their friendship is shown by the number of places they are prepared to go to with Catullus – whether (*sive*) Catullus will go to x or (*sive/seu*) y or (*sive*) z. Ll. 13–14 summarise the past 12 lines, describing Furius and Aurelius as *parātī* (ready) to do all this (*omnia haec* (13)). At 15, we find out what they should in fact do: *mūtiātē* ‘give a message’ to Lesbia. Ll. 17–24 describe the content of the message, in subjunctives (*mūnat . . . ualeat . . . respectet*) – ‘let her . . .’

- l. 2 *extrēmōs*: hold until solved (by *Indōs*).
 ll. 3–4 *litus*: subject of the *ut* clause. Take *longē* closely with *resonante* and hold *longē resonante Eōā* until solved (by *undā*: the function of the abl. phrase is revealed by the passive form of *tunditur*). NB. Here *ut* means ‘where’.
 ll. 7–8 *quae*: n. pl. – hold until solved (by *aequora*: ‘the plains which . . .’ obj. of *colōrat*). *colōrat*: possibly refers to the silt left by the Nile after its annual flood.
 l. 9 *altās*: hold until solved (by *Alpēs*).
 ll. 10–12 Caesar was engaged in the conquest of Gaul from 58–49. In 55 he crossed the Rhine and made an expedition into Germany. In the same year came the first of his two forays across the Channel to Britain. The words in l. 11–12 are in apposition to *monimenta*. The *horribile aequor* may refer to the English Channel (which caused Caesar many problems). But it is a scholar’s correction, not the version preserved by the MSS.
 l. 17 *cum suis*: hold until solved (by *moechīs*). *ualeat*: a 3rd. person form of *ualē* ‘farewell’ (but see also the basic meaning of the verb).
 l. 18 *trecentōs*: agreeing with *quōs* – ‘300 of them’ (!) – held back for effect.
 l. 21 *meum*: hold until solved (by *amōrem*).
 ll. 23–4 The word-order is complex: hold *praetereunte* until solved by *arātō* – the abl. is not absolute, but instrumental after the passive verb *tāctus . . . est*. As often, *postquam*, which introduces the clause, is postponed. The subject is *flōs*.

Learning vocabulary for 6A(vii)

Nouns

aequor aequor-is 3n. plain; sea *culp-a ae* 1f. fault; blame (often of sexual misconduct)

Adjectives

alt-us a um high; deep
extrēm-us a um furthest

quicumque quaecumque
quodcumque whoever, whatever [Declines like *quī* 106 + *cumque*]

ultim-us a um furthest, last; greatest

Verbs

gradior 3/4 dep. *gressus* 1
 step, walk, go (cf compounds in *-gredior*)

praetereō praeterīre praeterī
praeteritus I pass by, neglect, omit

ualeō 2 I am strong; am well; am powerful; am able (cf. *ualē* ‘Farewell!’)

Others

simul together (at the same time)

sive (seu) . . . sive (seu)
 whether . . . or
trāns (+ acc.) across

-ue (added on to the end of a word: cf. *-ne* and *-que*) or

180 Hendecasyllables (= ‘eleven syllables’)

The first five poems of Catullus which you have read make use of the following new metrical elements:

= *anceps* (‘doubtful’, ‘two-edged’)
 – u u – u – = *choriambocretic* (*choriamb* – u u – blended together with *cretic* – u –)
 u _ u = *bacchiac*

The poems scan as follows:

u u | – u u – i

i.e. two *anceps*, *choriambocretic*, *bacchiac*, e.g.

cēnābis hēn mō l abūll[e] apud mē

Exercise

Using the above scheme, scan any one of the five poems in this metre, adding the correct word-stress (see rule, p. xv). Then read it aloud, thinking through the meaning as you read.

NB. Remember to check for elision.

181 Scazon ('limping iambics')

Poem 6A(vi) makes use of the following metrical elements:

◡ = *anceps* (doubtful syllable)
 ◡ = *cretic*

(The combination *anceps* + *cretic* is known as an iambic 'measure'.) The poem scans as follows:

◡ ◡ ◡ | ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡

i.e. two iambic measures + ◡ -- ◡, e.g.

miser Catulle desinās ineptire

The metre is called 'limping iambics' because it seems to limp to a close. The sprightly iambics of the first two measures are rounded off not by a third, but by the 'limping' ◡ -- ◡.

Exercise

Using the above scheme, scan 6A(vi), adding the correct word stress (see rule, p. xv). Then read it aloud, thinking through the meaning as you read.

NB. Remember to check for elision.

182 Sapphics

Poem 6A(vii) is made up of stanzas in *Sapphic* metre, so named after the seventh-century Greek poetess from Lesbos, Sappho, who specialised in them. *Sapphics* use the following metrical elements, all of which you have already met:

◡ ◡ ◡ = *cretic*
 ◡ = *anceps* (doubtful syllable)
 ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ = *choriambocretic* (see 180)
 ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ = *choriamb*

Sapphics scan as follows:

First three lines: ◡ ◡ ◡ | ◡ | ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ | ◡
 Last line: ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ | ◡

i.e. *cretic*, *anceps*, *choriambocretic*, *anceps* (× 3), *choriamb*, *anceps*. E.g.

Fūr[ī] ēt Aurēlī comitēs Catullī . .
tunditur undā

Exercise

Using the above scheme, scan poem 6A(vii), adding the correct word-stress (see rule, p. xv). Then read it aloud, thinking through the meaning as you read.

NB. Remember to check for elision.

Section 6B

Running vocabulary for 6B(i)

A.V.C. = *ab urbe condita*
 'from the city having
 been founded', 'from
 the city's foundation'

adroganti-a *ae* 1f. conceit,
 presumption

animadvertō 3 I observe,
 take note of

argūt-us a um verbose,
 wordy

certior fiō I am informed
 (lit. 'I am made more
 certain')

certiorem faciō I inform x
 (acc.) (lit. 'make x
 more certain')

commod-us a um
 satisfactory, convenient
condemnō 1 I condemn x
 (acc.) for y (gen.)

cūrīōs-us a um curious
dēlectō 1 I please

dēlectānt = *dēlectauerūt*

delēgō 1 I entrust

dēprecor 1 dep. I pray
 earnestly

diligēns diligēt-is careful

ēdict-um ī 2n. edict

excūsō 1 I excuse

exhibeō 2 I cause

existimatiō existimatiōn-is
 3f. view

expectatiō expectatiōn-is
 3f. expectation

fābul-a *ae* 1f. story

forte by chance, perchance

impēns-a *ae* 1f. expense

memori-a *ae* 1f.
 remembering, memory

molesti-a *ae* 1f. annoyance

nimium = *nimis*

omniūnō altogether,

completely

operāri-us ī 2m. hireling

peregrinō 1 I am abroad,
 travel

perscribō 3 *perscripsi*
perscriptus I write in
 detail

quem ad modum how

quīn 'that . . . not'

S. = *salūtem dicit* 'greet's'
 (+ dat.)

sēdulitās sēdulitāt-is 3f.
 zeal, earnestness

senātūs cōsult-um ī 2n.

decree of the senate

suān-us *e* delightful, sweet,
 pleasant

tametsī however, though

uolūmen uolūmin-is 3n.

volume (i.e. papyrus
 roll)

urbān-us a um of the city,
 city

Notes

- I. 1 *discēdēns*: Caelius had gone with Cicero as far as Pompeii, it seems.
 I. 3 *scīō tū* *tū* belongs with *scīō*, within the *quam* clause *quam* solved by *grātum* (cf. *quam* . . . *cūrīōsūs* I. 3). Now await an infinitive phrase to complete *quam* . . . *grātum sit* (*fiērī certiorēs* I. 5).
 II. 8–9 *nesciō cuius oīi esset*: 'I don't know of what leisure it would be (sc. the job)' i.e. 'I don't know what amount of spare time it would take . . .' The subjunctive is potential (see 153.2).
 I. 11 *nē*: purpose clause (explained by *fac mē certiorēm*).
 I. 12 *sī quid* . . . *maius*: i.e. 'if anything more important'.
 I. 13 *quod* . . . *possint*: the subjunctive is potential (see 153.2).
 I. 14–15 *secūta*: sc. *sit*.

Learning vocabulary for 6B(i)

Nouns

fābul-a ae 1f. story; play

memori-a ae 1f.

remembering,
memory, recollection;
record

Adjectives

commod-us a um
satisfactory, convenient

diligēns diligent-is careful,
diligent

suān-is e sweet, pleasant,
delightful

Verbs

animaduertō 3 animaduerti
animaduertus 1 observe,
take note of

condemnō 1 1 condemn (x
acc. for y gen.)
excūsō 1 1 excuse

perscribō 3 perscripsi
perscriptus 1 write in
detail

Phrases

certiorem faciō 1 inform x
(acc.)

certior fiō 1 am informed

salūtem dicit 'he greets'
(+ dat.) (at the head of
letters, abbreviated to
S. or S D.)

Others

forte by chance, perchance
omninō altogether,
completely

quem ad modum (often
written as one word)
how

Running vocabulary for 6B(ii)

adhuc up to now
Bellouac-i ōrum 2m. pl.
Bellovacī (a tribe living
in N.W. Gaul)
bell-us a um pretty
circumsedō 2 1 besiege,
blockade
creber crebr-a um frequent
dumtaxat only, merely

figō 3 finxi fictus 1 make
up, fabricate
iactō 1 1 discuss
incert-us a um uncertain
intercludō 3 intercludi
interclū . . . 1 cut off
nostr = nostra 1
offendō 3 offendi 1 meet
palam openly

perdo 3 peridi 1 lose
Pompēi-us ī Cn. Pompeius
Magnus
secreto secretly
susurrator susurrator-is 3m.
whisperer, tale-bearer
uapulō 1 1 am beaten
(*uapulasse = uapulansse*)
uulgō generally

Notes

- I. 17 *fac* + subjunctive: 'make sure you . . .' (cf. *caue* + subj. in 6A(iii) 18, 19).
 II. 17–18 *quī . . . sit*: 'how he seemed to be' (old abl. of *quī*: see I4 Note 3) i.e. 'what you thought of him'.
 I. 19 *aliud sentire et loquī*: 'to think one thing and say another'. *quod ad Caesarem*: 'as (lit. 'as to that which') regards Caesar'. The verb *attinet* = 'concerns' is omitted.
 I. 20 *rūmōrēs*: sc. *sunt*.
 I. 21 *alius*: sc. *dicit. ipsum*: i.e. Caesar.
 II. 23–4 *certū quicquam*: 'anything (of) certain' cf. *satis* + gen. 'enough (of)' 31.

Learning vocabulary for 6B(ii)

Adjectives

bell-us a um beautiful,
pretty

creber crebr-a um frequent;
thick, close

incert-us a um uncertain

Verbs

circumsedō 2 circumsedi
circumsessus 1 besiege,
blockade

figō 3 finxi fictus 1 make
up, fabricate
iactō 1 1 discuss, throw,
boast; toss about

offendō 3 offendi offensus 1
meet with; offend
perdo 3 peridi peritus 1
lose; destroy

Others

adhuc up to now
palam openly

Running vocabulary for 6B(iii)

abs = ab

aedifici-um ī 2n. building

complector 1 dep. 1

embrace

complūr-ēs a several

compositiō compositiōn-is 3f

pairing, match

cūrō 1 I want [See note]

differō differe distulī dilātus

I put off, postpone

ēgregi-us a um

outstanding, excellent

gladiātor gladiātor-is 3m.

gladiator

habētō 'be sure' [See note]

M. = Mārcus (Mārcō with

Caeliō)

mandō 1 I order (x dat.)

to (ut + subj.)

nē . . . quidem not even

(emphasising the word

enclosed)

pertineō 2 I affect, relate

to (ad + acc.)

poster-um ī 2n. future

praesēns praesent-is present

praeteritus a um past (perf

part. pass. of praetereō)

PRŌCOS. = prōcōsul

prōcōsul-is 3m.

proconsul (i.e.

governor of a

province)

prōspiciō 3/4 I look

forward, see ahead

quāl-is e what sort of

tantum (just) so much

uadimōnī-um ī 2n. court

appearance (lit. 'bail')

Notes

ll. 27–8 ea quae . . . audeat: generic subjunctive (see 140.1)

l. 28 (cūrō) . . . scribās: 'you to write' – cf. caue + subj. in 6A(iii) 18, 19 and

fac + subj. in 6B(ii) 17. illa is the object of scribās.

l. 32 ut: purpose, solved (eventually) by scire possim.

l. 37 habētō: future imperative, cf. cauētō in 6A(iii). The force may not be strongly future, since this is a common form with habeō. See Reference Grammar A2 Note 1.

ll. 39–40 idem . . . quī: 'the same people . . . as'.

Learning vocabulary for 6B(iii)

Adjectives

complūr-ēs a several

ēgregi-us a um

outstanding, excellent

praesēns praesent-is present

quāl-is e what sort of

Verbs

complector 3 dep

complexus I embrace

mandō 1 I order (x (dat.)

to y (ut + subj.));

(entrust x (acc.) to y

(dat.))

Others

nē . . . quidem not even

(emphasising the word enclosed)

Running vocabulary for 6B(iv)

Africān-us a um African

aiō irr. I say

alō 3 I tend, feed

Cibyrāt-a ae from Cibra

[See map]

collēg-a ae 1m. colleague

Cūriō Cūriōn-is 3m. C.

Scribonius Curio:

tribune in 50, friend

and correspondent of

Cicero

dēportō 1 I transport

ferē almost

istō to the place where

you are

labōrō 1 I am concerned

with

Pamphylī-a ae 1f.

Pamphylia [See map]

panthēr-a ae 1f. panther

Patisc-us ī 2m. Patiscus, a

Roman businessman in

Asia

seorsus apart

simulatque as soon as

Notes

l. 42 multīs partibus: 'by many parts' i.e. 'many times' (abl. of measure of difference, 100B.5).

l. 44 Cibyrātās: understand panthērās.

l. 46 collēgā: M. Octavius was the other curule aedile with Curio.

l. 47 paranda: understand esse. amābō tē: 'please' (lit. 'I shall love you'). imperā tibi hoc: hoc is direct object (in the place usually taken by ut + subj.). nulla tua: hold until solved (by cūra).

l. 49 habēs eōs: Caelius had sent some men to deal with a financial transaction in the vicinity. quī alant . . . dēportent: subjunctive, to indicate purpose (see 145³).

l. 50 missūrum: sc. esse.

Learning vocabulary for 6B(iv)

Nouns

collēg-a ae 1m. colleague

Verbs

aiō irr. I say

alō 3 alui altus or alitus I

feed, nourish, rear;

support, strengthen

Others

ferē almost

simulatque as soon as (also

simulac or simul)

Running vocabulary for 6B(v)

<i>aedil-is aedil-is</i> 3m. aedile [See explanation in Text 6B(iii)]	<i>dēcēdō</i> 3 I leave fit. impersonal 'it is being done' (i.e. 'things are being done')	<i>paucitas</i> 1 f. paucity 3f. pauci 3 m. few <i>quisquis quicquid</i> 1 wh. ever whatever
<i>agitur</i> impersonal 'it is being done' (i.e. 'things are being done')	<i>mandāt-us ūs</i> 4m. order	<i>sēdulō</i> assiduously
<i>Cāri-a ae</i> 1f. Caria [See map]	<i>mīr-us a um</i> amazing	<i>stat-us ūs</i> 4m. position
<i>cognōrō</i> = <i>cognōuerō</i>	<i>panthēr-a ae</i> 1f. panther	<i>ualde</i> very much, strongly
<i>curūl-is e</i> curule	<i>Patisc-us ī</i> 2m. Patiscus (see previous letter)	<i>uēnor</i> 1 dep. I hunt

Notes

- l. 52 *ualdē*: hold – it qualifies *querī*
 l. 53 *nihil cuiquam insidiarum*: tr. 'no (of) ambushes for anyone'
 l. 56 *esset*: lit. 'was going to be'. Cicero writes as if the time of the letter were when Caelius was actually reading it. Hence *nesciēbāmus* and *esset*.
 Tr. 'we (=I) don't know, what it is (going to be)'
 ll. 57–8 *tū uelim . . . perscribās*: 'I would like you to write'; *uelim* is potential subjunctive (see 153.2). For *perscribās*, subjunctive without a conjunction, cf. *caue* + subj. 6B(ii) ll. 18 and 19, *fac* + subj. 6B(ii) l. 17 and *cūrō* + subj. 6B(iii) l. 28

Learning vocabulary for 6B(v)

Adjectives

<i>mīr-us a um</i> amazing, wonderful	<i>quisquis quicquid</i> whoever, whatever (declines like <i>quis</i> + <i>quis</i> , but it is not found in all forms)
--	--

Others

ualdē very much, strongly

Running vocabulary for 6B(vi)

<i>alter</i> for a second time <i>alteruter</i> one or the other <i>appareō</i> 2 I appear <i>C. Caelius Caelius ī</i> 2m. Caelius	<i>discordi-a ae</i> 1f. strife, quarrel <i>dubitō</i> 1 I doubt <i>ēligō</i> 3 I choose <i>eo</i> [See note on l. 60] <i>ērumpō</i> 3 I break out (with <i>sē</i>) Gn. (l. 62) = <i>Gnaeus ī</i> 2m. Gnaeus; (l. 69) = <i>Gnaecum</i> <i>impendeō</i> 2 I impend, threaten, am at hand <i>inuidiōs-us a um</i> odious <i>obtre-tatiō obtre-tatiōn-is</i> 3f. backbiting <i>occult-us a um</i> secret, covert <i>dimicō</i> 1 I fight	<i>pars part-is</i> 3f. side (part) <i>Parthic-us a um</i> Parthian <i>perturbō</i> 1 I disturb <i>potior</i> 4 dep. I control (+ gen.) <i>proposit-um ī</i> 2n. question <i>quō</i> (l. 60) [See note] <i>recēdō</i> 3 <i>recessī</i> I leave (ab + abl.) <i>recidō</i> 3 I come to, issue in (ad + acc.) <i>spati-um ī</i> 2n. time <i>spectācul-um ī</i> 2n. show <i>summ-a ae</i> 1f. total; <i>ad</i> <i>summam</i> to sum up <i>timor timōr-is</i> 3m. fear uter see <i>alter</i>
--	---	---

Notes

- l. 59 *summā*: i.e. 'high politics'. *in annum*: 'in a year's time'.
 l. 60 *quō* (+ comp.) . . . *eō* (+ comp.): 'the . . . —er, the . . . —er' (lit. 'by how much the more . . . by so much the more'). (Watch for comparative adverbs in *-ius*.)
 l. 64 *Caesarī persuāsum est*: impersonal passive: lit. 'it has been persuaded to Caesar' i.e. 'Caesar has been persuaded' (see 155).
 l. 65 *fert*: subject is Caesar
 l. 66 *occultam*: hold until solved (by *obtre-tatiōnem*).
 l. 67 *capiam*: the subjunctive is deliberative (indirect); see 152.
 l. 69 *quīque*: 'and those who' (i.e. senators and men of equestrian rank – rich and respectable).
 l. 70 *habitūrum*: understand *esse*. *accessūrōs*: understand *esse*.
 ll. 70–1 *quī . . . uīuant*: subjunctive in indirect speech, but probably generic. *exercitum . . . esse*: still in indirect statement after *uideō*.
 ll. 74–5 *sī . . . nōn eat*: note mood of verb – the main clause, unusually, has an indicative verb, *uideō*.
 ll. 75–6 *sī . . . posset*: see note on ll. 74–5. The main verb is *parābat* – see next note for its tense.
 l. 77 *parābat*: Caelius writes as if the time of the letter were when Cicero was actually reading it. See previous letter, tr. 'is preparing'. This usage is known as 'epistolary tense'.

Learning vocabulary for 6B(vi)

Nouns

conditiō conditiōn-is 3f
condition, term;
conditionem ferre to
make terms

discordi-a ae 1f strife,
quarrel

pars part-is 3f. side; (part)
spati-um ī 2n. space; time
timor timōr-is 3m fear

Adjectives

clār-us a um clear (famous,
well-known)

Verbs

dīmīcō 1 I fight

dubitō 1 I doubt; hesitate
(+ infin.)

potior 4 dep. I control
(+ gen.)

Others

quō + comparative
eō + comparative
'the more . . . the
more'

Running vocabulary for 6B(vii)

aduent-us ūs 4m arrival
aduersāri-us ī 2m. enemy
amīciti-a ae 1f. friendship
atrōx atrōc-is fierce,
unyielding
cēnsēō 2 I propose; think
[See note]
cognōrīm = *cognouerim*
cōsulō 3 I take measures
contendō 3 *contendī* I strive
for
dēcernō 3 I decide
dēmitō 3 I let fall, cast
down
dēprecātiō dēprecātiōn-is 3f
asking for pardon
dēspērāt-us a um hopeless
ēligō 3 I choose
errō 1 I am wrong

etiam atque etiam again
and again
eueriō 3 I upset, overturn
exanimāt-us a um upset
exit-us ūs 4m. way out
expōnō 3 *exposui* I relate
funditus utterly
hauē greetings, hello
Hispani-a ae 1f. Spain
(there were two
provinces)
iactantiō iactantiōn-is 3f
vanity
ilicō at once
incito 1 I rouse
incolumitās incolumitāt-is
3f. safety
insolenti-a ae 1f. insolence

intercessiō intercessiōn-is 3f
veto
medius fidius I call heaven
to witness; so help me
God
meherculēs by Hercules
nōn null-ī ae a some
optimatēs optimāt-ium 3m.
pl. optimates
pariō 3/4 *peperi partus* I
obtain
percurrō 3 *percurri* I run
along
praedicō 3 *praedixi* I
foretell, tell in advance
prūdēns prūdēt-is
foreseeing
quod si but if
remaneō 2 I remain

saltem at least
sapienter wisely
scītur: impersonal passive
'it is known'

significō 1 I make clear to
temere casually,
thoughtlessly
testificor 1 dep. I call to
witness

tōtūm (adv.) completely
uacu-us a um free (from)
(ā + abl.)
ubique wherever

Notes

1. 79 *scripsī*: epistolary perfect 'I am writing'.
1. 81 *gravius*: tr. 'too serious'.
11. 83–4 *conuēnerim* . . . *cognōrim*: subjunctives in a subordinate clause in indirect speech.
1. 87 *hīs intercessiōnibus*: vetoes moved by the tribune L. Metellus to obstruct Caesar.
11. 89–90 *quid* . . . *agāmus*: i.e. whether we win there or not.
1. 90 *istī* i.e. Pompey's supporters ('those people of yours').
1. 101 *eō unde*: 'to that point . . . from where'.
1. 102 *optimātium*: the supporters of the Senate.
1. 103 *ēligās cēnsēō*: 'I propose that you should . . .' For subjunctive without conjunction, cf. 6A(iii) 11. 18, 19, (*caue*), 6B(ii) 1. 17 (*fac*), 6B(iii) 1. 28 (*cūrō*) and 6B(v) 11. 57–8 (*uelim*).

Learning vocabulary for 6B(vii)

Nouns

amīciti-a ae 1f. friendship

Adjectives

atrōx atrōc-is fierce,
unyielding

nōn null-ī ae a some (lit.
'not none' – often
written as one word)

uacu-us a um empty; free
(from) (+ abl. or
ā + abl.)

Verbs

errō 1 I am wrong,
wander

pariō 3/4 *peperi partus* I
bring forth, bear,
produce; obtain,
acquire

Others

etiam atque etiam again
and again

quod si but if
saltem at least

ubique wherever

Running vocabulary for 6B(viii)

<i>acerbitās acerbitāt-is</i> 3f. anguish, affliction, bitterness	<i>Hispaniēns-is</i> e Spanish, in Spain	<i>privat-us a um</i> private
<i>adulēscēns adulēscēt-is</i> 3m. youth	<i>Hortēnsi-us</i> ī 2m. Q Hortensius Hortalus, consul in 69; Rome's leading forensic orator before Cicero; they were not always on the best of terms	<i>profectō</i> undoubtedly, assuredly
<i>aliquandō</i> at some time		Q. = <i>Quintum</i> : <i>Quint-us</i> ī 2m. Quintus
<i>astūtē</i> craftily, cunningly		<i>quandō</i> at any time
<i>cās-us ūs</i> 4m. outcome		<i>quidem</i> indeed
<i>cīvil-is</i> e civil [See note]		<i>redimō</i> 3 <i>redēmī</i> I buy off x (acc.) from y (ā + abl.)
<i>cōstanti-a</i> ae 1f. constancy, steadfastness	<i>imitor</i> 1 dep. I imitate	<i>sīn</i> but if
<i>dēspērātiō dēspērātiōn-is</i> 3f. hopelessness, despair	<i>impendēō</i> 2 I threaten (+ dat.)	<i>solitūdō solitūdīn-is</i> 3f. deserted place
<i>dēspērō</i> 1 I lose hope of	<i>incommod-um</i> ī 2n. inconvenience, misfortune	<i>temere</i> rashly, thoughtlessly
<i>domestic-us a um</i> domestic, personal	<i>intersum interesse interfui</i> I take part in (+ dat.) [See note]	<i>terreō</i> 2 I make afraid, frighten
<i>etenim</i> for; and indeed	<i>laus laud-is</i> 3f. praise	<i>tribuō</i> 3 I put down [See note]
<i>exit-us ūs</i> 4m. outcome	<i>libentissimē</i> very gladly	<i>tueor</i> 2 dep. I look after, stand by
<i>extrēm-us a um</i> final, last (i.e. word)	<i>miseri-a</i> ae 1f. misery	<i>turbulenter</i> violently, seditiously
<i>familiāris familiār-is</i> 3m. friend	<i>orbis terr-ārum orb-is terr- ārum</i> 3m. the world (lit. 'the circle of the lands')	<i>uaticinor</i> 1 dep. I prophecy; rave, talk wildly
<i>fidēs fidē-ī</i> 5f. loyalty, honour	<i>perturbātiō perturbātiōn-is</i> 3f. disturbance	<i>uiti-um</i> ī 2n. defect, fault
<i>fid-us a um</i> faithful, loyal		
<i>fortasse</i> perhaps		
<i>glōrior</i> 1 dep. I boast		

Notes

- l. 107 *uelim* + subj: 'I would like (you to . . .)'. See l. 125 (and cf. 6A(iii) ll. 18, 19 (*caue*), 6B(ii) l. 17 (*fac*), 6B(iii) l. 28 (*cūrō*), 6B(v) ll. 57–8 (*uelim*), 6B(vii) l. 103 (*cēnsēō*)).
- l. 109 *tam* . . . *quam*: 'so much . . . as' (see 179.2). *arma cīuīlia* = *bellum cīuīle* (ll. 111–12). *huius mē cōstantiae*: *huius* . . . *cōstantiae* gen. and *mē* acc. with *paeniteat* '(of) this . . . I . . . regret'.
- l. 112 *interfuisset*: subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect speech (see 142). *hōc* . . . *quod*: 'in this respect . . . that'. *illī*: 'in his case'. *tribuēbātur*: impersonal – the subject is 'Hortensius' refusal to take part in the Civil War'.
- l. 114 *ad timōrem*: i.e. 'to make me afraid'.
- ll. 115–16 *omnibus*: dat. – hold until solved (by *impendēre*).

- l. 116 *hāc* . . . *perturbātiōne*: locative–temporal abl. *uideātur*: generic subjunctive (see 140.1). *quam*: i.e. *acerbitātem*.
- l. 117 *meīs priuātīs et domesticīs incommodīs*: . . . 'at the cost of . . .' abl. of price. Cf. *talentō*, 6A(ii) l. 7.
- l. 125 *uelim* + subj: 'I would like (it to)'. See l. 107 and note.
- l. 127 *quibuscumque*: hold until solved (by *in terrīs*).

Learning vocabulary for 6B(viii)

Nouns

<i>adulēscēns adulēscēt-is</i> 3m. youth	<i>cās-us ūs</i> 4m. outcome; event, occurrence; disaster, death; <i>cāsū</i> by accident, by chance	<i>fidēs fidē-ī</i> 5f. loyalty, honour; trust, faith; promise; protection
---	---	--

Adjectives

fid-us a um faithful, loyal

Verbs

<i>imitor</i> 1 dep. I imitate	<i>terreō</i> 2 I frighten	<i>tueor</i> 2 dep. I look after, protect; look at
--------------------------------	----------------------------	---

Others

<i>aliquandō</i> at some time	<i>quidem</i> indeed (places emphasis on the preceding word)	<i>sīn</i> but if
<i>fortasse</i> perhaps		

Section 6C

Running vocabulary for 6C(i)

<i>abūtor</i> 3 I misuse (+ abl.)	<i>ēuocāt-us</i> ī 2m. recalled veteran	<i>reciperō</i> 1 I regain, recover
<i>alteruter alterutr-a um</i> one or the other (declines like <i>alter</i>)	<i>exposcō</i> 3 I entreat	<i>respicō</i> 3/4 I turn my gaze upon, look round at
<i>ardeō</i> 2 I burn (intrans.)	<i>faciō ut</i> (+ subj.) I bring it about that	<i>singulār-is</i> e outstanding, remarkable
<i>commemorō</i> 1 I mention, recall	<i>priuō</i> 1 I deprive (x acc. of y abl.)	<i>supersum superesse</i> I am left, remain
<i>Crāstin-us</i> ī 2m. Crastinus	<i>prōcurrō</i> 3 <i>prōcucurrī</i> I run forward, advance	<i>tub-a</i> ae 1f. trumpet

Notes

1. 1 Caesar is subject throughout the 1st paragraph.
 1. 2 *testibus*: 'as witnesses' (predicative with *militibus*).
 11. 8–9 *quam* . . . : hold until picked up (by *operam*).
 11. 11–12 *uīuō mihi aut mortuō*: solved by *grātiās agās*.

Learning vocabulary for 6C(i)

Verbs

<i>ardeō</i> 2 <i>arsī</i> <i>arsūrus</i> 1 burn; am in love	<i>prōcurrō</i> 3 <i>prōcurrī</i> <i>prōcursum</i> 1 run forward, advance	<i>respicō</i> 3/4 <i>respexī</i> <i>respectus</i> 1 look round (back) at, turn my gaze upon; reflect upon; care for
<i>faciō</i> <i>ui</i> + subj. 1 bring it about that . . . (cf. <i>efficiō/perficiō ui</i>)		

Running vocabulary for 6C(ii)

<i>adorior</i> 4 dep. <i>adortus</i> 1 attack	<i>exanimō</i> 1 I deprive of breath, exhaust	<i>intermittō</i> 3 <i>intermisi</i> <i>intermissus</i> 1 leave, let pass
<i>alacritās</i> <i>alacritāt-is</i> 3f. enthusiasm, liveliness	<i>excēdō</i> 3 I depart, leave (+ abl. of separation 'from')	<i>lassitudō</i> <i>lassitudin-is</i> 3f. weariness
<i>animum aduertō</i> = <i>animaduertō</i>	<i>excipio</i> 3/4 <i>excēpi</i> 1 sustain, receive	<i>mittō</i> 3 <i>miſi</i> <i>missus</i> 1 throw <i>nātūrāliter</i> by nature naturally
<i>appropinquō</i> 1 I approach	<i>excurs-us ūs</i> 4m. attack	<i>perit-us a um</i> skilled
<i>concurſ-us ūs</i> 4m. attack, engagement	<i>exercitō</i> 1 I train	<i>Pompēian-ī ōrum</i> 2m. pl. the followers of Pompey
<i>cōnficiō</i> 3/4 <i>cōnfēct</i> <i>cōnfectus</i> 1 weaken	<i>explicō</i> 1 I unfold; me <i>explicō</i> 1 deploy	<i>praedicō</i> 3 <i>praedixī</i> 1 tell x (dat.) beforehand
<i>cōnsistō</i> 3 <i>cōnstiſi</i> 1 stop, stand my ground	<i>funditor funditor-is</i> 3m slinger	<i>profundō</i> 3 <i>profūdī</i> 1 pour out; <i>sē profundere</i> to pour forth
<i>cōnsūmō</i> 3 <i>cōnsūmpsī</i> <i>cōnsūptus</i> 1 use up	<i>incitō</i> 1 I set in motion; (passive) 1 rush	<i>prōtinus</i> at once
<i>conuertor</i> 3 dep. <i>conuersus</i> 1 turn round	<i>incitatio</i> <i>incitatio-nis</i> 3f energy	<i>renouō</i> 1 I renew, start again
<i>curs-us ūs</i> 4m. distance to run; running	<i>inerm-is e</i> unarmed	<i>reprimō</i> 3 <i>repressī</i> 1 hold back, check
<i>dēstituō</i> 3 <i>dēstitui</i> <i>dēstitūtus</i> 1 leave, abandon	<i>infest-us a um</i> hostile [With <i>pilum</i> = 'at the ready'; with <i>signa</i> = 'indicating attack']	<i>rursus</i> again
<i>distendō</i> 3 I stretch out	<i>infringō</i> 3 I break	
<i>distrahō</i> 3 I pull apart	<i>innāt-us a um</i> innate (in x dat.)	
<i>duplicō</i> 1 I double		
<i>equitāt-us ūs</i> 4m. cavalry		

sagittāri-us ī 2m. archer
ſponte of one's own
 accord, *ſuā ſponte* of
 their own accord
stringō 3 *strinxī* 1 draw

summoveō 2 *summōui*
summotus 1 dislodge
superior *superiōr-is* earlier
sustineo 2 I withstand
terg-um ī 2n. back

turmātum in squadrons
uertō 3 *uerſi* 1 turn (trans)
ūniuers-us a um all
 together
ūs-us ūs 4m. experience

Notes

1. 14 *tantum* governs *spatī*.
 1. 24 *cum*: 'when' (not governing *infestis pilis*)
 1. 25 *nōn concurrī ā*: impersonal passive (indirect speech) – 'that it was not
 being rushed together by . . .' i.e. 'that . . . were not making a charge'
 (see 155²).
 1. 30 *neque* . . . *dēfuērunt*: i.e. they were equal to the situation.
 1. 36 *hōc*: 'at this', 'because of this' (abl.).
 1. 37 *ā latere apertō*: i.e. from the left (the sword was in the right hand).

Learning vocabulary for 6C(ii)

Nouns

<i>curs-us ūs</i> 4m. running, course; direction, voyage	<i>equitāt-us ūs</i> 4m. cavalry <i>terg-um ī</i> 2n. back
--	---

Adjectives

<i>inerm-is e</i> unarmed	<i>infest-us a um</i> hostile, at the ready; indicating attack	<i>ūniuers-us a um</i> all together, whole, entire
---------------------------	--	---

Verbs

<i>adorior</i> 4 dep. <i>adortus</i> 1 attack, rise up against	<i>excēdō</i> 3 <i>excessī</i> <i>excessum</i> 1 depart, go out; surpass	<i>reprimō</i> 3 <i>repressī</i> <i>repressus</i> 1 hold back, check
<i>animum aduertō</i> = <i>animaduertō</i>	<i>excipio</i> 3/4 <i>excēpi</i> <i>exceptus</i> 1 sustain, receive, welcome; catch, make an exception	<i>sustineō</i> 2 <i>sustinui</i> <i>sistentus</i> 1 withstand; support
<i>appropinquō</i> 1 I approach (+ dat.)	<i>mittō</i> 3 <i>miſi</i> <i>missus</i> 1 throw; (send)	<i>uertō</i> 3 <i>uerſi</i> <i>uersus</i> 1 turn (trans.)
<i>cōnsistō</i> 3 <i>cōnstiſi</i> 1 stop, stand my ground		

Running vocabulary for 6C(iii)

agō 3 (*dē* + abl.) I discuss
aper 1 dep. I fetch water
cremō 4 I fortify,
 enclose (by a wall)
cōficiō 3/4 *cōfēcī cōfectus*
 I weaken
coniungō 3 *coniūnxī* I join
 (trans.); *mē coniungō*
 (+ dat.) I join x
contendō 3 *contendī* I
 demand (of x: *ā* + abl.;
 that y: *ut* + subj.)
continēns continent-is
 continual
dēditō *dēditōn-is* 3f.
 surrender
diffidō 3 semi-dep. *diffisus*
 I distrust (+ dat.)
dīuidō 3 *dīuisī* I divide
etsī although, even
 though

facultās facultāt-is 3f
 opportunity
flūmen flūmin-is 3n. river
impetrō 1 I obtain by
 request
instituō 3 *instituī* I begin
iug-um ī 2n. ridge
Lārīs-a ae 1f. Larisa
mūnitio mūnitio-n-is 3f.
 fortification
noctū by night
occupāt-us a um busy (with
 x, in + abl.)
occurrō 3 I intercept
 (+ dat.)
opus oper-is 3n
 earthwork, fortification
pass-us ūs 4m. pace, step,
mille passūs = 1 Roman
 mile (pl. *mīlia passuum*)

Pompēian-ī ōrum 2m. pl.
 the followers of
 Pompey
potior 4 dep. I gain
 control of (+ abl.)
recipiō 3/4: *mē recipio*
 I retreat
remanēō 2 I remain
remittō 3 *remisī* I send
 back
secludō 3 *seclusī* I cut off
 (x acc. from y *ā* + abl.)
senatori-us a um senatorial
subsum subesse I am close
 at hand
subluō 3 I flow at the foot
 of
uersus (placed after an
 acc.) in the direction of

Notes

l. 51 *iugīs*: 'on . . .', 'by means of . . .'

Learning vocabulary for 6C(iii)

Nouns

flūmen flūmin-is 3n. river
opus oper-is 3n.
 fortification; (job,
 work, task)

Verbs

agō 3 *ēgī actus* I discuss,
 (do, act; drive, lead,
 spend, pass; direct)
cōficiō 3/4 *cōfēcī cōfectus*
 I weaken; (finish)
diffidō 3 semi-dep. *diffisus*
 I distrust (+ dat.)

impetrō 1 I obtain by
 request
instituō 3 *instituī* *institutus*
 I begin; construct;
 resolve
potior 4 dep. I gain
 control of (+ abl.);
 (control (+ gen.))

recipiō 3/4: *mē recipio*
 I retreat; (welcome,
 receive, take in)
remanēō 2 *remānsī*
remansum I remain
remittō 3 *remisī* *remissus*
 I send back; remit

Others

etsī although, even
 though, even if

noctū by night

Running vocabulary for 6C(iv)

adhibeō 2 I show, use
commendō 1 I charge (x.
 dat., that y should not
 happen: *nē* + subj.)
cōsōlor 1 dep. I reassure
cōsurgō 3 I get up
dēscendō 3 I descend
dēsiderō 1 I lose, find
 missing
fleō 2 I weep
in vicem in turn

Lārīs-a ae 1f. Larisa
lētās lētāt-is 3f
 clemency
neu = *nēue* ('and that . . .
 not')
occurrō 3 I come to meet
 (+ dat.)
palm-a ae 1f. palm, hand
pandō 3 *pandī passus* I
 spread out (trans.)

planiēs piāniēs-ī 5f. plain
prōiciō 3/4 *prōiēcī prōiectus*
 I throw down
recūsatiō recūsatiōn-is 3f
 objection, refusal
requiescō 3 I rest
reuertor 3 dep. I return
superior superiōr-is higher
uiolō 1 I maltreat

Notes

l. 63 *prīmā lūce*: i.e. at dawn

l. 66 *cōsōlātus*: the subject is Caesar.

l. 67 *quō minōre essent timōre*: purpose clause (see 148). For the abl., cf. *bonō animō esse*.

l. 68 *nē quī*: 'that none . . .'

l. 69 *quid suī*: 'anything of his own (possession)'.

ll. 70–1 The infinitives are solved by *iussit*.

Learning vocabulary for 6C(iv)

Adjectives

superior super-ius (gen.
superiōr-is) higher;
 earlier

Verbs

dēscendō 3 *dēscendī*
dēscēsum I descend
fleō 2 *flēuī* *fletum* I weep

occurrō 3 *occurrī* *occursum* I
 run to meet, meet;
 attack (+ dat.)

prōiciō 3/4 *prōiēcī prōiectus*
 I throw down
reuertor 3 dep. *reuertus* I
 return

Others

neu = *nēue* and that . . .
 not

Section 6D

Running vocabulary for 6D(i)

<i>adiungō</i> 3 <i>adiūnxī</i> 1 join, add	<i>locō</i> 1 1 place mage = <i>magis</i>	<i>prōstrāt-us a um</i> prostrate
<i>cael-um</i> ī 2n. heaven, sky	<i>mens ment-is</i> 3f. mind	<i>quadrupēs quadruped-is</i> 3m (four-footed) beast
<i>cernō</i> 3 1 discern, perceive, see	<i>min-ae arum</i> 1f. pl. threats	<i>rapid-us a um</i> rapid, swift
<i>dēlūbr-um</i> ī 2n. temple, shrine	<i>minōrēs minōr-um</i> 3m. pl. descendants	<i>rat-um</i> 'workings'
<i>dīu-us</i> ī 2m. god	<i>murmur murmur-is</i> 3n. murmur	<i>sēdēs sēd-is</i> 3f. abode
<i>faciō</i> 3/4 1 suppose, imagine (l. 5)	<i>nectō</i> 3 1 link, string together (x acc. to y dat.)	<i>spargō</i> 3 1 sprinkle
<i>fax fac-is</i> 3f. torch	<i>nix nix-is</i> 3f. snow	<i>templ-um</i> ī 2n. region (inhabited by particular beings), quarter
<i>flamm-a ae</i> 1f. flame	<i>noctuag-us a um</i> wandering in the night	<i>tempor-a um</i> 3n. pl. seasons
<i>flectō</i> 3 1 steer, guide, control	<i>nūb-um</i> ī 2n. clouds	<i>tribuō</i> 3 1 assign
<i>frem-ut-us ūs</i> 4m. roar	<i>nūt-us ūs</i> 4m. nod, command	<i>uari-us a um</i> diverse, various
<i>fulmen fulmin-is</i> 3n. lightning, thunderbolt	<i>ordō ordin-is</i> 3m. order	<i>uēlāt-us a um</i> veiled, with covered head [See note]
<i>gemit-us ūs</i> 4m. groan	<i>palm-a ae</i> 1f. palm, hand	<i>uent-us</i> ī 2m. wind
<i>grandō grandin-is</i> 3f. hail	<i>pandō</i> 3 1 spread out, extend	<i>uertier</i> : passive infinitive (present) of <i>uertō</i> 3 (passive means 'I turn' intrans.)
<i>hūmān-us a um</i> human	<i>perfug-um</i> ī 2n. refuge	<i>uertor</i> 3 passive = <i>reuertor</i> (l. 2)
<i>imber imbr-is</i> 3m. rain, storm	<i>pietās pietāt-is</i> 3f. respect for the gods	<i>uolō</i> 1 1 fly
<i>infelix infelic-is</i> unhappy	<i>placāt-us a um</i> calm, tranquil	<i>uot-um</i> ī 2n. vow, prayer
<i>ir-a ae</i> 1f. anger	<i>prōcumbō</i> 3 1 bow down	
<i>lacrīm-a ae</i> 1f. tear		
<i>lapis lapid-is</i> 3m. stone		
<i>locarunt</i> = <i>locauerunt</i>		

Notes

For the metre see p. 318 and 183.

l. 1 *praeterea*: Lucretius has noted that men have an inborn knowledge of the gods' existence, but misinterpret the evidence of their senses so as to think the gods responsible for phenomena in the world. *caeli rationēs*: part of an indirect statement introduced by *cernēbant* (verb *uertī*).

l. 2 *uaria*: acc. pl. n. Hold until solved (by *tempora*) – second subject of *uertī*.

l. 3 *quibus*: abl. pl. f. – solved by *causīs*; normal order would be *nec poterant cognōscere quibus causīs id fieret*.

l. 5 *tradere et facere*: these two infinitives are in apposition to *perjugum*, i.e. 'handing over . . . supposing . . .'. *omnia flectī*: indirect statement depending on *facere* (*illōrum nūtū* also belongs to this indirect statement).

l. 6 *-que*: postponed – it joins this line to the previous one. *deum*: gen. pl. (see 16).

l. 7 *quia*: postponed (it introduces the clause which begins *per caelum uolūt*).

l. 8 *noctis signa seuerā* i.e. the stars.

l. 9 *noctiuagae . . . facēs, flammae . . . uolantēs*: i.e. shooting-stars or meteors.

l. 11 The two phenomena referred to in this line are probably both the same: thunder. *minārum*: i.e. the threats of the gods (as men imagine these noises signify).

l. 13 *cum*: postponed – it introduces the clause beginning *tāha dīuīs*.

ll. 14–15 This sentence is arranged as a *tricolon* with *anaphora* (see p. 315). The verb (*peperēre*) is held back until the third limb. The subject is *ipsī* (i.e. early men), the exclamatory words (*quantōs . . . quanta . . . quās*) are all acc., agreeing with the objects. The verb constructs with acc. and dative to mean 'I produce x for y'. *minōribu* = *minōribus* (the *s* is cut off to make the syllable light).

l. 16 *ūllast* = *ūlla est*. *ūclātum*: sc. 'for a person (to . . .)'. It was the Roman custom to pray with the head veiled.

l. 17 *uertier ad lapidem*: Romans approached statues of the gods from the right, then, after praying, turned right to face them, and prostrated themselves (see l. 18). Apart from stone statues, though, there were boundary-stones (*terminī*) and other sacred rocks which were venerated by the placing of garlands on them, or the pouring of oil. *omnis*: acc. pl. f. Hold until solved (by *ad arās*).

l. 18 *pandere palmās*: i.e. to stretch out the arms with the hands palm-uppermost.

l. 19 *deum*: gen. pl. (see above l. 6).

l. 21 *placātā*: abl. s. f. Hold until solved (by *mente*).

Learning vocabulary for 6D(i)

Nouns

cael-um ī 2n. sky, heaven
diu-us ī 2m. god
flamm-a ae 1f. flame
mēns ment-is 3f. mind

nix niv-is 3f. snow
ōrdō ōrdin-is 3m. order
 (rank)

pietās pietāt-is 3f. respect
 for the gods (also for
 one's family, home and
 native land)
uent-us ī 2m. wind
uōt-um ī 2n. vow, prayer

Adjectives

vari-us a um diverse,
 various

Verbs

pandō 3 *pandī* passus 1
 spread out, extend;
 throw open, disclose

Running vocabulary for 6D(ii)

Acherōn *Acheront-is* 3m.
 Acheron (one of the
 rivers of the
 Underworld)
aes aer-is 3n. bronze statue
aestuō 1 I boil, seethe
amict-us ūs 4m. cloak
ann-us ī 2m. season
apric-us a um sunny
arceō 2 I keep away (x
 acc. from y abl.)
ars art-is 3f. skill, art,
 accomplishment
ast = *at*
āter ātr-a um black
avis au-is 3f. bird
autumn-us ī 2m. autumn,
 fall
caen-um ī 2n. mud
cāntiēs cāntiē-ī 5f. white
 hair
Charōn *Charont-is* 3m.
 Charon (the ferryman
 of the dead)

Cōcūt-us ī 2m. Cocytus
 ('the wailing river')
 [See note]
color colōr-is 3m. colour
condō 3 *condidī* I hide
cont-us ī 2m. pole
crūd-us a um (lit. 'unripe')
 youthful, vigorous
cumb-a ae 1f. boat
debellō 1 I subdue,
 conquer
dēfungor 3 dep. *dēfūctus* I
 have done with, finish
 (+ abl.)
dēpendeō 2 I hang down
dēscribō 3 I delineate
Dīs Dīt-is 3m. Dis
 (= Pluto, god of the
 Underworld)
effūs-us a um hurrying,
 rushing (lit. 'poured
 out')
equidem indeed; for my
 part

ēructō 1 I belch forth,
 spout up
excūdō 3 I beat out,
 fashion
ferrūgine-us a um dark (lit.
 'rust-coloured')
ferō *ferre* I lead (intrans.)
foli-um ī 2n. leaf
frigid-us a um cold
frīgus frīgōr-is 3n. cold
fugō 1 I put to flight
glomeror 1 (passive) I
 gather, assemble
gurgēs gurgit-is 3m
 torrent, flood, sea,
 river
hērōs hero-is 3m. hero
 (human being of divine
 parentage)
horrend-us a um dreadful,
 terrible (lit. 'to be
 shuddered at')
immittō 3 I send (x acc. to
 y dat.)

impōnō 3 *imposuī* *impositus*
 (l. 41) I put on (to x
 dat.); (l. 55) I add (x
 acc. to y dat.)
inān-is e empty,
 insubstantial
incult-us a um neglected,
 disordered
innūpt-us a um unmarried
labor 3 dep. *lāpsus* I fall
lūmin-a um 3n. pl. eyes
magnanim-us a um great
 hearted [*magnanimum* is
 gen. pl. Cf. *deum* in
 6D(i) l. 6]
malign-us a um niggardly,
 grudging
marmor *marmor-is* 3n
 marble
meāt-us ūs 4m. motion,
 revolution
mementō remember, be
 sure (to: + infin.)
 (imperative of *meminī*)
ment-um ī 2n. chin
ministrō 1 I attend to
 (+ dat.)
moll-is e soft, pliant,
 flexible
mōs mōr-is 3m. civilisation

nāuit-a ae 1m. sailor
 (= *nauta*)
nod-us ī 2m. knot
obscur-us a um dark (tr. 'in
 darkness')
pont-us ī 2m. sea
portitor *portitōr-is* 3m.
 harbour-officer, excise-
 man
quale just as [See note]
radi-us ī 2m. rod
ratis rat-is 3f. boat
rēgō 3 I govern, direct
rēgn-um ī 2n. kingdom,
 realm
rīp-a ae 1f. bank
rog-us ī 2m. funeral pyre
ruō 3 I rush
senectūs *senectut-is* 3f. old
 age
senior *seniōr-is* very old
 (comparative of *senex*)
seruō 1 I guard
silu-a ae 1f. wood
sōl-us a um lonely
sordid-us a um dirty, filthy
spirō 1 I breathe
squalor *squalōr-is* 3m. filth,
 'squalor' (lit. 'stiffness')

subiect-ī ōrum 2m. pl. the
 conquered
subigō 3 I push on, thrust
 forward
subuectō 1 I convey,
 transport
summonēō 2 *summōuī*
summōtus I drive away,
 remove
superb-us a um proud,
 arrogant
surgō 1 I rise
Tartare-us a um of
 Tartarus, Tartarean
transmittō (*cursum*) 3 I
 make a crossing [See
 note]
turbid-us a um thick,
 murky (with. + abl.)
uāst-us a um huge, vast
uel-um ī 2n. sail
ulterior *ulteriōr-is* further
umbr-a ae 1f. shadow,
 darkness
umer-us ī 2m. shoulder
und-a ae 1f. water
uorāgō *uorāgīn-is* 3f. abyss,
 gulf

Notes

- 1 For the metre, see p. 319. *ibant*: the subjects are Aeneas and the Sibyl.
sōlā: with *sub nocte*. The adjectives are, in a sense, both with the wrong
 noun (a figure called *hypallage*) – *obscurus* would describe *nox* well, and
sōlus the travellers.
- 2 *inānia rēgna*: also governed by *per*.
- 3 *quāle . . . iter*, lit. 'what sort of journey (there is)' Understand 'they
 were going on' from l. 1. and tr. 'the sort of journey one makes . . .'
- 4 *caelum*: object – hold until solved (by *condidit . . . Iuppiter*).
- 5 *Iuppiter* Jupiter controls the weather (along with much else). *rēbus*:
 dat. of disadvantage (solved by *abstulit*). Tr. 'the world'
- 28 *hinc uia*: sc. *est*. *Tartareī*: gen. s. m. Hold (until solved by *Acherontis*).
 It belongs in the clause introduced by *quae*.

- l. 29 *turbidus*: with abl. of respect *caenō*. Used predicatively with *gurgēs* (i.e. 'a torrent, murky . . . ' not 'a murky torrent'). *uāstā* . . . *uorāgine*: abl. of description (qualifying *gurgēs*). The prose order of this line would be: *hīc gurgēs, turbidus caenō, uāstāque uorāgine, aestuat* . . .
- l. 30 *omnem*: acc. s. f. Hold (solved by *harēnam*). *Cōcētō*: = *in Cōcētum*
- l. 31 *portitor*: in apposition to the subject *Charōn*. Tr. 'as harbour-officer' (since he, like similar people in the Roman world, collects tolls and controls access to the harbour where his boat stands). *hās*: acc. pl. f. Hold until solved (by *aquās*); the phrase is the object of *sciat*
- l. 32 *terribilī squālōre*: abl. of description. *cū* . . . *mentō*: lit: 'for whom on the chin'. Tr. 'on whose chin'. Dative is commonly used in poetry for genitive in such expressions. *plūrima*: nom. s. f. Hold until solved (by *cānitiēs*).
- l. 33 *stant flammā*: lit. 'stand with flame' i.e. 'are staring and ablaze'.
- l. 34 *sordidus*: nom. s. m. Hold until solved (by *amictus*). *nōdō*: abl. of means 'by -'. Charon is wearing a cloak knotted (not fastened with a pin) over his left shoulder, leaving his right arm and shoulder bared for his work.
- l. 36 *ferrūgineā*: abl. s. f. Hold until solved (by *cumbā*: the abl. expresses place). *corpora*: i.e. the dead.
- l. 37 *sed crūda deō uiridisque senectūs*: sc. *est. deō* 'the god's'.
- ll. 39–41 All these people make up the *turba* of l. 38; the nominatives (*mātrēs*, *uirī*, *corpora*, *puerī*, *puellae* and *iuuenēs*) are in apposition to *turba*
- l. 39 *dēfūcta*: nom. pl. n. governs *uītā*, and is used predicatively with *corpora* (i.e. 'bodies finished with . . . ' not 'finished-with bodies'. Cf. *turbidus* in l. 29).
- l. 40 *magnanimum hērōum*: depends on *corpora*.
- l. 41 *impositi*: nom. pl. m. – cf. *dēfūcta* . . . *corpora* (l. 39). Used predicatively with *iuuenēs*, i.e. 'youths placed . . . ' not 'placed youths . . . '
- ll. 42, 44 *quam multa* . . . *quam multae*: 'as many as (the . . . which)'.
- l. 42 *autumnī frīgore primō*: *autumnī* depends on *frīgore*. The abl. phrase expresses time.
- l. 43 *cadunt*: here tr. 'die' (or *lāpsa* as 'having slipped' (sc. 'off the tree') and *cadunt* as 'fall' (sc. 'to the ground')). *aut ad terram gurgite ab altō*: this belongs in the new simile, introduced by *quam multae* in l. 44.
- l. 45 *fugat*: sc. *eās* (= 'the birds').
- l. 46 *trāsmittere*: infinitive of indirect command (poetic use of a Greek construction instead of the normal *ut* + subj.; see 134). *primī* belongs with *trāsmittere cursum*.
- l. 47 *amōre*: abl. of cause 'from desire (for)'.

- l. 48 *sed*: postponed (normally first word in a clause). *nunc hōs*: sc. *accipit*.
- l. 49 *harēnā*: = *rīpīs* (where the boat is standing and where access is gained to it). This line is the cue for Aeneas to ask the Sibyl why some people are allowed to sail, while others are kept on the shore. The answer is that only the buried may cross; the unburied, quite apart from the religious taboo on their crossing, have no coin with which to pay for their passage. Among the unburied, Aeneas meets his steersman Palinurus, who was lost overboard before the Trojans arrived in Italy.
- l. 50 *aliī* i.e. the Greeks (also for the other things mentioned in ll. 50–3).
- ll. 50–2 *mollius* . . . *melius*: the comparison is with the Romans, sc. 'than you Romans'. *mollius*: qualifies *spīrantia*. Tr. 'in more flowing (i.e. lifelike) lines'
- l. 51 *uīuēs*: acc. pl. m. Hold until solved (by *uultūs*: possibly the adjective is used predicatively (cf. lines 39 and 41 above), i.e. 'faces which live', not 'living faces'). *dūcent*: in the sense 'bring forth'.
- l. 52 *caeli*: i.e. 'of the heavenly bodies'. The phrase *caeli meātūs* is object of *dēscribent*.
- l. 54 *surgentia sīdera*: i.e. 'the risings of the stars'. Cf. 163 Note.

Learning vocabulary for 6D(ii)

Nouns

<i>ars</i> art-is 3f. skill, art, accomplishment	<i>frīgus</i> frīg-or-is 3n. cold; pl. cold spells	<i>silu-a</i> ae 1f. wood
<i>autumn-us</i> ī 2m. autumn, fall	<i>lūmen</i> lūm-in-is 3n. light; (pl.) eyes	<i>umbr-a</i> ae 1f. shadow, darkness; shade, ghost
	<i>rīp-a</i> ae 1f. bank	<i>umer-us</i> ī 2m. shoulder
		<i>und-a</i> ae 1f. water, wave

Adjectives

<i>obscur-us</i> a um dark, obscure; mean, ignoble	<i>sōl-us</i> a um lonely (alone)	<i>superb-us</i> a um proud, haughty, arrogant
--	-----------------------------------	--

Verbs

<i>fugō</i> 1 I put to flight	<i>lābor</i> 3 dep. <i>lāpsus</i> 1 slip, glide, fall down; make a mistake	<i>surgō</i> 3 <i>surrēxī</i> <i>surrēctum</i> 1 rise, arise, get up
<i>impōnō</i> 3 <i>imposuī</i> <i>impositus</i> 1 put x (acc.) on y (dat.)		

Running vocabulary for 6D(iii)

abrupō 3 I break
adiciō 3/4 I add
Aenēās (Greek nom.)
 Aeneas (Trojan hero, mythical founder of Roman race)
aestās aestāt-is 3f. summer
alm-us a um bountiful, nourishing [See note]
amic-us a um friendly [See note]
an whether
Anc-us ī 2m. Ancus (third king of Rome)
arbitri-um ī 2n. judgement
arbor arbor-is 3f. tree
avid-us a um greedy
brūm-a ae 1f. winter
caelest-is e in the heavens
camp-us ī 2m. field, plain
cār-us a um dear
chor-us ī 2m. dance
com-a ae 1f. foliage
crāstin-us a um tomorrow's
cūnet-us a um all, the whole of
damn-um ī 2n. loss
dēcidō 3 I go (lit. 'fall') down
dēcrēscō 3 I decrease

Diān-a ae 1f. Diana [See note]
diffugiō 3/4 I disperse, scatter (intrans.)
effundo 3 effūdī I pour out
fācundī-a ae 1f. eloquence
frugēs frūg-um 3f. pl. produce, fruits
gemin-us a um twin
grāmen grāmin-is 3n. grass
Grāti-a ae 1f. Grace (one of the three Graces)
hērēs hēred-is 3m. heir
Hippolyt-us ī 2m. Hippolytus [See note]
hodiern-us a um today's
iners inert-is sluggish, motionless
īfern-us a um of the Underworld
interiō interiōre interiū interitum I die
Lēthae-us a um of Lethe [See note]
Minōs Mino-is 3m. Minos (one of the judges in the Underworld)
mitēscō 3 I grow mild
nūd-us a um naked
Nymph-a ae 1f. Nymph

Peritho-us ī 2m. Perithous [See note]
pōmifer pōmifer-a um apple-bearing
prōterō 3 I trample on
pudīc-us a um chaste
pulvis puluer-is 3m. dust
rapio 3/4 I snatch (away)
recurro 3 I run back, return
reparō 1 I make good
restituō 3 I bring back, revive
simul = *simulatque*
splendīd-us a um splendid, brilliant
sumus . . . I am
super-ī ōrum 2m. pl. the gods above
tenebr-ae ārum 1f. pl. shadows, darkness
Thēseus (Greek nom.)
 Theseus [See note]
Torquāt-us ī 2m. Torquatus
Tull-us ī 2m. Tullus (second king of Rome)
ver-er-is 3n. spring
un-es 3f. pl. successive forms/conditions
Zephyr-us ī 2m. West Wind

Notes

For the metre, see 184

1. 3 *dēcrēscētia*: nom. pl. n. – solved by *flūmina praetereunt*: i.e. flow between.
1. 7 *immortālīa*: 'immortality'. *alimū*: acc. m. s. – hold (solved by *diem*). *hōra* and *annus* are both subjects of *monet*. The prose order would be: *hōra quae diem alimū rapit*.
1. 9 *Zephyrīs*: abl. of cause.
1. 13 *celerēs* . . . *lūnae*: i.e. months passing quickly.
1. 15 *quō*: '(to) where': understand *deciderunt* with *Aenēās*, *Tullus* and *Ancus* as subject.

1. 17–18 *hodiernae*: dat. s. f. – solved by *summae*. *crāstina*: acc. pl. n. solved by *tempora*: the subject of *adiciant* is *dī superī*.
1. 19–20 *amicō* . . . *animō*: dat. 'to your friendly heart' (imitating a Greek expression meaning 'to your dear heart'). The clause means 'whatever you have gratified your dear heart with'.
1. 21 *occideris*: future perfect, despite the long vowel in *-is*. *splendida*: acc. pl. n. – hold until solved (by *arbitria*).
1. 23–4 *genus*, *fācundia* and *pietās* are all subjects of *restituet*. Note the anaphora (*nōn* . . . *nōn tē* . . . *nōn tē*): see p. 315.
1. 25 *īfernīs* . . . *tenebrīs*: abl. of separation 'from'. *pudicum*: acc. s. m. – hold until solved (by *Hippolytum*).
1. 25–6 Diana, goddess of the hunt and of chastity, could not save her dearest devotee Hippolytus (whose death was devised by Aphrodite, whom he had spurned).
1. 27 *Lēthaea*: acc. pl. n. – hold until solved (by *uincula*). Lethe was the River of Forgetfulness.
1. 27–8 *cārō* . . . *Pērithoō*: abl. of separation 'from'. See Reference Grammar L(f)1. Theseus had gone down to Hades with his friend Perithous, to bring back Persephone, with whom Perithous was in love, and who had been abducted by Pluto. Both had been enchained, but Theseus had been rescued by Heracles, and returned to the world above. Now dead, and back in Hades for ever, he is unable to rescue his friend.

Learning vocabulary for 6D(iii)

Nouns

arbor arbor-is 3f. tree
camp-us ī 2m. field, plain
com-a ae 1f. hair; foliage
tenebr-ae ārum 1f. pl. shadows, darkness

Adjectives

caelest-is e in the heavens
cūnet-us a um all, the whole of
nūd-us a um naked

Verbs

rapio 3/4 *rapui raptus* I snatch, seize, carry off, plunder

Others

an whether (in indirect questions, + subj. -*um*), -*ne* (in direct question)

Running vocabulary for 6D(iv)

adapert-us a um open
adpōnō 3 *adposuī* I lay
aegrē with difficulty
aest-us ūs 4m. (lit. 'heat')

hot part of the day
apt-us a um fit
castīgāt-us a um well-
 formed (lit. 'well-
 disciplined')

claus-us a um closed
coll-um ī 2n. neck [Pl.
 used for s.]

Corinn-a ae 1f. Corinna
crepuscul-um ī 2n. twilight
 [Pl. used for s.]

dēripō 3/4 *dēripuī* I tear
 off

dīuidu-us a um parted
exigō 3 *exēgī* I complete

femur femor-is 3n. thigh
fenestr-a ae 1f. window

iuuenāl-is e youthful

lacert-us ī 2m. arm

Lāis Lāid-is 3f. Laïs (a
 famous Corinthian
 courtesan)

lass-us a um weary, tired
 out

latebr-ae ārum 1f. pl.
 hiding-place
laudābil-is e worthy of
 praise

leuō 1 I relieve, rest
mend-a ae 1f. blemish
nusquam nowhere
ortor 4 dep. *ortus* I arise
papill-a ae 1f. breast [See
 note]

Phoeb-us ī 2m. (lit.
 Phoebus, god of the
 sun) the sun

plān-us a um flat
pōnō 3 *posuī* *positus* I lay
 aside

praebēō 2 I provide, offer
premō 3 *pressī* I press
prōditiō *prōditiōn-is* 3f.
 betrayal

prōueniō 4 I turn out, am
 successful

pudor pudor-is 3m.

modesty, sense of
 shame

quālia/quāle [See note]

quāliter just as, just the
 way in which
rār-us a um thin [See note]
recingō 3 *recinxi* *recinctus* I
 unfasten, unbelt
referō *referre* I relate [See
 note]

requiescō 3 *requieui* I take a
 rest, relax

Semīramis *Semīramid-is* 3f.
 Semiramis (legendary
 queen of Assyria)

singul-ī ae a individual,
 one by one

sublūcēō 2 I glow faintly
thalam-us ī 2m. bedroom
 [Pl. used for s.]

tor-us ī 2m. bed, couch
 [See note]

tunic-a ae 1f. tunic
uelāmen uelāmin-is 3n
 clothing

uēlō 1 I clothe

uenter uentr-is 3m.

stomach
uerēcund-us a um shy,
 modest

1. 7 *illa*: nom. s. f. – *lūx* is the complement. Tr. 'that is the (sort of) light . . .' *uerēcundīs*: dat. pl. f. Hold until solved (by *puellīs*). (The dat. means 'to'.)

1. 8 *timidus*: nom. s. m. Hold until solved (by *pudor*). *spēret*: generic subjunctive (see tr. for *illa*, l. 7). (See 140.1.)

1. 10 *candida*: acc. pl. n. Hold (solved by *colla* – but await a verb still). *dīuiduā*: abl. s. f. Hold until solved (by *comā*) – *tegente* is also abl. s. f., and provides the verb governing *candida* . . . *colla*. The phrase is abl. abs.

1. 12 *multīs*: dat. pl. m. Hold until solved (by *uirīs*). The dative expresses agent 'by', after the passive participle *amāta*. Cf. 6A(vi) l. 5 *amāta nōbīs* 'loved by me'. See Reference Grammar L(e)(iv). *Lāis*: second subject (with *Semīramis*) of *dīcitur*. Carry over also in *thalamōs* . . . *isse*.

1. 13 *multum* . . . *nocēbat*: adverbial acc. (or internal). Tr. 'did it do much harm'. *rāra*: i.e. *tunica*. Tr. 'being thin'.

1. 14 *tunicā*: abl. of instrument 'with', 'by'. Solved by *tegī*. *sed tamen*: postponed – normally one would expect these words at the beginning of a clause.

1. 15 *ita* . . . *tamquam quae* . . . *nōllet*: 'just like one who did not want . . .' Generic subjunctive (see above, l. 8).

1. 17 *ut* = 'when'.

1. 18 in *tōtō*: await a solving noun (*corpore*).

ll. 19–22 *quōs* . . . *qualīs* . . . *quam* . . . *quam* . . . *quantum* . . . *quāle* . . . *quam*: all exclamatory. Cf. 6D(i) ll. 14–15.

1. 19 *quōs umerōs, quālīs* . . . *lacertōs*: obj. of *uīdī tetigīque*. Hold *quālīs* as obj. until solved by *lacertōs*.

1. 21 *fōrma papillārum*. = *papillae fōrmōsae*. The subject of the exclamation here precedes the introductory words *quam* . . . *apta*. *premī*: explanatory (epexegetic) infin. after *apta*. Tr. *premō* here as 'caress'.

1. 21 *quam*: qualifies *plānus*. *castīgātō*: abl. s. n. Hold until solved (by *sub pectore*).

1. 23 *referam*: deliberative subj.: see 152¹. Cf. *quid plūra dīcam?* 'Why should I say more?'

1. 24 *nūdā*: acc. s. f., adj. used as a noun. It refers to Corinna. *corpus ad usque meum*: normal order would be *usque ad corpus meum*.

1. 26 *prōueniant*: subjunctive expressing a wish for the future. See Reference Grammar L–V Intro. (a)4. *mediī*: nom. pl. m. Hold until solved (by *diēs*).

Notes

For the metre, see 185.

1. 1 *mediam*: acc. s. f. – hold until solved (by *hōram*).

1. 2 *mediō*: dat. s. m. – hold until solved (by *torō*). *torō*: dat. of motion towards. Tr. 'on . . .' Cf. 6D(ii) l. 30 *omnem Cōcūtō ērūctat harēnam* 'belches forth all its sand into Cocytus.'

1. 3 *pars* . . . *pars altera*: the window had two shutters. *clausa*: sc. *fuit*.

1. 4 *quāle* . . . *lūmen*: lit. 'what sort of light'. Tr. 'the sort of light which . . .'

1. 5 *quālia* . . . *crepuscula*: lit. 'what sort of twilight . . .' Tr. 'the sort of twilight which . . .' *fugiente*: abl. s. m. Hold until solved (by *Phoebō* – abl. abs.).

1. 6 *orta*: sc. *est*.

Learning vocabulary

Nouns

coll-um ī 2m. neck
lacert-us ī 2m. arm, upper
 arm
latebr-ae ārum 1f. pl.
 hiding-place, lair

pudor pudōr-is 3m.
 modesty, sense of
 shame
thalam-us ī 2m. chamber,
 bedchamber

tor-us ī 2m. couch; bed
tunic-a ae 1f. tunic

Adjectives

plān-us a um level, flat,
 plain, distinct

singul-ī ae a individual,
 one by one

Verbs

eror 4 dep *ortus* I rise,
 spring from, originate

pōnō 3 *posui positus* I lay
 aside (= *dēpōnō*); (place,
 position, put)

praebeō 2 I provide, offer,
 (show, display)
premō 3 *pressi pressus* I
 press, oppress

Others

aegrē with difficulty

Grammar and exercises for 6D

See pp. 318–20 for the principles of Latin metre, and the scheme for hexameter.

183 The hexameter in Lucretius

The metre is used by both Lucretius and Virgil, but Lucretius is in some ways less strict. Lucretius for instance allows elision of -s to produce a light syllable, e.g.

mīn|ōrīb|ū' n|ōstrīs (for *mīn|ōrīb|ūs n|ōstrīs*)

Here are the first three lines of the Lucretius passage scanned for you:

prae|ter|elā cā|elī rā|tī|ōnēs | ōr|dīnē|cē|tō
et uarī|a] ānnōrūm cernē|bānt |tē|pōrā|uē|tī
nēc pōtē|rānt quīb|us |īd fierē|t cōgnō|scere clā|usīs.

NB. The caesura (see above p. 320, note 2) comes after *caelī*, *annōrum*, *id* (3rd foot).

184 Archilochean

The metre Horace uses in Odes 4.7 is called Archilochean, after the seventh-century BC poet Archilochus of Paros. The scheme is a couplet, made up as follows:

- (a) Hexameter (see above p. 000).
 (b) Half-hexameter, with dactyls (-uu) only: -uu|-uu|u.

E.g.

dīffū|gēre nū|l|s, rē|de|ānt iām glā|minā clā|mpīs
ār|bōrīb|usquē cōm|lāe

185 Elegiac couplet

The metre used by Martial (e.g. pp. 208–9), Crotti (p. 287) and Ovid in *Fasti* (p. 405) and *Amōrēs* 1.5 is the elegiac couplet. It consists of a hexameter (see above p. 319), followed by a pentameter, the scheme of which is:

-uu|-uu|-|uu|-uu|u

E.g.

ad|pōsūlī mēdī|ō | mē|brā leu|lāndā tōr|ō

There is always a caesura (see p. 320, note 2) in the place marked by | in the example and the scheme.

Exercise

Scan the lines which you have translated in each section, taking care to watch for elisions. Mark foot divisions with |. Mark caesuras in hexameters with {, in pentameters with |. Add the correct word stress (see rule, p. xv). Read each piece aloud, thinking through the meaning as you read.

REFERENCE GRAMMAR

The Reference Grammar pulls together the Running Grammar sections, and adds to them features of the language which did not seem appropriate for a beginner dealing with basics. For the fuller philological picture we recommend:

L. R. Palmer, *The Latin Language*, London 1954

E. C. Woodcock, *A New Latin Syntax*, London 1959 (Bristol Classical Press reprint 1985)

A-G Verbs

Introduction

(a) Sequence

When the main verb of a sentence is PRESENT, FUTURE, FUTURE PERFECT, or PERFECT (meaning 'have —ed'), the sequence is 'primary', and subordinate subjunctives can only be present, perfect, or future participle + *sim*. When the main verb of a sentence is IMPERFECT, PERFECT ('I —ed'), or PLUPERFECT, the sequence is 'secondary' or 'historic', and subordinate subjunctives can only be imperfect, pluperfect, or future participle + *essem* (or *förem*). (For an exception, see 144.)

(b) Transitive/intransitive

A verb is said to be 'transitive' (*trānseō trānsitus* 'I cross over') when it controls a direct object in the accusative, e.g. *pōrtō* 'I carry' is transitive (in *aulam pōrtō* 'I carry a pot' *aulam* = object, accusative), but *pāreō* 'I obey' is not (in *ēi pāreō* 'I obey him' *ēi* = object, but dative), nor is *uēniō* 'I come' (in *ad pōrtam uēniō* 'I come to the gate', *pōrtam* is controlled by *ad*).

(c) Meaning

tēpus tribus pārtibus cōstat ('consists of' + abl.): *praetēritō*, *praesēnte*, *futūrō* (Seneca).

A-G Verbs: Introduction

Present tense (durative)

This is a durative form, and means 'I am —ing', but also serves to mean 'I —', 'I do —'. It can also mean 'I begin to —', 'I can —', 'I try to —' and 'I have —ed and still am —ing', e.g. *sexāgintā ānnōs uiuō* 'I have been living for sixty years (and still am)'.

The present tense can also be used where one would naturally expect a past tense. It makes the action more vivid. This usage is called the 'historic' present.

Future tense (durative)

This is again durative, and means 'I shall be —ing', but is used also for 'I shall —'.

Imperfect tense (durative)

This means 'I was —ing', 'used to —', 'kept on —ing', 'tried to —', 'began to —'. But it can also be translated 'I —ed', since English does not always pay as close attention to the durative aspect of the verb as Latin.

Perfect tense (completed)

This means 'I have —ed', 'I did —', 'I —ed', 'I have done with —ing'.

Pluperfect tense (completed)

This means 'I had —ed', 'I had been —ing', 'I finished —ing'.

Future perfect tense (completed)

This means 'I shall have —ed'. Frequently it is best translated 'I shall —' or 'I have —ed' in English, e.g. *pōstquam lībrum lēgerō* 'after I have read the book'.

(d) Principal parts

Active verbs generally have four principal parts, deponents have three (see the list at G). The principal parts give the key to all the forms of the verb, as follows.

Active verbs

hābe-ō: stem of active/passive forms of the present, future and imperfect indicative, subjunctive, imperative, gerund(ive) and present participle. (Note that 1st conj. verb stems end in

-a-, e.g. *ámō*, stem *ama-*, contrast *hábeō*, stem *habe-*, *dīcō*, stem *dīc-*, *aúdiō*, stem *audi-*; *cápiō*, stem *capi-*)

habē-re: key to correct conjugation (so the correct endings of present, future and imperfect forms). Stem of imperfect subjunctive (*habēre-m* etc.)

hábu-ī: key to all the perfect active forms

hábit-us: key to all the perfect passive forms, and the future participle/infinite active

Deponent verbs

pollice-or: stem of all present, future and imperfect forms. (See note on 1st conj. stems above, under *hábeō*)

pollicē-rī: key to conjugation

pollicit-us: key to all perfect forms, and future participle/infinite

NB. We give the fourth principal part of all deponent and transitive verbs in the form of the perfect participle (ending in *-us*), e.g. *amātus* (*ámō*). Intransitive verbs have the 4th p.p. printed in the n.s. (*-um*), e.g. *cúrsus* (*cúrrō*). Where no perfect participle exists, we have printed the 4th p.p. in the form of the future participle (ending in *-ūrus*), e.g. *fugitūrus* (*fúgiō*). Where neither future part. nor past part. is known, we print — in the 4th p.p. position. All dictionaries give as the 4th p.p. the 'supine' (see A7 for form and function)

A1 Present active: personal endings: -ō -s -t -mus -tis -nt

Present indicative active 'I —', 'I am —ing', 'I do —'

Key: A E I I I

	1st conjugation	2nd conjugation	3rd conjugation
	'I love'	'I have'	'I say'
1st s.	<i>ámō</i>	<i>hábeō</i>	<i>dīcō</i>
2nd s.	<i>ámās</i>	<i>hábēs</i>	<i>dīcis</i>
3rd s.	<i>ámat</i>	<i>hábet</i>	<i>dīcit</i>
1st pl.	<i>amāmus</i>	<i>habēmus</i>	<i>dīcimus</i>
2nd pl.	<i>amātis</i>	<i>habētis</i>	<i>dīcitis</i>
3rd pl.	<i>amant</i>	<i>habent</i>	<i>dīcunt</i>

A1 Active verbs

	4th conjugation	3rd/4th conjugation
	'I hear'	'I capture'
1st s.	<i>aúdiō</i>	<i>cápiō</i>
2nd s.	<i>aúdis</i>	<i>cápis</i>
3rd s.	<i>aúdit</i>	<i>cápit</i>
1st pl.	<i>audīmus</i>	<i>cápiamus</i>
2nd pl.	<i>audītis</i>	<i>cápit</i>
3rd pl.	<i>aúdiunt</i>	<i>cápiunt</i>

Present participle active '—ing'

Key: -NT-

1	2	3
'loving'	'having'	'saying'
<i>amāns</i> (<i>amant-</i>)	<i>habēns</i> (<i>habent-</i>)	<i>dīcēns</i> (<i>dīcēt-</i>)
4	3/4	
'hearing'	'capturing'	
<i>aúdiēns</i> (<i>audiēt-</i>)	<i>cápiēns</i> (<i>capiēt-</i>)	

Pattern of declension

	m./f.	n.	pl.	m./f.	n.
nem	<i>amāns</i>	<i>amans</i>	<i>amántēs</i>	<i>amántia</i>	
acc	<i>amántem</i>	<i>amāns</i>	<i>amántis</i> (<i>amántēs</i>)	<i>amántia</i>	
gen	← <i>amántis</i> →		← <i>amántium</i> (<i>amántum</i>) →		
dat	← <i>amanti</i> →		← <i>amántibus</i> →		
abl	← <i>amánte</i> (<i>amánti</i>) →		← <i>amántibus</i> →		

Present infinitive active 'to —'

Key: -ĀRE -ĒRE -ERE -ĪRE -ERE

1	2	3	4	3/4
'to love'	'to have'	'to say'	'to hear'	'to capture'
<i>amare</i>	<i>habēre</i>	<i>dīcere</i>	<i>audīre</i>	<i>cāpere</i>

Gerund (a noun, cf. present participles) '(the act of) —ing'

Key: -ND-

1	2	3
'(the act of) loving'	'(the act of) having'	'(the act of) saying'
amāre, amānd-um ī 2n.	habēre, habēnd-um ī 2n.	dīcere, dicēnd-um ī 2n.
4	3/4	
'(the act of) hearing'	'(the act of) capturing'	
audīre, audiēnd-um ī 2n.	cāpere, capiēnd-um ī 2n.	

Notes

- 1 The only gerund forms which verbs have are as above, based on the present stem.
- 2 The infinitive form often acts as a nominative noun, e.g. *errāre hūmānum est* 'to err (i.e. the act of erring) is human'. The gerund itself has no nominative.

Present imperative active '—!'

Key: Ā Ē E/I Ī E/I

	1	2	3
	'love!'	'have!'	'demand!'
2nd s.	āmā	hábē	pósce ¹
2nd pl.	amāte	habēte	póscite
	4	3/4	
	'hear!'	'capture!'	
2nd s.	aúdī	cāpe	
2nd pl.	audīte	cāpite	

¹ We use *poscō* here because *dīcō* has an irregular s. imperative**Present subjunctive active 'I —', 'I may —', 'I would —'**

Key: E A

	1	2	3	4	3/4
1st s.	ámem	hábeam	dīcam	aúdiam	cápiam
2nd s.	ámēs	hábeās	dīcās	aúdiās	cápiās
3rd s.	ámet	hábeat	dīcat	aúdiat	cápiat

A1-2 Active verbs

1st pl.	amémus	habeámus	dīcámus	audiámus	capiámus
2nd pl.	amētis	habeātis	dīcātis	audiātis	capiātis
3rd pl.	ament	habeant	dīcant	audiant	capiant

A2 Future active**Future indicative active 'I shall/will —', 'I shall/will be —ing'**

Key: ĀBI ĒBI E IE IE

	1	2	3	4	3/4
	'I shall love'	'I shall have'	'I shall say'	'I shall hear'	'I shall capture'
1st s.	amábō	habébō	dīcam	aúdiam	cápiam
2nd s.	amābis	habēbis	dīcēs	aúdiēs	cápiēs
3rd s.	amābit	habēbit	dīcet	aúdiet	cápiet
1st pl.	amābimus	habēbimus	dīcēmus	audiēmus	capiēmus
2nd pl.	amābitis	habēbitis	dīcētis	audiētis	capiētis
3rd pl.	amābunt	habēbunt	dīcent	aúdent	capient

Future participle active 'about to —' 'on the point of —ing', 'with a view to —ing'

Key: perfect participle stem + ŪR-US A UM

1	2	3
'about to love'	'about to have'	'about to say'
amātūr-us a um	habītūr-us a um	dictūr-us a um
4	3/4	
'about to hear'	'about to capture'	
audītūr-us a um	captūr-us a um	

NB. -ūr-us a um declines like *lóngus*, J1(a).**Future infinitive active 'to be about to —'**

Key: perfect participle stem + ŪR-US A UM + ESSE

1	2	3
'to be about to love'	'to be about to have'	'to be about to say'
amātūr-us a um esse	habītūr-us a um esse	dictūr-us a um esse

4	3/4
'to be about to hear'	'to be about to capture'
audītūr-us a um esse	captūr-us a um esse

NB. -ūr-us a um declines like *lōngus*, J1(a).

Notes

- 1 The future (or 'second') imperative is formed by adding -tō (s.), -tōte (pl.) to the present stem (e.g. *amātō*, *habētō*, *pōscitō*, *audītō*, *cāpitō*). It expresses an order which is not to be obeyed immediately. E.g. *laedere hanc cauētō* 'Take care (in future) not to rub her up the wrong way' (Catullus).
- 2 'Future' subjunctive active is formed by future participle + *sim sīs sit*, e.g. *amatūr-us sim* etc. or future participle + *essem essēs esset* (sometimes *fōrem fōrēs fōret*), e.g. *amātūrus essem* (*amātūrus fōrem*). Sequence (see A-G Intro.(a)) determines whether *sim* or *essem*/*fōrem* is used.

A3 Imperfect active

Imperfect indicative active 'I was —ing', 'I used to —', 'I began —ing'

Key: ĀBA ĒBA

1	2	3
'I was loving'	'I was having'	'I was saying'
1st s. amābam	habēbam	dīcēbam
2nd s. amābās	habēbās	dīcēbas
3rd s. amābat	habēbat	dīcēbat
1st pl. amābāmus	habēbāmus	dīcēbāmus
2nd pl. amābātis	habēbātis	dīcēbātis
3rd pl. amābant	habēbant	dīcēbant
4	3/4	
'I was hearing'	'I was capturing'	
1st s. audiēbam ¹	capiēbam	
2nd s. audiēbās	capiēbās	
3rd s. audiēbat	capiēbat	

¹ Sometimes *audibam audibās* etc.

A2-4 Active verbs

1st pl.	audiebāmus	capiēbāmus
2nd pl.	audiebātis	capiēbātis
3rd pl.	audiebant	capiēbant

Imperfect subjunctive active 'I was —ing', 'I might —', 'I would —'

Key: infinitive + endings

	1	2	3	4	3/4
1st s.	amārem	habērem	dicerem	audīrem	cāperem
2nd s.	amārēs	habērēs	dicerēs	audirēs	cāperēs
3rd s.	amāret	habēret	diceret	audiret	cāperet
1st pl.	amārēmus	habērēmus	dicerēmus	audirēmus	cāperēmus
2nd pl.	amārētis	habērētis	dicerētis	audirētis	cāperētis
3rd pl.	amārent	habērent	dicerent	audirent	cāperent

NB. No imperfect participles, imperatives or infinitives exist.

A4 Perfect active

Perfect indicative active 'I —ed', 'I have —ed'

Key: perf. stem + Ī ISTĪ etc.

1	2	3
'I loved', 'I have loved'	'I had', 'I have had'	'I said', 'I have said'
1st s. amāvī	hāvī	dīxī
2nd s. amāvīstī (amāstī)	hāvīstī	dīxīstī (dīxtī)
3rd s. amāvīt	hāvīt	dīxīt
1st pl. amāvīmus	hāvīmus	dīxīmus
2nd pl. amāvīstis (amāstis)	hāvīstis	dīxīstis
3rd pl. amāvērunt (amāvēre/amāvērunt)	hāvērunt (hāvēre)	dīxērunt (dīxēre)
4	3/4	
'I heard', 'I have heard'	'I captured', 'I have captured'	
1st s. audiī	cēpī	
2nd s. audiīstī (audiistī/audīstī)	cēpīstī	
3rd s. audiīt	cēpīt	
1st pl. audiīmus	cēpīmus	
2nd pl. audiīstis (audīstis)	cēpīstis	
3rd pl. audiērunt (audiēre/audiērunt/audiēre)	cēpērunt (cēpēre)	

Perfect infinitive active 'to have —ed'

Key: perf. stem + -ISSE

1	2	3
'to have loved'	'to have had'	'to have said'
amāuisse (or amāsse)	habuisse	dixisse
4	3/4	
'to have heard'	'to have captured'	
audiuisse (or audisse)	cēpisse	

NB. No perfect participle active; perfect imperative only found for *meminī* (see F1(a)).**Perfect subjunctive active 'I —ed', 'I have —ed'**

Key: perf. stem + -ERIM -ERĪS etc.

1	2	3
1st s. amāuerim (amārim etc.)	habuerim	dixerim
2nd s. amāueris	habueris	dixeris
3rd s. amāuerit	habuerit	dixerit
1st pl. amāuerimus	habuerimus	dixerimus
2nd pl. amāueritis	habueritis	dixeritis
3rd pl. amāuerint	habuerint	dixerint
4	3/4	
1st s. audiuerim (audierim etc.)	cēperim	
2nd s. audiueris	cēperis	
3rd s. audiuerit	cēperit	
1st pl. audiuerimus	cēperimus	
2nd pl. audiueritis	cēperitis	
3rd pl. audiuerint	cēperint	

A5 Pluperfect active**Pluperfect indicative active 'I had —ed'**

Key: perf. stem + -ERAM -ERĀS etc.

A4 5 Active verbs

	1	2	3
	'I had loved'	'I had had'	'I had said'
1st s.	amāueram (amāram etc.)	habueram	dixeram
2nd s.	amāuerās	habueras	dixerās
3rd s.	amauerat	habuerat	dixerat
1st pl.	amaueramus	habuerāmus	dixerāmus
2nd pl.	amāueratis	habuerātis	dixerātis
3rd pl.	amāuerant	habuerant	dixerant
¶		3, 4	
	'I had heard'	'I had captured'	
1st s.	audiueram (audieram etc.)	cēperam	
2nd s.	audiuerās	cēperas	
3rd s.	audiuerat	cēperat	
1st pl.	audiuerāmus	cēperāmus	
2nd pl.	audiuerātis	cēperatis	
3rd pl.	audiuerant	cēperant	

NB. No pluperfect participles, infinitives or imperatives.

Pluperfect subjunctive active 'I had —ed', 'I would have —ed'

Key: perf. stem + -ISSEM -ISSĒS etc.

	1	2	3
1st s.	amāuissem (amāssem etc.)	habuissem	dixissem
2nd s.	amāuissēs	habuisses	dixissēs
3rd s.	amāuisset	habuisset	dixisset
1st pl.	amāuissēmus	habuissēmus	dixissēmus
2nd pl.	amāuissētis	habuissētis	dixissētis
3rd pl.	amāuissent	habuissent	dixissent
4		3, 4	
1st s.	audiuissem (audissem etc.)	cēpissem	
2nd s.	audiuissēs	cēpissēs	
3rd s.	audiuisset	cēpisset	
1st pl.	audiuissēmus	cēpissēmus	
2nd pl.	audiuissētis	cēpissetis	
3rd pl.	audiuissent	cēpissent	

A6 Future perfect active

Future perfect indicative active 'I shall have —ed'

Key: perf. stem + -ERŌ -ERIS etc.

	1	2	3
	'I shall have loved'	'I shall have had'	'I shall have said'
1st s.	amāuerō (amārō etc.)	habuerō	dixerō
2nd s.	amāueris	habueris	dixeris
3rd s.	amāuerit	habuerit	dixerit
1st pl.	amāuerimus	habuerimus	dixerimus
2nd pl.	amāueritis	habueritis	dixeritis
3rd pl.	amāuerint	habuerint	dixerint

	4	3/4
	'I shall have heard'	'I shall have captured'
1st s.	audīuerō (audierō etc.)	cēperō
2nd s.	audīueris	cēperis
3rd s.	audīuerit	cēperit
1st pl.	audīuerimus	cēperimus
2nd pl.	audīueritis	cēperitis
3rd pl.	audīuerint	cēperint

NB. No future perfect participles, imperatives, infinitives or subjunctives.

A7 Supine

1	2	3	4	3/4
'to love'	'to have'	'to say'	'to hear'	'to capture'
amātum	hābitum	dictum	audītum	cāptum

Notes

1 The stem is identical with that of the perfect participle. The form is identical with acc. s. of 4th declension nouns. It is used in the acc. (-um) and abl. (-ū).

A6-7, B1 Passive verbs

2 The main uses are:

- (i) To express purpose, after verbs of motion, e.g. *lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium* 'They send ambassadors to Caesar to ask for help' (Caesar)
- (ii) To form the 'future infinitive passive'. See below B2, 118²⁻³.
- (iii) In the ablative with a few adjectives, e.g. *mīrābile dictū* 'wonderful to relate'

B1 Present passive: personal endings -r -ris -tur -mur -mini -ntur

Present indicative passive 'I am (being) —ed'

Key: A E I I I

	1	2	3
	'I am (being) loved'	'I am (being) held'	'I am (being) said'
1st s.	āmor	hābeor	dīcor
2nd s.	amāris (amāre)	habēris (habēre)	dīceris (dīcere)
3rd s.	amātur	habētur	dīcitur
1st pl.	amāmur	habēmur	dīcimur
2nd pl.	amāmini	habēmini	dīcimini
3rd pl.	amāntur	habēntur	dīcuntur

	4	3/4
	'I am (being) heard'	'I am (being) captured'
1st s.	audior	cāpor
2nd s.	audīris (audīre)	cāperis (cāpere)
3rd s.	audītur	cāpitur
1st pl.	audīmur	cāpimur
2nd pl.	audīmini	cāpimini
3rd pl.	audiuntur	capiuntur

Present infinitive passive 'to be —ed'

Key: -ĀRĪ -ĒRĪ -Ī -ĪRĪ -Ī

1	2	3	4	3/4
'to be loved'	'to be held'	'to be said'	'to be heard'	'to be captured'
amānī	habērī	dīcī	audīrī	cāpī

Present imperative passive 'be —ed!'

Key: -RE -MINĪ

	1	2	3	4	3/4
	'be loved!'	'be held!'	'be said!'	'be heard!'	'be captured!'
2nd s.	amāre	habēre	dīcere	audīre	cāpere
2nd pl.	amāminī	habēminī	dīciminī	audīminī	capīminī

Gerundive 'to be —ed', 'requiring, needing to be —ed', 'must be —ed'

Key: -ND-

1	2	3
'to be loved'	'to be held'	'to be said'
amānd-us a um	habēnd-us a um	dīcēnd-us a um

4	3/4
'to be heard'	'to be captured'
audiēnd-us a um	capīēnd-us a um

Pattern of declension

See *lóng-us a um* (J1(a)).

Notes

- 1 The only gerundive forms which verbs have are as above, based on the present stem.
- 2 Many verbs retain the old form in -ūnd-, e.g. *eūndum*, *oriūndum*, *gerūndus*.

Present subjunctive passive 'I am —ed', 'I may be —ed', 'I would be —ed'

Key: E A

	1	2	3
1st s.	āmer	hābear	dīcar
2nd s.	amēris (amēre)	habēāris (habēāre)	dīcāris (dīcāre)
3rd s.	amētur	habēātur	dīcātur
1st pl.	amēmur	habēāmur	dīcāmur
2nd pl.	amēminī	habēāminī	dīcāminī
3rd pl.	amēntur	habēāntur	dīcāntur

B1-2 Passive verbs

	4	3/4
1st s.	aūdiar	cāpiar
2nd s.	audiāris (audiāre)	capīāris (capīāre)
3rd s.	audiātur	capīātur
1st pl.	audiāmur	capīāmur
2nd pl.	audiāminī	capīāminī
3rd pl.	audiāntur	capīāntur

B2 Future passive

Future indicative passive 'I shall be —ed'

ĀBI ĒBI E IE IE

	1	2	3
	'I shall be loved'	'I shall be held'	'I shall be said'
1st s.	amābor	habēbor	dīcar
2nd s.	amāberis (amābere)	habēberis (habēbere)	dīcēris (dīcēre)
3rd s.	amābitur	habēbitur	dīcētur
1st pl.	amābimur	habēbimur	dīcēmur
2nd pl.	amābiminī	habēbiminī	dīcēminī
3rd pl.	amābūntur	habēbūntur	dīcēntur

	4	3/4
	'I shall be heard'	'I shall be captured'
1st s.	aūdiar	cāpiar
2nd s.	audiēris (audiēre)	capīēris (capīēre)
3rd s.	audiētur	capīētur
1st pl.	audiēmur	capīēmur
2nd pl.	audiēminī	capīēminī
3rd pl.	audiēntur	capīēntur

NB. The future (or 'second') imperative s. is formed as for the active (see above **A2 Note 1**), but with -r added at the end, e.g. *amātor* 'be loved'. There is no 2nd person pl. form.

Form traditionally described as 'future infinitive passive': used only in indirect statement (acc. + inf.)

Key: -UM -IRĪ

1	2	3
'that there is a movement to love'	'that there is a movement to have'	'that there is a movement to say'
amātum ¹ irī	hābitum ¹ irī	dīctum ¹ irī

4	3/4
'that there is a movement to hear'	'that there is a movement to capture'
audītum ¹ irī	cāptum ¹ irī

¹ These are fixed forms: see above A7

NB. There are no future passive participles, or future passive subjunctives.

B3 Imperfect passive

Imperfect indicative passive 'I was (being) —ed'

Key: ĀBA ĒBA

	1	2	3
	'I was (being) loved'	'I was (being) held'	'I was (being) said'
1st s.	amābar	habēbar	dīcebar
2nd s.	amābāris (amābāre)	habēbāris (habēbāre)	dīcēbāris (dīcēbāre)
3rd s.	amābātur	habēbātur	dīcēbātur
1st pl.	amābāmur	habēbāmur	dīcēbāmur
2nd pl.	amābāminī	habēbāminī	dīcēbāminī
3rd pl.	amābāntur	habēbāntur	dīcēbāntur

	4	3/4
	'I was (being) heard'	'I was (being) captured'
1st s.	audiēbar	capiēbar
2nd s.	audiēbāris (audiēbāre)	capiēbāris (capiēbāre)
3rd s.	audiēbātur	capiēbātur
1st pl.	audiēbāmur	capiēbāmur
2nd pl.	audiēbāminī	capiēbāminī
3rd pl.	audiēbāntur	capiēbāntur

B2-4 Passive verbs

NB. There are no imperfect passive participles, imperatives or infinitives.

Imperfect subjunctive passive 'I was being —ed', 'I might be —ed', 'I would be —ed'

Key: active infinitive + endings

	1	2	3
1st s.	amārer	habērer	dīcerer
2nd s.	amārēris (amārēre)	habērēris (habērēre)	dīcerēris (dīcerēre)
3rd s.	amārētur	habērētur	dīcerētur
1st pl.	amārēmur	habērēmur	dīcerēmur
2nd pl.	amārēminī	habērēminī	dīcerēminī
3rd pl.	amārēntur	habērēntur	dīcerēntur

	4	3/4
1st s.	audīrer	cāperer
2nd s.	audīrēris (audīrēre)	caperēris (caperēre)
3rd s.	audīrētur	caperētur
1st pl.	audīrēmur	caperēmur
2nd pl.	audīrēminī	caperēminī
3rd pl.	audīrēntur	caperēntur

B4 Perfect passive

Perfect indicative passive 'I was —ed', 'I have been —ed'

Key: perfect participle + SUM

	1	2	3
	'I was loved', 'I have been loved'	'I was held', 'I have been held'	'I was said', 'I have been said'
1st s.	amāt-us a um sum	hābit-us a um sum	dīct-us a um sum
2nd s.	amāt-us a um es	hābit-us a um es	dīct-us a um es
3rd s.	amāt-us a um est	hābit-us a um est	dīct-us a um est
1st pl.	amāt-ī ae a sumus	hābit-ī ae a sumus	dīct-ī ae a sumus
2nd pl.	amāt-ī ae a estis	hābit-ī ae a estis	dīct-ī ae a estis
3rd pl.	amāt-ī ae a sunt	hābit-ī ae a sunt	dīct-ī ae a sunt

Perfect subjunctive passive 'I was —ed', 'I have been —ed'

Key: perfect participle + SIM

	1	2	3
1st s.	amātus sim	hābitus sim	dictus sim
2nd s.	amātus sis	hābitus sis	dictus sis
3rd s.	amātus sit	hābitus sit	dictus sit
1st pl.	amati simus	habiti simus	dicti simus
2nd pl.	amati sitis	habiti sitis	dicti sitis
3rd pl.	amati sint	habiti sint	dicti sint

	4	3/4
1st s.	auditus sim	captus sim
2nd s.	auditus sis	captus sis
3rd s.	auditus sit	captus sit
1st pl.	auditi simus	capti simus
2nd pl.	auditi sitis	capti sitis
3rd pl.	auditi sint	capti sint

B5 Pluperfect passive

Pluperfect indicative passive 'I had been —ed'

Key: perfect participle + ERAM

	1	2	3
	'I had been loved'	'I had been held'	'I had been said'
1st s.	amātus eram	hābitus eram	dictus eram
2nd s.	amātus erās	hābitus erās	dictus erās
3rd s.	amātus erat	hābitus erat	dictus erat
1st pl.	amati erāmus	habiti erāmus	dicti erāmus
2nd pl.	amati erātis	habiti erātis	dicti erātis
3rd pl.	amati erant	habiti erant	dicti erant

	4	3/4
	'I had been heard'	'I had been captured'
1st s.	auditus eram	captus eram
2nd s.	auditus erās	captus erās
3rd s.	auditus erat	captus erat

	4	3/4
	'I was heard', 'I have been heard'	'I was captured', 'I have been captured'
1st s.	audīt-us a um sum	cāpt-us a um sum
2nd s.	audīt-us a um es	cāpt-us a um es
3rd s.	audīt-us a um est	cāpt-us a um est
1st pl.	audīt-i ae a sumus	cāpt-i ae a sumus
2nd pl.	audīt-i ae a estis	cāpt-i ae a estis
3rd pl.	audīt-i ae a sunt	cāpt-i ae a sunt

Perfect participle passive 'having been —ed'

Key: perfect participle ending in -US -A -UM

1	2	3
'having been loved'	'having been held'	'having been said'
amāt-us a um	hābit-us a um	dict-us a um

4	3/4
'having been heard'	'having been captured'
audīt-us a um	cāpt-us a um

Pattern of declension

See *long-us a um*, J1(a)

Perfect infinitive passive 'to have been —ed'

Key: perfect participle ending in -US -A -UM + ESSE

1	2	3
'to have been loved'	'to have been held'	'to have been said'
amāt-us a um esse	hābit-us a um esse	dict-us a um esse

4	3/4
'to have been heard'	'to have been captured'
audīt-us a um esse	cāpt-us a um esse

1st pl.	audītī erāmus	cāptī erāmus
2nd pl.	audītī erātis	cāptī erātis
3rd pl.	audītī erant	cāptī erant

Pluperfect subjunctive passive 'I had been —ed', 'I would have been —ed'

Key: perfect participle + ESSEM

	1	2	3
1st s.	amātus essem	hābitus essem	dictus essem
2nd s.	amātus essēs	hābitus essēs	dictus essēs
3rd s.	amātus esset	hābitus esset	dictus esset
1st pl.	amātī essēmus	hābitī essēmus	dictī essemus
2nd pl.	amātī essētis	hābitī essētis	dictī essētis
3rd pl.	amātī essent	hābitī essent	dictī essent

	4	3/4
1st s.	audītus essem	cāptus essem
2nd s.	audītus essēs	cāptus essēs
3rd s.	audītus esset	cāptus esset
1st pl.	audītī essēmus	cāptī essēmus
2nd pl.	audītī essētis	cāptī essētis
3rd pl.	audītī essent	cāptī essent

B6 Future perfect passive

Future perfect indicative passive 'I shall have been —ed'

Key: perfect participle + ERŌ

	1	2	3
	'I shall have been loved'	'I shall have been held'	'I shall have been said'
1st s.	amātus erō	hābitus erō	dictus erō
2nd s.	amātus eris	hābitus eris	dictus eris
3rd s.	amātus erit	hābitus erit	dictus erit
1st pl.	amati erimus	hābiti erimus	dicti erimus
2nd pl.	amati eritis	hābiti eritis	dicti eritis
3rd pl.	amati erunt	hābiti erunt	dicti erunt

B5-6, C1 Deponent verbs

	4	3/4
	'I shall have been heard'	'I shall have been captured'
1st s.	audītus erō	cāptus erō
2nd s.	audītus eris	cāptus eris
3rd s.	audītus erit	cāptus erit
1st pl.	audītī erimus	cāptī erimus
2nd pl.	audītī eritis	cāptī eritis
3rd pl.	audītī erunt	cāptī erunt

C1 Present deponent

Present indicative deponent 'I —', 'I am —ing', 'I do —'

Key: as for passive

	1	2	3
	'I threaten'	'I promise'	'I speak'
1st s.	mīnor	polliceor	lōquor
2nd s.	mīnāris (mīnāre)	pollicēris (pollicēre)	lōqueris (lōquere)
3rd s.	mīnātur	pollicētur	lōquitur
1st pl.	mīnāmur	pollicēmur	lōquimur
2nd pl.	mīnāminī	pollicēminī	lōquiminī
3rd pl.	mīnāntur	pollicēntur	lōquūntur

	4	3/4
	'I lie'	'I advance'
1st s.	mēntior	prōgrēdior
2nd s.	mēntīris (mēntīre)	prōgrēderis (prōgrēdere)
3rd s.	mēntītur	prōgrēditur
1st pl.	mēntīmur	prōgrēdimur
2nd pl.	mēntīminī	prōgrēdiminī
3rd pl.	mēntiūntur	prōgrēdiūntur

Present participle deponent '—ing'

1	2	3
'threatening'	'promising'	'speaking'
mīnāns (mīnānt-)	pōllicēns (pollicēnt-)	lōquēns (loquēnt-)

4	3/4
'lying'	'advancing'
mentiens (mentiēnt-)	prōgrēdiēns (prōgrēdiēnt-)

NB. For declension, see A1.

Present infinitive deponent 'to —'

1	2	3	4	3/4
'to threaten'	'to promise'	'to speak'	'to lie'	'to advance'
minārī	pollicērī	lōquī	mentīrī	prōgrēdī

Present imperative deponent '—!'

	1	2	3	4	3/4
	'threaten!'	'promise!'	'speak!'	'lie!'	'advance!'
2nd s.	mināre	pollicēre	lōquere	mentīre	prōgrēdere
2nd pl.	mināmini	pollicēmini	lōquimini	mentīmini	prōgrēdīmini

Gerundive 'to be —ed', 'requiring, needing to be —ed', 'must be —ed' (see 160 footnote)

1	2	3
'to be threatened'	'to be promised'	'to be spoken'
minānd-us a um	pollicēnd-us a um	lōquēnd-us a um

4	3/4
'to be lied'	'to be advanced'
mentiēnd-us a um	prōgrēdiēnd-us a um

Notes

1 For declension, see *lōng-us* (J1(a)).

2 *ōrior* 'rise' retains the old gerundive form *oriūndum*.

Gerund '(the act of) —ing'

1	2	3
'(the act of) threatening'	'(the act of) promising'	'(the act of) speaking'
minārī, minānd-um ī 2n.	pollicērī, pollicēnd-um ī 2n.	lōquī, lōquēnd-um ī 2n.

C1-2 Deponent verbs

4	3/4
'(the act of) lying'	'(the act of) advancing'
mentīrī, mentiēnd-um ī 2n.	prōgrēdī, prōgrēdiēnd-um ī 2n.

NB. The infinitive form often acts as a nominative noun; the gerund itself has no nominative.

Present subjunctive deponent 'I —', 'I may —', 'I would —'

	1	2	3
1st s.	minēr	pollicear	lōquar
2nd s.	minēris (minēre)	pollicēāris (pollicēāre)	loquāris (loquāre)
3rd s.	minētur	pollicēātur	loquātur
1st pl.	minēmur	pollicēāmur	loquāmur
2nd pl.	minēmini	pollicēāmini	loquāmini
3rd pl.	minēntur	pollicēāntur	loquāntur

	4	3/4
1st s.	mentiar	prōgrēdiar
2nd s.	mentiāris (mentiāre)	prōgrēdiāris (prōgrēdiāre)
3rd s.	mentiātur	prōgrēdiātur
1st pl.	mentiāmur	prōgrēdiāmur
2nd pl.	mentiāmini	prōgrēdiāmini
3rd pl.	mentiāntur	prōgrēdiāntur

C2 Future deponent

Future indicative deponent 'I shall —', 'I shall be —ing'

	1	2	3
	'I shall threaten'	'I shall promise'	'I shall speak'
1st s.	minābor	pollicēbor	lōquar
2nd s.	mināberis (minābere)	pollicēberis (pollicēbere)	loquēris (loquēre)
3rd s.	minābitur	pollicēbitur	loquētur
1st pl.	minābimur	pollicēbimur	loquēmur
2nd pl.	minābīmini	pollicēbīmini	loquēmini
3rd pl.	minābūntur	pollicēbūntur	loquēntur

	4	3/4
	<i>'I shall lie'</i>	<i>'I shall advance'</i>
1st s.	mentiar (<i>rarely mentibor</i>)	prōgrēdiar
2nd s.	mentiēris (mentiēre)	prōgrediēris (progrediēre)
3rd s.	mentiētur	prōgrediētur
1st pl.	mentiēmur	prōgrediēmur
2nd pl.	mentiēmini	prōgrediēmini
3rd pl.	mentiēntur	prōgrediēntur

Future participle deponent 'about to —', 'on the point of —ing', 'with a view to —ing'

Key: perfect participle stem + ŪR-US -A -UM

1	2	3
<i>'about to threaten'</i>	<i>'about to promise'</i>	<i>'about to speak'</i>
minātūr-us a um	pollicitūr-us a um	locūtūr-us a um

4	3/4
<i>'about to lie'</i>	<i>'about to advance'</i>
mentītūr-us a um	prōgressūr-us a um

Future infinitive deponent 'to be about to'

Key: future participle + ESSE

1	2	3
<i>'to be about to threaten'</i>	<i>'to be about to promise'</i>	<i>'to be about to speak'</i>
minātūr-us a um esse	pollicitūr-us a um esse	locūtūr-us a um esse

4	3/4
<i>'to be about to lie'</i>	<i>'to be about to advance'</i>
mentītūr-us a um esse	prōgressūr-us a um esse

Notes

- 1 For future (or 'second') imperative, see A2 Note 1.
- 2 For 'future' subjunctive, see A2 Note 2

C3 Imperfect deponent

Imperfect indicative deponent 'I was —ing', 'I used to —', 'I began —ing'

	1	2	3
	<i>'I was threatening'</i>	<i>'I was promising'</i>	<i>'I was speaking'</i>
1st s.	minābar	pollicēbar	loquēbar
2nd s.	minābāris (minābāre)	pollicēbāris (pollicēbāre)	loquēbāris (loquēbāre)
3rd s.	minābātur	pollicēbātur	loquēbātur
1st pl.	minābāmur	pollicēbāmur	loquēbāmur
2nd pl.	minābāmini	pollicēbāmini	loquēbāmini
3rd pl.	minābāntur	pollicēbāntur	loquēbāntur

	4	3/4
	<i>'I was lying'</i>	<i>'I was advancing'</i>
1st s.	mentiēbar	prōgrediēbar
2nd s.	mentiēbāris (mentiēbāre)	prōgrediēbāris (prōgrediēbāre)
3rd s.	mentiēbātur	prōgrediēbātur
1st pl.	mentiēbāmur	prōgrediēbāmur
2nd pl.	mentiēbāmini	prōgrediēbāmini
3rd pl.	mentiēbāntur	prōgrediēbāntur

NB. No participles, infinitives or imperatives.

Imperfect subjunctive deponent 'I was —ing', 'I might —', 'I would —'

	1	2	3
1st s.	minārer	pollicērer	loquerer
2nd s.	minārēris (minārēre)	pollicērēris (pollicērēre)	loquerēris (loquerēre)
3rd s.	minārētur	pollicērētur	loquerētur
1st pl.	minārēmur	pollicērēmur	loquerēmur
2nd pl.	minārēmini	pollicērēmini	loquerēmini
3rd pl.	minārēntur	pollicērēntur	loquerēntur

	4	3/4
1st s.	mentirer	prōgrēderer
2nd s.	mentirēris (mentirēre)	prōgrederēris (prōgrederēre)
3rd s.	mentirētur	prōgrederētur
1st pl.	mentirēmur	prōgrederēmur
2nd pl.	mentirēmini	prōgrederēmini
3rd pl.	mentirēntur	prōgrederēntur

C4 Perfect deponent

Perfect indicative deponent: 'I —ed', 'I have —ed'

	1	2	3
	'I threatened', 'I have threatened'	'I promised', 'I have promised'	'I spoke', 'I have spoken'
1st s.	mināt-us a um sum	pollicit-us a um sum	locūt-us a um sum
2nd s.	minat-us a um es	pollicit-us a um es	locūt-us a um es
3rd s.	minat-us a um est	pollicit-us a um est	locūt-us a um est
1st pl.	mināt-ī ae a sumus	pollicit-ī ae a sumus	locūt-ī ae a sumus
2nd pl.	mināt-ī ae a estis	pollicit-ī ae a estis	locūt-ī ae a estis
3rd pl.	mināt-ī ae a sunt	pollicit-ī ae a sunt	locūt-ī ae a sunt
	4	3/4	
	'I lied', 'I have lied'	'I advanced', 'I have advanced'	
1st s.	mentīt-us a um sum	prōgrēss-us a um sum	
2nd s.	mentīt-us a um es	prōgrēss-us a um es	
3rd s.	mentīt-us a um est	prōgrēss-us a um est	
1st pl.	mentīt-ī ae a sumus	prōgrēss-ī ae a sumus	
2nd pl.	mentīt-ī ae a estis	prōgrēss-ī ae a estis	
3rd pl.	mentīt-ī ae a sunt	prōgrēss-ī ae a sunt	

Perfect participle deponent 'having —ed'

Key: perfect participle stem + -US -A -UM

	1	2	3
	'having threatened'	'having promised'	'having spoken'
	mināt-us a um	pollicit-us a um	locūt-us a um
	4	3/4	
	'having lied'	'having advanced'	
	mentīt-us a um	prōgrēss-us a um	

Notes

- 1 The perfect participle of many deponents is used to mean '—ing' (i.e. as a present participle): e.g. *rātus* 'thinking', *uēritus* 'fearing', *arbitrātus* 'thinking' etc.

C4 Deponent verbs

- 2 Many deponents have a *passive* as well as an active meaning in the perfect participle e.g. *pollicitus* 'having promised' or 'having *been* promised'.

Perfect infinitive deponent 'to have —ed'

Key: perfect participle + ESSE

	1	2	3
	'to have threatened'	'to have promised'	'to have spoken'
	mināt-us a um esse	pollicit-us a um esse	locūt-us a um esse
	4	3/4	
	'to have lied'	'to have advanced'	
	mentīt-us a um esse	prōgrēss-us a um esse	

NB. There is no perfect imperative.

Perfect subjunctive deponent 'I —ed', 'I have —ed'

	1	2	3
1st s.	minātus sim	pollicitus sim	locūtus sim
2nd s.	minātus sis	pollicitus sis	locūtus sis
3rd s.	minātus sit	pollicitus sit	locūtus sit
1st pl.	minātī simus	pollicitī simus	locūtī simus
2nd pl.	minātī sitis	pollicitī sitis	locūtī sitis
3rd pl.	minātī sint	pollicitī sint	locūtī sint
	4	3/4	
1st s.	mentītus sim	prōgrēssus sim	
2nd s.	mentītus sis	prōgrēssus sis	
3rd s.	mentītus sit	prōgrēssus sit	
1st pl.	mentītī simus	prōgrēssī simus	
2nd pl.	mentītī sitis	prōgrēssī sitis	
3rd pl.	mentītī sint	prōgrēssī sint	

C5 Pluperfect deponent

Pluperfect indicative deponent 'I had —ed'

	1	2	3
1st s.	minātus éram	pollicitus éram	locūtus éram
2nd s.	minātus érās	pollicitus érās	locūtus érās
3rd s.	minātus érat	pollicitus érat	locūtus érat
1st pl.	minātī erāmus	pollicitī erāmus	locūtī erāmus
2nd pl.	minātī erātis	pollicitī erātis	locūtī erātis
3rd pl.	minātī érant	pollicitī érant	locūtī érant
4	3/4		
	'I had lied'	'I had advanced'	
1st s.	mentitus éram	prōgrēssus éram	
2nd s.	mentitus érās	prōgrēssus érās	
3rd s.	mentitus érat	prōgrēssus érat	
1st pl.	mentitī erāmus	prōgrēssī erāmus	
2nd pl.	mentitī erātis	prōgrēssī erātis	
3rd pl.	mentitī érant	prōgrēssī érant	

NB. There is no pluperfect participle, infinitive or imperative.

Pluperfect subjunctive deponent 'I had —ed', 'I would have —ed'

	1	2	3
1st s.	minātus essem	pollicitus essem	locūtus essem
2nd s.	minātus essēs	pollicitus essēs	locūtus essēs
3rd s.	minātus esset	pollicitus esset	locūtus esset
1st pl.	minātī essēmus	pollicitī essēmus	locūtī essēmus
2nd pl.	minātī essētis	pollicitī essētis	locūtī essētis
3rd pl.	minātī essent	pollicitī essent	locūtī essent
4	3/4		
1st s.	mentitus essem	prōgrēssus essem	
2nd s.	mentitus essēs	prōgrēssus essēs	
3rd s.	mentitus esset	prōgrēssus esset	
1st pl.	mentitī essēmus	prōgrēssī essēmus	
2nd pl.	mentitī essētis	prōgrēssī essētis	
3rd pl.	mentitī essent	prōgrēssī essent	

C6 Future perfect deponent

Future perfect indicative deponent 'I shall have —ed'

	1	2	3
	'I shall have threatened'	'I shall have promised'	'I shall have spoken'
1st s.	minātus erō	pollicitus erō	locūtus ero
2nd s.	minātus eris	pollicitus eris	locūtus eris
3rd s.	minātus erit	pollicitus erit	locūtus erit
1st pl.	minātī erimus	pollicitī erimus	locūtī erimus
2nd pl.	minātī eritis	pollicitī eritis	locūtī eritis
3rd pl.	minātī erunt	pollicitī erunt	locūtī erunt
4	3/4		
	'I shall have lied'	'I shall have advanced'	
1st s.	mentitus erō	prōgrēssus erō	
2nd s.	mentitus eris	prōgrēssus eris	
3rd s.	mentitus erit	prōgrēssus erit	
1st pl.	mentitī erimus	prōgrēssī erimus	
2nd pl.	mentitī eritis	prōgrēssī eritis	
3rd pl.	mentitī erunt	prōgrēssī erunt	

Notes

1 There is no future perfect participle, infinitive, imperative or subjunctive.

2 For supine forms and meanings see above, A7.

D Semi-deponents

Some verbs in Latin have present, future and imperfect tenses in ACTIVE forms, but perfect, pluperfect and future perfect tenses in DEPONENT forms. Meaning is NOT affected by this change. E.g.

audeō 2 aīs-us 'I dare'	fīō fierī fāctus 'I become', 'I am made', 'I am done'
audeō 'I dare'	fīō 'I become'
audebō 'I shall dare'	fīam 'I shall become'
audebam 'I was daring'	fīēbam 'I was becoming'
aūsus sum 'I have dared'	fāctus sum 'I became'
aūsus éram 'I had dared'	fāctus éram 'I had become'
aūsus érō 'I shall have dared'	fāctus érō 'I shall have become'

Note the irregular conjugation of *fiō*:

1st s.	fiō
2nd s.	fis
3rd s.	fit
1st pl.	— ¹
2nd pl.	— ¹
3rd pl.	fiunt

¹ *finus* and *fitis* are not found

Notes

- 1 Semi-deponents have past participles just like full deponents, e.g. *aūsus* 'having dared', *fāctus* 'having been made', 'having become'.
- 2 Similar verbs are *gaūdeō* 2 *gaūsus* 'I rejoice', *sōleō* 2 *sōlitus* 'I am accustomed'; *fidō* 3 *fīsus* 'I trust'.
- 3 *aūdeō* has a regular subjunctive *aūdeam* -ās etc. and a form *aūsim* used only as a potential, meaning 'I would dare'. Cf. *uēlim* 'I would like'. See 153.2.

E1 Irregular verbs: *sum*

sum esse futūr-us 'I am'

	Present	Future	Imperfect
	Indicative 'I am'	Indicative 'I shall be'	Indicative 'I was'
1st s.	sum	ērō	erām
2nd s.	es	eris	erās
3rd s.	est	erit	erit
1st pl.	sūmus	erimus	erāmus
2nd pl.	estis	eritis	erātis
3rd pl.	sunt	erunt	erant
	Infinitive 'to be'	Infinitive 'to be about to be'	
	esse	futūr-us a um esse or fōre	
	Imperative 'be!'	Participle 'about to be'	
		futūr-us a um	
		Imperative	
	2nd s. es	2nd/3rd s. estō 'be!'	
	2nd pl. este	'let him be'	
		2nd pl. estōte 'be!'	
		3rd pl. sūntō 'let them be!'	

D, E1-2 Irregular verbs

	Subjunctive	Subjunctive
		ēssem (sometimes fōrem fōrēs etc.)
1st s.	sim	essēs
2nd s.	sis	esset
3rd s.	sit	essetis
1st pl.	simus	essetis
2nd pl.	sitis	essent
3rd pl.	sint	

NB. All perfect forms regularly derived from *fū-*

E2 Irregular verbs: *ferō*

Active

ferō ferre nīlī lātus 'I bear', 'I carry', 'I endure', 'I lead'

	Present	Future	Imperfect
	Indicative 'I carry'	Indicative 'I shall carry'	Indicative 'I was carrying'
1st s.	ferō	feram	ferēbam
2nd s.	fers	feres	ferēbas
3rd s.	fert	feret	ferēbat
1st pl.	ferimus	ferēmus	ferēbamus
2nd pl.	feritis	ferētis	ferēbatis
3rd pl.	ferunt	ferent	ferēbant

Infinitive 'to carry'
ferre

Imperative 'carry!'
2nd s. fer
2nd pl. ferite

Participle 'carrying'
ferēns (ferēt-)

	Subjunctive	Subjunctive
		ferrem
1st s.	feram	ferrēs
2nd s.	ferās	ferret
3rd s.	ferat	ferrētis
1st pl.	ferāmus	ferrent
2nd pl.	ferātis	
3rd pl.	ferant	

Passive

	Present	Future	Imperfect
	Indicative	Indicative	Indicative
	'I am being carried'	'I shall be carried'	'I was (being) carried'
1st s.	feror	terar	ferēbar
2nd s.	ferris	ferēris (ferēre)	ferēbāns (ferēbāre)
3rd s.	fertur	ferētur	ferēbātur
1st pl.	ferimur	ferēmur	ferēbāmur
2nd pl.	ferimini	ferēmini	ferēbāminī
3rd pl.	feruntur	ferentur	ferēbāntur

Infinitive
'to be carried'
ferri

Imperative
'be carried'
2nd s. ferre
2nd pl. ferimini

	Subjunctive	Subjunctive
1st s.	ferar	ferer
2nd s.	ferāris (ferāre)	ferēris (ferēre)
3rd s.	ferātur	ferētur
1st pl.	ferāmur	ferēmur
2nd pl.	ferāminī	ferēminī
3rd pl.	ferāntur	ferēntur

NB All perfect forms are regularly derived from *tul-ī lāt-us*

E3 Irregular verbs: *possum*

Possum posse potui 'I can', 'I am able'

	Present	Future	Imperfect
	Indicative 'I can'	Indicative 'I shall be able'	Indicative 'I was able'
1st s.	pōssum	pōterō	poteram
2nd s.	pōtes	pōteris	pōteris
3rd s.	pōtest	pōterit	pōterat
1st pl.	possumus	potērimus	poterāmus
2nd pl.	potēstis	potēritis	poterātis
3rd pl.	pōssunt	pōterunt	pōterant

E2-4 Irregular verbs

Infinitive 'to be able'
pōsse

	Subjunctive	Subjunctive
1st s.	pōssim	possem
2nd s.	pōssis	pōssēs
3rd s.	pōssit	pōsset
1st pl.	possīmus	possēmus
2nd pl.	possītis	possētis
3rd pl.	pōssint	possent

NB. All perfects regularly derived from *pōtu-ī*.

E4 Irregular verbs: *eō*

Active

	Present	Future	Imperfect
	Indicative 'I go'	Indicative 'I shall go'	Indicative 'I was going'
1st s.	ēō	ībō	ibam
2nd s.	īs	ibis	ibas
3rd s.	it	ibit	ibat
1st pl.	īmus	ibimus	ibāmas
2nd pl.	ītis	ibitis	ibātis
3rd pl.	ēunt	ībunt	ibant

Infinitive 'to go'
īre

Infinitive 'to be about to go'
itūr-us a um esse

Imperative 'go!'
2nd s. ī
2nd pl. ite

Participle 'going'
iēns (eūnt-is)

Participle 'about to go'
itūr-us a um

Gerund 'to go'
'(the act of) going'
īre, eūnd-um ī 2n.

	Subjunctive
1st s.	eam
2nd s.	es
3rd s.	eat
1st pl.	eamus
2nd pl.	eatis
3rd pl.	eat

Subjunctive
irem
ires
iret
iremus
iretis
irent

Passive (used in compounds)

	Present
	Indicative 'I am approached'
1st s.	adeor
2nd s.	adiris (adire)
3rd s.	aditur
1st pl.	adimur
2nd pl.	adimini
3rd pl.	adeuntur

NB. All other parts are regularly formed from *in-ire* / *in-ire*.

E5 Irregular verbs: *uolō, nōlō, mālō*

uolō uelle uolui 'I wish'
nōlō nolle noluī 'I am unwilling', 'I refuse'
mālō malle malui 'I prefer'

These are formed regularly as third conjugation verbs except in the following forms.

	Present	Present	Present
	Indicative 'I wish'	Indicative 'I refuse'	Indicative 'I prefer'
1st s.	uolō	nōlō	mālō
2nd s.	uis	nōn uis	māuīs
3rd s.	uult	nōn uult	māuult
1st pl.	uolumus	nolumus	mālumus
2nd pl.	uultis	nōn uultis	māuultis
3rd pl.	uolunt	nolunt	mālunt
	Infinitive 'to wish'	Infinitive 'to refuse'	Infinitive 'to prefer'
	uelle	nolle	malle

E4-5, F1 Defective verbs, impersonal verbs

		<i>Imperative 'do not (wish)!'</i>	
		2nd s. nōlī	
		2nd pl. nōlīte	
	<i>Present subjunctive</i>	<i>Present subjunctive</i>	<i>Present subjunctive</i>
1st s.	uélīm	nolīm	mālim
2nd s.	uélīs	nōlīs	mālīs
3rd s.	uelit	nolit	mālit
1st pl.	uelimus	nōlimus	mālimus
2nd pl.	uelitis	nōlītis	mālītis
3rd pl.	uélint	nolint	mālint
	<i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	<i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	<i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>
1st s.	uéllem	nōllem	māllem
2nd s.	uelles etc.	nōllēs etc.	māllēs etc.

Notes

- 1 -se was the original infinitive ending (cf. *ēs-se*). Since *s* becomes *r* in between vowels (cf. *onus*, H3(d)Note), *amāse* becomes *amāre*. When attached to a consonant stem, *s* becomes assimilated to it, e.g. *uel-se* → *uēlle*; *nōl-se* → *nōlle*.
- 2 *uolō* and *mālō* have no imperative. But the original imperative of *uolō*, *uel*, became the conjunction meaning 'or'.

F1 Defective verbs

These verbs lack certain forms

(a) *coepī, meminī, ōdī*

coepī 'I have begun' (generally), *meminī* 'I remember' and *ōdī* 'I hate' (always) have only perfect-stem forms. Note that *meminī* and *ōdī* are present in meaning.

	Indicative	
Perfect	coepī 'I began'	meminī 'I remember'
Future perfect	coeperō 'I shall have begun'	meminerō 'I shall remember'
Pluperfect	coeperam 'I had begun'	memineram 'I remembered'

Perfect	ôdī 'I hate'	
Future perfect	ôderō 'I shall hate'	
Pluperfect	ôderam 'I hated'	
<i>Infinitive, imperative, participles</i>		
Perfect infinitive	coepisse 'to have begun'	meminisse 'to remember'
Future infinitive	coeptū-us a um esse 'to be about to begin'	none
Imperative	none	2nd s. memētō 2nd pl. mementōte } 'remember!'
Perfect participle	coēpt-us a um 'having begun', 'having been begun'	none
Future participle	coeptū-us a um 'about to begin'	none
<i>Subjunctive</i>		
Perfect	coeperim	meminerim ôderim
Pluperfect	coepissem	meminissem ôdissem

NB. *nōscō* 'I get to know' has a perfect form *nōuī*, meaning 'I have got to know' i.e. 'I know'. Thus *nōuerō* (often *nōro*) 'I shall know', *nōueram* (often *nōram*) 'I knew', *nōuisse* (often *nōsse*) 'to know'.

(b) *aiō*

	Present indicative 'I say'	Imperfect indicative 'I said', 'I was saying'
1st s.	áiō	aiēbam
2nd s.	áis	aiēbās etc.
3rd s.	áit	
1st pl.	—	
2nd pl.	—	
3rd pl.	áiunt	

F1-2 Defective verbs, impersonal verbs

(c) *inquam* 'I say'

	Present indicative 'I say'	Future indicative 'I will say'	Imperfect indicative 'I was saying', 'I said'
1st s.	inquam	—	—
2nd s.	inquis	inquiēs	—
3rd s.	inquit	inquiet	inquiēbat
1st pl.	inquimus	—	—
2nd pl.	inquitis	—	—
3rd pl.	inquiunt	—	—

NB. *inquam* is used only to introduce direct speech.

F2 Impersonal verbs

These verbs have only the third person singular in each tense, an infinitive and a gerund:

- oportet* 'it is right for (the accusative) to (infinitive)'
- décet* 'it is fitting for (the accusative) to (infinitive)'
- dédet* 'it is unseemly for (the accusative) to (infinitive)'
- miseret* 'it moves (the accusative) to pity for/at (the genitive)', 'x (acc.) is sorry for y (gen.)'
- paenitet* 'it repents (the accusative) of (the genitive)', 'x (acc.) regrets y (gen.)'
- píget* 'it vexes (the accusative) at (the genitive)', 'x (acc.) is sick of y (gen.)'
- púdet* 'it moves (the accusative) to shame at (the genitive)', 'x (acc.) feels shame at y (gen.)'
- taédet* 'it wearies (the accusative) at (the genitive)', 'x (acc.) is tired of y (gen.)'
- libet* 'it is agreeable to (the dative) to (infinitive)', 'x (dat.) chooses to y (infin.)'
- licet* 'it is permitted to (the dative) to (infinitive)' (also with *ut* + subj.)
- plácet* 'it is pleasing to (the dative) to (infinitive)', 'x (dat.) decides to y (infin.)'

Note the principal parts: they are all regular 2nd conjugation, e.g. *oportet oportere oportuit*. *libet*, *licet* and *plácet* are also commonly used in the passive

perfect, *libitum est* 'it pleased', *licitum est* 'it was allowed', *placitum est* 'it was decided'.

The following impersonal verbs are followed by *ut* + subjunctive or accusative and infinitive constructions:

accidit 'it happens (that)' (*ut* + subj.)
apparet 'it is evident (that)' (*ut* + subj. or acc. + inf.)
constat 'it is agreed (that)' (acc. + inf.)
refert } 'it is important (that)' (acc. + inf. or *ut* + subj.)
interest }

NB. 'It is of importance to me, you etc.' *mea, tua, sua, nostra, uestra refert* or *interest*. Both *refert* and *interest* take a genitive, e.g. *interest omnium* 'it is in the interests of all' (Cicero).

Verbs which do not control an object in the accusative cannot be turned into the passive directly, and have to adopt an impersonal third person singular form, e.g.

itur lit. 'it is being gone', i.e. 'people are going'
uentum est lit. 'it has been come', i.e. 'there has been an arrival', 'people came'
mihi non creditur lit. 'it is not being believed to me', i.e. 'credence is not being given to me'
eis parcébatur lit. 'it was being spared to them', i.e. 'they were being spared', 'clemency was being extended to them'

G Principal parts of irregular verbs

This list contains the principal parts of all irregular verbs met in the course together with a few important additions. Verbs are listed without their prefixes (e.g. for *inuénio* see under *uénio*). There are two exceptions:

- Where a verb is normally found only with a prefix, e.g. *confligo*.
- Where a verb has been met in the course only with a prefix.

The Total Learning Vocabulary (p. 557) contains the principal parts of all compound irregular verbs learned. Note that where a verb has no perfect participle, the future participle appears where that exists.

abicio see *iacio*
accumbō 3 *accubuī* *accubitum* I lie at table
adipiscor 3 dep. *adēptus* I get, gain, acquire

F2, G Principal parts of irregular verbs

adiungō see *iungō*
adiuuō see *iuuō*
agō 3 *ēgi* *actus* (compounds -*igō* 3 -*ēgi* -*actus*) I do, act; drive, lead, direct; spend, pass; discuss
aiō (no inf., perf. or perf. part.) I say
alō 3 *aluī* *altus* I feed, nourish, rear; support, strengthen
aperiō 4 *aperuī* *apertus* I open; reveal
arcessō 3 *arcessuī* *arcessitus* I summon
ardeō 2 *arsī* *arsurus* I burn; am in love
arguō 3 *arguī* *argutus* I charge; make clear, prove
audeō 2 semi-dep. *ausus* I dare
aufferō *aufferre* *abstulī* *ablatus* I take away
augeō 2 *auxī* *auctus* I increase
bibō 3 *bibi* — (*pōtus* used as perf. part; *pōturus* as fut. part.) I drink
cadō 3 *cecidī* *casus* (compounds -*cidō* 3 -*cidī* -*casus*) I fall; die
caedō 3 *cecidī* *caesus* (compounds -*cidō* 3 -*cidī* -*cisus*) I cut (down); flog, beat; kill
cānō 3 *cēcīnī* — (compounds -*cinō*) I sing; play
capio 3/4 *cēpī* *captus* (compounds -*cipiō* 3/4 -*cēpī* -*ceptus*) I take, capture
cārpō 3 *cārpsī* *cārptus* (compounds -*cērpō* 3 -*cērpsī* -*cērptus*) I pluck
caueō 2 *cāuī* *cautus* I am wary
cēdō 3 *cēssī* *cēssum* I yield; go
cernō 3 *creuī* *cretus* I decide; see
cīngō 3 *cīnxī* *cīnctus* I gird; surround
circumsedeō see *sedeō*
claudō 3 *clausī* *clausus* (compounds -*clūdō* 3 -*clūsī* -*clūsus*) I shut
colō 3 *coluī* *cultus* I worship; cultivate, till; inhabit
coepī *coepisse* *coeptus* I have begun
complector 3 dep. *complēxus* I embrace
compleō 2 *complēuī* *complētus* I fill up; accomplish
comprehēdō see *prehēdō*
conciutiō 3/4 *concūssī* *concūssus* (see *quatiō*) I shake violently; disturb, alarm
confiteor see *fateor*
confligō 3 *conflīxī* *conflictus* I fight
confodiō see *fodiō*
conicio see *iacio*
coniungō see *iungō*
considō 3 *consēdī* — I settle down; encamp
consisto 3 *constitī* — (see *sistō*) I stop, stand my ground

cōspiciō 3/4 *cōspēxī cōspēctus* I catch sight of; observe gaze on
cōsulō 3 *cōsulū cōsultus* I consult
cōquō 3 *cōxī cōctus* I cook
crēdō 3 *crēdidī crēditum* I believe (in); entrust
crēpō 1 *crēpuī crēpitus* I rattle
crēscō 3 *crēuī crētum* (= sprung from) I grow (intrans.)
cūbō 3 *cūbuī cūbitum* I lie; sleep; recline at table
cūpiō 3/4 *cupīuī cupītus* I desire, yearn for; want desperately
cūrrō 3 *cucūrrī cūsum* (compounds often have perf. -*cūrrī*) I run
dēfendō 3 *dēfēdī dēfēsus* I defend
dējungor see *jungor*
dēlō 2 *dēluī dēlūtus* I destroy
dēprehēdō see *prehēdō*
dēscēdō see *scāndō*
dēserō see *sērō*
dēspuō see *spūō*
dīcō 3 *dīxī dictus* I speak, say
diffidō see *fidō*
dīscō 3 *dīdicī* — I learn
dīuidō 3 *dīuīsi dīuīsus* I divide
dō 1 *dēdī dātus* (compounds -*dō* 3 -*didī -ditus*) I give
dōceō 2 *dōcuī dōctus* I teach
dūcō 3 *dūxī dūctus* I lead; think, consider
edō ēsse *ēdī* (3rd s. pres. *ēst*) I eat
ēiciō see *iāciō*
ēmō 3 *ēmī ēmptus* (compounds -*imō* 3 -*ēmī -ēmptus*) I buy
ēō īre lī *lītum* I go/come
expēllō see *pēllō*
extinguō 3 *extīnxi extīnctus* I extinguish
fāciō 3/4 *fēcī fāctus* (most compounds -*ficiō* 3/4 -*fēcī -fēctus*) I make;
do
fāllo 3 *fefēllī fālsus* I deceive
fāteor 2 dep. *fāssus* (compounds -*fiteor* 2 dep. -*fēssus*) I
acknowledge
fāueō 2 *fāuī fāutū* I am favourable to
fēriō 4 (*percūssī percūssus*) I strike; beat; kill
fērō *fērre tūlī lātus* I bear; lead
fēruēō 2 *fēruī* (or *fērbuī*) — I boil
fidō 3 semi-dep. *fīsus* I trust
figō 3 *fixī fixus* I fix

fiō fierī fāctus (semi-dep.) I become; am done, am made
findō 3 *fidī fissus* I cleave, split
figō 3 *finxi fictus* I make up, fabricate
flectō 3 *flexī flēxus* I bend
flēō 2 *flēuī flētum* I weep
fluō 3 *fluxī* — I flow
fodiō 3/4 *fodī fōssus* I dig
frangō 3 *frēgī frāctus* (compounds -*fringō* 3 -*frēgī -frāctus*) I break
frūor 3 dep. *frūctus* I enjoy
fugiō 3 4 *fūgī fugitūrus* I escape, run off, flee
fūlgeō 2 *fūlsī* — I shine
fundō 3 *fūdī fūsus* I pour; rout
fūngor 3 dep. *fūctus* I perform, discharge
gaudeō 2 semi-dep. *gauīsus* I am glad, rejoice
gērō 3 *gēssī gītus* I do, conduct
gignō 3 *gēnuī gēnitus* I beget, produce
grādior 3/4 dep. *grēssus* (compounds -*grādior* 3/4 -*grēssus*) I step,
walk, go
haereō 2 *hāsi hāsum* I stick
haūriō 4 *hāuī hāustus* I drain, draw
iāciō 3/4 *iēcī iāctus* (compounds -*iciō* 3/4 -*iēcī -iēctus*) I throw
incēdō 3 *incēdī incēsus* I set fire to; burn
indūlgeō 2 *indūlsī* — I yield, give myself up to
induō 3 *induī indūtus* I put on
inquā no inf. *Inquī* — I say
īstituō see *stātuō*
īstruō see *struō*
īnuādō see *uādō*
īrāscor 3 dep. *īrātus* I grow angry
irrideō see *rīdeō*
iūbeō 2 *iūssī iūssus* I order, command
iūngō 3 *iūnxī iūnctus* I yoke; join
iūuō 1 *iūuī iūutus* I help; delight, please
lābor 3 dep. *lāpsus* I slip, glide, fall down; make a mistake
lacēssō 3 *lacēssuī lacēssītus* I provoke
laēdō 3 *laēsī laēsus* (compounds -*līdō* 3 -*līsī -līsus*) I harm
lauō 1 *lauī lauātus/laūtus/lōtus* I wash
lēgō 3 *lēgī lēctus* (compounds -*ligō* 3 -*lēgī -lēctus*) I read; choose
libet 2 *libuit* or *libitum est* it pleases
licet 3 *licuit* or *licitum est* it is permitted

loquor 3 dep. *locutus* I speak, say
ludō 3 *lūsi lūsum* I play
mālō mālle māluī — I prefer
māneō 2 *mānsi mānsus* I remain, wait
memini meminisse (perfect form) I remember
metuō 3 *metui metutus* I fear
minuō 3 *minui minutus* I lessen
misceō 2 *misui mixtus* or *mixtus* I mix
mittō 3 *misī missus* I send; throw
mordeō 2 *momordi morsus* I bite
moriōr 3/4 dep. *mortuus* I die, am dying
moveō 2 *movi motus* I move; remove; cause, begin
nanciscor 3 dep. *nactus/nactus* I gain
nāscor 3 dep. *natus* I am born
nectō 3 *nexi nexus* I link together
nequeō see *quēō*
nitor 3 dep. *nixus/nixus* I lean on; strive, exert myself
nōlō nōlle nōluī — I refuse, am unwilling
nōscō 3 *nōui nōtus* (compounds: some have perf. part. -*nitus*, e.g. *cognitus* from *cognōscō*) I get to know (perfect tenses = I know etc.)
nūbō 3 *nūpsi nūptus* I marry (of a bride; + dat. of man)
obliviōr 3 dep. *oblitus* I forget
odī odisse ōsus (perfect participle = 'hating') I hate
offendō 3 *offendi offensus* I meet with; offend
orior 4 dep. *ortus* (note pres. *orēris, oritur, orimur*; fut. part. *oriturus*; gerundive *oriundum*; compound *adorior* has 4th conjugation present) I rise; spring from, originate
paciscor 3 dep. *pactus* I make an agreement
pandō 3 *pandi passus* I spread out, extend; throw open, disclose
parcō 3 *peperi (or parsi) parsurus* (compounds -*percō* 3 -*persi*) I spare
pariō 3/4 *peperi partus* (fut. part. *pariturus*; compounds -*periō* 4 -*peri* -*pertus*) I bring forth, bear, produce; obtain, acquire
pātor 3/4 dep. *passus* (compounds -*pētor* 3/4 dep. -*pessus*) I endure, suffer; allow
pello 3 *pepuli pulsus* (compounds -*pellō* 3 -*puli* -*pulsus*) I push, drive back
pēdeō 2 *pependi* — (compounds: perf. -*pēndi*) I hang (intrans.)
percellō 3 *perculi percussus* I strike down; unnerve, scare

pergō 3 *perrēxi perrēctum* (see *regō*) I go on, go ahead, continue
pētō 3 *petiui petitus* I beg; seek; proposition, court; attack, make for; stand for (public office)
piget 2 *piguit* or *pigitum est* it vexes
pingō 3 *pinxi pictus* I paint
plaudō 3 *plausi plausus* (compounds sometimes -*plōdō* 3 -*plōsi* -*plōsus*) I clap
pōnō 3 *pōsi pōitus* I place, position, put; lay aside
pōscō 3 *popōsci* — I demand
possideō see *sēdō*
pōssum pōsse pōtūi — I am able, can; am powerful, have power
pōtō 1 *pōtavi pōtus* ('having drunk' — see *bibō*) I drink
prehēdō 3 *prehēdi prehēsus* I lay hold of
prēmō 3 *prēssi prēssus* (compounds -*primō* 3 -*prēssi* -*prēssus*) I press; oppress
procumbō 3 *procubui procubitum* I collapse
proficiōr 3 dep. *profectus* I set out
prōspiciō 3/4 *prōspēxi prōspēctus* I look out (on); foresee
pūdet 2 *pūduit* or *pūditum est* it shames
quaērō 3 *quaesiui quaesitus* (compounds -*quērō* 3 -*quīsui* -*quīsitus*) I seek, look for; ask
quātiō 3/4 — *quāssus* (compounds -*quātō* 3/4 -*quāssi* -*quāssus*) I shake (trans.)
quēō quire quīui quītus I am able
quēror 3 dep. *quēstus* I complain
quiescō 3 *quieui quīetus* I rest
rādō 3 *rāsi rāsus* I scrape, shave
rāpiō 3/4 *rāpuī rāptus* (compounds -*rīpiō* 3/4 -*rīpuī* -*rēptus*) I snatch, seize, carry away, plunder
redimō see *ēmō*
regō 3 *rēxi rēctus* (compounds -*rigō* 3 -*rēxi* -*rēctus* except *pergō*, *surgō*, q.v.) I keep straight, rule
relinquō 3 *reliqui relictus* I leave, abandon
reor 2 dep. *rātus* I think, believe, suppose
repō 3 *repsi* — I creep
repellō see *pellō*
requiescō see *quiescō*
resistō 3 *restiti* — (see *sistō*) I resist
respiciō 3/4 *respēxi respēctus* I look round (back) at, turn my gaze upon; reflect upon; care for

respondeō 2 *respondī* *responsum* I reply
retrahō see *trahō*
rideō 2 *risī* *risus* I smile, laugh
ruppō 3 *rupī* *ruptus* I break
ruō 3 *ruī* *ritus* (fut. part. *ruiturus*: compounds have perf. part. *-ritus*) I rush; fall
scandō 3 (compounds *-scendō* 3 *-scendī* *-scensus*) I climb
 climb
scindō 3 *scidī* *scissus* I tear, cut
scribō 3 *scripsī* *scriptus* I write
secō 1 *secuī* *sectus* I cut
sedeō 2 *sedī* *sessum* (some compounds *-sideō* 2 *-sedī* *-sessus*) I sit
sentiō 4 *sensī* *sensus* I feel; understand; perceive, realise
sepeliō 4 *sepeliuī* *sepultus* I bury
sequor 3 dep. *secutus* I follow
serō 3 — — (compounds *-serō* 3 *-seruī* *-sertus*) I put in rows
sido 3 *sidi* — (compounds have perf. and perf. part. of *sedeō*: *-sedī* *-sessus*) I settle (intrans.)
sinō 3 *siuī* *situs* (compounds drop *-u-* in perf., e.g. *desinō* 3 *desiī*) I allow
sisto 3 *steti* (or *steti*) *status* (compounds all intransitive, with no perf. part.: cf. *consisto*, *resisto*) I set, stay
soleō 2 semi-dep. *solutus* I am accustomed, am used
soluō 3 *soluī* *solutus* I release, undo; pay
spargō 3 *sparsi* *sparsus* (compounds *-spergō* 3 *-spersi* *-spersus*) I scatter, sprinkle
spernō 3 *spreuī* *spretus* I reject, despise
spuo 3 *spui* *sputum* I spit
statuō 3 *statui* *statutus* (compounds *-stātuō* 3 *-statui* *-stitutus*) I set up, settle
sternō 3 *strāuī* *stratus* I throw on the ground, strew
stō 1 *steti* *statum* (most compounds *-stō* 3 *-stui* with fut. part. *-staturus*, but no perf. part.) I stand
stringō 3 *strinxī* *strictus* I draw; strip; graze
struō 3 *struxī* *structus* I heap up, build
suadeō 2 *suasi* *suasum* I recommend
suascō 3 *suēuī* *suetus* I accustom myself
sum esse fui futurus I am
sūmō 3 *sūmpsī* *sūmptus* I take; consume
surgō 3 *surrexi* *surrectum* (see *regō*) I rise, arise, get up

taedet 2 *taesum est* it wearies
tangō 3 *tēgī* *tactus* (compounds *-tingō* 3 *-tigī* *-tactus*) I touch, lay hands on
tēgō 3 *tēxī* *tectus* I cover
tēmnō 3 *-tēmpsi* *-tēptus* (perf. and perf. part. in compounds only) I despise
tēndō 3 *tētēndī* *tētus* (or *tēnsus*) (compounds *-tēndo* 3 *-tēndī* *-tētus*) I stretch (out); offer; direct; travel; strive, fight
tēneō 2 *tēnuī* *tētus* (compounds *-tineō* 2 *tīnuī* *-tētus*) I hold
tērō 3 *trīuī* *tritrus* I rub
tollō 3 *sustulī* *sublātus* I lift, remove, take away
tōndeō 2 *totōndī* *tōnsus* I shear
trahō 3 *trāxī* *tractus* I drag
tribuō 3 *tribui* *tributus* I assign, grant
tuor 2 dep. *tuitus* (or *tutus*) I look after, protect; look at
tūndō 3 *tūtudī* *tūsus* (or *tūnsus*) (compounds *-tūndō* 3 *-tudi* *-tūsus*/*-tūnsus*) I beat, strike, pound
uādō 3 — — (compounds *-uādō* 3 *-uāsi* *-uāsus*) I go
uēhō 3 *uēxī* *uēctus* I carry
uēllō 3 *uēllī* (or *uūlsī*) *uūlsus* I pull, pluck
uēniō 4 *uēnī* *uēntum* I come, arrive
uērtō 3 *uērtī* *uērsus* I turn (trans.)
uētō 1 *uētū* *uētus* I forbid
uideō 2 *uidī* *uisus* I see (passive: I seem)
uīnciō 4 *uīnxī* *uīctus* I bind
uīncō 3 *uīcī* *uīctus* I conquer
uīsō 3 *uīsī* — I visit
uīuō 3 *uīxī* *uīctum* I am alive, live
ulcīscor 3 dep. *ultus* I avenge myself on, avenge
uolō *uēlle* *uolui* — I wish, want
uoluō 3 *uoluī* *uolūtus* I roll, turn over (trans.)
ūrō 3 *ūssi* *ustus* I burn
utor 3 dep. *usus* I use, make use of; adopt

H-I Nouns, pronominal nouns/adjectives

H1 Nouns: first declension

sēru-a ae 1f. 'slave-woman'

	s.	pl.
nom.	sērua	sēruae
acc.	sēruam	sēruās
gen.	sēruae (seruāi)	seruārum
dat.	sēruae	sēruīs
abl.	sēruā	sēruīs

Notes

- 1 1st decl. nouns are feminine except for e.g. *agricola* 'farmer', *nauta* 'sailor' and other males.
- 2 *fīlia* 'daughter' and *dēa* 'goddess' have dat./abl. pl. in *-ābus*, i.e. *fīliābus*, *dēābus* (to avoid confusion with *fīlius* and *dēus*).

H2 Nouns: second declension

(a) *sēru-us* ī 2m. 'male slave'

	s.	pl.
nom.	sēruus	sēruī
acc.	sēruum	sēruōs
gen.	sēruī	seruōrum
dat.	sēruō	sēruīs
abl.	sēruō	sēruīs

Notes

- 1 Virtually all 2nd decl. nouns are masculine. An exception is *hūm-us* ī f. 'ground'.
- 2 Originally, this noun declined *sēru-os sēru-om* forms often found in inscriptions and early Latin. The gen. pl. sometimes ends in plain *-um* rather than *-ōrum* (cf. H2(e) *deus*).

H1-2 Nouns

(b) *pūer* *pūer-ī* 2m. 'boy'

	s.	pl.
nom.	pūer	pūerī
acc.	pūerum	pūerōs
gen.	pūerī	puerōrum
dat.	pūerō	pūerīs
abl.	pūerō	pueris

(c) *cūlter* *cūlter-ī* 2m. 'knife'

	s.	pl.
nom.	cūlter	cūltri
acc.	cūltrum	cūltrōs
gen.	cūltri	cultrōrum
dat.	cūltrō	cūltriīs
abl.	cūltrō	cūltriīs

(d) *uir* *uir-ī* 2m. 'man'

	s.	pl.
nom.	uir	uirī
acc.	uirum	uirōs
gen.	uirī	uirōrum (uirum - cf. <i>dēus</i>)
dat.	uirō	uirīs
abl.	uirō	uirīs

(e) *dē-us* ī 2m. 'god'

	s.	pl.
nom.	dēus	dī (dēī, dī)
acc.	dēum	dēōs
gen.	dēī	deōrum (dēum)
dat.	dēō	dīs
abl.	dēō	dīs

(f) (Neuter) *sōmni-um* ī 2n. 'dream'

	s.	pl.
nom.	sōmniūm	sōmnia
acc.	sōmniūm	sōmnia
gen.	sōmniī (cf. sōmniī)	sōmniōrum
dat.	sōmniō	sōmniīs
abl.	sōmniō	sōmniīs

H3 Nouns: third declension

(a) (Consonant stem): *fūr fūr-is* 3m. 'thief'

	s.	pl.
nom.	fūr	fūres
acc.	fūrem	fūrēs
gen.	fūris	fūrum
dat.	fūrī	fūribus
abl.	fūre	fūribus

NB. Monosyllables with *two* consonants at the end of the stem have genitive plural in *-ium*, e.g. *mōns mōnt-is* 'mountain', gen. pl. *mōntium*. Such nouns are in fact *i*-stem.

(b) (*i*-stem): *aedis aed-is* 3f. 'temple'; pl. 'temples' or 'house'

	s.	pl.
nom.	aedis	aedes
acc.	aedem	aedīs (aédēs)
gen.	aedis	aedium
dat.	aedī	aedibus
abl.	aede (aédī)	aedibus

NB. Historically, the *-i-* was wholly dominant, cf. the declension of *tūrris* 'tower': *tūrris tūrrim tūrris tūrrī tūrrī*

(c) (Neuter consonant stem) *nōmen nōmīn-is* 3n. 'name'

	s.	pl.
nom.	nōmen	nōmina
acc.	nōmen	nōmina
gen.	nōminis	nōminum
dat.	nōminī	nōminibus
abl.	nōmine	nōminibus

H3 Nouns

(d) (Neuter consonant stem) *onus oner-is* 3n. 'load, burden'

	s.	pl.
nom.	onus	ónera
acc.	onus	ónera
gen.	oneris	ónerum
dat.	ónerī	onéribus
abl.	ónere	onéribus

NB. The original stem was *onos-* alternating with *ones-*. The final *-o-* became *-u-* in nom. s. (*onus*), and the *-s-* became *-r-* between vowels, i.e. *onesis* → *óneris* (a common feature of Latin).

(e) (Neuter *i*-stem) nouns in *-al -ar -re* and *-le*: *māre mar-is* 3n. 'sea'

	s.	pl.
nom.	māre	māria
acc.	māre	māria
gen.	māris	mārium (mārum is found)
dat.	mārī	māribus
abl.	mārī (māre is found)	māribus

Cf. *ánimal* 'animal', *cálcas* 'spur' and *cubīle* 'couch'.

(f) Four irregular 3rd declension nouns: *Iuppiter, bōs, nīs, nēmo**Iuppiter Iou-is* 3m. 'Jupiter'

nom.	Iuppiter
acc.	Iouem
gen.	Iouis
dat.	Iouī
abl.	Ioue

bōs bou-is 3m. 'ox', 3f. 'cow'.

	s.	pl.
nom.	bos	bouēs
acc.	bouem	bouēs
gen.	bouis	boum
dat.	bouī	bōbus (būbus)
abl.	boue	bōbus (būbus)

uīs 3f. (s.) 'force', (pl.) 'strength'

	s.	pl.
nom.	<i>uīs</i>	<i>uīrēs</i>
acc.	<i>uim</i>	<i>uīrēs</i>
gen.	—	<i>uirium</i>
dat.	—	<i>uīribus</i>
abl.	<i>ui</i>	<i>uiribus</i>

nēmo 3 m/f 'no one' 'none', 'no' (pronoun)

	s.
nom.	<i>nēmo</i>
acc.	<i>nēmīnem</i>
gen.	<i>nūllius</i>
dat.	<i>nēmīnī</i>
abl.	<i>nūllō</i>

Notes

- 1 Consonant- and *i*-stem nouns can be masculine, feminine or neuter. The following clues can help:

Masculine: nouns ending in *-ōs*, *-ō*, *-or*, *-er* (main exceptions: *dōs* 'dowry', f.; *ōs* *ōris* 'mouth', n.; *arbor* 'tree', f.)

Feminine: nouns ending in *-x*, *-ās*, *-dō*, *-gō*, *-iō*, *-ūs* (if polysyllabic), *-us* (main exceptions: *dux* 'leader', m.; *fās* 'right', n.; *ōrdō* 'rank', m.; *mōns* 'mountain', *pōns* 'bridge', *fōns* 'fountain'; *dēns* 'tooth'; all m.)

Neuter: nouns ending in *-us*, *-ūs* (if monosyllabic), *-en*, *-al*, *-ar*, *-re*, *-le*

- 2 Finding the nominative can be difficult with such nouns. Note the following clues:

- Gen. s. ending in *-cis*, *-gis*: nominative in *-x* (e.g. *pācis* → *pāx*)
- Gen. s. ending in *-tis*, *-dis*: nominative in *-s* (e.g. *uirtūtis* → *uirtūs*)
- Gen. s. ending in *-pis*: nominative in *-ps* (e.g. *prīncipis* → *prīnceps*)
- Gen. s. ending in *-ris*: nominative in *-s*, *-r* (e.g. *tēmporis* → *tēmpus*, *mātris* → *māter*)
- Gen. s. ending in *-lis*: nominative in *-l* (e.g. *sōlis* → *sōl*)

- 3 As a general rule (a) nouns with the same number of syllables in the nominative singular as in the genitive singular (parisyllabic) have genitive plurals in *-um*, e.g. *ciuis*, gen. s. *cīuis*, gen. pl. *cīuium*. These are *i*-stem. (b) nouns with more syllables in the genitive singular than in the

H3-4 Nouns

nominative (imparisyllabic) have gen. pl. in *-um*, e.g. *uirtūs*, gen. s. *uirtūtis*, gen. pl. *uirtūum*. These are consonant stem.

The major exceptions to (a) are *cānis* *cān-is* m. or f. 'dog', *iūuenis* *iūuen-is* m. 'young man', *sénex* *sen-is* m. 'old man', *sēdēs* *sēd-is* f. 'abode', *pater* *patr-is* m. 'father', *māter* *mātr-is* f. 'mother', *frāter* *fratr-is* m. 'brother', *accipiter* *accipitr-is* m. 'hawk', all of which have gen. pl. in *-um*. The rule for major exceptions to (b) is given in the note under *fur*.

H4 Nouns: fourth declension

(a) *mān-us ūs* 4f. 'hand'

	s.	pl.
nom.	<i>mānus</i>	<i>mānūs</i>
acc.	<i>mānum</i>	<i>mānūs</i>
gen.	<i>mānūs</i>	<i>mānuum</i>
dat.	<i>mānuī</i>	<i>mānibus</i>
abl.	<i>mānū</i>	<i>mānibus</i>

(mānubus)

Notes

1 Most 4th decl. nouns are *neuter*.

2 The gen. s. in *-ī* is found in early Latin.

(b) (Neuter) *cōrn-ū ūs* 4n. 'horn', 'wing of army'

	s.	pl.
nom.	<i>cōrnū</i>	<i>cōrnua</i>
acc.	<i>cōrnū</i>	<i>cōrnua</i>
gen.	<i>cōrnūs</i>	<i>cōrnuum</i>
dat.	<i>cōrnū</i>	<i>cōrnibus</i>
abl.	<i>cōrnū</i>	<i>cōrnibus</i>

(c) (Irregular) *dōmus* 4f. 'house'

	s.	pl.
nom.	<i>dōmus</i>	<i>dōmūs</i>
acc.	<i>domum</i>	<i>domus</i> or <i>domōs</i>
gen.	<i>dōmūs</i> or <i>dōmī</i>	<i>dōmōrum</i> or <i>dōmuum</i>
dat.	<i>domui</i> or <i>domō</i>	<i>domibus</i>
abl.	<i>domō</i>	<i>domibus</i>

H5 Nouns: fifth declension

rēs rē-ī 5f. 'thing', 'matter', 'business', 'affair'

	<i>s.</i>	<i>pl</i>
<i>nom.</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>acc.</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>res</i>
<i>gen.</i>	<i>rēi (rē)</i>	<i>rērum</i>
<i>dat.</i>	<i>rēi (rē)</i>	<i>rēbus</i>
<i>abl.</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>

NB. 5th decl. nouns are mostly feminine, but *diēs* 'day' is usually m. (f. when it means the goddess 'Diēs', or a special day) and its compound *merīdiēs* 'midday', 'south' is always m.

H6 Greek declensions

Roman poets often use the Greek forms of Greek nouns, especially for names. Mostly only nom., acc. and gen. s., nom. and acc. pl. are found. The other cases have the normal Latin forms. Here are some examples.

1st declension *Aenē-ās* *ae* m. 'Aeneas', *Priamid-ēs* *ae* m. 'son of Priam', *Eurýdic-ē* *ēs* f. 'Eurydice'

<i>nom.</i>	Aenĕ-ās	Priāmid-ēs	Eurýdic-ē
<i>voc.</i>	Aenĕ-ā	Priāmid-ē	Eurýdic-ē
<i>acc.</i>	Aenĕ-ān	Priāmid-ēn	Eurýdic-ēn
<i>gen.</i>	Aenĕ-ac	Priāmid-ac	Eurýdic-ēs
<i>dat.</i>	Aenĕ-ac	Priāmid-ac	Eurýdic-ac
<i>abl.</i>	Aenĕ-ā	Priāmid-ē (-ā)	Eurýdic-ē

Notes

- 1 The pl. of such nouns is as for *séru-a*, except that nouns in *-dēs* have gen. pl. in *-um*, e.g. *Aenéad-um* 'of the followers of Aeneas'.
- 2 The Latin form of names like *Eurýdicē* is often found e.g. *Cýbel-a* *Cýbel-am* etc. 'Cybele'.

H5-6, 11 *Pronominal nouns/adjectives*

2nd declension *Dēl-os* ī f. 'Delos', *Pēli-on* ī n. 'Pelion'

<i>nem</i>	De-os	Pēl-on
<i>acc</i>	Dēl-on	Pei-on
<i>gen</i>	De-l-ī	Pei-l-ī
<i>dat. labl</i>	De-l-o	Pei-o

3rd declension *crātēr crātēr-os/crātēr-is* m. 'mixing-bowl'

	s	pl
<i>nom / voc.</i>	cratēr	cratēres
<i>a c.</i>	crāter-a/-em	crater as
<i>gen.</i>	crater-os/-is	crātērum
<i>dat.</i>	cratēri	cratēribus
<i>abl</i>	crātēre	crateribus

NB. Other 3rd declension forms are e.g. 'hero' m.: nom. *hērōs*, acc. *hērō-a*; 'Orpheus' m.: nom. *Órpheus*, voc. *Órpheu*, acc. *Órpea*, gen. *Órpeos*; 'Paris' m.: nom. *Páris*, voc. *Pári*, acc. *Párin/Párida*, gen. *Páridos*; 'Socrates' m.: nom. *Sōcratēs*, voc. *Sōcratē*, acc. *Sōcratem*

11 Personal pronouns

(a) *ego* 'I', *tū* 'you'

			<i>pl.</i>		<i>s.</i>	
<i>pl</i>						
<i>nom.</i>	ēgo	'I'	nōs	'we'	tū	'you'
<i>acc.</i>	me		nos		te	
<i>gen.</i>	mēi		nōstrum/nōstrī		tūi	
<i>dat.</i>	mīhi (mī)		nōbīs		tibi	
<i>abl.</i>	mē		nōbīs		tē	

(b) Reflexive pronoun *sē* 'himself', 'herself', 'itself', 'themselves'

s./pl.
nom. —
acc. sē (sēsē) 'himself', 'herself', 'itself', 'themselves'
gen. sūi
dat. sibi
abl. sē (sēsē)

Notes

1 Possessive adjectives based on personal pronouns are

mē-us a um 'my', 'mine' } declining like *lōng-us a um* J1(a) (but
tū-us a um 'your', 'yours' } note *mī* voc. s. m. of *mē-us*)
nō-ster nō-str-a um 'our', 'ours' } declining like *pūlcher pūlchr-a*
nē-ster nē-str-a um 'your', 'yours' } *um* J1(b)
quī-us a um 'his', 'hers', 'its', 'theirs' (reflexive – i.e. the 'he', 'she',
 'it', 'them' being referred to are the same person as the subject
 of the clause in which they stand, but see 'reflexives' in the
Index of Grammar for five important exceptions.)

These usually follow their noun (unless emphatic). But *mī* (vocative s of *mē-us*) usually precedes

2 *cum* 'with' is linked with the ablative on the pattern *mēcum*, *tēcum*, *sēcum* etc

12 Demonstrative pronouns

(a) *is ea id* 'that', 'those', 'that person', 'he', 'she', 'it'

	s.			pl		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	is	ea	id	ei (ii)	ae	ea
acc.	eum	eam	id	eos	eas	ea
gen.	← eius →			eorum	eārum	eōrum
dat.	← ei →			← eis (iis) →		
abl.	eō	eā	eō	← eis (iis) →		

Compare the definitive pronoun *īdem ēadem idem* 'the same':

	s.			pl		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	īdem	ēadem	idem	ēīdem (īdem)	eaēdem	ēadem
acc.	eūdem	eādem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	ēadem
gen.	← eīusdem →			eōrūdem	eārūdem	eōrūdem
dat.	← eīdem →			← eīdem (īdem) →		
abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	← eīdem (īdem) →		

11-2 Pronominal nouns/adjectives

(b) *hic haec hoc* 'this', 'this person', 'this thing', 'the latter', pl. 'these'

	s.			pl		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
gen.	← huius →			hōrum	hārum	hōrum
dat.	← huic →			← his →		
abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	← his →		

NB. Originally *hi-ce*, *hae-ce*, *hod-ce* etc. The strengthened forms *huiusce*, *hōsce*, *hāsce*, and *hīsce* are reasonably common.

(c) *ille illa illud* 'that', 'that person', 'that thing' 'the former', pl. 'those'

	s.			pl		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
gen.	← illius →			illōrum	illārum	illōrum
dat.	← illi →			← illis →		
abl.	illō	illā	illō	← illis →		

(d) *iste ista istud* 'that (of yours)'

	s.			pl		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
acc.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
gen.	← istius →			istōrum	istārum	istōrum
dat.	← isti →			← istis →		
abl.	istō	istā	istō	← istis →		

(e) *ipse ipsa ipsum* 'very', 'actual', 'self'

	s.			pl		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
gen.	← ipsius →			ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
dat.	← ipsi →			← ipsis →		
abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	← ipsis →		

I3 Relative pronoun

quī quae quod 'who', 'which', 'what'

	s.			pl		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
gen.	← cūius →			quōrum	quārum	quōrum
dat.	← cui →			← quibus (quīs) →		
abl.	quō	quā	quō	← quibus (quīs) →		

Notes

- 1 *quōcum*, *quācum*, *quibuscum* 'with whom/which'
- 2 *quī* as an old abl. form is found mostly in the word *quicum* 'with whom', where it is m. f. or n. s., and even occasionally pl

I4 Interrogative (indefinite) pronoun/adjective

quis/quī, quae/quis, quid/quod 'who?', 'which?', 'what?'

	s.			pl		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	pron. quis	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae (qua)
	adj. quī	quae (qua)	quod			
acc.	pron. quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae (qua)
	adj. } quem	quam	quod			
gen.	← cūius →			quōrum	quārum	quōrum
dat.	← cui →			← quibus (quīs) →		
abl.	quō	quā	quō	← quibus (quīs) →		

Notes

- 1 After *sī*, *nē*, *nisi*, *num*, the meaning of *quis* (Indefinite) is 'any', 'anyone', and nom. s. f. and n. pl. nom./acc. are always *qua*
- 2 *quīs* is quite often used for *quī* (adj.) e.g. *quīs . . . puer?* 'What boy?' (Horace) Cf. *aliquis* I5(b) Note 2 below.
- 3 *quī*, an old ablative form, as an interrogative means 'how?', e.g. *quī fit*, *Maecēnas?* 'How does it come about, Maecenas?' (Horace).

I3-5 Pronominal nouns/adjectives

I5 Compound pronouns

(a) *quīdam quaedam quoddam* 'a', 'a certain'

	s.		
	m.	f.	n.
nom.	quīdam	quādam	quoddam (quiddam)
acc.	quēdam	quādam	quoddam (quiddam)
gen.	← cuiusdam →		
dat.	← cūdam →		
abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

	pl		
	m.	f.	n.
nom.	quīdam	quādam	quādam
acc.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quādam
gen.	quōrūdam	quārūdam	quōrūdam
dat.	← quibusdam →		
abl.	← quibusdam →		

(b) *aliquis aliqua aliquid* 'someone' and *aliquī aliqua aliquid* 'some'

	<i>aliquis</i> 'someone'			<i>aliquī</i> 'some' (adj.)		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	aliquis	aliqua	aliquid	aliquī	aliqua	aliquid
acc.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid	aliquam	aliquam	aliquid
gen.	← alicūius →			← alicūius →		
dat.	← alicui →			← alicui →		
abl.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

Notes

- 1 The pl. is the same as for *ali-* + *quī* (I4 above), except that the n. pl. is *aliqua*.
- 2 *aliquis* is quite often used for *aliquī* (adj.) e.g. *non igitur aliquis dolor in corpore est* 'Surely there isn't any pain in your body?' (Cicero). Cf. *quis*, I4 Note 2

(c) Other compound pronouns

- (i)
- quisque quaeque quodque*
- 'each and every', 'everyone'.

quisque is very often used to mean 'every(one)', e.g. *sua cuique nationi religio est, nostra nobis* 'every nation has its own religion, and we have ours' (Cicero). Note *optimus quisque* 'all the best men' and *quotus quisque* 'how few!'.

- (ii)
- quisquam quisquam quicquam*
- 'anyone', 'any'.

quisquam is normally found in negative contexts (or in questions where a negative is implied, e.g. *quid quisquam suspicari aliud potest?* 'what else can anyone suspect?' (Cicero)).

- (iii)
- quisquis*
- 'whoever'
- quidquid*
- or
- quicquid*
- 'whatever'.
- quicumque quaecumque quodcumque*
- 'whoever', 'whatever'.

quisquis and *quicumque* are used to introduce relative clauses; e.g. *ferreus est, heu, heu, quisquis in urbe manet* 'anyone who stays in Rome (oh dear, oh dear) is made of iron' (Tibullus). *di tibi dent quaecumque optes* 'may the gods give you whatever you want' (Plautus).

- (iv)
- ecquis*
- 'anyone?' adj.
- ecqui ecqua/ecquae ecquod*
- 'any?'

ecquis introduces questions and means 'Is there anyone (who)?', e.g. *heus, ecquis hic est?* 'Hey, is there anyone here?' (Plautus).

NB. Compounds of *quis* decline like *quis*. See above I4. Compounds of *qui* decline like *qui*. See above I3. But not all forms are found in all of these pronoun/adjectives.

(b) *null-us a um* 'no(one)', 'not any', 'no man'

	s.			pl.		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	nūllus	nūlla	nūllum	nūllī	nūllae	nūlla
acc.	nūllum	nūllam	nūllum	nūllōs	nūllās	nūlla
gen.	← nūllius →			nūllōrum	nūllārum	nūllōrum
dat.	← nūllī →			← nūllīs →		
abl.	nūllō	nūllā	nūllō	← nūllīs →		

(c) *alter alter-a alter-um* 'one (of two)', 'the one . . . the other'

	s.			pl.		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	alter	altera	alterum	alterī	alterae	altera
acc.	alterum	alteram	alterum	alterōs	alterās	altera
gen.	← alterius →			alterōrum	alterārum	alterōrum
dat.	← alterī →			← alterīs →		
abl.	alterō	alterā	alterō	← alterīs →		

(d) *uterque* 'both', 'each (of two)'

	s.			pl.		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	uterque	utraqe	utrūque	utrīque	utraeque	utraqe
acc.	utrūque	utrāmque	utrūque	utrōsque	utrāsque	utraqe
gen.	← utrīusque →			utrōrumque	utrārumque	utrōrumque
dat.	← utrīque →			← utrīsque →		
abl.	utrōque	utrāque	utrōque	← utrīsque →		

NB. The following special pronoun/adjectives also decline like *long-us a um* elsewhere, but have gen. s. in *-ius* and dat. s. in *-ī*: *un-us a um* 'one', *sol-us a um* 'alone', *tot-us a um* 'the whole', *ull-us a um* 'any', *uter utr-a um* 'which of two?', 'whichever of two', *neuter neutr-a um* 'neither'.

17 Numerals

Cardinal

Ordinal¹

	m.	f.	n.		
1 I	ūnus	ūna	ūnum ²	1st	primus (prior)
2 II	nom. duo	duae	duo	2nd	secundus (alter)
	acc. duōs/duo	duīs	duo		
	gen. duōrum	duarum	duorum		
	dat./abl. duōbus	duabus	duobus		

16 Special pronoun-adjectives

(a) *alius alia aliud* 'other', 'another'

	s.			pl.		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	alius	alia	aliud	alii	aliae	alia
acc.	aliū	aliā	aliud	alios	alias	alia
gen.	← alius →			aliorum	aliarum	aliorum
dat.	← aliī →			← aliīs →		
abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō	← aliīs →		

NB. Genitive and dative s. are not common, and occasionally the 2nd declension forms (gen. s. m./n. *aliī* f. *aliae*; dat. s. m. *aliō* f. *aliae*) are found. *alterius* (gen. s. of *alter*) is also used for gen. s.

		m./f.	n.		
3	III	nom. trēs	trīa	3rd	tērtius
		acc. trēs (trīs)	trīa		
		gen. ←trīum→			
		dat. ←tribus→			
		abl. ←tribus→			
4	IV/IIII	quāttuor		4th	quārtus
5	V	quīnque		5th	quīntus
6	VI	sex		6th	sēxtus
7	VII	sēptem		7th	sēptimus
8	VIII	ōctō		8th	octāuus
9	IX/VIII	nōuem		9th	nōnus
10	X	dēcem		10th	dēcimus
11	XI	ūndecim		11th	ūndēcimus
12	XII	duōdecim		12th	duodēcimus
13	XIII	trēdecim		13th	tērtius dēcimus
14	XIV	quattuōrdecim		14th	quārtus dēcimus
15	XV	quīndecim		15th	quīntus dēcimus
16	XVI	sēdecim		16th	sēxtus dēcimus
17	XVII	septēdecim		17th	sēptimus dēcimus
18	XVIII	duodēuigintī		18th	duodēuicēsimus
19	XIX	ūndēuigintī		19th	ūndēuicēsimus
20	XX	uigintī		20th	uicēsimus
30	XXX	trīgintā		30th	tricēsimas
40	XL	quādrāgintā		40th	quadragēsimus
50	L	quīnquāgintā		50th	quīnquāgēsimus
60	LX	sexāgintā		60th	sexāgēsimus
70	LXX	septuāgintā		70th	septuāgēsimus
80	LXXX	octōgintā		80th	octōgēsimus
90	XC	nōnāgintā		90th	nōnāgēsimus
100	C	cēntum		100th	centēsimus
200	CC	ducentī-ī ae a (like pl. of long-us)		200th	ducentēsimus
300	CCC	trecentī-ī ae a		300th	trēcentēsimus
500	D	quīngentī-ī ae a		500th	quīngentēsimus
1,000	M	mīlle (indecl. adj.) pl. mīlia gen. mīlium dat/abl. mīlibus (see Note 1)		1,000th	millēsimus

¹ These decline like *long-us a um*

² Like *tōtus* i.e. gen. s. *ūnūs*, dat. s. *ūnī*, pl. *ūnī*, *ūnae*, *ūna*, like pl. of *longus* (16(d) Note).

Notes

- 1 Normally, *mīlle* is used as an adjective and *mīlia* as a noun, e.g.

mīlle mīlitēs = one thousand soldiers

duo mīlia mīlitum = two thousand(s) (of) soldiers

trīa mīlia mīlitum = three thousand(s) (of) soldiers etc.

17.J Adjectives, adverbs

- 2 Latin has three other sets of numerals. One answers the question 'How many each?', e.g. *singulī-ī ae a* 'one each', then *-nī*. e.g. *bīnī-ī ae a* 'two each' (distributive adjectives). A second answers the question 'How many times?', e.g. *sēmel* 'once', *bis* 'twice', *ter* 'three times', *quāter*, then *-iēns*, e.g. *mīliēns* 'a thousand times' (numeral adverbs). A third answers the question 'Of how many parts?', e.g. *trīplex trīplic-is* 'threefold' (multiplicative adjectives).
- 3 The ending *-ēsimus* was, after the Augustan period, often written *-ēsīmus*.

J-K Adjectives, adverbs and prepositions

J Introduction

- (a) Adjectives agree with the word they describe in *gender* (m., f. or n.), *case* (nom., acc., gen., dat., abl.) and *number* (s. or pl.). Thus an adjective which is genitive plural masculine can only agree with a noun which is genitive plural masculine.
- (b) Adjectives in agreement with no nouns will take their meaning from context. They will usually refer to a person or thing, e.g.

bōnī (nom. pl. m.) 'good men'.

bōnae (nom. pl. f.) 'good women'.

bōna (nom. pl. n.) 'good things' 'goods'.

fugientēs (nom. pl. m. or f.) 'people as they are fleeing'

rogantī (dat. s. m. or f.) 'to the person asking'.

mors mālum est 'death is a bad thing'.

- (c) Some adjectives are often used predicatively. That is, instead of being best translated as adjectives (e.g. *uir bōnus* 'a good man'), they should be translated as adverbs (e.g. *uir laētus abiit* 'the man went away happily') or nouns (e.g. *sūmmō mōnte* 'at the top of the mountain'). The words most commonly used thus include those denoting position (e.g. *sūmmus*, *mēdius*, *prōximus*), quantity or order (e.g. *prīmus*, *sōlus*, *tōtus*), and attitude of mind or manner (e.g. *laētus* 'happily', *inuītus* 'unwillingly').

- (d) Some words commonly double as nouns or adjectives, e.g. *hic*, *ille*, *is* (etc.). Note that *uetus* 'old', 'old man', *pauper* 'poor', 'poor man', *dives* 'rich', 'rich man' are like this. They decline like third declension nouns, but they often perform as adjectives, e.g.

ubi pauper est? 'where is the poor man?'
cum diuite senatore ambulat 'he walks with the rich senator'

J1 Adjectives: first/second declension

(a) *long-us a um* 'long'

	s.			pl.		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	longus	longa	longum	longi	longae	longa
acc.	longum	longam	longum	longos	longas	longa
gen.	longi	longae	longi	longorum	longarum	longorum
dat.	longo	longae	longo	longis	longis	longis
abl.	longo	longa	longo	longis	longis	longis

(b) *pulcher pulchr-a um* 'beautiful', 'handsome'

	s.			pl.		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum	pulchri	pulchrae	pulchra
acc.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum	pulchros	pulchras	pulchra
gen.	pulchri	pulchrae	pulchri	pulchrorum	pulchrarum	pulchrorum
dat.	pulchro	pulchrae	pulchro	← pulchris →		
abl.	pulchro	pulchra	pulchro	← pulchris →		

(c) *miser miser-a miser-um* 'unhappy'

	s.			pl.		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	miser	miserā	miserum	miseri	miserāe	miserā
acc.	miserum	miseram	miserum	miseros	miserās	miserā
gen.	miseri	miserāe	miseri	miserorum	miserarum	miserorum
dat.	miserō	miserāe	miserō	← miseris →		
abl.	miserō	miserā	miserō	← miseris →		

J1-2 Adjectives, adverbs

J2 Adjectives: third declension

(a) *omnis omne* 'all', 'every'

	s.		pl.	
	m./f.	n.	m./f.	n.
nom.	omnis	omne	omnes	omnia
acc.	omnem	omne	omnes (omnes)	omnia
gen.	← omnis →		← omnium →	
dat.	← omni →		← omnibus →	
abl.	← omni →		← omnibus →	

(b) *ingens ingens (ingent-)* 'huge'

	s.		pl.	
	m./f.	n.	m./f.	n.
nom.	ingens	ingens	ingentes	ingentia
acc.	ingentem	ingens	ingentis (ingentes)	ingentia
gen.	← ingentis →		← ingentium →	
dat.	← ingenti →		← ingentibus →	
abl.	← ingenti →		← ingentibus →	

(c) *celer celer-is celer-e* 'swift', 'fast'

	s.			pl.	
	m.	f.	n.	m./f.	n.
nom.	celer	celeris	celere	celerēs	celéria
acc.	celerem	celerem	celere	celeris (celerēs)	celéria
gen.	← celeris →			← celerium →	
dat.	← celeri →			← celeribus →	
abl.	← celeri →			← celeribus →	

(d) *acer acris acre* 'keen', 'sharp'

	s.			pl.	
	m.	f.	n.	m./f.	n.
nom.	acer	acris	acre	acrēs	acria
acc.	acrem	acrem	acre	acris (acres)	acria
gen.	← acris →			← acrium →	
dat.	← acri →			← acribus →	
abl.	← acri →			← acribus →	

NB. All these are *i*-stems.

(e) Consonant-stem adjectives: *dīues* and *paúper*

	s.	n.	pl.	
	m/f.		m/f.	n.
nom.	dīues (dīs)	dīues (dīte)	dīuitēs (dītēs)	dīuita (dītia)
acc.	dīuitem (dītem)	dīues (dīte)	dīuites (dītēs)	dīuita (dītia)
gen.	←dīuitis (dītis)→		←dīuitum (dītium)→	
dat.	←dīuitī (dītī)→		←dīuitibus (dītibus)→	
abl.	←dīuite (dītī)→		←dīuitibus (dītibus)→	

	s.	n.	pl.	
	m/f.		m/f.	n.
nom.	paúper	paúper	paúperēs	paúpera
acc.	paúperem	paúper	paúperēs	paúpera
gen.	←paúperis→		←paúperum→	
dat.	←paúperī→		←paúperibus→	
abl.	←paúpere→		←paúperibus→	

Notes

- 1 *dīues* has also a set of *i*-stem endings (in brackets), which are commonly used. Both *dīues* and *paúper* are often used as nouns. See 47.
- 2 Other consonant-stem adjectives are *caelebs caelib-is* 'unmarried', *cómpos cómpot-is* 'possessing', *ínops ínop-is* 'poor' (abl. s. -ī), *mémor mémor-is* 'mindful' (abl. s. -ī), *párticeps partícip-is* 'sharing', *sóspes sóspit-is* 'safe', *supérstes supérstit-is* 'surviving', *uétus uéter-is* 'old'.

J3 Comparative and superlative adjectives

These are formed as follows:

Comparatives ('more —', 'rather —', 'quite —'): gen. s. stem + *-ior*, (neuter *-ius*)

Superlatives ('very —', '—est', 'most —', 'extremely —'): gen. s. stem + *-issimus*, or nom. s. + *-rimus* (in the case of adjectives which end in *-er* in the nominative, e.g. *púlcher* → (comparative) *púlchrior* → (superlative) *pulchérrimus*)

Note also the irregular superlative, gen. s. stem + *-limus*, of six adjectives in *-ilis*, viz *fácilis* 'easy', *diffícilis* 'difficult', *símilis* 'similar', *dissímilis* 'dissimilar', *grácilis* 'slender', *húmilis* 'lowly': e.g. *fácil-limus*.

J2-3 Adjectives, adverbs

The declension of comparative and superlative forms is as follows:

(a) Comparative adjectives: *lóngior lóngius* 'longer'

	s.	n.	pl.	
	m/f.		m/f.	n.
nom.	lóngior	lóngius	longiōrēs	longiōra
acc.	longiōrem	lóngius	longiōrēs	longiōra
gen.	←longiōris→		←longiōrum→	
dat.	←longiōrī→		←longiōribus→	
abl.	←longiōre→		←longiōribus→	

NB. These adjectives are *consonant*-stems (cf. *dīues*, *paúper*, J2(e) above).

(b) Superlative adjectives: *longíssimus a um* 'longest' (sometimes *-íssimus*)

	s.	f.	n.
	m.		
nom.	longíssimus	longíssima	longíssimum
acc.	longíssimum	longíssimam	longíssimum
gen.	longíssimī	longíssimae	longíssimī
dat.	longíssimō	longíssimae	longíssimō
abl.	longíssimō	longíssimā	longíssimō

	pl.	
	m.	f. n.
nom.	longíssimī	longíssimae longíssima
acc.	longíssimōs	longíssimās longíssima
gen.	longíssimōrum	longíssimārum longíssimōrum
dat.	←longíssimīs→	
abl.	←longíssimīs→	

(c) Irregular comparatives and superlatives: *bónus, málus, múltus, mágnus, páruus*

bón-us a um	mélior (meliór-is)	óptim-us a um	'good', 'better', 'best' (cf. <i>ameliorate</i> , <i>optimise</i>)
mál-us a um	peior peior-is	péssim-us a um	'bad', 'worse', 'worst' (cf. <i>pejorative</i> , <i>pessimist</i>)

múlt-us a um	plūs (plūr-is)	plūrim-us a um	'much', 'more', 'most' (.) <i>plus</i> (+))
mágn-us a um	maior (maiór-is)	máxim-us a um	'big', 'bigger', 'biggest' (cf. <i>major</i> , <i>maximise</i>)
páru-us a um	minor (minór-is)	mínim-us a um	'small/few', 'smaller/fewer/less', 'smallest/fewest/least' (cf. <i>minor</i> , <i>minimise</i>)

NB. These decline quite regularly (see *lóngior longíssimus*) except for *plūs*:

	s.	pl	
	(<i>plūs</i> here = noun)	m./f.	n
nom.	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
acc.	plūs	plūrīs (plūrēs)	plūra
gen.	plūris	plūrium	
dat.	—	plūribus	
abl.	plūre	plūribus	

NB. *plūs* is really the comparative of the adverb *múltum* 'much', while *plūrēs* is the comparative of the plural *múlt-ī ae a*. The s. *múltus* has no true comparative.

J4 Adverbs

(a) Regular and irregular positive adverbs

1 Regular adverbs

A common way of forming adverbs in English is to add '—ly' to an adjective (e.g. 'slow-ly', 'quick-ly', 'passionate-ly'). In Latin, adverbs (which never change) are also regularly formed from adjectives as follows:

Adverbs based on 1st/2nd declension adjectives: add *-ē* to the stem, e.g. *stúltus* → *stúltē* 'foolishly'; *miser* → *miserē* 'unhappily'; *púlcher* → *púlchrē* 'beautifully'. A very few end in *-ter*, e.g. *hūmānus* → *hūmāniter* 'gently', and some in *-ō*, e.g. *cértō* 'for a fact'

Adverbs based on 3rd declension adjectives: add *-(i)ter* to the stem, e.g. *fórtis* → *fórtiter* 'bravely'; *aúdāx* → *audācter* 'boldly'; *céler* → *celériter* 'swiftly'. But note an important exception: *fácile* 'easily'

J3-5 Adjectives, adverbs

2 Irregular adverbs

bónus → *béne* 'well'.

páruus → *paúlum* '(a) little', 'slightly'.

múltus → *múltum* 'much'.

mágnus → *magnópere* 'greatly'.

NB. *lóngē* (regularly formed from *lóngus* 'long') 'far'.

(b) Regular comparative and superlative adverbs 'more —ly', 'most —ly'

Comparative and superlative adverbs are formed from the comparative and superlative adjectives

	'foolishly'	'more foolishly'	'most foolishly'
Adjective	stúlt-us	stúlt-ior	stultíssim-us
Adverb	stúlt-ē	stúlt-ius	stultíssim-e
	'quickly'	'more quickly'	'most quickly'
Adjective	celér	celér-ior	celérrim-us
Adverb	celér-iter	celér-ius	celérrim-e

NB. The comparative adverb has the same form as the neuter of the comparative adjective.

(c) Irregular comparative and superlative adverbs

Most of these are only irregular in so far as the corresponding adjective has irregular comparative and superlative forms. If you already know the adjective forms, most of these adverbs are formed quite regularly from the adjective:

béne	'well'	mélius	'better'	óptimē	'best'.
mále	'badly'	péius	'worse'	péssimē	'worst', 'very badly'.
paúlum	'a little'	minus	'less'	mínimē	'very little'; 'no'.
múltum	'much'	plūs	'more'	plūrimum	'most'; 'a lot'
magnópere	'greatly'	mágis	'more'	máximē	'very much'; 'most'; 'yes'.

J5 'Comparative' constructions

(a) Comparative

1 *quam* means 'than' when it is used with a comparative, e.g. *tū sánior es quam égo* 'you are saner than I'. Cf. *málo pácem quam béllum* 'I prefer

peace to war' (*mālo* = *magis uolo* 'I want x more than y'). Observe that the two things compared are in the same case, e.g. *maiores habeo librum quam tuum (librum)* 'I have a larger book than yours'.

- 2 But Latin can also compare two items by dropping *quam* and putting the item compared in the ablative, e.g.

tū mē sanior es 'you are saner than I'
quis sapiētiōr sapiēte est? 'who is wiser than the wise?'

- 3 Note the use of the comparative + *quam quī* + subjunctive in the idiom 'too — to do something', e.g.

sapiētiōr est quam quī hoc faciāt '(lit.) he is wiser than one who would do that', i.e. 'he is too wise to do that'

- 4 Note the use of the ablative of the measure of difference (see L(f)4(iv)) with comparative adjectives or adverbs in sentences meaning 'the more . . . the more . . .', e.g.

quō prōpius ea contētiō accēdit . . . eō clārius id periculum appāret 'the closer that fight comes, the more clearly that danger appears' (Caecilius)

tantō brēuius omne quāntō fēliciū tempus 'the happier a period (is), the shorter it (is)' (or 'seems to be') (Pliny) (lit. 'by so much shorter every (time is), by how much the happier the time (is)', i.e. 'time flies when you're enjoying yourself').

(b) Superlative

quam with the superlative means 'as — as possible', e.g.

cēnam quam máximam habeo 'I have the largest dinner possible'

This usage applies equally to adverbs, e.g.

quam celerrimē 'as fast as possible'

(c) Other 'comparative' constructions

1 *atque/ac*

atque/ac is used after adjectives or adverbs which express 'likeness' or 'unlikeness', such as *idem* 'the same', *alius* 'different', 'other', *aliter*, 'differently', *contrā* 'opposite', 'contrary', *par* 'equal', *pariter* 'equally', *perinde* 'in like manner', *similis* 'like', 'similar'. E.g.

J5 Adjectives, adverbs

iussērunt simulācrum Iōvis, contrā atque antea fuerat, ad orientem conuētere 'They ordered (them) to turn the statue of Jupiter towards the East, contrary to what it had been before' (Cicero).

perinde ēgit ac dixit 'He acted just as he said'.

2 Correlatives

ut meaning 'as' acts as a 'correlative' to *sic* or *ita* 'thus', e.g. *ut tū imperās, sic/ita ego faciō* 'as you order, so I do'. In the same way, *tam* 'so' is answered by *quam* 'as', e.g.

tam beātus erat ille quam miser ego 'he was as (lit. so) happy as I unhappy'

tot 'so many' is answered by *quot* 'as many', e.g.

tot uirī sunt quot fēminae 'so many men there are as many (as) (there are) women', 'there are as many men as women'

Cf. *tāntus* 'so great' . . . *quāntus* 'as great', 'as'; *tālis* 'of such a sort' . . . *quālis* 'of which sort', 'as', e.g.

tāta sapiētia eī inest quāta uīs 'there is so great wisdom in him as great (as there is) force', 'he has as much brain as brawn'
tālem uirtutem praebēbat quālem Horātius 'he showed bravery of such a sort as the sort (which) Horatius (showed)'

NB. See J5(a)4 above for other correlative usages.

3 Unreal comparisons

quasi, *uelut*, *tāquam* mean 'as if', 'as though' and (with or without *sī* added) take a subjunctive where the comparison is unreal or hypothetical. Constructions under J5(c)1 add *sī*. E.g.

ita se gerit quasi stultus sit 'he is behaving as though he were a fool' (but he is not).

perinde agit ac si hostis sit 'he acts just as though he were an enemy' (but he is not)

NB. *tāquam*, *quasi*, *uelut*, *sicut* and *ut* are all used with nouns to express 'like', 'as it were', e.g. *monte decurrens uelut amnis* 'like a river as it runs down from the mountain' (Horace — speaking of Pindar).

K List of prepositions

This list is in alphabetical order and contains the most important prepositions (some of which have not been met in the course).

- ā*, *ab* or *abs* (+ abl.) away from; by; on the side of
ābsque (+ abl.) (= *sine*)
ad (+ acc.) towards; at, near; for the purpose of; note *ūsque ad* right up to
aduērsus/aduēsus (+ acc.) opposite to; against
ānte (+ acc.) before, in front of
āpud (+ acc.) at the house of, in the hands of, in the works of, among
circum/circā/circiter (+ acc.) around, about
cis/citrā (+ acc.) this side of
clam (+ acc./abl.) unknown to
cōtrā (+ acc.) against
cōram (+ abl.) in the presence of
cum (+ abl.) with
dē (+ abl.) about, concerning; from; down from
ē, *ex* (+ abl.) out of, from; in accordance with; after
ērgā (+ acc.) towards
ēxtrā (+ acc.) outside
in (+ acc.) into, onto; against; (+ abl.) in, on
īnfrā (+ acc.) below
īter (+ acc.) among; between
īntrā (+ acc.) within
iūxtā (+ acc.) close to, near
ob (+ acc.) on account of, because of; before, so as to obstruct
pēnes (+ acc.) with, in the possession of
per (+ acc.) through, by; in the name of, by the aid of
post (+ acc.) behind, after
prae (+ abl.) before; in comparison with; for, as a result of
praeter (+ acc.) past; beyond; except
prō (+ abl.) for, in return for; on behalf of; in front of; instead of; in accordance with
prōpe (+ acc.) near
prōpter (+ acc.) on account of
secūndum (+ acc.) behind; along; after; according to

K, L-V Constructions: Introduction

- sine* (+ abl.) without
sub, subter (+ acc.) under, beneath; just after, just before; (+ abl.) beneath, under; at
sūper (+ acc.) over, above; beyond; (+ abl.) over, above; about, concerning
sūprā (+ acc.) above
tēnus (+ gen./abl.) as far as (placed *after* the word it governs)
trāns (+ acc.) across
uērsus, uērsum (+ acc.) towards, in the direction of (placed *after* the word it governs)
ūltrā (+ acc.) beyond
ūsque (+ acc.) all the way to

Note also the abl. nouns *caūsā* and *grātiā* (+ gen.), placed *after* the word they govern, meaning 'for the sake of', 'for the purpose of'.

When prepositions are followed by the noun they govern, their accent is determined by treating the two words as one, e.g. *āpud* (natural accent) and *āpūd mē* (as though it were *apudmē*).

L-V Constructions

Introduction

(a) Simple sentences

Simple sentences may be classified into four categories

- 1 *Statements* (including exclamations): e.g. *Caesar ābit* 'Caesar leaves', *quam trīstis est* 'how sad he is!'

'Potential' statements ('would', 'should', 'could') are expressed by the subjunctive, e.g. *uēlim* 'I should wish', *dīcat/dīxerit aliquis* 'someone would/may say', as are 'generalising' statements, e.g. *haud inuēmās* 'you (i.e. one) would scarcely find', *crēderēs* 'you would have believed'.
- 2 *Questions*: e.g. *abīsne?* 'are you leaving?' (-*ne* turns a statement into a question.) *quis ābit* 'who is leaving?'

Double questions are asked with *utrum* . . . *an*, e.g. *utrum abīs an manēs?* 'are you going or staying?' *annōn* means 'or not' in direct speech; indirect uses *ne* 'or not'. *utrum* is sometimes omitted (in direct and indirect speech), e.g. *abīs an manēs?*

an is very flexible. It can introduce a plain question (like *-ne*), or mean 'whether' or 'or'. *num* means 'surely not?', expecting the answer 'no' (*num* means 'if' 'whether' in indirect questions, e.g. *rōgō num abeās* 'I ask whether you depart'). *nōne* means 'surely?', expecting the answer 'yes'. *ecquis* means 'anyone' in a question, e.g. *ecquis abit?* 'is anyone leaving?' (See above I5(c)(iv) and Note.)

'Deliberative' questions take the form 'what am I to', 'should I -?' and are expressed by the subjunctive, e.g. *quid faciā* 'what am I to do?' *quid facerem* 'what was I to do?'

- 3 Commands: e.g. *abi!* 'leave!'; *nōlī abire* 'don't leave!'

nē + perfect subjunctive also expresses prohibitions, e.g. *nē trānsieris* 'do not cross'. *nē* + present subjunctive is used in general prohibitions, e.g. *nē pētās* 'you (i.e. one) should not seek'. *nē* + imperative is common in poetry, e.g. *nē fūgite hospitium* 'do not shun our hospitality' (Virgil).

Jussives ('let us', 'let him', 'let them') are expressed by the subjunctive (present), e.g. *abeāmus* 'let us leave', *fiat* 'let there be'.

'Polite' subjunctives express 'please', e.g. *abeās* 'kindly leave' (poetic), or general precepts, e.g. *sāpiās* 'you (i.e. one) should be wise'. Often commands are made more polite by the use of *fac*, *uide* 'see to it (that)', *cāue* 'take care (not to)', *uelim* 'I would like (x to)' with subjunctive, e.g. *fac mihi scribās* 'make sure you write to me'.

- 4 Wishes: e.g. *uolō abire* 'I want to leave'. The subjunctive is also used to express wishes, e.g. *ualeant ciuēs* 'may the citizens flourish'. Sometimes *utinam* (negative *utinam nē*) precedes the wish, e.g. *utinam nē hoc scripsissēs* 'would you had not written this'.

uolō + subjunctive sometimes combine, e.g. *uolō tū hoc faciās* 'I wish (that) you would do this'.

NB. In general, the tenses are used as in subjunctive conditionals (see S2(c)), present referring to a wish for the future, imperfect to a wish for the present, pluperfect to a wish for the past.

(b) Agreement

- 1 A verb agrees with its subject in number and person, e.g.

Caesar adest

adest is third person, singular, because *Caesar* (subject) is third person, singular.

- 2 An adjective agrees with the word it describes in number, gender and case, e.g.

fēminam tristem uideō 'I see the unhappy woman'

fēminam is accusative, singular, feminine, so *tristem* is accusative, singular, feminine (see J Intro.).

Notes

- The verb 'to be' is often omitted in sentences, e.g. *nihil bonum nisi quod honestum* 'nothing [is] good except what is honourable'.
- A singular subject will sometimes take a plural verb, if the subject implies 'a number of people', e.g. *pars militum capti sunt* 'part of the soldiers was captured', 'some soldiers were captured'. Likewise, a list of subjects can be taken all together and the verb be singular, or the verb be singular because the last in the list is singular. Where there are both masculine and feminine subjects described by one adjective, the adjective will tend to agree with the masculine.
- More information may be added about a noun or pronoun by further nouns or pronouns in the same case, e.g. *thesaurus Dēmaenetī, auī Euclionis* 'the treasure of Demaenetus, grandfather of Euclio'. *auī* is genitive, because it refers to *Dēmaenetī*: it is said to be 'in apposition' to *Dēmaenetī*.

(c) Sequence of tenses

Primary sequence means that the main verb is present, future, future perfect, or perfect with 'have' (e.g. 'I have loved', not 'I loved'). In these cases, subjunctives used in subordinate clauses are restricted to the present, perfect and future participle + *sim*.

Secondary or historic sequence means that the main verb is imperfect, perfect without 'have' (e.g. 'I loved') or pluperfect. In these cases, subjunctives used in subordinate clauses are restricted to imperfect, pluperfect and future participle + *essem*.

L The cases

(a) Nominative

The nominative case is used for:

- 1 The subject of a sentence or clause, e.g. *Eúcliō aulam pórtat* 'Euclio carries the pot' (note that the subject of an indirect statement goes into the accusative – see R1).
- 2 The complement, especially with the verb 'to be', e.g. *Eúcliō sénex est* 'Euclio is an old man'; *Caésar cōsul fit* 'Caesar becomes consul'.

(b) Vocative

The vocative case is used to indicate the person or thing addressed e.g. (ō) *Eúcliō, cūr aulam pórtās?* 'Euclio, why are you carrying a pot?'; *et tū, Brūte?* 'you too, Brutus?'

(c) Accusative

The accusative case limits or defines. It is used in a number of ways.

- 1 For the direct object of a verb, e.g. *Eúcliō aulam pórtat* 'Euclio carries a pot'.

Some verbs take a double accusative. Some examples are:

dóceō 'I teach x (acc.) y (acc.)'
rógō 'I ask x (acc.) for y (acc.)'; cf. *órō* 'I beg x (acc.) for y (acc.)'
cēlō 'I hide x (acc.) from y (acc.)'

E.g. *Eúcliō Lycōnidem prūdēntiam dócet* 'Euclio teaches Lyconides wisdom'; *mē cōsília cēlat* 'he hides his plans from me'.

The 'cognate' accusative expresses the same idea as the verb, e.g. *uiam* it 'he travels on a road'; *lūdum lūdit* 'he plays a game'.

- 2 To express motion towards, often with *ad* or *in*, e.g.

Eúcliō ad aedīs uénit 'Euclio comes to the house'
Rōmam eunt 'they go to Rome'

- 3 To express time throughout, e.g.

trēs diēs 'for three days'

L(a)-(d) Cases

- 4 To express extent of space and its measurement, e.g.

tría mília pássuum ambulāuerunt 'they walked for three miles'
céntum pēdēs áltus 'one hundred feet high'

- 5 To express the idea 'in respect of', e.g.

pēdēs trémit 'he trembles in respect of his feet'
míhi símilis faciē 'like me in respect of the face'

This is very common in poetry.

- 6 To express an adverbial idea, e.g.

dúlce 'sweetly'
quid? 'to what extent?'
múltum 'much'

- 7 To express exclamations, e.g.

mē míserum! 'unhappy me!'

(d) Genitive

The genitive often defines or completes the meaning of a noun. Its most frequent translation is 'of'. Note the different number of relationships that 'of' can indicate.

- 1 Possession, author or source ('belonging to', 'written by', 'derived from') e.g.

Eucliōnis aedēs 'the house of Euclio'
Vérgilī liber 'a book of Virgil' (i.e. written by Virgil)

Note that possession of a characteristic is indicated by the genitive in the following idiom:

stúlti est haec dīcere 'it is (the mark) of a fool to say this'

- 2 Part of a whole, e.g.

mágnā pars ciuīum 'a great part of the citizens'

Cf. *nímis* 'too much', *sátis* 'enough', *párum* 'too little', *áliquid* 'some', *quid?* 'some', 'what?': all take the 'partitive' genitive.

- 3 Description of content or material ('consisting of', 'containing'), e.g.

pōculum áquae 'a cup of water'

- 4 Description of quality or character (always with an adjective), e.g.

uir mágnae sapiéntiae 'a man of great wisdom'

- 5 Value, e.g.

hómo níhilī 'a fellow of nothing' i.e. 'of no worth'
fēmina plūrimī 'a woman of very great (worth)'

- 6 Subjective and objective genitives Consider the ambiguity of *ámor pátris* 'the love of the father' – does it mean 'the love which the father shows' (i.e. 'father loves' – father is subject, so 'of the father' is subjective genitive) or 'the love which is shown to the father' (i.e. someone loves father, when father is the object, so 'of the father' is objective genitive)? The context will tell you, but you must be aware of both possibilities. Note that *mēī, túī, súī, nóstrī, uéstrī*, are objective genitives, i.e. *ámor nóstrī* can only mean 'love which is shown to us', not 'love which we feel'.

- 7 Many verbs and adjectives control the genitive case, especially words involving:

Remembering and forgetting (*mémínī, oblīuiscor*)
 Pitying (*miseret*)
 Losing or lacking (*égeo*) (also with abl.)
 Filling (*plēnus*) (also with abl.)

E.g.

uerbōrum oblīuiscor 'I forget the words'
mē miseret túī 'I feel pity for you'
cibi égeo 'I need food'
plēnus aquae 'full of water'

- 8 *similis* 'like', 'resembling' takes the genitive or dative, e.g.

uir mēī similis 'a man like me'.

(e) Dative

The dative case is best dealt with in two parts.

1 People in the dative

The common idea behind all these usages is that the person in the dative will be interested or involved in the action, often to his advantage or

L(d)–(e) Cases

disadvantage. The action, in other words, has some consequence for the person in the dative. Often 'to', 'for' or 'from' will translate it adequately. In this sense, the dative case is used in the following ways.

- (i) To indicate the indirect object of the sentence – that is, the person to whom something is given, told, said, promised, shown, e.g.
aulam tibi dō 'I give you (= to you) the pot'
fābulam mihi nārrā! 'tell me (= to me) the story'
quid Caesari dixisti? 'what did you say to Caesar?'
- (ii) To indicate the person to whose advantage or disadvantage something is done, e.g.
bēne est mihi 'it's fine for me'
- (iii) To indicate possession, with the verb 'to be', e.g.
est mihi pecūnia 'there is money to me', 'I have money'
 See also 88.1
- (iv) As agent, showing by whom something is done, e.g.
haec mihi dicta sunt 'these things have been said by me'
hoc mihi faciendum est 'this is to be done by me'
 (The dative of agent is most frequently used with gerundives.)
- (v) To indicate the person interested in the action (only personal pronouns, always used in lively way) e.g.
quid mihi Celsus agit? 'what is Celsus doing? It interests me / I should like to know / please tell me' (Horace).
- (vi) To indicate the person judging, in whose eyes something is the case, e.g.
Quintia fōrmōsa est mūltis 'Quintia is beautiful to many / in the eyes of many' (Catullus).
- (vii) With certain verbs, and adjectives. Examples of verbs are:

crēdō 'I believe'.
fāueō 'I favour'.
fīdō 'I trust'.
ignōscō 'I pardon'.
imperō 'I order'.
inuideō 'I envy'.

irāscor 'I am angry at'.
minor 'I threaten'.
noceō 'I harm'.
parcō 'I spare'.
pāreō 'I obey'.
persuādeō 'I persuade'.
plāceō 'I please'.
resistō 'I resist'.
subveniō 'I come to help'.

Many compound verbs, especially those compounded with *ob-*, *sub-*, *prae-*, *bene-*, *male-*, *satis-*, take the dative also.

Adjectives which imply advantage or disadvantage (e.g. nearness, likeness, helpfulness, kindness, trust etc.) take the dative, e.g.

proximus ei 'near (to) him'
Caesar similis 'resembling Caesar'
mihi utilis 'useful to me'

2 Nouns (often abstract) in the dative ('predicative' dative)

Nouns in the dative usually show that which a thing serves for, or what its purpose is, e.g.

odio sum Rōmānīs 'I serve for a hatred to the Romans' i.e. 'am hated by the Romans'
voluptatī sum ei 'I serve for a pleasure to him/her'
militēs auxiliō misit 'he sent the soldiers to serve for / to be a help'

(f) Ablative

The ablative case has four basic usages. 'By', 'with', 'from', 'in' often translate it effectively.

1 The 'true' ablative denoting separation away from, e.g.

ex urbe 'out of the city'
nātus Iōue 'born from Jupiter'
dominātiōne liberātus 'freed from tyranny'

Under this heading we may list the ablative of comparison ('starting from a point of comparison with'), e.g.

quid mollius undā? 'what is softer than water?'

L(e)-(f)

2 The 'locative/temporal ablative'. This shows place/time in, on, or at, e.g.

in urbe 'in the city'
terrā marique 'on land and sea'
dextrā 'on the right'
tribus hōrīs '(with)in three hours'

3 The 'accompanying' ablative, e.g.

- (i) Of description: *uir magnā uirtūte* 'a man (with) of great bravery'.
- (ii) Of manner (how something is done): *summā (cum) celeritate uenit* 'he came with very great speed'.
- (iii) The ablative absolute, e.g. *tē dūce uincēmus* 'with you as leader, we shall win' (this shows the accompanying circumstances). Cf. P Note 3.

4 The 'instrumental' ablative, e.g.

- (i) Of agent (by whom a thing is done): *ab hīs laudātur* 'he is praised by these people'.
- (ii) Of instrument or means (by which something is carried out): *saxīs sē dēfēdunt* 'they defend themselves with rocks'.
- (iii) Of cause (why something happens): *amōre perit* 'he died (because) of love'.
- (iv) Of measure of difference: *tū multō altior es* 'you are much taller' (lit. 'taller by much'). Note *eo* 'by so much'; *quō* 'by how much'; *tantō* 'by so much'; *quāntō* 'by how much'; *paulō* 'by a little'; *hōc* 'by this amount'; *aliquāntō* 'by a certain amount'. See J5(a)4.
- (v) Of price (cf. genitive of value at L(d)5): *multō aurō hanc aulam emi* 'I bought this pot at a price of much gold'; cf. *magnō* 'at a high price', *paruō* 'at a small price', *uili* 'at a cheap price'.
- (vi) Of respect: *uir pietate grāuis* 'a man serious in respect of his piety' (Virgil). (This may also be classified as a locative ablative.)

5 Many verbs and some adjectives are followed by the ablative case. Some examples of verbs are:

fungor 'I perform'
frúor 'I enjoy'
utor 'I use'
pōrior 'I take possession of' (also genitive)
dōnō 'I present x (acc.) with y (abl.)'

abundō 'I abound in'

opus est 'there is a need of x (abl.) to y (dat.)'

Some adjectives are:

frē-us a um 'relying on'

plē-us a um 'full of' (also genitive)

dign-us a um 'worthy of'

- 6 Note the following phrases, all of which can be explained in the terms set out above:

silentiō 'in silence'

iūre 'rightly'

mōre maiōrum 'in the fashion of our ancestors'

meā spōnte 'on my own initiative'

ūsū 'in practice'

fōrte 'by chance'

uī 'by force'

nātū maior 'older' (lit. 'greater in respect of birth')

aéquō animō 'with equanimity'

bōnā fidē 'in good faith'

meā sententiā 'in my opinion'

meā causā 'for my sake'

(g) Locative

The locative is the remnant of an old case. It is used to express 'at' with names of towns and one-town islands. It has the same form as the genitive in first and second declensions singular, and as the ablative in the first and second declensions plural; in third declension nouns it adopts a form in -ī in the s., -ibus in the pl. E.g.

1st decl. s. *Rōmae* 'at Rome'

2nd decl. s. *Corinthī* 'at Corinth'

1st decl. pl. *Athēnīs* 'at Athens'

3rd decl. s. *Carthāgini* 'at Carthage'

3rd decl. pl. *Sārdibus* 'at Sardes'

Note also the following special usages:

dōmī 'at home'

hūmī 'on the ground'

rūrī 'in the country' (or *rūre*)

L(f)-(g), M(a)-(c) Infinitive

béllī 'at war'

mīlītiaē 'on military service'

ānimī 'in the mind'

NB. With towns and one-town islands 'to', 'into' are expressed by the plain accusative and '(away) from' by the plain ablative, e.g.

Rōmam 'to Rome'

Rōmā 'from Rome'

Syrācūsās 'to Syracuse'

M The infinitive

The infinitive acts as a verb, when it is active or passive, has a present, future or past tense and can govern cases. The infinitive can also act as a noun, when it is neuter and stands in the nominative or accusative case.

(a) As a noun (= gerund)

The infinitive often acts as a nominative or accusative gerund, e.g.

hūmānum est errāre 'to err is human', 'error is human'

errāre mālum dūcimus 'we consider error (lit. 'to do wrong') wicked'

(b) As a verb/noun (prolative infinitive)

The infinitive is used after certain verbs, e.g. *pōssum* 'I am able to', *dēbeō* 'I ought to', *uolō* 'I wish to', *cōnor* 'I try to', *incipiō* 'I begin to', *dūbitō* 'I hesitate to', *sōleō* 'I am accustomed to', etc.

It is common with verbs of being said or thought, e.g.

dīcitur mālus esse 'he is said to be wicked'

uidētur bonus esse 'he seems to be good'

(c) Indirect speech

The verb of indirect statements (see R1) is in the infinitive, e.g.

pūtō tē abiisse 'I think that you have gone away' (lit. 'I think you to have gone away')

(d) Historic infinitive

The 'historic' infinitive is used to describe vividly an action which would normally be in the imperfect indicative, e.g.

multī séquī, fugere, occīdī, capī 'many were following, fleeing, being killed and captured'

N Gerund

A gerund is a neuter noun, formed from a verb, with exactly the same form as the neuter s. of the gerundive (see O), e.g. *amānd-um* ī 2n. 'love', 'loving'. All such gerunds end in *-ndum*, e.g. *monēndum*, *capiēndum*, *regēndum* etc. This form is *never* nominative. It is most commonly used with a preposition or defining noun, e.g.

ad regēndum 'with a view to ruling', 'in order to rule'
ars dicēndī 'the art of speaking'
regēndī grātīā 'for the sake of ruling'
capiēndī causā 'for the sake of taking', 'in order to take'.

It can take an object e.g. *nāuīs capiēndī causā* 'to capture the ships' (though some writers might express this by noun + gerundive + *causā* – *nāuium capiendārum causā*, see O Note 3). It can stand on its own in the dative and ablative, e.g.

docēndō et discēndō 'by teaching and learning'
operam legēndō dat 'he pays attention to reading'

Infinitives also act as gerunds, in the nominative or accusative (without preposition). See M.

O Gerundive

The gerundive is a passive adjective, based on a verb, ending in *-nd-us a um*, meaning 'to be —ed', 'requiring to be —ed', 'needing to be —ed', 'must be —ed', e.g.

Rōma liberānda est 'Rome is to be freed', 'Rome must be freed',
 'Rome needs to be freed'
captīvōs necandōs trādidit 'he handed over the captives to be slain'

M(d), N, O, P Participles**Notes**

- 1 The gerundive usually has the agent in the dative, e.g.

Rōma Brūtō liberānda est 'Rome must be freed by Brutus'.

But verbs which take a dative object have the agent expressed by *ā* + abl., e.g. *mīhi parcēndum est ā tē* 'it is to be spared to me by you', 'you must spare me'.

- 2 Where a verb is intransitive, the gerundive becomes impersonal, e.g.

eūndum est mīhi 'it is to be gone by me', 'I must go'

- 3 In cases where a gerundive + noun, translated literally, sound odd, turn the phrase round into an active form, e.g.

ad milites capiendōs (lit.) 'with a view to soldiers to be captured' → 'with a view to capturing soldiers'
in liberandā patriā (lit.) 'in the fatherland to be freed' → 'in freeing the fatherland'
rēgī creandō 'for a king to be made' → 'for making a king'

See N above for this construction expressed by the gerund.

P Participles

There are three tenses of participle in Latin:

- The present participle ACTIVE (see A1), meaning '—ing', 'while —ing'
- The future participle ACTIVE (see A2), meaning 'about to —', 'on the point of —ing', 'with a view to —ing'
- The perfect participle ACTIVE (used by deponent verbs), 'having —ed' (sometimes just '—ing': see also C4 Note 2 for passive meaning in some verbs) and the perfect participle PASSIVE (used by transitive, active verbs), meaning 'having been —ed' (see C4, B4).

Participles are adjectives and agree in case, number and gender with the noun or pronoun to which they refer. Sometimes they are used as adjectives, merely to describe a noun, e.g. *āqua feruēns* 'boiling water'. But their commonest use is predicative, e.g. *Plātō scribēns est mortuus* 'Plato died while writing' (Cicero). Contrast *Plātō noster est mortuus* 'our Plato has died'. See under 'Predicative' in the Glossary of Latin – English Grammar, p. xxi.

Notes

- 1 A participle standing on its own either means 'a/the person —ing etc.', e.g.

moritūri 'the (masculine plurals) about to die', 'those about to die'

or agrees with a noun or pronoun left out, and refers to a person already mentioned e.g.

rogānti *respondit* 'to (him) as he was asking he replied', 'he replied to his question'

- 2 Participles indicate the *time* of the action in relation to the adjoining verb, i.e. a present participle indicates the action is going on *at the same time as the verb*, future participle that it will happen *after the verb*, perfect that it has happened *before the verb*.
- 3 Participles, especially present and perfect passive, are often used with a noun or pronoun in the ablative (*ablative absolute*) to form an accompaniment to the action of a clause. E.g.

Cethegus, recitātis litteris, repente conticuit 'when the letter had been read out, Cethegus suddenly fell silent' (Cicero)

Cf. *tē dūce* 'under your leadership' (L(f)3(iii))

- 4 The relationship between verb and participle can be more than merely temporal and suggest cause, concession, or condition, e.g.

timeō Dánaōs et dōna ferētis 'I fear the Greeks, even though bringing gifts'

nōn mihi nisi admōnitō uēnisset in mentem 'it wouldn't have entered my head if I hadn't been reminded' (Cicero)

- 5 The passive participle often expresses not the thing or person acted on, but the very act itself, e.g.

uiolātī hōspitēs, lēgātī necātī, fāna uexāta hanc tātam effēcērunt uāstitātem lit. 'violated guests, slaughtered ambassadors, ravaged shrines brought about this massive devastation', but better 'the violation of guests, the slaughter of ambassadors, the destruction of shrines . . .' etc.

Q1 Relative clauses: *quī* + indicative

A relative clause, introduced in Latin by some form of the relative pronoun *quī quae quod* 'who', 'which', 'what', 'that' (see I4) is an adjectival clause which describes a noun, e.g.

'The girls who are present'

'The book which I gave you is very old'

The word to which the relative pronoun refers is called the antecedent. In the above examples, the antecedent of 'who' is 'the girls', and the antecedent of 'which' is 'the book'.

The relative gets its *gender* (m., f. or n.) and its *number* (s. or pl.) from the *antecedent*; it gets its *case* from its *function* within the relative clause. Observe the following examples:

āmō puellās quae adsunt 'I like the girls who are present'

quae: feminine, plural (because 'girls' is the antecedent); nominative, because 'who' is the subject of 'are present'.

ubi est frāter meus, quem uidēre nōn pōssum 'where is my brother, whom I cannot see'

quem: masculine, singular (because 'brother' is the antecedent); accusative, because 'whom' is the object of 'I cannot see'.

ābest rēx cuius milites adsunt 'the king, whose soldiers are present, is absent'

cuius: masculine, singular (antecedent 'king'); genitive, because 'whose' means 'of whom', 'belonging to whom', so genitive of possession.

pueri quibus pecūniam dēdi effūgērunt 'the boys to whom I gave the money have run off'

quibus: masculine, plural ('boys'); dative, because I gave the money to them.

ubi est saxum quō percūsus sum 'where is the rock by which I was hit'

quō: neuter, singular ('rock'); ablative, because it was the instrument by which I was hit.

Notes

- 1 The 'connecting' relative joins the sentence closely to the previous one, e.g.

Caesar milites misit, quos ubi misit . . . 'Caesar sent the soldiers, Whom when he had sent', i.e. 'when he had sent them'

- 2 Observe the following idioms:

milites quos habebat optimos misit 'he sent the soldiers whom best he had', i.e. 'he sent the best soldiers he had'

qua es prudentia, nihil te effugiet lit. 'with what wisdom you are, nothing will escape you' i.e. 'such is your wisdom . . .'

Q2 Relative clauses: *qui* + subjunctive

When a relative clause 'hides' a clause of result, purpose, cause or concession, the verb is subjunctive:

- (a) Hidden result clause, often called 'generic', e.g.

is est qui pauperibus noceat 'he is the sort of person who harms the poor'

sunt qui putent 'there are people (of the sort) who think . . .'

nemo est qui hoc faciat 'there is no one who does this'

nemo est quin probet 'there is no one who does not approve' (note that here *quin* = *ut non*)

NB. *est qui*, *sunt qui*, when they refer to a definite antecedent, take the indicative, e.g. *multi sunt qui putant* 'there are many who think . . .'

- (b) Hidden purpose, e.g.

milites misit qui hostis circumdarent 'he sent soldiers who would / to surround the enemy'

- (c) Hidden cause, e.g.

amo te qui me ames 'I love you who (i.e. because you) love me'

These clauses often occur with *utpote qui* or *quippe qui*.

- (d) Hidden concession, e.g.

Q1-2, R R1 Indirect speech

Verres, qui usque multis diebus non esset, tamen se in conspectum dedit 'Verres who had not been seen for many days, nevertheless presented himself to view', i.e. 'Verres, although he . . .' (concessive)

Note

Observe the following idioms:

- 1 *dignus est qui imperet* 'he is worthy to govern'.

- 2 *quo* + comparative + subjunctive indicates purpose, e.g. *quo celerius effugiat* 'in order that he may escape more quickly'.

- 3 *maior est quam quem vincere possim* 'he is greater than one whom I can defeat', 'he is too great for me to defeat'.

R Indirect speech

When words are not quoted direct but given in reported form (e.g. 'he claimed that she was gone', 'we told him to leave at once', 'she asked where they were'), Latin

- (a) Uses the accusative and infinitive to express indirect statements.
- (b) Uses *ut/ne* + subjunctive (sometimes plain infinitive) to express indirect commands
- (c) Uses question word + subjunctive to express indirect questions.
- (d) Puts all subordinate verbs into the subjunctive (except that *dum* 'at one point while' occasionally remains indicative).
- (e) Makes all references to the speaker reflexive.

R1 Indirect statements

When you come across a verb of saying, thinking, reporting, etc., or even a noun implying these actions (e.g. *nuntius*), be ready for an accusative and infinitive construction. This reports what is being said or thought, e.g.

Caesar dixit hostis appropinquare 'Caesar said the enemy to be approaching' i.e. 'that the enemy were approaching'.

puto te pulchrum fuisse 'I consider you to have been handsome' i.e. 'that you were handsome'.

spero te mox discessurum esse 'I hope you to be about to go soon' i.e. 'that you will go soon'.

Notes

- 1 Observe that the subject of the indirect statement is in the accusative, and the verb in the infinitive. The tense of the infinitive is the same as what was originally said.
- 2 Note how *English* changes in response to the tense of the introductory verb of saying or thinking, e.g.

Caesar dicit hostis appropinquare lit. 'Caesar says the enemy to be approaching' 'that the enemy *are* approaching'

Caesar dixit hostis appropinquare 'Caesar said the enemy to be approaching' 'that the enemy *were* approaching'

- 3 *negō* means 'I say that . . . NOT'.
- 4 A reflexive refers to the speaker of the main verb, e.g.

Caesar dixit se discessurum esse 'Caesar said that he (i.e. Caesar) would leave'.

Cf. *Caesar dixit eum discessurum* 'Caesar said that he (someone else) would leave'.

Note that *se* and the other personal pronouns tend to come second in the clause unless emphatic.

- 5 *esse* is sometimes dropped from the infinitive (see above example).
- 6 *fore ut* + subjunctive 'that it should come about that' is often used in indirect statements to get round future passive expressions
- 7 Remember to start your translation into English with the word 'THAT' – a word which does not appear in the Latin in these constructions at all.

R2 Indirect commands

Indirect commands are signposted by a word of ordering, persuading, commanding etc. followed by *ut* or *nē*. The verb is in the subjunctive – present in primary sequence, imperfect in secondary. E.g.

mihi imperavit ut abirem 'he ordered me that I should go / to go away'

eos hortati sunt ne tristes essent 'they urged them that they should not be / not to be unhappy'

R1-3 Indirect speech

Notes

- 1 Observe *nē* . . . *quis* 'that no one' (see I4 for declension of *quis* indefinite), *nē* . . . *ullus* 'that not any', *nē* . . . *umquam* 'that never'.
- 2 References in the indirect command to the subject of the ordering verb are reflexive, e.g.

Caesar militibus imperavit ut sibi parerent 'Caesar ordered the soldiers to obey him' (i.e. Caesar: *ei* would mean 'him', i.e. someone else)

- 3 Some verbs take an infinitive construction as in English, e.g. *iubeo* 'I order', *vetō* 'I forbid', 'order not to', e.g.

iussit me abire 'he ordered me to leave'

eos progredi vetuit 'he forbade them / told them not to advance'.

- 4 In extended indirect speech, commands are sometimes introduced without *ut*, with just the plain subjunctive.

R3 Indirect questions

An indirect question puts the verb in the *subjunctive*. The rules are complex (see below), but the simplest thing to do is to translate the subjunctive as if it were the similar tense in the indicative, e.g.

rogat cur veneris 'he asks why you have come'

nesciuit quid faceres 'he did not know what you were doing'

petebam quid dicturus esset 'I was asking what he was about to say / would say'

Notes

- 1 *num* and *an* in an indirect question mean 'if', 'whether'. *num quis* means 'if/whether anyone' (cf. *nē quis*, *sī quis*, *nisi quis*).
- 2 *utrum* . . . *neque* in an indirect question means 'whether . . . or not'.
- 3 References to the subject of the verb of asking (etc.) will be reflexive, e.g.

Caesar rogavit cur omnes se timerent 'Caesar asked why everyone feared him (i.e. Caesar)'

4 Here are some examples from which you can deduce the chart, given below. They give the full picture of the exact relationship between the sequence, tense of verb and subjunctive required

main verb primary	question word	subjunctive	main verb primary	question word	subjunctive
rogō	cūr	uenierit	I ask	why	he came / has come was coming / had come
rogō	cūr	ueniat	I ask	why	he is coming
rogō	cūr	uentūrus sit	I ask	why	he will come / he is going to come
main verb secondary	question word	subjunctive	main verb secondary	question word	subjunctive
rogāui	cūr	uenisset	I asked	why	he was coming
rogāui	cūr	ueniret	I asked	why	he was coming
rogāui	cūr	uentūrus esset	I asked	why	he would come / he was going to come

Summary chart

	Question refers to		
	Present	Future	Past
Introductory verb primary (e.g. rogāt 'he asks')	Pres. subj. 'is — ing'	Fut. part. + <i>sim</i> 'will —', is going to —	Perf. subj. ' ed' / 'has —ed' 'was —ing' 'had —ed'
Introductory verb secondary (e.g. rogāuit 'he asked')	Imperf. subj. 'was —ing'	Fut. part. + <i>essem</i> 'would , 'was going to	Plupf. subj. 'had —ed', 'had been —ing'

R4 Subjunctives in indirect speech

- (a) All subordinate clauses in indirect speech (except occasionally *dum* 'at one point while') have their verbs in the subjunctive. The subjunctives follow the rule of sequence, i.e.

Primary main verb: subjunctives used are present (referring to present and future time) and perfect (referring to past time)

R3-4, S Subjunctive

Secondary main verb subjunctives used are imperfect (referring to present and future time) and pluperfect (referring to past time)

Occasionally future time will be referred to by means of the future participle + *sim* (primary) or *essem* (*fōrem*) secondary. See 142 Note.

- (b) Conditional sentences in indirect speech have a subjunctive in the *sī/nisi* clause ('protasis'), and an accusative + infinitive in the other part ('apodosis'). The rules of sequence for the subjunctives are the same as those in R4(a) above. Note that only context will now allow you to distinguish between a future indicative condition and a subjunctive condition referring to the future, e.g. (he said that) *sī pācem pōpulus Rōmānus cum Heluētiis fāceret*, in *eam partem itūrōs* could represent (Direct Speech) either (1) or (2):

- (1) *sī pācem . . . fāciat*, in *eam partem eāmus* 'if (the Roman people) were to make peace (with the Helvetii), we would go to that place . . .' Present subjunctive (referring to the future).
- (2) *sī pācem . . . fāciat*, in *eam partem ibimus* 'if (the Roman people) is going to make peace (with the Helvetii), we shall go to that place . . .' Future indicative.

In the other subjunctive conditions (imperfect and pluperfect), 'would be —ing' and 'would have —ed' (the apodosis) are both represented by future participle + *fuisse*. E.g. *uidēmur quiētūrī fuisse, nisi essēmus lacessitī* 'It seems we would have kept quiet, had we not been provoked' (Cicero) (representing direct speech *sī* + pluperfect subjunctive, pluperfect subjunctive)

S The subjunctive

The subjunctive originally expressed the will, desire, or hope on the part of the speaker that something should be (e.g. *uiuat rēx* 'may the king live' — this is the speaker's desire). It is used in main clauses and subordinate clauses. In subordinate clauses in classical Latin it is often used merely as a convention, and does not carry its original force (e.g. in indirect questions, see R3).

S1 Main clauses

(Cf. L-V Intro.)

(a) As an imperative

Expresses an order, or prohibition, e.g.

nē trānsierīs 'do not cross'

or the 'jussive' subjunctive 'let us/him' etc, e.g.

eāmus 'let us go'*amēmus* 'let us make love'

(b) 'Deliberative' subjunctive

This takes the form 'what am I to?', e.g.

quid faciā 'what am I to do?'

(c) Wishes

Examples are.

sīs felīx 'may you be happy'*uolō tū scribās* 'I want you to write'or, with *utinam* 'O that!'*utinam adessēs* 'O that you were present'

(See L-V Intro. (a)4.)

(d) Conditional/potential

Examples:

uelim 'I should like to'*dixerit* } *aliquis* 'someone might/would say'*dīcat**sī adfuisset, uidisset* 'if he had been there, he would have seen'

S1 2 Subjunctive

S2 Subordinate clauses

The subjunctive may be found in a number of clauses already dealt with elsewhere, i.e. indirect commands, indirect questions, and subordinate clauses in indirect speech (on all of which, see R2 and R3 and R4), relative clauses (see Q2), temporal clauses (see T), causal clauses (U) and concessive clauses (V).

(a) Result (or consecutive) clauses 'so . . . that', 'so . . . as to'

1 The 'that' clause is expressed by *ut* + subjunctive (negative *nōn*). The subjunctive is normally present, imperfect or perfect.

2 There are a number of different words for 'so'. These include: *adeō*, *ita*, *tam*, *sic*, *eo*.

Note also *tāntus* 'so great', *tot* 'so many', *tālis* 'of such a sort', e.g.

tāntum est periculum ut nemo uenerit 'so great is the danger that no-one has come'

tam fortis erat ut uinci nōn posset 'he was so brave that he could not be defeated'

ita agere debemus ut omnes nos laudent 'we ought so to act that all praise us'

3 Consecutive constructions are also used in the following idioms:

(i) *tāntum abest ut . . . ut* 'x is so far from . . . (ut) . . . THAT' (*ut* consecutive); *facere nōn possum quin* 'I cannot do (a thing) but that . . .', 'I cannot help —ing'; *feri nōn potest quin* 'it cannot come about but that . . . not'.

(ii) *quī* + subjunctive can mean 'of such a kind that' (generic), when it is followed by a consecutive construction, e.g. *nōn sum is quī quiescere possim* 'I am not the sort of person who can keep quiet'.

Cf. *nemo est quin probet* 'there is no one of the sort who does not approve' (Cicero) (*quin* = *quī nōn*)

(iii) *accidit ut* (*nōn*) + subjunctive 'it happens that . . .', *perficiō*, *efficiō*, *faciō ut* (*nōn*) 'I bring it about that . . .', *nōn multum abest quin* 'it is not far from being the case that . . .'

(iv) *numquam accedō quin abeam doctior* 'I never approach (you) without going away more learned' (Cicero).

(b) Purpose (or final) clauses 'in order to / that', 'to'

Purpose clauses are commonly expressed by *ut* (negative *nē*) + subjunctive. The subjunctive is present in primary sequence, imperfect in secondary. E.g.

uenio ut uideam 'I come in order to / to / in order that I may see'

ueni ut uidērem 'I came in order (etc.) to see'

Note that *nē quis* = 'that no-one' (see I4 for declension of *quis* indefinite), *nē umquam* 'that never', *nē ullus* 'that not . . . any', 'lest any'.

Notes

- 1 *quī* + subjunctive frequently expresses purpose, especially with verbs of movement, e.g.

lēgātōs mīsit quī pācem pēterent 'they sent ambassadors who should seek / to seek peace'

- 2 References in the purpose clause to the subject of the main verb are expressed by the reflexive, e.g.

Caesar uenit ut militēs se uidērent 'Caesar arrived so that his soldiers should see him (i.e. Caesar)'

- 3 *quō* + subjunctive expresses purpose when there is a comparative in the purpose clause, e.g.

quō celērius effūgiat 'so that he may escape more quickly'

- 4 *perficiō/efficiō/faciō ut* (neg. *nē*) + subjunctive ('I bring it about that') may express purpose, as well as result (see S2(a)3(iii)).

- 5 Observe how many ways there are of expressing purpose in Latin:

- (i) *ut/nē* + subjunctive
- (ii) *quī* + subjunctive
- (iii) *ad* + gerund/gerundive 'with a view to —ing' (see N, O).
- (iv) *causā* + gerund/gerundive
- (v) The supine (see A7 for formation): used especially with verbs of motion, e.g. *militēs mīsit pācem petītum* 'he sent soldiers to seek peace'.

(c) Conditional sentences

The 'if' clause of a conditional sentence is often called the 'protasis', the main clause the 'apodosis'.

S2 Subjunctive**1 Indicative**

Where a conditional sentence uses an indicative in both clauses, translate normally, e.g.

sī tū sapiēns es, ego stultus 'if you are wise, I am a fool'

(But see Note 1 below.)

Note that English is less accurate about future and future perfects than Latin, e.g.

sī puēlla discēdet, laetus erō 'if the girl departs (lit. 'will depart') I shall be delighted'

sī hoc fēceris, habēbō grātiām 'if you do this (lit. 'will have done this') I shall be grateful'

2 Subjunctive

Where a conditional sentence has the subjunctive in both clauses, translate with 'would', 'should', 'were', as follows:

- (i) Present subjunctive (refers to future time) 'If x were to happen y would happen'.
- (ii) Imperfect subjunctive (refers to present time) 'If x were now happening, y would be happening'.
- (iii) Pluperfect subjunctive (refers to past time) 'If x had happened, y would have happened'.

E.g.

sī puēlla discēdat, laetus sim 'if the girl were to depart, I would be delighted'

sī puēlla discēderet, laetus essem 'if the girl were (now) departing, I would (now) be happy'

sī puēlla discessisset, laetus fuisset 'if the girl had departed, I would have been delighted'

Notes

- 1 Latin sometimes mixes indicatives and subjunctives in conditional sentences. Generally speaking, such conditions should be treated on the 'would/should' pattern, e.g.

pōns iter paene hōstibus dedit, nisi ūnus uir fuisset 'the bridge almost gave the enemy a way across (and would have done), if there had not been one man' (Livy)

- 2 The imperfect subjunctive can be used to refer to past time, e.g.

uidērēs 'you would have seen'

- 3 *nisi*, *nī* and *sī nōn* all mean 'if . . . not', 'unless'

- 4 *sī/nisi quis* means 'if/unless anyone' (see I4 for declension of *quis* indefinite). Cf. *sī/nisi quāndō* 'if/unless at any time'.

- 5 *sive . . . sive* (*seu . . . seu*) means 'whether . . . or' and introduces alternative conditions, e.g.

sive haec uēra sive falsa sunt, proficīscar 'whether these things are false or true, I shall set out'

- 6 The indicative is normal in the main clause (apodosis) of a condition using subjunctive, where it involves the ideas of possibility (e.g. *pōssum*) or obligation (e.g. *dēbeō* or gerundive), e.g.

nisi fēlicitās in socórdiam uertisset, exuere iūgum potuēre 'if their success had not turned to sloth, they would have been able to throw off the yoke' (Tacitus)

sī ūnum diem morātī essētis, morundum omnibus fuit 'if you had delayed for one day, you would all have had to die' (Livy)

- 7 For conditional sentences in indirect speech see R4(b)

(d) Verbs of fearing

uereor/timeō meaning 'I fear to' take the infinitive as in English.

uereor/timeō meaning 'I fear that/lest' take the subjunctive, and are introduced by *nē* ('that', 'lest'), *ut* ('that . . . not') or *nē . . . nōn* ('that . . . not'). The subjunctive follows normal rules of sequence, e.g.

timeō nē ueniat 'I fear lest he (will) come'

timebam nē uenisset 'I was afraid that he had come'

NB. As with purpose clauses, any reference to the subject of the main verb inside the *nē/ut/nē nōn* clause will be reflexive

(e) Verbs of doubting

nōn dubitō 'I do not doubt', *nōn dubium est* 'there is no doubt' and similar negative expressions of doubting are followed by *quīn* + subjunctive, e.g.

nōn dubium est quīn errēs 'there is no doubt that you are wrong'

S2, T Temporal clauses

Notes

- 1 This amounts to an indirect question (see above R3), since it reports 'Are you not wrong?' *quīn* is composed from *quī* (old abl. of *quī quae quod*) and the negative *-ne*. The original meaning (common in Plautus) is 'How not?', 'Why not?'.

- 2 The affirmative (even more clearly an indirect question) is *dubitō an* + subj. 'I doubt whether . . .'

(f) Verbs of hindering, preventing, forbidding

Verbs like *impediō* 'I hinder', *deterreō* 'I deter', *prohibeō* 'I prevent', *obstō* 'I stand in the way of (x doing something)' are followed by *nē* or *quōminus* with the subjunctive, unless negative, when they take *quōminus* or *quīn*. E.g.

tē impēdiam nē/quōminus abeās 'I shall prevent you from leaving'

But

tē nōn impēdiam quōminus/quīn abeās 'I shall not prevent you from leaving'

NB. The infinitive or accusative and infinitive is common after *prohibeō*, e.g. *prohibeō tē ire* 'I prevent you from going'.

(g) 'Provided that'

dum, dūmodo, mōdo can mean 'provided that' (negative *dum nē* etc.), when the verb is subjunctive, e.g.

oderint dum metuant 'let them hate, provided that they fear'
(Accius – Roman tragedian: a favourite quote of Caligula)

T Temporal clauses

These clauses indicate the time at which something takes place, e.g. 'when', 'as soon as', 'after', 'while', 'until', 'whenever', etc.

- (a) *ubi, ut* ('when'), *pōstquam* 'after', *sīmulac, quam primum* ('as soon as') take the indicative.

Note that when Latin uses the perfect indicative, English frequently translates with the pluperfect, e.g.

ubi Caēsar peruēnit 'when Caesar arrived/had arrived'

- (b) *dum, donec*, 'while' take the indicative, e.g.

dum uiuō, sperō 'while I live, I hope'

Note that when 'while' means 'at one point when', the indicative is present, e.g.

dum loquor, homo intrāuit 'while I was speaking, the fellow entered'

- (c) *dum, donec* 'until' and *antequam, priusquam* 'before' take

- 1 The indicative when the clause conveys nothing but the idea of pure time, e.g. *manēbat dum Caēsar peruēnit* 'he waited till Caesar arrived'.
- 2 The subjunctive when the action is expected or waited for or intention is being expressed, e.g. *manēbat dum Caēsar uenīret* 'he waited until Caesar should come'; *abiit priusquam Caēsar eum uidēret* 'he left before Caesar should see him'.

- (d) *cum* 'when' takes:

- 1 The indicative when referring to present or future, e.g. *cum uidēbis, tum scēs* 'when you (will) see, then you will know'.
- 2 The subjunctive (pluperfect or imperfect) when referring to past, e.g. *cum haec dixisset, abiit* 'when he had said this, he left'

- (e) An exception to T(d)2 is that *cum* takes the indicative when referring to the past in the following circumstances

- 1 When it expresses pure time, e.g. *cum ego Rōmae eram, tū Londiniū erās* 'when I was at Rome, you were in London'
- 2 When it means 'whenever', e.g. *cum mē uiderat, laetābātur* 'whenever he saw me, he rejoiced'
- 3 'Inverted' *cum*, e.g. *abibam cum nūntius peruēnit* 'I was going away when a messenger arrived'.

U Causal clauses: 'because', 'since'

quod, quia, quoniam, quāndō all mean 'since', 'because' and their verbs take the indicative when the speaker is vouching for the reason, e.g.

adsunt quod officium sequuntur 'they are present because they follow their duty' (that is the speaker's explanation)

T, U, V Concessive clauses

adsunt quod officium sequantur would mean 'they are present on the grounds that (i.e. the reason is not the speaker's) they follow their duty' *cum* 'since' nearly always takes the subjunctive. After certain verbs, however, it can take the indicative, e.g.

doleō cum aeger es 'I grieve because you are ill'

Cf. *laudō* 'I praise', *gaudeō* 'I rejoice'.

Notes

1 *quī* + subjunctive can denote cause, e.g.

amō tē quī mē amēs 'I love you who (= because you) love me'

quī in such utterances is often strengthened by the addition of *quippe*, *utpote* or *ut*.

2 Causal clauses are often signposted or picked up by *ēō* or *idcirco* 'for this reason'.

V Concessive clauses

These are introduced by *etsi, etiāmsi* 'even if'; *quāquam, quāmuīs* 'although' and *quī* + subjunctive. *etsi* and *etiāmsi* take indicative or subjunctive like conditional clauses, e.g.

etiāmsi tacent, satis dicunt 'though they are silent, they say enough'
etiāmsi taceant, satis dicant 'though they were to be silent, they would say enough'

quāquam 'although' takes indicative; *quāmuīs* 'however' takes subjunctive, e.g.

quāquam inimicus es 'although you are hostile'
quāmuīs inimicus sis 'however hostile you may be'

quī 'who' can be used with concessive force, when it takes the subjunctive, e.g.

ego quī fortis sim tamen fugiam 'I, who am brave, nevertheless will flee' i.e. 'I, though brave . . .'

NB. *licet* 'it is allowed' is quite often followed by a subjunctive verb. In this case it means 'though', e.g. *frēmant omnēs licet, dicam quod sentiō* 'Though they may all make a commotion, I will say what I think' (Cicero).

W Word-order

(a) Emphasis and scene-setting

- 1 *Caesar in Galliam contendit* 'Caesar marched into Gaul' may be called for convenience the 'normal' or 'narrative' order of that sentence in Latin. An 'emphatic' order would be *in Galliam Caesar contendit* 'it was into Gaul that Caesar marched' (answering the question 'Where was Caesar marching?'), or *contendit in Galliam Caesar* (answering the question 'What was it that Caesar was doing re Gaul?'). Putting the verb first is common in vivid or excited narrative, when we want to know what is happening at once or when there is no stated subject to the verb, so verb-ending is the only clue to it.

Observe how 'emphasis' affects the position of 'attributive' adjectives, normally placed *after* the noun (e.g. *uir bonus* 'good man'). They come first when they define it (emphatically) rather than merely add a description, e.g. *utram tunicam mavis – albam an purpuream?* *purpuream tunicam malo* 'Which tunic do you prefer – the white or the purple?' 'The purple's the one I prefer.'

- 2 *Gallia est omnis diuisa in partibus tres* 'As for Gaul, the whole of it, it is divided into parts – how many? – Well, *three* actually.' Caesar 'sets the scene' – we are talking about the whole of Gaul – and leaves to the end the real importance of what he is to say: that it is divided into *three* parts. Observe how he continues: *quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani* 'of which, well, we have one part lived in by – Belgians – and the other by – Aquitanians'. Again, Caesar sets the scene and then gives the really important information: it was Belgians and Aquitanians who lived in two of the parts.

English also uses 'scene-setting' word-order to emphasise in this way, e.g. '*Talent*, Mr. Micawber *has*; *capital*, Mr. Micawber *hasn't*' (Dickens).

(b) Shadowing

- 1 Latin tends to alternate emphatic and unemphatic words or phrases within the sentence. In the example of the coloured tunics given above, the word *purpuream* in the answer is emphatic, and the word *tunicam* – less necessary, since we already know that tunics are what is being discussed – carries less emphasis. It is useful to think metaphorically of *tunicam* being cast into the shadow by the emphatic *purpuream* which precedes it.
- 2 Certain classes of words tend to be placed in the shadow of the first

W Word-order

important word in the sentence or clause (regardless of whether they are connected with it grammatically or logically). These are: (i) particles like *enim*, *autem*, which connect the sentence they occur in with what precedes; (ii) unemphatic personal and demonstrative pronouns like *me*, *tibi*, *eum*, *nos*: e.g. *his mihi rebus*, *Scipio*, *levis est senectus* (Cicero) 'it is because of these things, Scipio, that old age is no burden for me'. Note that *mihi* interposes itself between two grammatically connected words: *his* and *rebus*. (iii) The verb, when unemphatic, often gravitates to a position just after the first emphatic word: this happens especially with *est* as an auxiliary verb, e.g. *in Galliam est Caesar profectus* 'it was for Gaul that Caesar set out'.

- 3 Adverbial phrases may be 'shadowed' (or 'sandwiched') between two grammatically connected words when they are logically connected with the enclosing phrase: *magna in hac re prudentia utendum est* 'great prudence must be used in this matter' (*in hac re* limits the application of the prudence to *this matter*); *clarorum virorum post mortem honores permanent* 'the honours paid to great men remain after death' (*post mortem* warns us in good time that we are thinking of a special kind of honour – the sort that may be paid after death).

(c) Some consequences of emphasis, scene-setting and shadowing

- 1 The normal place for subordinating conjunctions is at the beginning of their clause, but when other words in the clause are used for 'scene-setting' (as often in temporal or conditional clauses), the conjunction often ends up immediately before the verb: *Caesar in Galliam cum contendisset* 'when Caesar had marched into Gaul'.
- 2 In accusative and infinitive constructions, if there is no other word with more emphasis, the infinitive often comes at the very beginning, being often followed immediately by an unemphatic pronoun subject: (*dixit mihi Caesar*) *velle se consulatum petere* 'Caesar told me he wanted to stand for the consulship'. On the other hand, if one of the other words is emphatic, it will naturally come first (the unemphatic pronoun remaining in second place): (*dixit mihi Caesar*) *consulatum se velle petere* 'Caesar told me that it was the consulship he wanted to stand for'. When it is discovered for the first time that Britain is an island, Tacitus reports the event as follows: *hanc oram nouissimum maris tunc primum Romana classis circumuecta insulam esse Britanniam affirmavit*, 'that was the first time a Roman fleet had rounded this shore of the furthest sea, and this confirmed that Britain was an island' – 'that it was an island Britain was'.

APPENDIX: THE LATIN LANGUAGE

A brief history of the Latin language

The beginnings

Latin is one of the many languages belonging to the Indo-European family whose members extend from the Atlantic coasts of Europe to India. In Europe itself these languages can be divided into groups: Hellenic, represented by the various dialects of Greek; Italic, consisting of Latin and its close relatives in central Italy; Germanic, including English, German, and the Scandinavian languages; and Celtic, including Welsh and Irish (see Table). Latin is in the unique position of being not only a member of the Italic group but also the ancestor of the last European group, Romance (including Italian, Spanish, and French) which developed later than the rest, within historic times. Though Latin, settled in Latium, was only one of the members of the Italic group that also included Oscan and Umbrian, by the fourth century the energy of the Romans had reduced their neighbours to the status of subject allies, and their languages, known to us only from inscriptions and isolated words taken into Latin, never attained any recorded literary cultivation and succumbed to Latin during classical times.

Indo-European Languages			
European descendants (groups, then group-members)			
Celtic	Germanic	Italic	Hellenic
Irish Welsh	English German Scandinavian languages	Latin ↓ Romance languages Italian Spanish French	Greek

Early Latin

The remains of early Latin consist of later quotations from the works of authors not preserved entire, and of inscriptions, beginning with a brooch from Praeneste (c. 600 B C) which reads in Greek letters ΜΑΝΙΟΣ ΜΕΔΕΘΗΘΑΚΕΝ ΝΥΜΑΣΙΟΙ (= *Mānūs mē fecit Nūmerio*) 'Manius made me for Numerius'.¹ Between this date and the beginnings of surviving literary texts with the plays of Plautus (c. 254–184 B C) many changes in the language took place, as even these few words show: -os became -us, and -om became -um (see H2(a) Note 2); -d dropped in *med* (= *mē*) and the ablative singulars *Gnauiod* (= *Gnauiō*), *sententiad*; *theshaked* shows a reduplicated perfect (*theshaked*) in contrast to *fecit*, the dative singular of the second declension is in -oi and distinct from the ablative, and single intervocalic -s- (*Nūmasioi*) becomes -r- (see H3(d) Note). Other evidence shows the early diphthongs *ei* becoming *i* (as *quei*, *sei*) and *oi*, *ou* becoming *u*, as *onon* (= *ūnum*), *abdoucit*. Whereas classical Latin limits the position of the accent to the second or third syllable from the end of the word, at an early period the accent was on the first syllable of all words and was very strong; as a result the vowels in the syllables immediately after this accent were reduced, and these changes survived the later shift in the position of the accent and can still be seen in verbs compounded with prepositions, e.g. *capiō*: *incipiō*; *sedeō*: *obsedeō*; *aestimō*: *existimō*; *caedō*: *incidō*; *claudō*: *inclūdō*, and also in adjectives with the negative prefix *in-*, e.g. *aptus*: *ineptus*; *arma*: *inermis*; *aequus*: *iniquus*.

¹ There is controversy over this inscription – it may be a forgery – but the linguistic lessons it encapsulates are not affected

The Empire

By the end of the Republic in 31 Roman rule extended to territories almost completely encircling the Mediterranean, with gaps only on the north coast of Africa, and including all the islands. In the eastern Mediterranean Greek was already established as the second language of the users of a great variety of tongues, but in the West Latin had no such competition, and passed with surprising rapidity from being a *lingua franca* to being adopted as the language of the country in the Iberian peninsula and Gaul. The conquest by the emperor Claudius in the first century A D introduced Latin to Britain but, as in other peripheral parts of the Empire, it did not long survive the collapse of central authority in the Western Empire in the fifth century.

The Middle Ages

From this point the history of Latin divides into two. (1) In the older Roman territories of Spain and Gaul, where it had ousted the native languages, it gradually developed in its spoken form into the various Romance languages. (2) As the medium of Western Christianity it continued, primarily as a *written* language of liturgy and administration throughout the old Roman lands and wherever Christianity became established, on the borders of the Empire as in Britain, or beyond them as in Germany and Scandinavia and among some of the Western Slavs. This Christian Latin, though open to local influences on vocabulary and idiom, was transmitted by education, and each generation of students learned it consciously and painfully in an unchanging form. Within communities of the educated such as monasteries and, later, universities, it became a spoken language also, as well as being the normal medium of teaching and writing on serious and technical subjects such as grammar, rhetoric, logic, mathematics, law, medicine, theology and history (though in Britain both Celtic and Anglo-Saxon, and in parts of Scandinavia the vernacular languages were cultivated in written form for learned purposes earlier than elsewhere). As the context of mediaeval Latin was first and foremost a religious one the language of St Jerome's late fourth-century revision of previous Latin translations of the Bible (the *editiō uulgāta*) was immensely influential, and sanctified late popular usages such as a simple sentence structure, changes in the use of cases and the subjunctive, and the abandonment of the accusative and infinitive construction in reported speech. At the same time the ancient practice, more appropriate to native speakers than to learners, of confining literary study to the poets, especially Virgil, was continued, though not without Christian misgivings about their pagan subject-matter, and thus constructions proper to verse found their way into medieval prose works.

The renaissances

As the standard and even the continued existence of this mediaeval Christian Latin depended on the efficiency of educational institutions it fluctuated with the stability and prosperity of the region, and its history is marked by a series of renaissances following periods of declining standards. One such was the Carolingian Renaissance under the Emperor Charlemagne (c. 800 A.D.), who summoned to his court Alcuin of York to advise him and direct a reform of clerical education, and who made provision for cathedral and monastic schools. A good many classical Latin authors would have been lost to us if their works had not been

The Romance languages

collected and recopied at this time. A similar renaissance took place in the twelfth century, more concerned with creation than conservation, and associated with a greater emphasis on secular learning and the first universities with their devotion to dialectic and professional training in medicine and law. The renaissance to which the title 'Renaissance' is normally applied began in the late thirteenth and early fourteenth centuries in Northern Italy and at the papal court at Avignon. It was characterised by an eagerness to search out, copy, and edit new texts, and by an admiration for the style and a sympathetic appreciation of the virtues of the classical period, above all of Cicero, and it marked the beginning of the end of the Middle Ages, which it unfairly stigmatised as a period of barbarism and ignorance.

The Romance languages

Evolution

In one sense Latin is not a dead language but the unchanging *written* form that has survived down the centuries in parallel with the Romance languages, which represent the further evolution of its *spoken* form at various times and places. It took quite a long time for the magnitude of the difference to be appreciated: at first, Latin was the written norm and the spoken forms were regarded simply as less careful and less correct forms of the same language, and it is not until about the ninth century A.D. that the first attempts at writing the spoken forms continuously reveal that these had come to be perceived as different languages from Latin. Wherever Latin had become the ordinary language, by late classical times its differing local development created dialects distinct in small ways from their neighbours, and as new states came into being after the Dark Ages, in each a particular dialect, usually associated with the seat of government, acquired prestige; as the size of states increased these prestige dialects took the first steps toward becoming national languages. Thus, in addition to the well-known modern national languages of French, Spanish, Portuguese, Italian, and all their dialects, the Romance group includes languages representing cultural or former political units such as Provençal and Catalan, as well as the Romance dialects spoken in the Alpine regions and the various islands. Far to the east lies Romanian, first recorded in the sixteenth century, whose survival is something of a mystery. Dalmatian, in present-day Yugoslavia, died out about a century ago. Since the Middle Ages trade and colonisation have carried Romance languages all over the world, so that Portuguese became

established in Brazil, Africa, and the Far East; Spanish in Mexico and the rest of South America (hence the term 'Latin America'); and French in North America and Africa.

Variety

While all these languages have diverged from Latin they have not done so in the same way or to the same degree, and the range of variation extends from French at the extreme of innovation to the Sardinian dialects at the conservative end of the spectrum. The process of differentiation must have begun long before the records and was probably detectable to the ear, though not in writing, before the fall of the Empire. To an undeterminable extent the changes as regards sounds represent the influence of the languages spoken before Latin was adopted (the 'substratum'), and as regards vocabulary the contact with other languages since then, e.g. with Frankish (a Germanic language) in France, Arabic in Spain, Magyar and Bulgarian in Romania.

Characteristics

We normally work backwards from the members of a language family in order to reconstruct their unrecorded common ancestor. When we do this with the Romance languages we do not produce a result which exactly tallies with classical Latin, but one which represents a more popular and less literary spoken style, unhappily called Vulgar Latin. While most of the detail is peculiar to each language and dialect, some general statements about the nature of the evolution from Latin to Romance can be made.

I. *Nouns and adjectives.* (A) All the languages (with the limited exception of Romanian) abandoned the Latin case system, reducing the noun to two forms, a singular and a plural. (1) The singular continues the Latin accusative singular minus the *-m* (which was already weak, perhaps only a nasalisation, in Latin), e.g. *corōna(m)*, It. *corona*, *annu(m)*, It. *anno*. (2) The plural either adds *-s* from the accusative plural (so in Fr., Sp., Port.) e.g. the Latin *corōnās* becomes Sp. *coronas*, the Latin *annōs*, becomes Sp. *anos*; or changes the final vowel (so in It., Rom.) as in the nominative plural of the first two declensions, e.g. *corōnae*, It. *corone*; *annī*, It. *anni*. (B) The three gender classes of Latin were reduced to two by the loss of the neuter, with neuter nouns generally becoming masculine. (C) The inflected forms of the degrees of comparison in adjectives and adverbs were replaced by phrases with *plūs* (It., Fr.) or *magis* (Sp., Port., Rom.), e.g. Latin *aqua calidissima*, It. *l'acqua più calda*, Fr. *l'eau la plus chaude*, Sp. *el*

agua más cálida, with the comparative replacing the superlative. In place of the inflected adverb, e.g. *lentē*, the Romance languages formed phrases with the Latin ablative *mente*, e.g. *lenta mente*, It., Sp. *lentamente*, Fr. *lentement*. (D) The indefinite and definite articles were introduced, utilising *ūnus*, *ille*, e.g. Latin *ūnus homo*, *ūna domina/fēmina*, It. *un uomo*, *una donna*, Fr. *un homme*, *une femme*; Latin *ille homo*, It. *l'uomo*, Fr. *l'homme*; Latin *illī/illōs homines*, It. *gli uomini*, Fr. *les hommes*. (E) The insubstantial demonstratives *is* and *hic* were replaced by *iste*, *ipse*, and compounds of these with *ecce*, e.g. *iste*, Sp. *este*, *ipse*, Sp. *ese*, *ecce(m)*, *istu(m)*, It. *questo*, Fr. *ce*, *ci*, *ecce illu(m)*, *illōs*, *illās*, Fr. *celui*, *celle(s)*, *ceux*.

II. *Verbs.* (A) The four conjugations were sometimes reduced to three by the redistribution of the third between the second and fourth. (B) The whole inflected passive was lost, except for the participle, which combined with *esse* to form a new phrasal passive, e.g. Latin *amātur* but It. *è amato*, Fr. *il est aimé*. (C) The future and future perfect and, in most parts, the pluperfect indicative, disappeared, while the pluperfect subjunctive generally replaced the imperfect subjunctive, e.g. *cantānisset/cantāsset*, It. *cantasse*, Fr. *il chantât*. (D) The Latin future was replaced by a combination of *habēō* (less frequently *uolō* or *dēbeō*) with the infinitive of the main verb to give a new Romance future, e.g. *cantāre-habet*, It. *canterà*, Fr. *il chantera*. (E) Beside the Latin perfect a new past tense was formed with the present of *habēre* or *tenēre* (in intransitive verbs sometimes with *esse*), plus the past participle, e.g. *habet cantātum*, It. *ha cantato*, Fr. *il a chanté*; and in parallel with this a new pluperfect was created using the imperfect of the auxiliary verb, e.g. *habēbat cantātum*, Fr. *il avait chanté*. (F) The other notable Romance creation was the conditional, formed like the new future but with the imperfect or perfect of *habēō* added to the infinitive, e.g. *cantāre-habēbat/habuit*, Fr. *il chanterait*, It. *canterebbe*; a parallel past conditional was then formed from the conditional of *habēō* plus the past participle, e.g. Fr. *il aurait chanté*. (G) The future participle did not survive, and the present one, except in purely adjectival use, was generally replaced by the ablative of the gerund, e.g. It. *cantando*.

Vocabulary

The vocabulary of the Latin that developed into Romance often differs from the literary terms for a variety of reasons: the classical word may be physically too slight to survive sound-change and so be expanded by prefixes or suffixes or be replaced by a more substantial approximate synonym, or the classical term may simply have gone out of fashion generally or at that particular social level. So, for example, *edō* 'eat' is

replaced by *comedō* or *manducō*; *ōs* (*ōris*) 'mouth' by *bucca* (though *os*, *ossis* 'bone' survives); *ignis* 'fire' by *focus*; *magnus* 'great' by *grandis*; *apis* 'bee' by *apicella*, *avis* 'bird' by *avicellus* or *passer*, *ferre* 'to bring' by *portāre* or *levāre*, *equus* 'horse' by *caballus*; *brevis* 'short' by *curtus*; *pulcher* 'beautiful' by *bellus* or *fōrmōsus*; and *domus* 'house' by *casa* or *mānsiō*. However, as the Romance languages never lost the sense of being connected in some way with Latin they continued to draw new vocabulary from book Latin, and from each other, as they developed into cultivated literary languages in the course of the Middle Ages. These later acquisitions can often be recognised because they are closer in form to their Latin source than the words that have shared the whole development of their particular Romance language.

The Latin element in English

First-fourth centuries A.D.

The Romans attempted the conquest of Britain unsuccessfully under Julius Caesar in 55 and successfully under the Emperor Claudius in A.D. 43, after which they remained in control of Britain (but not of Ireland) until about the end of the fourth century. During this period at least the town-dwelling Britons became familiar with Latin and many words were taken over into their own language and survive to the present day in its descendant, Welsh. At this time the Angles and Saxons, Germanic tribes speaking a language that was to be the ancestor of English, were still on the Continent, living along the North Sea coast of the present Netherlands, though some had already been introduced into Britain to act as a coastal defence force against other Germanic raiders. In the course of trade and service with the Roman army on the Continent some Latin words had been adopted by the Germanic peoples generally, and so were part of their language when the Angles and Saxons began in the fifth century to migrate to Britain and settle there. Some of these words were in fact Greek in origin but were already naturalised in Latin. A number of modern English words have survived from this early period, absorbed partly on the Continent and partly during their first century in Britain.

We have: ark (*arca*, chest; also the surname Ark-wright), bishop (*episcopus*), butter (*būtyrum*), candle (*candēla*), chalk (*calc-em*), cheap (*caupō*; place-names Cheapside, Chipping- 'marker'; surname Chapman 'trader'), cheese (*cāseus*), Chester (*castra*; and names in -caster, -cester, -chester), church (*kyriakon*), copper (*cuprum*), coulter (*culter*), devil (*diabolus*), dish (*discus*), fever (*febris*), inch (*uncia*), kiln (*culīna*),

kitchen (*coquīna*), line (*līnea*), mallow (*malua*), mile (*mīlle passus*), mill (*molīna*), mint (coinage, *moneta*), mint (plant, *menta*), -monger, as fish-monger (*mangō*), pitch (tar, *pic-em*), purple (*purpura*), pillow (*pulvīnus*), pile (as in pile-driver, *pīlum*), pin (*penna*), pine (tree, *pīnus*), port (*portus*), post (*postis*), priest (*presbyter*), plant (*planta*), pit (*puteus*), pound (weight, *pondō*), sack (*saccus*), sickle (*secula*), street (*strata via*), thrive (*scribere*), shrine (*scrīnium*), tile (*tēgula*), toll (tax, *telōnium*), turtle (-dove, *turtur*), wall (*uallum*), wine (*uīnum*).

Many others have fallen out of use in the course of time while others survive in dialect, as *sikker* (*sēcūrus*) 'certain' (later taken over in its French form as 'sure', and then again from Latin as 'secure'), *neep* (*nāpus*) 'turnip', *soutar* (*sūtor*) 'shoemaker' (and as a surname), or have undergone a change of meaning which obscures the relationship, as 'shambles' (*scamellum*, originally 'butcher's stall'), 'pine' (*poena*, originally 'punish', 'torment').

Fifth-sixth centuries A.D.

A little later the English acquired more Latin words of a very similar kind from British speakers in the period immediately after the settlement and before their conversion to Christianity in the seventh century had made any of them familiar with Latin as a written language. Some examples are: anchor (*anchora*), cat (*cattus*), chervil (*cerefolium*), chest (*cista*), cowl (*cucullus*), fork (*furca*), minster (*monastērīum*), monk (*monachus*), mortar (pestle and m., *mortārīum*), mussel (*musculus*), nun (*nonna*), provost (*praepositus*), punt (*pontō*), relic (*reliquiae*), Satur-day (*Saturnus*; the other days of the week were given Germanic names on the pattern of the Latin ones), stop (up), (*stuppāre*, from *stuppa* 'tow'), strap (*stroppus*), trivet (*tripod-em*), trout (*tructa*).

A few others are now archaic or poetical, or of historical interest only. cockle (weed, *cocculus*), kirtle (tunic, *curtus*), lave (*lauāre*), soler (*sōlārīum*; the sunny room or parlour in a medieval castle, now reintroduced in its Latin form in a new context).

Seventh-tenth centuries

During the remaining centuries before the Norman Conquest of 1066 many new Latin words appeared in English books but the majority of them were only superficially anglicised and never became widely used. Their survival rate is accordingly low. Some examples are alms (*eleemosyna*), altar (*altāre*), apostle (*apostolus*), arch- (*archi-*), balsam (*balsamum*), beet (*bēta*), camel (*camēlus*), cole-wort, kail (*caulis*), cook

coquus, cope (garment, *cap(p)a*), creed (*crēdo*), idol (*īdolum*), lily (*līlūm*), martyr (*martyr*), mass (service, *missa*), offer (*offerre*), paradise (*paradīsus*), plaster (medical, *emplastrum*), part (*partem*) pope (*papa*), psalm (*psalmus*), purse (*ursa*), school (*schola*), spend (*expendere*), title (*titulus*), and perhaps verse (*uersus*).

In some cases where the word has survived the original meaning is no longer current, as 'prime' and 'noon' (*prima* and *nona hōra*) the first and ninth hours of the monastic day, or 'scuttle' (*scutella*, diminutive of *sautum*, originally 'dish', 'platter')

Some members of this late group are more likely to have been borrowed a second time from French than to have survived from pre-Conquest times, and this was certainly the case with many of the Latin loan-words found in Anglo-Saxon, when the modern forms show that they were lost and re-acquired in this way.

Eleventh-fifteenth centuries and after

From the Conquest to the Renaissance a very large number of words of ultimately Latin origin found their way into Middle English, but almost invariably they did so either through French or with the same modifications of endings as similar words had undergone in French, so that direct borrowings are hard to identify. From the sixteenth century this type of borrowing continues but at the same time a substantial number of words come into English as unmodified Latin and retaining such features as Latin plural formations. The largest number of these came in during the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries with a sharp decline thereafter, apart from the terminology of the natural sciences. A few examples from each century will illustrate the process.

Sixteenth century alms, arbiter, area, circus, compendium, decorum, delirium, exit, genus, ignoramus, interim, interregnum, medium, peninsula, radius, species. *Seventeenth century* affidavit, agenda, census, complex, curriculum, fulcrum, honorarium, lens, pendulum, premium, rabies, series, specimen, squalor, tedium. *Eighteenth century* alibi, bonus, deficit, inertia, insomnia, propaganda, ultimatum, via. *Nineteenth century* aquarium, consensus, omnibus, referendum.

TOTAL LATIN-ENGLISH LEARNING VOCABULARY

TOTAL ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY FOR EXERCISES

Total Latin-English learning vocabulary

Note

This vocabulary contains all the words in the Learning Vocabularies, together with words learned in the Running Grammar. Words which appear in sections of *Text* in forms significantly different from the basic form are also entered, with a reference to the basic form, e.g. *ablāt-* see *auferō*; *cuius* gen. s. of *quī/quis*.

A

a. ab- (+ abl.) away from
1D, 1E, 4D
ab eo abire abī abītam I go
I come away 1C
abiciō 3/4 *abiciē abiectus* I
throw down, throw
away 4E, 1
ablat- see *auferō*
absen- absent is absent
away 4C, 11
ab tul- see *auferō*
absum *abi-se* *abū* I am
away from, am
absent 4C, 1, I am
distant 5E, 11
ac (or *ataque* and 2A, 11)
auter ac otherwise than
alius ac different from
contrā ac contrary to
what
idem ac the same as
par ac equivalent to
pariter ac equally as
perinde ac in like

manner as, just as

similis ac similar to

See 5G, 6r

accedo 3 *accedere* *accesion* 1
approach, reach
4E, 11

access- see *accēdō*

accidit 3 *accidit* it happens
it - it non + subj. 1
4E, 11

accipio 3/4 *accipere* *accipio* 1
receive, welcome,
learn, obtain 2E,
sustain, meet with
4E, 11

accuso 1 I accuse x acc. of
y gen. 4A, 11

acer *acris* *acris* keen, sharp
2A, 6r.

acerb-us *aum* bitter 5D, 11

aci-ēs *ēi* 5f. battle-line;
sharp edge, point;
keenness (of sight)
5G, 11

act- see *agō*

ad (+ acc.) towards, at
1A, for the purpose
of 4E, 11 *ad p. ad*
right up to 6A, 11
adde 3 *addidit* *addidit* 1 add
increase 5F, 11

adeō *adire* *adii* *adium* 1 go
come to, approach
1C

ade to such an extent
5A, 11

adapt- see *adipiscor*

adfero *adferre* *adferre* *adferre* 1
bring to 2B

adgredior *aggredior* 3/4
dep. *aggresus*

aggresus 1 go up to
2B attack 4E, 11

adhuc up to now 6B, 11

adipiscor 3 dep. *adeptus* 1
get, gain, acquire 3B

adiungō 3 *adiunxi* *adiunctus*
I join (x acc. to y
dat.) 5A, 11

Total learning vocabulary: Latin-English

collect, gather; gain,
acquire 4C(ii)
collocō 1 I place, station
5A(iii)
coll-um ī 2n, neck 6D(iv)
colō 3 *coluī cultus* 1
worship; cultivate,
till; inhabit 4A(ii)
com-a ae 1f. hair; foliage
6D(iii)
comes comit-is 3m
companion, friend,
(pl.) retinue 4B(i)
committō 3 *commī-i*
commissus 1 commit
5C(iii)
commod-us a um
satisfactory,
convenient 6B(i)
commoror 1 dep. 1 delay,
wait 4E(iii)
commoueo 2 *commōuī*
commōtus 1 move;
remove; excite,
disturb 4C(ii)
commun-is e shared in,
common, universal
5D(ii)
comparō 1 I prepare,
provide, get ready,
get 4B(iii)
complector 3 dep.
complexus 1 embrace
6B(iii)
complūr-ēs complūr-um
several 6B(iii)
concidō 3 *concidī* — 1 fall,
collapse; am killed
4F(i)
concordi-a ae 1f. harmony
5D(iii)
concurrō 3 *concurrī*
concursum 1 run
together 4B(iv)
condemnō 1 I condemn (x
acc. for y gen.)
6B(i)

continenti-a ae 1f. self-control, restraint 1G,
contio *contion-is* 3f. meeting, assembly
 5F(i)
contrā (+ acc.) against 5D(i)
contrā ac contrary to what 5G Gr.
conueniō 4 *conueni*
conuenium I meet 4B(iii)
conuini-um ī 2n. party 4B(iii)
conuocō I I summon, call together 5A(iii)
cōpi-ae *ārum* 1f. pl. troops 3B
coqu-ō 3 *coxi* *coctus* I cook 1F
coqu-us ī 2m. cook 1A
cornu-us 4n. wing (of army); horn 5G(i)
corp-us *cor-poris* 3n. body 5C, 1.
cotidie daily 4D(ii)
crēber *crēbr-a* um frequent, thick, close 6B(ii)
crēdō 3 *crēdidī* *crēditum* I believe in (+ dat.); entrust (x acc. to y dat.) 1G
crūdēl-is e cruel 5D(i)
cui dat. s. of *quis/quis*
cuidam dat. s. of *quidam*
cuiquam dat. of *quisquam*
cuius gen. s. of *quis/quis*
cuiusdam gen. s. of *quidam*
culp-a ae 1f. fault; blame (often of sexual misconduct) 6A(vii)
cultēr *cult-rī* 2m. knife 1D Gr.
cum (+ abl) with 2A (+ subj) when; since, although 4E(iii)
cum *semel* as soon as 6A(iv)

cum . . . *tum* both . . . and
5D(n)
cunctor 1 dep. I delay;
hesitate (+ inf.) 5C(i)
cūct-us a um all, the
whole of 6D(m)
cupiditas cupiditat-is 3f.
lust, greed, desire
4B(n)
cupiō 3/4 *cupiui cupiūs* I
desire, yearn for;
want desperately
4B(i)
cūr why? 1A
cūr-a ae 1f. care; worry,
concern 1B
cūrō 1 I look after, care
for 1B, see to it that
5D Gr.
curs-us ūs 4m. running,
course; direction;
voyage 6C(ii)
custōs custod-is 3m. and f
guard 4A(i)

D
dat- see do
dē (+ abl.) about,
concerning 2A,
from, down from
4F(i)
dēheō 2 I ought (+ inf.);
owe 2D
de on ten 2A Gr
de p. see d, piō
deceit 2 it befits (x acc. to
y inf.) 5C(m) and
5C Gr.
de im-us a am tenth 5C Gr
de ipio 3/4 n. p. i. epta I
deceive 2A
de us de er t beauty 5F i
de- see d
de et 2 it x seemly
for x acc. to y mī
5C Gr

Total learning vocabulary: Latin-English

gesto 3 *gessī gestus* I do,
conduct 2D)
bellum gerō I wage war
3A)
gladius ē 2m. sword
5C(ii)
glori-a ae 1f. glory
renown fame 4E(iii)
gradior 3/4 dep. *gressus* I
step, walk, go (cf.
comp. u. d. s. m.)
gratias agere 1
gratus 1m. agreeable +B 1
gravidus 1m. pregnant
+B(m), +C(v)
gravis 1m. heavy 1st 1
(+A(i), 3)
gratu-latio 1f. congratulation
+B(i), +C(v) +D(i)
gratu-lor 1m. congratulate
+B(i), +C(v) +D(i)
gratu-lor 1m. congratulate
+B(i), +C(v) +D(i)
gratu-lor 1m. congratulate
+B(i), +C(v) +D(i)

gravis 1m. serious
important, weighty;
heavy 4c)
gravi-tas 1f. gravity
seriousness
solemnity
importance
authority 4B(iii)

H

habēō 2 I have 1A, hold,
regard 1D)
negōtium habēō I
conduct business 1f
oratiōnem ha-beō I make
a speech 5F(i)
habitō 1 I dwell Intro
haec this way 2E
haren-a ae 1f. sand 6A(v)
hand not 2D)
hic haec hoc this, this
person, thing; pl
these 2C
hie here 2D)

ignis ign-is 3m. fire 1C
ignosco 3 *ignōui ignōtum* I
 forgive (+ dat)
 4G(i)
ille ill-a illud that; that
 person, thing; pl
 those 2C
illuc there 2C Gr
illinc from there 2C Gr
illuc to there 2C Gr
illūstr-is e famous 3B
imitor I dep. I imitate
 6B(viii)
immō more precisely i.e.
 no or yes (a strong
 agreement or
 disagreement with
 what precedes) 2D
immortāl-is e immortal
 4G(i)
impediment-um ī 2n
 hindrance 3D
impedimenta u n
 (+ dat.) I am a
 hindrance (to) 3D
 Gr
impediō 4 I prevent,
 impede, hinder
 5A(iii)
imperātor imperātōr-is 3m
 leader, general,
 commander 4E(i)
imperi-um ī 2n. order,
 command 3A,
 power, authority;
 dominion 5D(ii)
imperō 1 I give orders
 (to), command
 (+ dat.: often
 followed by *ut*/
nē + subj. 'to / not
 to') 3D
impetrō 1 I gain by
 request 6C(iii)
impet-us ūs 4m. attack 4A(i)
impetum faciō I make an
 attack 4A(i)

impi-us a um with no respect for gods, parents or fatherland 5D(iv)
impōnō 3 *imposuī impositus* I put x (acc.) on y (dat.) 6L(n)
in (+ acc.) into, onto, (+ abl.) in, on 1A, (+ acc.) against 2D
incendi-um ī 2n fire 4E(n)
incendō 3 *incendī incēnsus* I set fire to; burn (trans.) 4E(ii)
incerti-us a um uncertain 6B(ii)
inēō *inire inī initum* I enter, go in 1F
inerm-is e unarmed 6C(ii)
infest-us a um hostile; at the ready; indicating attack 6C(ii)
inflammāt-us a um inflamed, on fire 4C(i)
ingenu-um ī 2n. talent, ability 1B Gr
ingēns ingent-is huge, large, lavish 1F
ingredior 3/4 dep. *ingressus* I enter 2F
inimic-us a um hostile, enemy 4G(ii)
innocēns innocent-is guiltless 4A(m)
inquam I say (*inquis, inquit; inquirunt*) 3D
insidi-ae ārum 1f. pl. trap, ambush 5A(m)
inspicō 3/4 *inspexī inspectus* I look into, inspect, examine 2B
institutō 3 *instituī institūtus* begin, construct, resolve 6C.
inīcō 1 *inīcū* — I press upon; urge, pursue.

am at hand, approach; strive after 5G(ii)
instruō 3 *instruī* *instructus* I draw up; prepare, equip 5E(ii)
insum *messe* *insum* I am in (+ dat.) 5A(i)
integer *integr-a* um whole, untouched 5G(ii)
intelligō 3 *intelligē* *intelligens* I perceive, understand, comprehend, grasp 4B(iii)
inter (+ acc.) among, between 4B(iii)
interea meanwhile 4A(i)
interficiō 3/4 *interfici* *interfectus* I kill 5A(ii)
interrogō 1 I ask 3C
intrō 1 I enter 1A
intrō (adv.) inside 2B
inueniō 4 *inuenī* *inuentum* I find 1F
inuideō 2 *inuidī* *inuisum* I envy, begrudge (+ dat.) 5F(ii)
inuit-us a um unwilling 6A(vi)
ioc-us ī 2m. joke, joking, fun 6A(ii)
Iou-: see *Iuppiter*
ipse *ips-a* *ips-um* very, actual, self 4B Gr.
irāscor 3 dep. *irātus* I grow angry (with x: dat.) 2C
irāt-us a um angry 2C
irrideō 2 *irrisī* *irrisus* I laugh at, mock 1E
is e-a id that, he/she/it 3A
iste *ist-a* *istud* that of yours 4A(iii)
it-: see *eo*
ita so, thus; yes 1D
Itali-a ae 1f. Italy 5A(iii)

itaque and so, therefore 5A(iii)
item likewise 5C(i)
iter *itiner-is* 3n. journey, route 5E(ii)
iterum again 2A
iubeō 2 *iussī* *iussus* I order, command, tell 1D
iucund-us a um pleasant 5D(iii)
iudex *iudic-is* 3m. judge 4A(i)
iudicō 1 I judge 4A(iii)
Iuppiter *Iou-is* 3m. Jupiter, Jove 3A
iūs *iur-is* 3n. law, justice 4G(ii)
iūs *iurand-um* *iur-is* *iurand-i* 3n. oath 5C(i)
iuss-: see *iubeō*
iussū by the order (of x: gen.) 5C(iii)
iuvat 1 it pleases 6A(iii)
iuuen-is *iuuen-is* 3m. young man 1G

L

labor 3 dep. *lāpsus* I slip, glide, fall down, make a mistake 6D(ii)
labor *labor-is* 3m. toil, hard work; trouble 5D(iv)
laceri-us ī 2m. arm, upper arm 6D(iv)
laedō 3 *laesī* *laesus* I harm 6A(iii)
laetitia ae 1f. merriment, festivity, joy 4B(iii)
laet-us a um happy 4A(iv)
Lampsacēn-us ī 2m. person from Lampsacum 4B(i)
Lar *Lar-is* 3m. Lar, household god 1A

latebr-ae *ārūm* 1f. pl. hiding-place, lair 6D(iv)
Latin-us a um Latin 5A(ii)
latrō *latrōn-is* 3m. robber, bandit 5G(i)
latus *later-is* 3n. side; flank 5G(ii)
lect-us ī 2m. couch, bed 2B
lēgat-us ī 2m. commander 5G(i); pl. ambassadors 3B
legiō *legiōn-is* 3f. legion 3B
legō 3 *lēgī* *lēctus* I read 2B
lepōs *lepōr-is* 3m. charm 6A(ii)
lēx *lēg-is* 3f. law 4A(iv)
liber *liber-a* um free 3A
liber-i *ōrūm* 2m. pl. children 5A(ii)
liberō 1 I free, release 4D(i)
libertās *libertāt-is* 3f. freedom, liberty 4G(i)
libet 2 (perf. *libuit* or *libitum est*) it pleases (x dat. to y inf., x chooses to y 5C Gr)
libidō *libidin-is* 3f. lust 5A(ii)
licet 2 it is permitted (to x dat. to y inf.) 3D
lictor *lictōr-is* 3m. magistrate's attendant, lictor 4F(i)
lingu-a ae 1f. tongue; language 6A(v)
litter-ae *ārūm* 1f. pl. letter 2B; literature 5A(ii)
lītus *lītor-is* 3n. shore 4E(i)
loc-us ī 2m. place; pl. *loc-a* *orūm* 2n. 4A(iii)
locūt-: see *loquor*
longē far 3B Gr.

long-us a um long 3A
loquor 3 dep. *locūtus* I am speaking, say 2B
luct-us *ūs* 4m. grief, mourning 5G(iii)
lūdō 3 *lūsī* *lūsum* I play 6A(iii)
lūmen *lūmin-is* 3n. light; pl. eyes 6D(ii)
lūn-a ae 1f. moon 2A
lūx *lūc-is* 3f. light 5D(i)

M

magis more 3C Gr
magistrāt-us *ūs* 4m. magistrate, state official 4A(iii)
magnopere greatly 3B Gr
magn-us a um great, large 1D
maior *maiōr-is* greater, bigger 3A Gr
mālō *mālī* *mālui* I prefer (x quam y) 2A
mal-um ī 2n. trouble, evil 2E
mal-us a um bad, evil, wicked 1C
mandō 1 I entrust (x acc. to y dat.) 5A(i), order (x dat. to y ut + subj.) 6B(iii)
maneō 2 *mānsī* *māsum* I remain, wait 1C
manifest-us a um in the open; obvious, clear; caught in the act 5B(ii)
man-us *ūs* 4f. hand 2A; band 3B
mare *mar-is* 3n. sea (abl. *marī*) 4E(ii)
matrōn-a ae 1f. wife, mother; lady 5A(ii)
maximē very much; most; yes 3C Gr.

maxim-us a um very great, biggest 3A Gr.
mē acc. or abl. of *ego*
meditor 1 dep. I think, ponder on, practise 3A
medi-us a um middle (of) 4F(ii)
melior *meliōr-is* better 3A Gr.
melius (adv.) better 3C Gr.
membr-um ī 2n. limb 6A(iii)
memini (perfect form) I remember 5F(i)
memor *memor-is* remembering (x: gen.); mindful of (x: gen.) 5D(iv)
memori-a ae 1f. remembering, memory, recollection; record 6B(i)
mendāx *mendāc-is* lying, untruthful 2A
mēns *ment-is* 3f. mind 6D(i)
mentīō *mentīōn-is* 3f. mention 4E(iii)
mentior 4 dep. I lie 2B
meretrīx *meretrīc-is* 3f. prostitute 2C
mer-us a um unmixed, pure 6A(i)
met-us *ūs* 4m. fear, terror 4E(iii)
me-us a um my, mine 1C (vocative s. m. *mī*)
mī = *mihī* (dat. s. of *ego*) 6A(iv)
mī voc. s. m. of *meus* 1B Gr
mihī dat. s. of *ego*
mīles *mīlit-is* 3m. soldier 2C

mīlia *mīl-um* 3n. pl. thousands (see *mille*) 2A Gr.
militār-is e military 5E(ii)
mille 1,000 (pl. *mīlia*) 2A Gr.
minimē very little; no 3C Gr
mini-us a um smallest, fewest, least 3A Gr.
minor 1 dep. I threaten (+ dat.) 2B
minor *minōr-is* smaller, fewer, less 3A Gr.
minus (adv.) less 3C Gr.
mīr-us a um amazing, wonderful 6B(v)
mīs-: see *mittō*
miser *miser-a* um miserable, unhappy, wretched 1C
miserand-us a um to be pitied 5D(i)
miseret 2 it moves (x acc.) to pity (for y gen.) 5C Gr.
misericors *misericord-is* compassionate 5D(i)
miss-: see *mittō*
mittō 3 *mīsī* *missus* I send 1F; throw 6C(ii)
modest-us a um chaste, modest, discreet 5A(ii)
modo now 2A; only 4F(ii)
nōn modo . . . *sed etiam* not only . . . but also 4F(ii)
modo *modo* at one time at another 5E iii
mod-us ī 2m. way, fashion, manner 4C(ii)
moenia *moen-um* 3n. pl. walls, fortifications 4E iii

Total learning vocabulary: Latin-English

monere 2 I advise warn 1C

mons mont-is 3m

mountain 5A ii

morā ac 1f delay 4C ii

more in the manner of,

like, + gen 5F iii

morior 3 4 dep *mortuus* 1

die am dying 4F ii

morimur 3f death 2L

moriturus 3m way

habit custom, pl

character 2C

mot- see *movent*

motus 2 *motus* 1

remove from abt

move cause begin

5A iii

nox noct 2B

nubet nubet 3f

woman wife 2C

nudus 1 *nudus* 3f

nude crowd,

number 4L ii

natus by much 1f

4B vi

natus (adv) much 3B

Gr

natus a um much many

1B

natus *natus* 3m gift

datv 6A ii

natus 1 I change 3f

exchange (A ii)

N

natus for 1A

natus 1 I tell, relate 5A i

natus ac 1f nature 5B ii

natus a um born of from

ablt 4C ii

natus 1 I sail 4F i

natus *natus* 3f ship 3B

natus ac 1m sailor 4D ii

natus (added to the first

word of a

sentence) 1F

natus + subj not to' that

x should not 4F

Gr, 'lest', in order

that not in order

not to 5A Gr,

that, 'lest' 5D Gr,

+ pert subj don't

5F Gr

natus *quidem* yet even

emphasising the

word in between

6B i

natus *quod* 'that' no one 4F

Gr, in order that

no one 5A Gr

natus and not either,

nor 1D

natus est it is necessary

(for x) out to x 4B

3D

natus *stultus* *stultus* 3f

necessity 5F i

natus 1 I kill 2C

natus *as* a um wicked

vix criminal 4D i

natus *negligens* 1f

carelessness 4C i

natus *negligens* 3 *negligens* 1f

ignore, overlook,

neglect 4B ii

natus 1 I deny say that x

is not the case

(acc, + int, 4A ii)

natus *negotium* 2m business,

work, datv 4A ii

natus *negotium* 1f

business 1f

natus *quid* *negotium* what (ot)

business problem

trouble 1f

natus *nemo* 3m no one

nobody 3C

natus and not,

neither nor also

1C

natus *nequitus* ac 1f wickedness

4E ii

natus 4 I do not know

2B

natus *ignarus* 1f ignorant of

gen 2B

natus *natus* 6C ii

natus + subj and not

to', 'and that x

should not 4F i

natus *niger* 1f black 3A

natus *nihil* 1f nothing 1f

natus *nihil* 1f value,

worthless 3C

natus *nihil* 1f every class

5C ii

natus *nihil* 1f or 1f

1f or 1f

natus *nihil* 1f or 1f

1f or 1f

natus *nihil* 1f or 1f

1f or 1f

natus 3 dep 1f or 1f

1f or 1f

natus *nihil* 1f or 1f

1f or 1f

natus *nihil* 1f or 1f

1f or 1f

natus *nihil* 1f or 1f

1f or 1f

natus 2 1f arm + dat

1C i

natus by night 6C ii

natus + int 1f or 2B

Gr

natus *nolle* *nolui* 1 refuse,

am or was not

+ int 2A

natus *nomen* 3m name

1D

natus 1 I name 3C ii

natus not 1A

natus *natus* 1f or 1f

1B, vii

natus *natus* 9f 5C Gr

natus not yet 5B iii

natus surely 3C

natus a um ninth 5C Gr

natus we 1F Gr

Total learning vocabulary: Latin-English

natus 3 *natus* *notus* 1 get to

know (perfect

tenses = I know etc)

5B ii

natus *notus* a um our 2A

natus a um know n, well-

known 5B(i)

natus see *natus*

natus a um new 4C ii

natus *notus* 3f night 2A

natus 1 I strip 4F ii

natus a um naked (1D ii)

natus a um no none 1B

gen s nullus, dat

s null (see 2B Gr)

natus *natus* 1f or 1f

6B(vii)

natus surely not? 4A

Gr, (+ subj)

whether (indirect

question) 5F Gr

natus *natus* 2m number

4D ii

natus *natus* 2m coin, pl

money 2A

natus never 1C

natus now 1A

natus 1 I announce,

proclaim 3A

natus *natus* 2m messenger

4A(ii)

natus *natus* 1f pl

marriage rites 1E

O

natus (+ acc, on account of,

because of 3A

natus 1 I am firm hold

out, persist 6A, vi

natus 3 dep *natus* 1f

forget 2B, (+ gen,

5D, iv,

natus *natus* a um dark

obscure, mean,

ignoble 6D(ii)

natus 1 I beseech, beg

2A

natus see *natus*

natus 2 *natus* *natus* 1

besiege 5B(ii)

natus 1 *natus* 1 stand in

the way of, obstruct

(+ dat) 3D

natus *natus* 3f

opportunity 5E(i)

natus I'm done for 1E

natus 3 *natus* *natus* 1

fall, die 5G(ii), set

6A(iv)

natus 3 *natus* *natus* 1 kill

4E(i)

natus 1 I seize 5C ii

natus 3 *natus* *natus* 1

run to meet, meet,

attack + dat)

6C, iv

natus a um eighth 5C Gr

natus eight 2A Gr

natus *natus* 8) 5C Gr

natus *natus* 2m eye 1C

natus 3 *natus* *natus* 1

meet with, offend

6B ii

natus *natus* 2m duty, job 2A

natus *natus* 3 *natus* *natus* 1

gave up, let fall,

omit, leave aside

5G, ii,

natus altogether,

completely 6B(i)

natus *natus* *natus* *natus*

everything 1F

natus *natus* it is a burden (to

x dat) 5C(ii)

natus *natus* 3m load,

burden 1E

natus *natus* 1f attention 3D,

service 5A(iii)

natus *natus* (+ dat) I pay

attention to 3D

natus *natus* 3f pl

resources, wealth 5

natus *natus* 3f help,

aid) 5B(ii)

natus 1 dep 1 think 2B

natus 2 it is right fitting

for x (acc, to y

(inf), x acc) ought

to y (inf) 4B ii

natus *natus* 2m town 2A

natus *natus* a um strategic

suitable, favourable

5A (ii)

natus see *natus*

natus 3 *natus*,

natus 1 surprise,

catch, crush 2C

natus 1 I attack 3B

natus (adv) best 3C Gr

natus *natus* a um best 1D (see

3A Gr)

natus *natus* 3m job, work

task 2B, fortification

6C(ii)

natus *natus* (+ abl, there is

need of 5F(ii)

natus *natus* 2m oracle

6A(v)

natus *natus* 3f speech

5F(i)

natus *natus* 1 make

■
paene almost 5D(iv)
paenitet 2 x (acc.) regrets
 y (gen.) 5C Gr
palam openly 6B(ii)
pandō 3 *pandī* *passus* I
 spread out, extend,
 throw open, disclose
 6D(i)
par *par-is* equal
par *ac* equivalent to
pariter *ac* equally as 5G
 Gr
parcō 3 *peperci* *parcūsus* I
 spare (+ dat.) 4B(iv)
parēns *parent-is* 3m. father,
 parent; f. mother
 5B(iii)
pāra 2 I obey (+ dat.)
 3D
pariō 3,4 *peperi* *partus* I
 bring forth, bear,
 produce; obtain,
 acquire 6B(vii)
parō 1 I prepare, get
 ready; provide,
 obtain 5A(i)
pars *par-is* 3f. part 5A(iii);
 side 6B(vi) *alii*
pars (or *pars* . . .
pars) some . . .
 others 4B Gr
parv-us a *um* small 3A Gr
patefaciō 3/4 *patefeci*
patefactus I reveal,
 expose, throw open
 5C(iii)
pater *patr-is* 3m. father 1D
patrēs cōscripti =
 senators 5D(ii)
patior 3/4 *passus* endure,
 suffer; allow 2E
patri-a *ae* 1f. fatherland
 5D(ii)
pauca *ae* a few 5B(i)
paulatim little by little,
 gradually 5G(ii)

paulō slightly 4E(i)
paulum a little, slightly 3B
 Gr
pauper *pauper-is* 3m. poor
 man 1D; (adj.) poor
 1F Gr
pax *pac-is* 3f. peace 3B
pecūni-a *ae* 1f. money 1D
peior *peior-is* worse 3A
 Gr
peper-: see *pariō*
per (+ acc.) through, by
 2C; in the name of
 4G(i)
percuss-: see *feriō*
perdō 3 *perdidī* *perditus* I
 lose, destroy 6B(ii)
pereō *perire* *perī* *peritum* I
 perish, die 6A(vi)
perici- } see *perficiō*
perfect- }
perferō *perferre* *peruli*
perlātus I endure (to
 the end); complete;
 carry to; announce
 6A(vi)
perficiō 3/4 *perfeci* *perfectus*
 I finish, complete,
 carry out 2B; *perficio*
ut (+ subj.) I bring it
 about that 4F(ii)
pergō 3 *perrēxi* *perrēctum* I
 go on, go ahead,
 continue 2B
pericul-um ī 2n. danger 1B
 Gr
peri- see *pereō*
perī I'm lost 1E
perinde *ac* in like manner
 as, just as 5G Gr
perit-: see *pereō*
perlegō 3 *perlēgi* *perlēctus* I
 read through, peruse
 4C(i)
perscribo 3 *perscripsi*
perscriptus I write in
 detail 6B(i)

persequor 3 dep. *persecutus*
 I pursue, follow after
 5F(i)
persuadeo 2 *persuāsi*
persuasionem I persuade
 + dat.) (to / not to
ut/ne + subj.) 4F(i)
peruenio 4 *perueni*
peruentum I reach,
 arrive at, come to
 (ad + acc.) 4A(i)
pes *ped-is* 3m. foot 3C
per-: see *per-*
per- *per-* worst, very badly
 3C Gr
pessim-us a *um* worst 3A
 Gr
petō 3 *petiui* *petitus* I beg
 4F Gr.; seek 4G ii.
 proposition, court;
 attack, make for
 5A(ii); stand for
 (public office) 5A (iii)
Phaedr-a *ae* 1f. Phaedra
 Intro
pietās *pietatis* 3f. respect
 for the gods (also for
 family, home and
 native land) 6D(i)
pil-um ī 2n. heavy javelin
 5G(ii)
pirāt-a *ae* 1m. pirate 4D(i)
placet 2 it is pleasing (to x
 dat. to y inf.); x
 (dat.) votes (to y
 inf.) 3C
plānē clearly 2C
plān-us a *um* level, flat;
 plain, distinct 6D(iv)
plēn-us a *um* full (of)
 (+ gen. or abl.) 1A
plērique *plēraque* *plēraque*
 the majority of 5B(i)
plūrēs *plūr-ium* more 3A Gr
plūrimum (adv.) most, a
 lot 3C Gr.
plūrim-us a *um* most, very
 much 3A Gr.

plūs *plūr-is* 3n. more 3A
 Gr.; (adv.) more 3C
 Gr
poen-a *ae* 1f. penalty
 5C(iii)
polliceor 2 dep. I promise
 2B
pōnō 3 *posui* *positus* I
 place, position, put
 4A(ii); lay aside
 (= *dēpōnō*) 6D(iv)
pōns *pont-is* 3m. bridge
 5C(ii)
popul-us ī 2m. people
 4E(i)
porrō besides, moreover
 5C(iii)
portō 1 I carry 1A
port-us ūs 4m. harbour
 4D(ii)
poscō 3 *poposci* — I
 demand 1E
posit-: see *pōnō*
possideō 2 *posseō* *possessus*
 I have, hold, possess
 1B
possum *posse* *potui* I am
 able, can 2A; am
 powerful, have
 power (+ adv.) 4E
 (iii)
post (adv.) afterwards,
 later 2D; (+ acc.)
 behind, after 5G(i)
postea afterwards 4A(ii)
postquam (conjunction)
 after 5A(iii)
postremō finally 4C(ii)
postrem-us a *um* last 4E(i)
postulō 1 I demand 4F Gr
posu-: see *pōnō*
pot-: see *possum*
potenti-a *ae* 1f. power 5F(i)
potior 4 dep. I control
 (+ gen.) 6B(vi); gam
 control of (+ abl.)
 6C (iii)

potius *quam* rather than
 4C(i)
potu-: see *possum*
praebeō 2 I show, display;
inē *praebeō* I show
 myself (to be x: acc
 adj./noun) 5C(iii);
 provide, offer 6D(iv)
praecept-: see *praecipio*
praecipio 3/4 *praecēpi*
praeceptus I instruct,
 give orders to
 (+ dat.) (to / not to
ut/ne + subj.) 5B(ii)
prae- *pr-* *pr-* *pr-* *pr-* *pr-*
 famous, outstanding,
 brilliant 4D(ii)
praed-a *ae* 1f. booty 2D
praedō *praedōn-is* 3m.
 pirate; robber 4D(i)
praefect-us ī 2m. captain,
 prefect; (adj.) in
 charge of (+ dat.)
 4D(i)
praeficiō 3/4 *praefici*
praefectus I put (x
 acc.) in charge of (y
 dat.) 5G(i)
praemi-um ī 2n. reward,
 prize 5B(ii)
praesēns *praesent-is* present
 6B(iii)
praesidi-um ī 2n.
 protection, defence,
 guard 4G(i)
praesum *praesesse* *praesui* I
 am in charge of
 (+ dat.) 3D
praeterea besides,
 moreover 4A(iv)
praetereō *praeterire* *praeterii*
praeteritus I pass by,
 neglect, omit 6A(vii)
praetor *praetōr-is* 3m.
 praetor (Roman state
 official) 4B(iv)
precor 1 dep. I pray 2B

premo 3 *pressi* *pressus* I
 press, oppress 6D(iv)
primō at first 4A(iv)
primum (adv.) first
ubi *primum* as soon as
 5B(i)
quam *primum* as soon as
 possible 5E(ii)
prim-us a *um* first 4C (ii)
in primis especially
 5A(i)
princeps *princip-is* 3m
 leader, chieftain,
 (adj.) first 4E(i)
pristin-us a *um* former;
 original 5G(ii)
prius (adv.) before,
 earlier; first 5A(iii)
priusquam (conjunction)
 before 5E Gr
pro (+ abl.) for, in return
 for; on behalf of; in
 front of 2E; instead
 of 5B(ii); in
 accordance with
 5G(i)
procurrō 3 *prōcurre*
prōcursum I run
 forward, advance
 6C(i)
proeli-um ī 2n. battle 3B
proficiō 3 dep. *profectus* I
 set out 3B
profugio 3/4 *profūgi* — I
 escape, flee away
 4F(ii)
prōgredior 3/4 *prōgressus* I
 advance 2B
prohibeō 2 I prevent,
 hinder, keep x (acc.)
 from y (abl.)
ā(ab) + abl.) 5A(iii)
prōiciō 3/4 *prōicē* *prōiectus*
 I throw down 6C(iv)
prōmittō 3 *prōmisi*
promissus I promise
 1E

prope (adv.) almost;
(+ acc.) near 4B(i)
properō 1 I hurry, make
haste 5E(i)
propius nearer 5C(i)
propōnō 3 *prōposui*
prōpositus 1 set
before; imagine;
offer 5D(i)
propter (+ acc.) on
account of 2E
prōvideō 2 *prōvidī* *prōvisus*
1 take care of (that)
5D(ii)
prōvinci-a ae 1f. province
4C(ii)
proxim-us a um nearest,
next 4F(i)
pudet 2 x (acc.) is
ashamed at/for y
(gen.) 5C Gr.
pudor pudōr-is 3m
modesty, sense of
shame 6D(iv)
puell-a ae 1f. girl 1D
puer puer-i 2m. boy 1D Gr
pugn-a ae 1f. battle, fight
5E(ii)
pugnō 1 I fight 2D
pugn-us ī 2m. fist 3C
pulcher pulchr-a um
beautiful 1D; (sup)
pulcherrimus a um 3A
Gr.; (comp.)
pulehrior pulchrior-is
3A Gr.
p. m. 4 I punish 5C(ii)
pūtrd-us a um rotten 2E
pūtō 1 I think 4A(ii)

sciō 4 I know 1F
scribō 3 scripsī scriptus I write 2A
scrips- I see scribō
script- I see scribō
sē himself, herself, itself / themselves 3B Gr
sēcūm with/to himself, herself 1E
secund-us a um second 5C Gr.
secūris secūr-is 3f axe 4D(ii)
secut-: see sequor
sed but 1A
sēdecim 16 5C Gr
semel once
cum semel as soon as 6A(iv)
semper always 1A
senāt-us ūs 4m. senate 4A(iii)
senex sen-is 3m. old man 1B
sēns-: see sentio
sententi-a ae 1f. opinion; judgement; sentence, maxim 5C(iii)
sentio 4 sēnsī sēnsus I feel, understand; perceive, realise 4A(ii)
septem seven 2A Gr
septendecim 17 5C Gr.
septim-us a um seventh 5C Gr
septuagintā 70 5C Gr.
sepulch(r)-um ī 2n. tomb 6A(v)
sequor 3 dep. secūsus I follow 2B
sermō sermōn-is 3m. conversation, discussion 4B(iii)
serv-a ae 1f. slave-woman Intro
servō 1 I keep safe, preserve 4C(ii)
serv-us ī 2m. slave 1A

sēsē = sē 5C(ii)
seu (or siue) . . . seu (or siue) whether . . . or 6A(vii)
seuēr-us a um strict, stern 5D(ii)
sex six 2A Gr
sexagintā 60 5C Gr
vi-us a um sixth 5C Gr
si if 1A
si + pres. subj., pres subj. 'if x were to happen, y would happen' 4G Gr
si + impf. subj., impf subj. 'if x were happening (now), y would be happening' (sometimes: 'if x had happened, y would have happened') 4G Gr
si + plupf. subj., plupf subj. 'if x had happened, y would have happened' 5F Gr
quod si but if 6B(vii)
sic thus, in this way, so 2B
Sicili-a ae 1f. Sicily 4C(ii)
sicutī (or sicut) (just) as 5C(ii)
sidus sider-is 3n. star 6A(v)
sign-um ī 2n. seal, signal, sign 2D; statue 4A(iii), standard, trumpet-call 5G(i)
silu-a ae 1f. wood 6D(ii)
sim pres. subj. of sum
simil-is e alike, similar, like (+ gen.) 2E
similis ac similar to 5G Gr
simul at the same time 4B(iii); together 6A(vii); = simulatque as soon as 6B(iv)

simulacr-um ī 2n. image 4A(i)
simulatque (or simulac or simul) as soon as 6B(iv)
simulō 1 I feign 5B(ii)
sin but if 6B(viii)
sine (+ abl.) without 2D
singul- ae a individual, one by one 6D(iv)
sinister sinistr-a um left unfavourable 5G(i)
sino 3 sinī situs I allow 3C
siue (or seu) . . . siue (or seu) whether . . . or 6A(vii)
soci-us ī 2m. ally, friend 5A(iii)
sol sol-is 3m. sun 2A
soleō 2 semi-dep. solutus I am accustomed, am used (+ inf.) 4A(iii)
solit-: see soleo
sollicitō 1 I bother, worry 2E
solum (adv.) only 4B(iii)
nōn solum . . . sed etiam not only . . . but also 4F(ii)
soluō 3 solui solutus I release, undo 2D
sol-us a um (gen. s. solius; dat. s. soli) alone 4B(iii); lonely 6D(ii)
somni-um ī 2n. dream 1B
somi-us ī 2m. sleep 6A(iii)
soror sorōr-is 3f. sister 1D
spati-um ī 2n. space; time 6B(vi)
spērō 1 I hope; expect 5E(ii)
spēs spēs-ī 5f. hope(s); expectation 5B(i)
Staphyl-a ae 1f. Staphyla Intro
statim at once 1C
stel-: see stō
stil-us ī 2m. stylus (for writing in wax) 2A

stō 1 steti statum I stand 1C
studi-um ī 2n. enthusiasm, zeal 5B(ii)
stultē stupidly 4C(ii)
stult-us a um stupid 2B
suāvis e sweet, pleasant, delightful 6A(i)
sub (+ abl.) beneath, under 1A
subitō suddenly 3D
sublat-: see tollo
subsidi-um ī 2n. reserve, help 5G(i)
succurrō 3 succurrī
succursum I run to help, assist (+ dat.) 5G(ii)
sum esse fui futūrus I am Intro
summ-us a um highest, top of 1G
summum supplicium the death penalty 4G(ii)
sūmō 3 sūmpsī sūmptus I take; put on; eat
supplicium sūmō (dē + abl.) I exact the penalty (from) 5D(i)
sumpt-: see sūmo
sūmpt-us ūs 4m. expense(s) 2A
super (adv.) more than enough; above, over; (+ acc /abl.) over, above; (+ abl.) about 6A(v)
superior superiōr-is higher; earlier 6C(iv)
superō 1 I conquer, overcome; get the upper hand 3B
supplex supplic-is (adj.) suppliant (also as noun) 5D(iv)
supplici-um ī 2n. punishment
summum supplicium the death penalty 4G(ii)

supplicium sūmō (dē + abl.) I exact the penalty (from) 5D(i)
supplicō 1 I make prayers (to) (+ dat.) 1B
surgō 3 surrexi surrectum I rise, arise, get up 6D(ii)
suspicio 1 dep. I suspect 2D
sustineo 2 sustinui sustentus I withstand; support 6C(ii)
sustul-: see tollō
su-us a um his, hers / theirs 3B
Syracūs-ae ārum 1f. pl. Syracuse 4D(i)
(Syracūsīs at Syracuse)
Syracūsān-us ī 2m. person from Syracuse, Syracusan 4A(iv)

T
tabell-ae ārum 1f. pl. writing-tablets 2A
taceō 2 I am silent 1C
tacit-us a um silent 2D
tact-: see tangō
tāl-is e of such a kind 5A Gr.
tālis . . . quālis of such a kind as 5G Gr.
tam so 2B
tam . . . quam as . . . as 5G Gr.
tamen however, but (second word) 1B
tamquam as though 5G Gr.
tandem at length 1B
tangō 3 tetigi tāctus I touch, lay hands on 1G
tantī . . . quāntī of as much value . . . as 2E Gr.

tant-us a um so great, so much, so important 4B(iii)
tantus . . . quantus as much . . . as 5G Gr
tard-us a um slow 4E(ii)
tecūm with you/yourself 3C
tegō 3 tēxi tēctus I cover 5G(ii)
tel-um ī 2n. weapon 5A(iii)
templ-um ī 2n. temple 4A(i)
temptō 1 I try, test, attempt; attack 5E(ii)
tempus tempor-is 3n. time 2D
tendō 3 tetendi tentus (or tēnsus) I stretch (out); offer; direct; travel 5D(iv); strive, fight 5G(ii)
tenebr-ae ārum 1f. pl. shadows, darkness 6D(iii)
teneō 3 tenui tentus I hold 3D
terr-a ae 1f. land 3B
terreō 2 I frighten 6B(viii)
terribil-is e dreadful, frightening 5E(i)
tert-i-us a um third 5C Gr
testis test-is 3m. witness 4F(i)
tetig-: see tangō
thalam-us ī 2m. chamber, bedchamber 6D(iv)
thēsaur-us ī 2m. treasure 1B
timeō 2 I fear, am afraid of 1A; (nē + subj.) am afraid that/lest 5D Gr.
timid-us a um frightened, fearful 5C(ii)
timor timōr-is 3m. fear 6B(vi)

tollō 3 *sublātus* I lift, remove, take away 4A(iii)

tor-us ī 2m. couch, bed 6D(iv)

tot so many 4E(iii)
tot . . . quot as many . . . as 5G Gr

tōt-us a *um* (gen. s. *tōtius*; dat. s. *tōtī*) whole, complete 4A(i)

trādō 3 *trādīt* *trādītus* I hand over 5C(ii)

trans (+ acc.) across 6A(vii)

trecent-ī a *a* 300 2A Gr.

trēdecim 13 5C Gr

trēs *tri-a* three 2A Gr.

trīgintā 30 5C Gr

trist-is e sad, gloomy, unhappy 1F

trucidō 1 I butcher 5F(ii)

tū you (s) 1A

tueor 2 dep. *tutus* (or *tutus*) I look after, protect; look at 6B(viii)

tul-: see *ferō*

tum then 1D

cum . . . tum both . . . and 5D(ii)

tunic-a a *1f.* tunic 6D(iv)

turb-a a *1f.* crowd, mob 1F

turp-is e disgusting, filthy, outrageous, ugly 4B(i)

tūt-us a *um* safe 4G(i)

tu-us a *um* your(s) (s.) 1C

V

vacu-us a *um* empty; free (from. + abl. or *ā(ab)* + abl.) 6B(vii)

ualdē very much, strongly 6B(v)

ualē goodbye! 1D

ualeō 2 I am strong; am well, am powerful, am able (cf

ualē = 'Farewell!' 'Goodbye!') 6A(vii)

uari-us a *um* diverse, various 6D(i)

ubi where (at)? 1E; when? 1F

ubi primum as soon as 5A(i)

ubicumque wherever 6B(vii)

-ue (added onto the end of a word: cf. *-ne* and *-que*) or 6A(vii)

uehementis *uehement-is* impetuous, violent 5D(i)

uehementer strongly 4F(i)

uel . . . uel either . . . or 5A(ii)

uel even 5D(iv)

uelim pres. subj. of *uolō*

uellem impf. subj. of *uolō*

uelut as, just as 5C(ii)

ueniō 4 *uenī* *uentum* I come, arrive 3A

uent-: see *ueniō*

uent-us ī 2m. wind 6D(i)

uerber *uerber-is* 3n. blow; whip 4F(i)

uerberō 1 I flog, beat 1C

uerb-um ī 2n. word 2B

uereor 2 dep. *ueritus* I fear, am afraid 5D(ii)

(*ne* + subj. that/lest 5D Gr.)

uerit-: see *uereor*

uērō indeed 2D

Verrēs *Verr-is* 3m. Verres 4A(i)

uersor 1 dep. I am occupied, stay, dwell; am in a certain condition 5G(ii)

uers-us us 4m. verse; pl. poetry 5A(ii)

uertō 3 *uertī* *uersus* I turn (trans.) 6C(ii)

uerum but 2D

uer-us a *um* true 3C

uestāl-is e Vestal

(belonging to the goddess Vesta) 5D(ii)

uester *uest-r-a* um your(s) (pl) 2A

uestis *vest-is* 3f. clothes, clothing, dress 4D(ii)

uetō 1 *uetū* *uetitus* I forbid 4A(iv)

uetus *ueter-is* old; long-established 5A(i)

uexō 1 I annoy, trouble, worry 1C

ui-a a *1f.* way, road 2A

uic-: see *uis*

uicīn-us ī 2m. neighbour 1C

uict-: see *uincō*

uictōri-a a *1f.* victory 3A

uideō 2 *uīdī* *uīsus* I see 1B

uideor 2 passive *uīsus* I seem 2C; am seen 4D Gr

uīgintī 20 5C Gr

uincō 4 *uinxī* *uinctus* I bind 2A

uincō 3 *uicī* *uictus* I conquer 2D

uinc(u)l-um ī 2n. chain, bond 4F(ii)

uīn-um ī 2n. wine 6A(i)

uir *uir-ī* 2m. man,

husband 1D

uulgō *uulgū-is* 3f. young girl, virgin 4A(iii)

uirtūs *uirtūt-is* 3f.

manliness, courage; goodness 1G

uis-: see *uideō*/*uideor*

uīs 2nd s. of *uolō*

uīs irr. force, violence

(acc. *uim*; abl. *ui*), pl.

uīrēs *uīr-um* 3f

strength; military

forces 4A(i)

uīt-a a *1f.* life 2E

uiuō 3 *uixī* *uiuum* I am alive, live 5A(iii)

uīu-us a *um* alive, living 5G(iii)

ūll-us a *um* (gen. s. *ullus*, dat. s. *ūllī*) any (cf

nūllus) 4B(i)

ultim-us a *um* furthest; last; greatest 6A(vii)

umbr-a a *1f.* shadow, darkness; shade, ghost 6D(ii)

umer-us ī 2m. shoulder 6D(ii)

umquam ever 3A

und-a a *1f.* water, wave 6D(ii)

unde from where, whence 5G(ii)

undecim 11 5C Gr

undēuīgintī 19 5C Gr.

unguent-um ī 2n. ointment 1B

ūniuers-us a *um* all

together; whole, entire 6C(ii)

ūn-us a *um* (gen. s. *ūnūs*; dat. s. *ūnī*) one 2A

Gr.

uōbiscum with you (pl.) 3C

uocō 1 I call 1A

uolō *uelle* *uolūi* I wish, want 1E

uoluntās *uoluntāt-is* 3f will, wish 5D(ii)

uoluō 3 *uoluī* *uolūtus* I roll, turn over (trans.) 5G(iii)

uoluptās *uoluptāt-is* 3f desire, love, passion 3D

uōs you (pl.) 1F Gr

uot-um ī 2n. vow, prayer 6D(i)

uōx *uōc-is* 3f. voice; word 2E

urbis *urb-is* 3f. city 2D

ūs-: see *ūtor*

usque continually, without a break

usque ad (+ acc.) right up to 6A(iv)

ut (+ indic.) how! 1C; (+ indic.) as, when

1D; (+ subj.) to, that . . . should 4F(i)

(and 4F Gr.); (+ subj.) that (after

uicidit, *perficiō* etc.) 4F Gr. (+ subj.) that

(result) 5A Gr. (+ subj.) in order to/

that (purpose) 5A

Gr.; (+ subj.) that . . . not (after verbs

of fearing) 5D Gr.

uterque *utraque* *utrumque* each of two, both 5G Gr.

utī = *ut* 4B(i)

utinam I wish that 5C Gr

ūtor 3 dep. *ūsus* I use, make use of; adopt

(+ abl.) 4B(i)

utpote (*quī quae quod*) as is natural (for one who) (+ subj.) 5E

Gr.

utrumque on both sides 3B

utrum . . . an (double question) A or B?

(negative *annōn* = or not?) 5D(i); (+ subj.) whether . . . or

(indirect question) (negative *neque* = or not) 5D(i)

uulnerō 1 I wound 5G(iii)

uulnus *uulner-is* 3n.

wound 5G(iii)

uult 3rd s. of *uolō*

uultus 2nd pl. of *uolō*

uult-us ūs 4m. face,

expression 5G(iii)

uxor *uxōr-is* 3f. wife 1D

English-Latin vocabulary

Note

This vocabulary is compiled specifically for the English-Latin exercises in the Grammar and contains only those words and forms required to complete these successfully.

A

a(n): simply use noun; see also 'a certain'	affair(s) <i>rēs rē-i</i> 5f	dum + same tense as main verb
abandon <i>relinquō</i> 3	affirm <i>affirmō</i> 1	Allobroges <i>Allobrog-ēs</i>
able, be <i>possum posse potuī</i>	afraid	<i>Allobrog-um</i> 3m. pl.
about to: use future participle	be . . . (of) <i>timeō</i> 2	allowed, x is <i>licet</i> 2 (x (dat.) <i>licet</i> + inf.)
absence, in x's absence: use <i>absēns absent-is</i> agreeing with x	be . . . (that) <i>vereor</i> 2 dep. <i>veritus</i>	ally <i>soci-us</i> 1 2m
absent (use with noun to tr. 'in x's absence') <i>absēns absent-is</i>	<i>nē</i> + subj.; <i>timeō</i> 2	alone <i>sol-us a um</i>
accordance: in accordance with <i>perinde ac</i> (+ indic.)	<i>nē</i> + subj.; <i>metuō</i> 3	already <i>iam</i>
account (noun) <i>ratio</i> <i>ratio-nis</i> 3f.; I make an account <i>rationem habeo</i>	<i>metuī</i> <i>nē</i> + subj (ut + subj. that not)	also <i>quoque; etiam, et, not only . . . but also nōn solum . . . sed etiam</i>
accuse <i>accūsō</i> 1	be . . . to: as above, but + inf	although <i>quamquam; or use abl. abs. with present/perfect participle; cum</i> + subj.; <i>quamuīs</i> + subj
accustomed, be <i>soleō</i> 2 (semi-dep.) <i>solutus</i>	after <i>postquam</i> + perf indicative; if a deponent verb, use perfect participle	always <i>semper</i>
a certain <i>quidam quaedam quoddam; see 92</i>	again <i>iterum; (= after this) posthac</i>	am: see 'be'
achieve one's object <i>rem perficiō</i> 3/4 <i>perfectus perfectus</i>	against in (+ acc.), <i>ad</i> (+ acc.)	ambassador <i>lēgāt-us</i> 1 2m.
act (verb) <i>agō</i> 3 <i>ēgī; faciō</i> 3/4 <i>fēcī; (noun) facinus facinor-is</i> 3n.	against: fighting against <i>cum</i> + abl.	amid: use abl. (of attendant circumstances); or <i>inter</i> (+ acc.)
actual <i>ipse ipsa ipsum</i>	against (= contrary to what) <i>contrā ac</i> (+ indic.)	Amphitruo <i>Amphitruō</i> <i>Amphitruōn-is</i> 3m.
address <i>adloquor</i> 3 dep. <i>adlocutus</i>	agreement, be in <i>cōsentiō</i> 4 <i>cōsēnsī cōsēnsus</i>	and <i>et; atque/ac</i>
advance <i>prōgredior</i> 3/4 dep. <i>prōgressus</i>	aid <i>oper-a ae</i> 1f.; <i>auxili-um</i> 1 2n.	announce <i>nūntiō</i> 1
advantage: to x's advantage: use dat. of x	Alcumena <i>Alcumēn-a ae</i> 1f	Antonius <i>Antōni-us</i> 1 2m
	alive, be <i>uiuō</i> 3	anxiety <i>cūr-a ae</i> 1f.
	alive <i>uiu-us a um</i>	anxiety in case <i>cūra</i> <i>nē</i> + subj
	all <i>omn-is e</i>	anyone (after negatives) <i>quisquam</i>
	all the best men <i>optimus</i> <i>quisque</i>	anything (after negatives) <i>quicquam</i>
	all the time = while	

English-Latin vocabulary

(= <i>quid + quam</i>)	at: in time phrases use abl. alone	conditional on the completion of the before clause) <i>antequam</i> + subj.
appear <i>videor</i> 2 dep.; <i>appareō</i> 2	at home <i>domī</i>	begin <i>precor</i> 1 dep.; <i>orō</i> 1; <i>obsecrō</i> 1
appearance <i>faciēs, faci-ēs</i> 5f	at once <i>statim</i>	believe <i>credō</i> 3 <i>credidī</i> <i>creditum</i> (+ dat.); in passive used impersonally: x (dat.) is believed by y (<i>ā</i> + abl.)
approach <i>adeō adire; adgredior</i> 3/4 dep (both use <i>ad</i> + acc.)	at the house of <i>apud</i> (+ acc.)	belonging to x: use dat. or gen. of x
arc: see 'be'	at the same time <i>simul</i>	beseech <i>orō</i> 1; <i>obsecrō</i> 1
arise <i>exorior</i> 4 dep. <i>exortus</i> (gerund <i>exortundum</i>)	attack <i>adgredior</i> 3 dep.	besiege <i>obsidē</i> 2 <i>obsēdī</i> <i>obsessus</i>
armed men <i>arm-a ōrum</i> 2n. pl.; <i>armāt-i ōrum</i> 2m. pl.	aggressor; <i>petō</i> 3 <i>petiui</i> <i>petitus</i>	best <i>optimus a um</i>
army <i>exercit-us ūs</i> 4m	attempt <i>cōnor</i> 1 dep.	all the best men <i>optimus quisque</i>
arrive (at) <i>perueniō</i> 4 <i>peruenī peruentum ad</i> (+ acc.) (except names of towns and one-town islands, there acc. only)	attention, pay <i>operam dō</i> 1 (to x: dat.)	bestow <i>dō dare</i>
as: see 'consider'	away from <i>ā(ab)</i> (+ abl.)	better <i>melior meli-us</i>
as much as: see 'worth as much as'	axe <i>secūris secūr-is</i> 3f	I'd better = <i>mihi melius est</i> + inf.
as (e.g. as you ought) <i>ut</i> (+ indic.); just as <i>ita . . . ut</i>		big <i>ingēns ingent-is</i>
as x . . . as y <i>tam</i> (+ adj.) . . . <i>quam</i>		black <i>niger nigra nigrum</i>
as soon as possible <i>quam primum</i>		blame <i>castigō</i> 1
as (time): use abl. abs with present participle or any case of present participle, depending on construction of sentence		bold <i>audāx audāc-is</i>
as follows <i>sic</i>		boldness <i>audāc-i-a ae</i> 1f.
as though <i>tamquam</i> (+ subj.)		booty <i>praed-a ae</i> 1f.
ask <i>quaerō</i> 3 <i>quaesiui</i> <i>quaesitus</i>		bore: x is a . . . to: x (nom.) <i>taediō est</i> to y (dat.)
ask for <i>rogō</i> 1 (+ acc.)		born (of) <i>nāt-us a um</i> (+ abl. of origin)
asleep, be <i>dormiō</i> 4		both . . . and <i>et . . . et</i>
assert <i>affirmō</i> 1		bother <i>solicitō</i> 1
assist <i>succurrō</i> 3 (+ dat.)		boy <i>puer puer-i</i> 2m.
astuteness <i>astuti-a ae</i> 1f.		brave <i>fort-is e</i>
		break <i>frango</i> 3 <i>frēgi fractus</i>
		bring <i>porto</i> 1. <i>fero ferre</i>
		bring to land (of a ship) <i>appellō</i> 3 <i>appuli</i> <i>appulsus</i>
		bring with <i>adducō</i> 3 <i>adduxi adductus</i>
		brother <i>frāter frāt-ris</i> 3m
		burden <i>onus oner-is</i> 3n

English-Latin vocabulary

be a . . . on *oneri esse*:
 x (nom.) is a burden
 on y (dat.)
 burdensome, x is . . . to
 y: x (nom.) *oneri est*
 to y (dat.)
 burn (intrans.) *cōnflagrō* 1
 burn (trans.) *incendō* 3
incendi incēsus
 business *negōti-um* ī 2n.;
rēs rē-i 5f.
 do business: see 'do'
 but *sed* (1st word); *autem*
 (2nd word); *tamen*
 (usu. 2nd word),
 (= except) *nisi*
 butcher *trucidō* 1
 by *ā* or *ab* + abl. (often
 after passive verbs);
 by —ing abl. of
 gerund
C
 cadaver *cadāuer cadāuer-is*
 3n.
 call *uocō* 1
 call back *reuocō* 1
 called: use *nōmine* (abl. of
nōmen)
 call together *conuocō* 1
 calm *acquō animo*
 camp *castr-a* ōrum 2n. pl.
 can *possum posse*
 captain *praefect-us* ī 2m.
 capture *capiō* 3/4 *cēpī*
captus
 care for *cūrō* 1
 care, take *prōuideō* 2
 carry *portō* 1; *ferō ferre tuli*
 cast lots *sortior* 4 dep.
 catch sight of *conspicor* 1
 dep.
 Catiline *Catilin-a* ae 1m
 certain (= a) *quidam*
quaedam quoddam
 certainly *certē*
 chain wine(u)l-um ī 2n

change (intransitive) *se*
mutāre
 chap: omit or use *uir uir-i*
 2m.; *homo homin-is*
 3m
 charge, be in . . . of
praesum praeesse
 (+ dat.)
 character *mōr-ēs mōr-um*
 3m. pl.
 cheer up *bonum animum*
habeō 2
 children *liber-i* ōrum 2m
 pl.
 Chrysalus *Chrýsal-us* ī
 2m
 Cicero *Cicerō Cicerōn-is*
 3m
 citizen *cīuis cīu-is* 3m.
 city *urbs urb-is* 3f. (city of
 x: put x in same case
 as *urbs*)
 claim *arguō* 3 *argui*
 clearly *plānē*
 Cleomenes *Cleomen-ēs*
Cleomen-is 3m
 clever *doct-us a um*
 coins *numm-i* ōrum 2m. pl.
 collect *colligō* 3 *collēgi*
 column *agmen agmin-is*
 3n.
 come *eō ire īi* *num;* *ueniō*
 4 *uēnī uentum*
 come out *exeō exire*,
ēgredior 3/4 dep.
 come to *adeō adire adi*
aditum
 come up to *accēdō* 3
accessī accessum
 command (noun) *imper-i*
um ī 2n.; (vb) *iubeō*
 2; *imperō* 1
 commander *imperātor*
imperātor-is 3m.; *dux*
duc-is 3m.
 commit *committō* 3
commisī commissus

compassionate *miserors*
miserord-is (3 adj.)
 complain *queror* 3 dep
questus
 complete *perficiō* 3/4
perfect perfectus,
cōnficiō 3/4 *confeci*
cōnfectus
 concerning *dē* (+ abl.)
 confirm *cōfirmō* 1
 conquer *uincō* 3 *uicī*
 conscript *cōscripsi-us a um*
 consider (x as y) *habeō* 2
 (x acc., y acc.);
arbitror 1 dep. (same
 construction)
 conspiracy *coniuratiō*
coniuratiōn-is 3f
 conspirator *coniurātor*
coniurātor-is 3m
 constellation *sign-um* ī 2n.
 consul *cōsul cōsul-is* 3m.
 consulship *cōsulāt-us* ūs 4m
 stand for consulship
cōsulātum petō 3
 contrary: see 'on the
 contrary'
 conversation *sermō*
sermōn-is 3m
 cook (noun) *coqu-us* ī
 2m.; (vb) *coquō* 3
 corpse *corpus corpor-is* 3n.;
cadāuer cadāuer-is 3n.
 courage *uirtūs uirtūt-is* 3f.
 coward(ly) *ignāu-us a um*
 for 'coward' use as
 noun
 crime *scelus sceler-is* 3n.
 criminal *scelest-us* ī 2m.
 cross *crux cruc-is* 3f
 crowd *turb-a* ae 1f.;
multitudo multitudin-is
 3f
 cup *pōcul-um* ī 2n.
 Curius *Curi-us* ī 2m.
 custom *mōs mōr-is* 3m
 cut (vb) *caedō* 3 *cecīdī*

English-Latin vocabulary

D
 danger *pericul-um* ī 2n.
 danger of x happening
periculum nē + subj
 dare *audeō* 2
 daring *audāx audāc-is*
 (adj.); *audāci-a* ae 1f
 (noun)
 daughter *fili-a* ae 1f
 day *di-ēs diē* 5m
 dead *mortu-us a um*
 dear me = *mē miserum/*
miseram
 death *mors mort-is* 3f
 death penalty *summ-um*
supplici-um ī 2n
 deceive *dēcipiō* 3/4 *dēcēpi*
dēceptus
 decide *placet* 2 *placuit*: x
 (dat.) decides to y
 (inf.); *cōstituō* 3
cōstituī cōstitutus
 (to: infinitive)
 declare *affirmō* 1
 deed *facinus facinor-is* 3n.,
 (= something
 already done) *fact-um*
 ī 2n
 defeat *uincō* 3 *uicī*
 defend *defendō* 3 *dēfendī*
dēfensus
 defendant: use *iste ista*
istum (see 91)
 delay (vb) *moror* (1 dep.);
commoror (1 dep.);
 (noun) *mor-a* ae 1f
 Demaenetus *Dēmaenet-us* ī
 2m
 demand *poscō* 3; *postulō* 1
 depart (= set out)
proficiscor 3 dep
profectus
 depart for *proficiscor ad*
 (+ acc.)
 desire (vb) *cupiō* 4
 destroy *dēleō* 2 *dēlēuī*
 destruction *exiti-um* ī 2n

devise *excogitō* 1
 die *morior* 3/4 dep.
mortuus; (= fall in
 battle) *occidō* 3 *occidī*
occāsum
 differently from *aliter ac*
 (+ indic.)
 difficult *difficil-is* e
 dinner *cēn-a* ae 1f.
 Diodorus *Diodōr-us* ī 2m
 disadvantage, to x's: use
 dat. of x
 disembark *in terram exeō*
 (exire *exiī exitum*)
 disregard (for) *neglegenti-a*
 ae 1f (+ gen.)
 disturb *commouēō* 2
commouī
 do *faciō* 3/4 *fēcī factus*; *agō*
 3 *ēgī āctus*; *gerō* 3
gessī gestus
 do business *negōti-um*
agō (3) or *gerō* (3)
 done for, I'm *perī*
 don't/do not (as
 command)
nōlī + infin.;
nē + perfect subj.
 door *foris for-is* 3f.; *ianu-a*
 ae 1f.
 doubt: use adj. *dubi-us a*
um (rephrase 'there's
 no doubt', as 'it is
 not doubtful')
 there is no . . . that *nōn*
dubium est quīn
 + subj. (see 174 for
 sequence)
 dowry *dos dōi-is* 3f.
 drag back *retrahō* 3 *retrāxi*
retractus
 draw *ferō ferre*
 draw up *instruō* 3
instruxī instructus
 drink *bibō* 3 *bibi*
 drive back *repellō* 3
reppulī

drunk *ēbri-us a um*
 duty *offici-um* ī 2n
 dwell *habuō* 1

E

each (man, woman,
 thing) *quisque*
quaeque quidque
 each individual *ūnus*
quisque
 each (of two) *uterque*
utroque utrumque
 easily *facile*
 easy *facil-is* e
 elect *creō* 1
 embark *in nāuem ingredior*
 3/4 *ingressus*
 embrace *complector* 3 dep
complexus; amplexor 1
 dep.
 encourage *hortor* 1 dep; x
 (acc.) to y (*ut* + subj.
 — neg. *nē*: see 134 for
 rules of sequence);
 (troops) *cohortor* 1
 dep. (with acc. or
ut + subj.)
 endure *ferō ferre*
 enemy *host-is host-is* 3m.
 enjoin *iubeō* 2 (x acc. to y
 inf.)
 enjoy *fruor* 3 dep. *fructus*
 (+ abl.)
 enough *satis* (+ gen.); or
 qualifying an adj.
 enter *intrō* 1; *ingredior* 3/4
 dep
 enthusiasm *studi-um* ī 2n
 enthusiasm for + gen.
 entrust *mandō* 1 x (acc.)
 to y (dat.)
 —er: use comparative adj
 escape *fugiō* 3/4; *profugiō*
 3/4 *profūgi*
 —est: use superlative adj.
 estimate *coniciō* 3/4 *conieci*
coniectus

Euchio *Euchiō Euchiōn-is* 3m
 even *etiam*
 event *res re-i* 5f
 ever *unquam*
 every *omn-is e*
 everything: use n. pl. of *omnis* or *omnis + res*
 everyone: use m. pl. of *omnis*
 evil *mal-us a um*
 exact (the penalty) *supplicium sumō* 3
 examine *inspicio* 3/4 *inspexi inspectus*
 excellence *virtus virtut-is* 3f
 excellent *optim-us a um*
 except *nisi*
 execute *nectō* 1
 exile *exsilium i* 2n.
 expenses *sumpt-us ūs* 4m
 expression *uult-us ūs* 4m
 extent, to such an *adeō*
 extremely: use superlative adj. or adv. or *summ-us a um* with a noun in abl. (e.g. 'extremely beautiful' = 'of very great beauty' abl.)
 eye *ocul-us i* 2m.

F

fail *dēsum dēesse* *defui + dat.*
 fall (often = die) *cadō* 3 *cecidī cāsum; occidō* 3 *occidī occāsum*
 family *famili-a ae* 1f.; *genus gener-is* 3n.
 famous *illūstr-is e*
 far from *longē ā* (ab) + abl.
 father *pater patr-is* 3m
 fatherland *patri-a ae* 1f.
 fear (vb) *timeō* 2; that . . .

not *ut + subj.*; (noun) *timor timōr-is* 3m.; *met-us ūs* 4m
 feign *simulō* 1
 ferocity *ferōci-a ae* 1f.
 fiercely *ferōciter*
 fight *pugnō* 1; *certō* 1, fight a war *bellum gerō*
 fighting *pugn-a ae* 1f.; *proeli-um i* 2n.; in 'fighting is going on' use impersonal passive of *pugnō* 1
 finally *postrēmō; tandem* (= at length)
 find *inueniō* 4 *inueni inuentus; repertiō* 4 *repperi repertus* (= something that was mislaid or lost)
 find out *cognōscō* 3 *cognōvi cognitus*
 finish *cōficiō* 3/4 *cōfeci cōfectus*
 fire (noun) *ignis ign-is* 3m.; *incendi-um i* 2n. (vb, = set alight) *accendō* 3 *accendi accensus*
 fist *pugn-us i* 2m
 fitting, it is *decei* (for x acc. to y infin.)
 flat-fish *mūrēn-a ae* 1f
 flight *fug-a ae* 1f.
 follow *sequor* 3 dep
 food *cib-us i* 2m
 fool (noun) *stult-us i* 2m.; (vb) *decipiō* 3/4 *dēcepi dēceptus*
 for: use dat.; (= because) *nam* (1st word), *enim* (2nd word); (= on behalf of) *pro* (+ abl.); for the sake of *causā* (+ gen.); *gratiā* (+ gen.) – placed after the noun

or phrase they qualify
 forbid *ueto* 1 *uetai uetitus*
 force *cōgō* 3 *coegi coactus* (x acc. to: mf.)
 forces *cōpi-ae ārum* 1f. pl., *exercit-us ūs* 2m
 foresee *prōuideō* 2 *prōiidi prouisus*
 forget *obliviſcor* 3 dep *oblitus*
 torum *for-um i* 2n
 free (vb) *liberō* 1
 freedom *libertās libertāt-is* 3f
 friend *amic-us i* 2m, *comit-is* 3m
 from (= away) *ā(ab) + abl.* or (= out of) *ē(ex) + abl.*; (= because of) use abl. of cause
 full (of) *plen-us a um* (+ gen.)
 Fulvia *Fulvi-a ae* 1f.
 Gabinus *Gabini-us i* 2m
 gain *adipiscor* 3 dep *adeptus*
 garland *coron-a ae* 1f
 Gaul *Galli-a ae* 1f
 Transalpine Gaul *Galli-a Trāsalpin-a Galli-ae Trāsalpin-ae* 1f
 Gavius *Gau-us i* 2m
 general *dux duc-is* 3m
 get in x's way *obstō* 1 (+ dat.)
 get ready (trans.) *comparō* 1; *parō* 1
 girl *puell-a ae* 1f
 give *do dare dedi* (x acc. to y dat.)
 give back *reddō* 3 *reddidi redditus*
 give oneself up *se tradere* (*trādidī trāditus*) (the

pronoun will change with the person: *mē trādō, tē trādis* etc.)
 give orders *iubeō* 2 (+ acc.); *imperō* 1 (+ dat.)
 give orders (that) *imperō ut + subj*
 gladly *laet-us a um*
 go *eō ire i* itum
 go around *circum-eo -ire -i -itum*
 go away *abeō abire abiit abitum; egredior* 3/4 dep. *egressus*
 gerundives *abeundum, egrediendum*
 go back *redeō redire*
 go forward *prōgredior* 3/4 *prōgressus*
 go in *ineō mīre; ingredior* 3/4 dep
 go out *exeo exire exit, egredior* (3/4 dep.)
 go on *pergō* 3
 go to *accedō* 3 *accessi*
 going to —: use future participle
 god *de-us i* 2m. (pl. *dī*: see 16); household god *Lar Lar-is* 3m
 gold *aur-um i* 2n
 good *bon-us a um*
 good! *bene*
 goodbye! *ualē*
 great *magn-us a um*; very great *maxim-us a um*, *summ-us a um*; so great *tant-us a um*
 greater *mai-or us*
 greed *cupidiās cupiditāt-is* 3f.; greed for x: use *cupidiās + gen.*
 Greek *Graec-us a um*
 guarantor *cognitor cognitōr-is* 3m.
 guard *custōs custōd-is* 3m.

H
 hand *man-us ūs* 4f
 hand over *trādō* 3 *trādidī traditus*
 happen *fiō fieri factus*; or use passive of *gerō* 3 *gessi gestus*
 it happens that *accidit* (3 *accidit*) *ut + subj.*
 harbour *port-us ūs* 4m.
 harm *noceō* 2 *nocui nocitum + dat.*; in the passive use impersonally: x (dat.) is harmed by y (*ā + abl.*)
 harmony *concordi-a ae* 1f
 has: see 'have'
 hated, x is . . . by y; x (nom.) *odiō est* to y (dat.)
 have *habeō* 2; or use *sum + dat.* of person who has, nom. of thing/person possessed; I have —ed: use perfect
 have/had to x: use gerundive of the x with *sum* (have to) *eram* (had to). The person who 'has to' is in the dat. when the verb is intransitive
 he: use verb in 3rd person singular; in indirect statement (acc. + inf.) use *sē* if it refers to subject of introductory verb, *eum* if to a different person
 head, be at the . . . of *praesum praesesse* (+ dat.)
 hear (of) *audiō* 4

her: use parts of *ea*
 here *hic*; (= to here) *hūc*
 hers: use gen. of *haec*, *illa* or *ea*
 hesitate *cūctor* 1 dep. (to: infin.)
 hide *cēlō* 1
 highest *summ-us a um*
 him: use *hic*, *ille* or *is*; in law-court speeches *iste* is often used when 'him' = 'the defendant'
 himself (acc.) *sē* (gen.) *sui* (dat.) *sibi* (abl.) *sē*; (speaks) to himself *sēcum*
 his: where it refers to the subject and there is no emphasis, use noun alone; where it refers to someone other than the subject, use gen. of *hic*, *ille* or *is*; if referring to subject with some emphasis use *su-us a um*
 hold *teneō* 2
 hold back *reprimō* 3 *repressi repressus; teneō* 2 *tenui tentus; retineō* 2 *retinui retentus*; x acc. from doing y: *quominus* or *nē + subj.*
 home (= to home) *domum*; (= at home) *domi*, (= from home) *domo*
 honour *honor honor-is* 3m.
 hope *spēs spē-i* 3f.
 horse *equ-us i* 2m
 hospitable *hospital-is e*
 hour *hōr-a ae* 1f.
 house *aed-ēs aed-um* 3f. pl.; *dom-us ūs* 4f. (irr. see 56)

in the house *domi*
household *famili-a ae* 1f.
household god *Lar Lar-*
is 3m.

how! *ut* (+ indic.); how
the matter stands: see
stands; how
(qualifying an
adjective) *quam*: may
introduce indirect
question (followed
by subj. verb)

how many *quot*
(introducing direct
or indirect question,
ind. questions have
subj. verb)

how much *quant-us a*
um (introduces both
direct and indirect
questions: ind.
questions have subj.
verb)

however *tamen* (usu. 2nd
word); *autem* 2nd
word or *sed* 1st
word

huge *ingēns ingent-is*
hurry *properō* 1
husband *uir uir-i* 2m.

I

I *ego* (only when
emphatic; otherwise
use 1st person
singular of verb
only)

idle *ignāu-us a um*

idleness *ignāui-a ae* 1f.
if *si*; (very occasionally
use abl. abs.); if . . .
not *nisi*

ignorant of *nesci-us a*
um + gen.

important, such an *tant-us*
a um

in *in* (+ abl.)
in case *nē* + subj.

in order (not) to
ut + subj., negative
nē; see 145 for rules
of sequence

in order to . . . more
quō + comp. adj./
adv. + subj. (see 148)

in *x* place: often just
abl. without *in*.
Some towns have a
special locative (see
under name of
town)

in *x*'s praetorship/
consulship etc.: plain
abl. name + abl. of
praetor, consul etc.

in *x* time: plain abl.
in *x* way *ita*; *sic*; or a
phrase in abl. with
mod-us i 2m.

in —ing: abl. of
gerund

inasmuch as *quippe*
quī + subj

individual: each
individual *ūnus*
quisque

inflamed *inflammāt-us a um*
innocent *innocēns innocent-*
is

inside (= to inside) *intrō*
instruct *praecipio* 3/4

praecēpi praecēptus x
(dat.) to / not to do
v (*ut/nē* + subj.; see
145 for rules of
sequence)

instruction: in 'an
instruction has been
given' use
impersonal passive of
praecipio 3/4 *praecēpi*
praecēptus: give the
instructions: see
'instruct'

intend(ing) to: use future
participle

into *in* + acc.

invite (someone to
something) *inuitō* 1
(*x* (acc.) to *v*
(*ad* + acc.))

is see 'be'

it: use 3rd person singular
of verb

Italy *Itali-a ae* 1f

J

join *adiungō* 3 *adiunxi*
adiūctus (transitive)
x (acc.) to *v* (dat.)

join someone or
something: *sē*
adiungere (+ dat.)

join battle with
proelium committō 3
commisi commissus
cum + abl

joy *laetitia-a ae* 1f.; *gaudi-*
um i 2n

joyful *laet-us a um* (*x* was
not a joyful event:
use adj. on its own,
or with *rēs*)

judge *iudex iudic-is* 3m

Jupiter *Iuppiter Iov-is* 3m.
just as (. . . so) *ut* (. . . *ita*)

K

keep *adservō* 1

keep/kept —ing: use
imperfect tense

keep quiet *taceō* 2
keep shouting *clāmō* 1

kill *neō* 1; *interficiō* 3/4
interfecti interfecit

king *rēx reg-is* 3m.

know *sciō* 4; *cognōui*,
cognitus;

(= understand)
intelligō 3 *intellēxi*
intellēctus

known: well known *clār-*
us a um

L

lack *egēō* 2 *egui* (+ abl.)

lad: use adj. *in*
appropriate case of
masculine
(alternatively *homo*
homin-is 3m.; *puer*
puer-i 2m.)

Lampsacum, people of
Lampsacēn-i ōrum 2m
pl.

land *terr-a ae* 1f.;
(= native land) *patri-*
a ae 1f.

Lar *Lar Lar-is* 3m

large *ingēns ingent-is*,
magn-us a um

laugh *rideō* 2 *risi ris-*

law *lēx lēg-is* 3f.

lead *ducō* 3 *dūxi*

leader (= general) *dux*
duc-is 3m.; *princeps*
princip-is 3m

leadership, under *x*'s: use
abl. of name and abl.
of *dux duc-is* 3m.

learn *cognōscō* 3 *cognōui*
cognitus

leave

(= go away) *abeō abire*
(= abandon) *relinquō* 3
reliqui

(= go out) *ēgredior* 3/4
dep. *ēgressus*

leisure *ōti-um i* 2n

Lentulus *Lentul-us i* 2m

lest (esp. after verbs of
fearing or
apprehension)
nē + subj

let (*x* . . . do *v*, or *x* be
done): use 3rd s./pl.
subj. present; let . . .
not *nē* + perf. subj.
3rd s./pl.)

letter *litter-ae ārum* 1f. pl.
liberty *libertās libertāt-is*
3f

lictor *lictor lictōr-is* 3m

lie *mentior* 4 dep

life *uit-a ae* 1f

like (adj.) *simil-is e* (+ dat
or gen.); (vb) *x*
likes: *x* (dat.) *placet*;
(vb) *uolō uelle uolui*
(only in potential
subj. usages: e.g. 'I
would like')

Lilybaeum *Lilybae-um i*
2m.; locative

Lilybaei; use acc for
'to', abl. for 'from'

listen *audiō* 4

live *uiuō* 3 *uixi uicturus*
(no past participle)

live one's life *aetātem*
agō 3 *ēgi actus*

long *long-us a um*

look after *cūrō* 1

looks *form-a ae* 1f

lot, a . . . of: use *multi-us a*
pluri-

love (vb) *amō* 1

lover *amātor amātor-is* 3m

lust *cupiditās cupiditāt-is* 3f

lying *mendāx mendāc-is*

M

madness *insani-ā ae* 1f

magistrate *magistrāt-us ūs*
4m

make *faciō* 3/4 *feci factus*

make a speech

oratiōnem habeo 2

make plans *cōsiliū*

capiō 3/4 *cēpi capius*

make one's way *iter*
faciō 3/4

man: old man, see 'old'.
uir uir-i 2m.; in
military contexts,
use *militēs* for 'men'
(= human being) *homo*
homin-is 3m.

manage (to) *perficiō* 3/4
perfecti perfectus

ut + subj.; *efficiō* 3/4
effeci effectus ut + subj.
(Rules of sequence in
135)

many *multi-i ae a* (pi)

married *nūpt-us a um*

marry in *matrimōnium*
ducō 3 *dūxi ductus* (*x*
acc)

massive *ingēns ingent-is*

master *domin-us i* 2m.

matter *rēs rē-i* 5f

may (*x* may do *v*): *x* dat.
licet + inf; sometimes

occurs in subordinate
clauses – check the
construction; in
main clause,

'someone may —',
use perfect
subjunctive
(potential)

mean (vb) *dicō* 3 *dixi*
dictus

meanwhile *interea*

mention *loquor* 3 dep.

loqui locutus

merriment *laetitia-a ae* 1f.

Messana *Messān-a ae* 1f.

Metellus *Metell-us i* 2m.

middle (of) *medi-us a um*

mind *anim-us i* 2m.

missing, be *dēsum deesse*
defui

mistress *amīc-a ae* 1f.

Mnesilochus *Mnēsiloch-us*
i 2m

money *pecūni-a ae* 1f.

moon *lūn-a ae* 1f.

more: normally use
comparative form of
adj. or adv.

more (adv.) *magis*

more (s.) *plūs* (+ gen.);
(pl.) *plūrēs plūra* 3rd
decl. adjective

mountain *mōns mont-is*
3m

move (=upset) *commoveo*
2 *commōvi commōtus*;
(=physically move)
moveō 2 *mōvi mōtus*
much (adj.) *mult-us a um*,
too much *nimis*
(+ gen.); much
(adv.) = (by) far
multō

murder *neco* 1
must: x (dat.) *necesse est* y
(inf); often use
gerundive (x must
do y = y nom. must
be done, gerundive
agreeing with y, by
x dat. With
intransitive verbs x
must y = y nom. n
gerundive + *est* x dat.)
my *me-us a um* (voc. s. m
mi)
myself. use part of *ego*

N

name (noun) *nōmen*
nōmīn-is 3n; (vb)
name x as y *nōmīno*
1 x acc. y acc
necessity *necessitudo*
necessitudīn-is 3f
neighbour *vicīn-us* 2m
never *numquam*
nevertheless *tamen* (2nd
word); *nihilōminus*
new *nov-us a um*
new man *novus homo*
next (=and then) *deinde*
Nicobulus Nicobul-us 1
2m
nigh, be *adsum adesse*
night *nox noct-is* 3f.
no (adj.) *null-us a um*
no! *immō*
no-one *nemo nēmin-is*
3m.; after *ne* use *quis*
there is no-one who
... *nemo est* quī
+ subj (generic)

noble *nōbil-is e*
nobles *nōbil-ēs nōbil-ium*
3m. pl
nor *neque, nec*
not *nōn*
not to (indirect
command) *nē* + subj
and not to *nēne* + subj
not yet *nōndum*
nothing *nihil, nīl*
now *nunc*
number *numer-us* 1 2m

O

O! *ō* (followed by voc. in
direct address, acc. if
an exclamation)
oar *rem-us* 1 2m
obey *pāreo* 2 (+ dative)
object. see 'achieve one's
object'
obstruct *obstō* 3
obstiti + dat
obtain *adipiscor* 3 dep
adeptus
obviously *plāne*
of: use genitive to denote
possession, source,
use ablative in
descriptions (e.g. a
man of great
courage), or genitive
often *saepe*
old. old man *senex sen-is*
3m
on: in a time phrase, use
ablative
on account of *propter*
(+ acc.); *ob* (+ acc.)
on the point of: use
future participle
on the contrary *immō*;
minime
on the say so (of) *iussu*
(+ gen.)
once x had been —ed
use abl abs
one *ūnus ūna ūnum* (like
nullus, 62)

one of *ūnus ē(ex)* + abl
only *solum*; not only
but also *nōn solum*
... *sed etiam*
onto in (+ acc.)
or *aut* (where two things
either or *aut*
aut)
ordain *dēcernō* 3
order, give an ... to
iubeō 2 *iussī iussus*
(+ acc.); *imperō* 1
(+ dat.)
order x to y *iubeō*
(+ acc. + inf.); *imperō*
(x dat. ut + subj.);
(noun) *imperi-um* 1
2n
other *ali-us ali-a ali-ud*
(gen / dat. s. *ali-us*
ali-i)
ought *debeō* 2; x ought to
y. x acc. *oportet* + inf
our *noster nostr-a um*
out of *ē(ex)* + abl
over (of time) use plain
acc.
own, his' use *su-us a um* if
it refers to the
subject of the verb
part *pars part-is* 3f
party *convīvi-um* 1 2n.
patron *patrōn-us* 1 2n
pay attention to *operam* do
dare dedī datus
(+ dat.)
peace *pāx pāc-is* 3f
penalty *supplic-um* 1 2n
exact the penalty
supplicium sūmō 3 dē
(+ abl.)
people: use *homo homin-is*
3m. in pl., or pl. of
adjective on its own.
(=nation) *popul-us* 1
2m.
perform (an act) *committō*

3 *commisi commissus*
person' use m. of adj. or
pronoun
persuade *persuadeō* 2
persuasi persuasum,
persuade ... x (dat.)
to y (ut + subj. -
negative *nē*)
Petreus *Petrē-us* 1 2m
Phaedra *Phaedr-a ae* 1f
Philodamus *Philodam-us* 1
2m
Philoxenus *Philoxen-us* 1
2m
Picenum *ager Picēn-us*,
agr-i Picēn-i 2m
piece (= coin) *numm-us* 1
2m
pirate *pīrāt-a ae* 1m.;
praedo praedon-is 3m.,
(adj.) *pīratic-us a um*
place (noun) *loc-us* 1 2m
in x's place *in locum*
(+ gen.)
place (vb) *pōnō* 3 *posui*
positus; collocō 1
plan *cōsili-um* 1 2n
plans, make *cōsiliū*
capio 3/4
pleasure *voluptās voluptāt-*
is 3f.; x is a pleasure
to y: x (nom.)
voluptātī est y (dat.)
poetry *vers-us uum* 4m
pl
write poetry *versus*
facere
ponder *cōsiderō* 1;
excogitō 1
poor, poor man *pauper*
pauper-is 3m. or adj.;
if = unhappy, miser
miser-a um
possess *habeō* 2
possible, it is etc. *potest*
(often uses a passive
infin.)
pot *aul-a ae* 1f. (the usual
Classical Latin form

is *olla*; *aula* usually
means court.
'palace')
pour scorn on *irrideo* 2
ori ī irrisus
praetorship, in x's ...
use abl. of name and
abl. of *praetor praetōr-*
is 3m
pray (to), supplicate
supplicō 1 (+ dat.),
precor 1 dep
prefer *mālō malle mālui*,
prefer x to y *mālō* x
(acc.) *quam* y (acc.)
prepare *parō* 1
prepared (to) *parāt-us a*
um ad (+ acc.) (with
a gerundive phrase)
present, be *adsum adesse*
adsum
preserve *conseruō* 1
pretty *pulcher pulchr-a um*
prevent *prohibeō* 2 (x acc
from doing y infin.),
impediō 4 (x acc
from doing y: *nē* or
quōminus if *impedio*
positive, *quīn* or
quōminus if *impedio*
negative)
priest *sacerdōs sacerdot-is*
3m
priesthood *sacerdoti-um* 1
2n
promise *polliceor* 2 dep
prostitute *meretrix*
meretric-is 3f
protect *dēfendō* 3 *dēfendī*
defensus
protection *praesidi-um* 1
2n
provided (that) *dum*
(*dummodo*) + subj
province *prōvinci-a ae* 1f.
punish *pūnō* 4
punishment *supplic-um* 1
2n
exact punishment from

supplicium sūmō 3
de + abl
purpose, with the ... of
ut + subj.; *quī* + subj.
ut is in this case
often preceded by *eō*
consiliō; for the
purpose of —ing
gratiā or *causā* + gen
gerund/gerundive
phrase (e.g. *resistendi*
causā for the purpose
of resisting); note
they are post-
positions (i.e. come
after the word they
govern)
pursue *sequor* 3 dep
secutus; persequor 3
dep *persecutus*

Q

qualities *virtūt-ēs virtūt-um*
3f. pl.
quick *celer celer-is e*
quickly *celeriter*
quiet, keep *taceō* 2

R

Raecius *Raeci-us* 1 2m.
rank *ordō ordin-is* 3m.
rather than *potius quam*
rather x. use comparative
adjective
read *legō* 3 *lēgī lectus*
read through *perlegō* 3
perlēgī perlēctus
ready, get (trans.) *comparō*
1; *parō* 1
realise *sentiō* 4 *sēnsi sensus*
rebuke *castigō* 1
recall *recordor* 1 dep
refer *referō referre*
refuse *nōlō nolle nōlui*,
(=say no) *negō* 1
regret x (acc.) *paenitet*, 1
regret x *mē*
paenitet + gen.
relate *narrō* 1

relative (= blood-kin) *cognāt-us* ī 2m.
 rely upon *nitor* 3 dep. *nīsus/nīxus* (+ abl.)
 remember *recordor* 1 dep.; *meminī meminisse* (perfect form, present meaning)
 remove x's *γ*, *γ* from *x* *auferō γ* (acc.) *x* (dat.)
 remove *tollō* 3 *sustulī* *sublātus*; *auferō auferre* *abstulī ablatūs*; *moueo* 2 *mōuī mōtus x* (acc.) from *γ* (abl.)
 reply *respondeō* 2 *respondī*
 report (= denounce) *dēferō* (irr. 3) *dēferre dētulī*; (= announce) *nūntiō* 1
 rescue *ēripio* 3/4 *ēripuī* *ēreptus* (x acc. from *γ* dat.)
 resist *resistō* 3 *resistī* — (+ dat.)
 resolute *audāx audāc-is*
 resources *op-ēs op-um* 3f. pl.
 respect *honor honor-is* 3m
 rest (of) *cēter-us a um*; *reliqu-us a um*
 retain *retineō* 2 *retinui* *retentus*
 return (= go back) *redeō* *redire*, *redū*, *regred-* 3/4 *regressus*; (= give back) *reddō* 3 *reddidī* *redditus*
 reveal *aperiō* 4 *aperui* *apertus*; *patefaciō* 3/4 *patefeci* *patefactus*
 reward *praemi-um* ī 2n
 rich (man) *dīves dīuit-is* 3m.; or adj.
 Roman *Rōmān-us a um* (for 'a Roman', 'Romans' use m. forms as nouns)

Rome *Rōm-a ae* 1f.
 locative *Rōmae*; for 'to' use acc.; for 'from' use abl.
 rotten *pūid-us a um*
 Rubrius *Rubri-us* ī 2m.
 run
 run away *fugiō* 3/4 *fūgī*
 run into *incurrō* 3 *incurri* *incursum* (in + acc.)
 run together *concurrō* 2 *concurri*
 rush* in 'there was a rush' use impersonal passive of *concurrō* 3 *concurri* *concursum*
 S
 safe (= saved) *salu-us a um*
 safety *salūs salut-is* 3f.
 sail *nāvigō* 1
 sailor *naut-a ae* 1 m
 sake, for the . . . of *causā* (+ gen.); *grātiā* (+ gen.) — placed after the noun or phrase they qualify for the sake of —ing *causā/grātiā* + gen gerund/gerundive phrase (place *causā/grātiā* after noun or phrase it governs)
 same *idem eadem idem* at the same time *simul*
 Sanga *Sang-a ae* 1m
 save (= keep safe) *seruō* 1; save *x* from *γ* *ēripio* 3/4 *ēripui* *ēreptus x* acc. from *γ* dat.
 say *dīcō* 3 *dīxī dictus* introducing direct speech *inquam inquis* *inquit* 3rd pl. *inquunt*
 say . . . not *negō* 1 (often with acc. + inf.)

say so, on the . . . of *uissū* + gen
 scene *tumult-us* ūs 4m.
 scorn: see 'pour scorn on'
 scoundrel *scelest-us a um* — use as a noun
 sea *mare mar-is* 3n; abl. *marī* = by sea
 section of society *ōrdō* *ordin-is* 3m
 seek n. l. 2 *uīdī uīsus*
 seek p. l. 3 *quaerō* 3
 seek out *requirō* 3 *requisiui* *requisitus*
 seem *uideor* 2 pass. *uīsus*
 seize *occupō* 1
 senate *senat-us* ūs 4m
 send *mittō* 3 *mīsi missus* (x; acc., to *γ* ad + acc.)
 send away *dimitto* 3 *dīmisi* *dimissus*
 seriously *grauiter*
 seriousness *grauitās* *grauitāt-is* 3f.
 Sertorius, of *Sertōriān-us a um*
 Servilius *Seruili-us* ī 2m.
 set *occidō* 3 (intrans.)
 set out *proficiscor* 3 *profectus*
 set (a trap) *insidiās paro* 1 for *x* (dat.)
 set free *liberō* 1
 set (guards) *dispōnō* 3 *disposui* *dispositus*
 set on fire *incendō* 3 *incendi* *incensus*
 shall: use future tense
 shall have: use future perf. tense
 shame *pudor pudōr-is* 3m.
 she: use 3rd s. of verb, for emphasis use *illa* or *haec*
 ship *nāu-is nāu-is* 3f.
 shore *litus litor-is* 3n.
 should *dēbeō* 2; occasionally subj.

alone is used jussive): e.g. 'x should do *γ*';
 gerundive is also used to express 'should' as obligation, *x* (dat.) should do *γ* (n gerundive + est).
 Where 'should' occurs in subordinate clauses check whether the conjunction takes a subj. if so, then nothing else is required to express should (e.g. until troops should be sent . . . *dum* + subj.)
 shout *clamō* 1
 keep shouting *clāmitō* 1
 shrine *fān-um* ī 2n.
 shut in *claudō* 3 *claudi* *clausus*
 Sicily *Sicili-a ae* 1f.
 signal *sign-um* ī 2n
 silent, be *taceō* 2
 silently *tacit-us a um*
 silver *argent-um* ī 2n.
 since *cum* + subj
 slave *seru-us* ī 2m.
 slave-girl/woman *seru-a ae* 1f.
 sleep (vb) *dormiō* 4
 so *x* (adj./adv.) *tam*
 so = to such an extent *adeō*
 so as to / so that (purpose = in order that) *ut* + subj. (negative *nē*); see 145 for rules of sequence
 so as to . . . more —ly / so that . . . more —ly (purpose) *quo* + comp. adverb + subj.; see 145 for rules of sequence

so great *tant-us a um*
 society, section of *ōrdō* *ordin-is* 3m
 soldier *mīles mīlit-is* 3m
 someone *aliquis*
 son / ' -us ī 2m. (voc. s. *ili*)
 soon *mox*, *iam*
 sorrow *luct-us* ūs 4m
 sort (of person/people who) is *quī* + subj (generic); sort of person that *talis* . . . *qualis*
 Sosia *Sosi-a ae* 1m
 source, *x* is a . . . of pleasure to *γ*; *x* (nom.) *uoluptat-* + *γ* (dat.)
 spare *pareō* 3 *peperi* *parsurus* (+ dat.); in passive used impersonally, *x* (dat.) will be spared (3rd s.) by *γ* (*a(ab)* + abl.)
 speak *dīcō* 3 *dīxī dictus*; *loquor* 3 dep. *locutus*
 speak to (= address) *alloquor* 3 dep. *allocutus*
 speech, make a *ōratiōnem* *habe-* 2
 spirits *anim-us* ī 2m. (often plural in this sense)
 spot *loc-us* ī 2m.; pl. *loc-a* *orum* 2n.
 stage *scaen-a ae* 1f.
 stand (vb) *stō* 1 *steti status*, how the matter stands *ita* . . . *ut res est*
 stand in *x*'s way *obstō* 1 *obstui* (+ dat.)
 stand (for consulship) (*cōsulātum*) *petō* 3 *petui* *petitus*
 Staphyla *Staphyl-a ae* 1f.

star sign-um ī 2n
 start *coepī coepisse* (past tenses only).
 Occasionally 'started to' can be expressed by either (a) historic infinitive or (b) imperfect indicative
 state (strongly) *affirmō* 1; *dīcō* 3 *dīxī dictus*
 state (noun) *rēs public-a* *rē-i public-ae* 5f. + 1/2f. adj.; *cīuitās cīuitāt-is* 3f.
 station *collocō* 1; *pōnō* 3 *posui positus*
 statue *simulacr-um* ī 2n
 stay *maneō* 2 *mānsi* *mānsus*
 stop *prohibeō* 2 (*x* acc. from doing *γ* infin.); *impediō* 4 (*x* acc. from doing *γ*; *quōminus* or *ne* when *impediō* positive; *quōminus* or *quū* when negative)
 story *fān-a ae* 1f. 'The story is that . . .'
fāma est followed by acc. + inf.; tell a story — use *rēs* or n. of *hic*
 strategic *opportun-us a um*
 street *ui-a ae* 1f.
 stretch forth *tendō* 3 *tendi* *tensus*
 strict *seuer-us a um*
 strike *feriō* 4
 strip *nudō* 1
 strip (= rob corpses) *spoliō* 1
 stupid *stult-us a um*
 substitute *substituō* 3 *substitui* *substitutus*
 succeed *rem bene gerō* 3 *gessi gestus*
 such
 to such an extent *adeō*

such an important *tant-*
us a um

suddenly *subitō*

suffer *passor* 3 dep. *passus*

summon *uocō* 1; *arcessō* 3

arcessiui arcessitus

suppliant *supplex supplic-is*
(adj.); also used as a
noun

supporter *soci-us* 1 2m.

surely? *nōnne*; surely not?

num; surely *certē*

swift *celer celer-is* e

Syracusans *Syrācūsān-i*

ōrum 2m. pl

Syracuse *Syrācūs-n* a um

1f. pl.; locative

Syracū e

T

take (= capture) *capiō* 3/4

cēpi captus, (= lead

off) *deducō* 3 *deduxi*

deductus

take away *auferō auferre*

abstulī ablātus; *tollō* 3

sustulī sublātus

take care lest/that

prōuideō 2 *prōuidi*

prōuisus

nē + subj

take from *auferō* (take

x (acc.) from y

(dat.))

talk *loquor* 3 dep. *locūtus*

Teleboans *Tēlebo-ae* a um

1m (pl.)

tell *loquor* 3 dep. *locūtus*;

dicō 3 *dixi dictus*;

(= relate) *narrō* 1 (x

acc. to y dat.);

(= order) *iubeō* 2

iussi iussus

temple *templ-um* 1 2n.

than *quam*; or use abl. of

comparison

that *ille illa illud*; is ea id

that (conjunction) use

acc. + infin

construction after

verbs of saying

thinking, perceiving,

ut + subj. after verbs

of command (neg

nē); so . . . that (as a

result) ut + subj; see

144

the. simply use noun

their: referring to the

subject, use noun

alone

them: use pl. of *hic ille* or

is

then (= next) *deinde*;

at that point) *tum*

Theomnastus *Theomnāst-*

us 1 2m

there is *est*

there are *sunt*

there was *erat*, *fuit* or

factus est

therefore *igitur* (2nd

word)

these see 'this'

they use 3rd pl. verb

that *ut* for *ut* is 3m

thing *res re* . 5f.; or use

neut. adj

think *opinor* 1 dep.

arbitror 1 dep.; *putō*

1; think x (to be) y:

habed/arbitror x (acc.)

y (acc.)

this *hic haec hoc*;

sometimes possible

to use part of *quī*

quae quod at

beginning of

sentence

those: see 'that'

threaten *minor* 1 dep.

(+ dat.); threaten x

with y: *minor* x

(dat.) y (acc.)

three *trēs tri-um*

through *per* (+ acc.); of

extent of time use

acc. alone; = because

of: use abl. of cause

throughout: use abl. of

place (where the

noun has an

adjective), or *per*

(+ acc.)

throw *coniciō* 3/4 *conieci*

coniectus

thus *sic*; *ita*

time *tempus tempor-is* 3n.

to (motion) *ad* (+ acc.), in

(+ acc.); (gainer)

plain dative

to x (vb): after *uolo*,

nolō, *malō* use

infinitive; prefer x to

y: see 'prefer'

to (as in order x to -

indirect command)

ut + subj.; see also

'manage (to)'

to: where this indicates

purpose use *ut/nē*

(not to) + subj. For

sequence see 145. In

some cases it is

possible to use

quī + subj.; see 145³,

also *ad* + gerundive

+ noun (acc.); or

ad + gerund (acc.)

to such an extent (. . .

that . . .) *adeō* . . .

(ut + subj.)

today *hodiē*

too much *nimis* (+ gen.)

top *summ-us* a um

touch *tangō* 3 *tetigi tactus*

towards *ad* (+ acc.)

town *oppid-um* 1 2n.

Transalpine Gaul *Galli-a*

ae Trānsalpīn-a ae 1f.

trap (set a) *insidiās parō* 1

for x (dat.)

treasure *thēsaur-us* 1 2m.

trick *dol-us* 1 2m.

tricks *astuti-ae* a um 1f. pl.

troops *cōpi-ae* a um 1f. pl.

trouble *mal-um* 1 2n.

Troy *Trōi-a* ae 1f.

true *uēr-us* a um

truly *uērō*

try *cōnor* 1 dep.

turn, do a good *bene faciō*

3/4 (+ dat.)

turn over (transitive)

uoluō 3 *uoluī uolūtus*

two *du-o* *du-ae* *du-o*

two hundred *ducent-ī* ae a

U

Umbrenus *Umbren-us* 1

2m

understand *intelligō* 3

intellēxi

unhappy *miser miser-a* um

until (with idea of

purpose) *dum* + subj

up what's ? see

what'

upbraid *castigō* 1

urge *cohortor* 1 dep. (x

acc. to y: ut + subj)

us. see 'we'

use *utor* 3 dep. *ūsus*

'using' - *ūsus* a um,

used to use

imperfect indicative

utmost *summ-us* a um

V

value, of no *nihilī*

various *diuers-us* a um

Verres *Verr-ēs Verr-is* 3m

very: use superlative form

of adj. or adv. as

appropriate

very quickly: use

superlative adverb

(from *celer*); or abl.

phrase of manner,

summā celeritate

via *per* (+ acc.)

victory *uictōri-a* ae 1f.

view, in my *ut opinor*

vile *turp-is* e

visit *uisō* 3

voice *uōx uōc-is* 3f

W

wage (war) (bellum) *gero* 3

gessi gestus; (bellum)

faciō 3/4

wait *expectō* 1

walk *ambulō* 1

walls *moen-ra moen-um*

3m. pl.

want *uolō uelle uoluī*; not

want *nolō nolle nolū*

war *bell-um* 1 2n

was/were —ing: use

imperfect indicative

watch *inspicō* 3/4 *inspexi*

inspectus

water *aqu-a* ae 1f.

way (= habit, custom)

mōs mōr-is 3m.,

(= manner) *mod-us* 1

2m; (= journey) *iter*

itiner-is 3n

make one's way *iter*

faciō 3/4

ways *mōr-ēs mōr-um*

3m. pl

we *nōs* (if emphatic:

otherwise, use plain

1st person pl.)

wealth *diuiti-ae* a um 2f. pl.

weapon *tēl-um* 1 2n.

weight (= authority or

influence) *auctoritās*

auctoritāt-is 3f

well known *clār-us* a um

were to . . . in

conditional

sentences: pres. subj.

what? *quid?*; or use

appropriate form of

the adjective *quī?*

what x? *quid* (+ gen.)

what's up? *quid negoti*

est?

what a *ō* (+ acc. of

exclamation)

when *ubi* (+ perf. indic.);

with deponent verbs,

use past participle,

cum + plup. subj. Or

use abl. abs

where to? *quō*

which?: use appropriate

form of *quī* to agree

with noun

which: use nom. of *quī*

quae quod; or use a

participle agreeing

with the noun

described

while *dum* + present

indicative (when the

main clause

interrupts the action

of the *dum* clause),

or use abl. abs. with

present participle

who? *quis*

who *quī quae quod*; see

106-7, 140; 145³

whole (of) *tōt-us* a um

(gen. s. *tōtius*; dat. s.

tōtī)

whom?: use acc. s./pl. m./</

wife *uxor uxōr-is* 3f
wild beast *bēsti-a* ae 1f.
will use fut. tense
will have: use fut. perf. tense
win *vincō* 3 *vinci victus*
wisdom *sapienti-a* ae 1f.
wish *uolō uelle uolui*, not
wish *uolō nolle nolui*
with (= accompanied by) *cum* (+ abl.); (= by means of, or describing circumstances) plain abl.; with x —ing — use abl. abs. with pres. part.
without *sine* (+ abl.)
woman *fēmin-a* ae 1f., *mulier mulier-is* 3f
worry *cūr-a* ae 1f.
worse *pei-or* *pei-us*
worship *colō* 3 *colui cultus*
worth as much as *tanti quantū* . . .

worthy (of) *dign-us a um* + abl
would: use fut. inf. (in acc. + inf. construction — 'that' clause — in secondary sequence); in conditional sentences use subj. (see rules in 139, 173); in purpose clauses: use correct sequence (impf. subj. see 145); I would like = *uelim* (pres. subj. — potential)
would be: in indirect statement past sequence use supine + *irī* (e.g. *captum irī* would be captured) or *fore ut* + subj. (pres. for primary, impf. for secondary sequence)
would have: in

conditional sentences use plupf. subj. or impf. subj.
wound (vb) *uulnerō* 1
wretched *miser miser-a um*
write (poetry) *faciō* (*uersū*; 4m. pl.)

Y
year *ann-us* ī 2m.
ye gods! *prō dī immortalēs!*
yes *ita*
yet *tamen* (2nd word in clause)
yield *cēdō* 3 *cessi cessum* (to x: dat.)
you (s.) *tū*, (pl.) *uōs* (only if emphatic if not, use 2nd person s./pl of verb)
young man *iuenis iuen-is* 3m.
your *tu-us a um* (when 'you' is one person)
yourself: use part of *tū* yourselves *uōs*

Additional learning vocabulary

This list contains about 400 words which have been met in the course and are common in the most accessible parts of Latin literature, but have not been set for learning or used in exercises. For ease of reference, the place where each word first occurs is recorded. For principal parts of irregular verbs, consult the list in Reference Grammar G. (Note that where the prefix is followed by a hyphen compounds will be found under the simple form in that list: e.g. look up *per-tineō* under *teneō* and *con-tendō* under *tendō*, but *prōspiciō* under *prōspiciō*.) Prepositions are not included in the list, but may be found in Reference Grammar K.

A
ab-ducō 3 I lead away 5E(ii)
adhibeō 2 I apply; employ 6C(iv)
adit-us ūs 4m. approach, entrance 5D(ii)
ad-mittō 3 I let in; commit 4E(ii)
ad-pellō 3 I bring to land 4E(ii)
ad-pōnō 3 I place by 6D(iv)
ad-sistō 1 I stand by 1D
aduent-us ūs 4m. approach, arrival 6B(vii)
aedifici-um ī 2n. building 6B(iii)
aedificō 1 I build 2D
aestās aestāt-is 3f. summer 6D(iii)
aest-us ūs 4m. heat; tide 6D(iv)
ancor-a ae 1f. anchor 4E(i)
antiqu-us a um old 2A
appareō 2 I become visible; am evident 1B
arceō 2 I enclose; keep off, keep away 6D(ii)
arguō 3 I make clear, prove; accuse 4D(ii)

artēs artēt-is 3m. ram; battering-ram 2E
ar-ripiō 3, 4 I snatch up, seize 4A(i)
aspect-us ūs 4m. sight; appearance 5D(i)
āter ātr-a um black 6D(ii)
auāriti-a ae 1f. greed 5B(i)
auār-us a um greedy 1A
ā-uertō 3 I turn away (trans.) 4D(ii)
au-us ī 2m. grandfather 1B

B
bōs bou-is 3m. and f. ox, cow 1E

C
cadāuer cadāuer-is 3n. corpse 5G(iii)
caec-us a um blind; hidden; dark, obscure 1F
callid-us a um skilful, shrewd; cunning, crafty 3C
canō 3 I sing; play 5G(i)
cant-us ūs 4m. song 4E(ii)
cardō cardin-is 3m. hinge 3D
careō 2 (+ abl.) I am without, lack 4C(ii)

car-us a um dear 3D
celebrō 1 I crowd, frequent; celebrate; extol 4B(iii)
cēseō 2 I assess, value; propose; resolve; think 6B(vii)
cēnsor cēnsōr-is 3m. censor (Roman magistrate) 5A(i)
cernō 3 I discern, distinguish 6D(i)
circum-dō 1 I put around, surround 4B(iv)
circum-sistō 3 I stand around, surround 4F(i)
cīuīl-is e civic, civil 6B(viii)
claudō 3 I close, shut 1A
clēmēns clēmēt-is gentle, mild; merciful 5D(i)
cognāt-us ī 2m. blood-relation 5G(iii)
col-loquor 3 dep. I converse, confer 2E
coll-um ī 2n. neck 3C
color color-is 3m. colour 6D(ii)
commemorō 1 I mention, relate, tell of 6C(i)
commendō 1 I entrust, recommend 5D(iv)

Additional learning vocabulary: Latin-English

commūnīcō 1 I share 5E(ii)
compleō 2 I fill up 4F(i)
com-pōnō 3 I put together, arrange; compose, construct; adjust 2A
com-prehēdō 3 I grasp, seize; arrest, grasp mentally, understand, include (in narrative), describe 1F
concur-us ūs 4m. running together, concourse, charge 6C(ii)
concutiō 3 I shake; shatter; terrify 5A(i)
con-dō 3 I build, found, establish; compose; put away, store; conceal, hide; bury 6D(ii)
cōnfert-us a um packed together, crowded, compact 5G(ii)
cōnfligō 3 I come to blows 5E(ii)
con-gredior 3/4 dep. I come together, meet 2D
con-iungō 3 I join together, unite 4D(ii)
con-quirō 3 I collect; search for 4C(ii)
cōn-sentiō 4 I am in agreement, agree 3B
cōnsōlor 1 dep. I comfort, console; alleviate 6C(iv)
cōspiciō 3/4 I catch sight of; observe, gaze on 5B(i)
cōstāns cōstant-is stable, steadfast, consistent 5C(iii)
cōstanti-a ae 1f. steadfastness, consistency 3A
cōsuētūdō cōsuētūdin-is 3f. custom, habit, wont; social intercourse, companionship 5A(i)
cōsulār-is e consular 5E(i)
cōsulō 3 I consult; (+ dat.) take thought for, consult the interests of 6B(vii)
cōsult-um ī 2n. decree 6B(i)
cōn-sūmō 3 I use up; waste, squander 6C(ii)
cōn-surgō 3 I arise together 6C(iv)
con-tendō 3 I strain, exert; demand, affirm, insist, (intrans.) exert myself, push on, hasten; fight, struggle 6B(vii)
content-us a um satisfied, content 4G(i)
continens continens-is adjacent; continuous 6C(iii)
con-vertō 3 I turn round, wheel; change (trans.: pass, supplies intrans meanings) 6C(ii)
creō 1 I create, produce; appoint, choose, elect 4A(iv)
crimen crimin-is 3n. accusation, charge 4A(ii)
cruent-us a um gory, bloody 5F(ii)
cubō 1 I lie; lie in bed; sleep; recline at table 2C
currō 3 I run 1F

D

damn-um ī 2n. loss, damage 6D(iii)
dē-cēdō 3 I depart, retire, withdraw; die; abate, cease 6B(v)
dē-cernō 3 I decide, decree, determine 6B(vii)

de-cidō 3 I fall down; perish 6D(iii)
defess-us a um tired out 6A(iii)
delectō 1 I delight, please 6B(i)
dementi-a ae 1f. madness 5F(ii)
de-mittō 3 I let down 5E(ii)
deprecor 1 dep. I beg off, pray to avert 6B(i)
de-prēhēdō 3 I catch in the act, surprise, intercept 5C(ii)
dē-rideō 2 I scoff at 2E
deserō 3 I abandon, desert 5C(ii)
desiderō 1 I long for, miss, feel the loss of 6C(iv)
desinō 3 I cease 6A(vi)
dēspērāt-us a um abandoned, desperate 6B(vii)
dēspērō 1 I lose hope, despair 5F(ii)
dē-stituō 3 I leave in the lurch, abandon 6C(ii)
dict-um ī 2n. word, saying 2A
dis-fugiō 3/4 I scatter in flight 6D(iii)
dī-ripio 3/4 I tear in pieces, plunder, sack 5D(i)
disciplin-a ae 1f. instruction, training, learning; science; doctrine 4E(ii)
dis-tribuō 3 I distribute 4D(i)
diuidō 3 I divide, separate 1C
doctrin-a ae 1f. teaching, learning 4A(ii)
domestic-us a um home-, domestic; native, internal 6B(vii)
domicili-um ī 2n. abode, dwelling 5D(i)

Additional learning vocabulary: Latin-English

E

ēdict-um ī 2n. proclamation, manifesto 6B(i)
edō 3 I eat 3C
ē-fundō 3 I pour out (trans.) 6D(iii)
effūs-us a um outspread, slackened, dishevelled, extravagant, lavish 6D(ii)
ē-iciō 3/4 I cast out; cast ashore, wreck 4E(ii)
ē-ligō 3 I pick out, choose, select 6B(vi)
ē-rigō 3 I raise up; arouse, cheer up, encourage 4E(i)
ē-rumpō 3 I break out; burst forth 5B(iii)
ē-ueniō 4 I turn out, come to pass, happen, result 2E
euent-us ūs 4m. outcome, result 4A(iv)
ē-vertō 3 I overturn, overthrow, destroy 5D(i)
ēuocō 1 I call out, call forth 2E
excitō 1 I arouse, kindle 4B(i)
exercitāt-us a um well-trained, practised 6C(ii)
eximi-us a um exceptional, extraordinary 4B(ii)
existimātiō existimation-is 3f. judgement, opinion; reputation 4B(ii)
expedit-us a um unencumbered, free for action, in light marching order; convenient, ready to hand, uninterrupted 5G(ii)
ex-pellō 3 I drive out 1C
explōrō 1 I investigate,

arch out; reconnoitre 3C(ii)
ex-pōnō 3 I put out, set out; disembark (trans.); set forth, expound 6B(vii)
expectātiō expectation-is 3f. awaiting, apprehension 6B(i)
extinguō 3 I put out, extinguish; kill, blot out, wipe out 1C

F

faciās facultāt-is 3f. capability, skill, opportunity; supply, resources 6C(iii)
fallō 3 I deceive; escape the notice of 2A
fals-us a um false 1B
familiar-is e domestic, friendly, intimate 1B
fās indecl. n. divine law, right 4A(iv)
fateor 2 dep. I acknowledge, confess 1F
fax fac-is 3f. torch, firebrand 5D(iv)
fer-a ae 1f. wild animal 2D
ferōx ferōc-is spirited, courageous; fierce, savage 5A(i)
ferre-us a um made of iron; hard-hearted 5D(i)
flectō 3 I bend, turn, dissuade, prevail on, appease 6D(i)
flōs flōr-is 3m. flower, bloom 6A(vii)
fluō 3 I flow 4A(ii)
flum-us ī 2m. river 4A(ii)
foc-us ī 2m. hearth 1A
foed-us a um filthy, foul, dishonourable, vile 5F(ii)

fremit-us ūs 4m. growling, murmuring 6D(i)
frigid-us a um cold, chilly 6D(ii)
frōns front-is 3f. brow, forehead; front 5G(i)
fruges frug-um 3f. pl. fruits of the earth 6D(iii)
fulmen fulmin-is 3n. thunderbolt; lightning 6D(i)
fūm-us ī 2m. smoke 1F
fundament-um ī 2n. foundation 5D(i)
funditus from the foundations, completely 6B(vii)
fundō 1 I make firm, establish, fix 5D(iv)
fundō 3 I pour, shed, produce in abundance, scatter, rout; spread out, diffuse, display 5G(ii)
furt-um ī 2n. theft 6A(ii)

G

gemin-us a um twin, twofold 6D(iii)
gemit-us ūs 4m. groaning, groan 6D(i)
gurgis gurgit-is 3m. gulf, sea, flood 6D(ii)

H

hērēs hērēd-is 3m. and f. heir; heiress 6D(iii)
horribil-is e dreadful 6A(vii)
hostil-is e enemy's, hostile 5C(i)
hūmānitās human-it-is 3f. human nature, humanity, kindness, culture, refinement 4A(ii)
hūmān-us a um human, humane, kindly; civilised, cultured, refined 4D(ii)

I
ignōrō 1 I do not know, am ignorant (of) 1A
imāgō imagin-is 3f. copy, likeness, image, picture, statue; echo; apparition, phantom; semblance, shadow; mental image, fancy, idea 1B
imber imbr-is 3m. rain, rain-storm 6D(i)
im-mittō 3 I send in, send against, let loose, hurl, set on, incite 6D(ii)
impellō 3 I drive on, urge on; excite, impel, instigate 5B(i)
im-pendē 2 (+ dat.) I overhang; menace, threaten 5A(ii)
improb-us a um morally bad, depraved, shameless 2E
imprōvis-us a um unforeseen, unexpected 5A(iii)
im-us a um lowest, bottom of 1C
inān-is e empty, void, useless, vain 6D(ii)
in-cidō 3 I fall into, fall upon; fall in with, meet; light upon; befall, happen 5A(ii)
incitō 1 I set in quick motion, speed; arouse, spur on, stimulate 6B(vii)
in-clūdō 3 I shut in, enclose, imprison; include, insert 4E(ii)
incolumitās incolumitāt-is 3f. safety 6B(vii)
incommod-um ī 2n. trouble, setback 6B(vii)
incrēdibil-is e unbelievable 4E(i)

in-currō 3 I run into, run upon, charge; run up against, encounter 5G(ii)
indicō 1 I disclose, make known 2E
in-ducō 3 I lead in, lead on; overspread; introduce; induce, persuade 5G(iii)
iners inert-is inactive, sluggish 6D(iii)
infelix infelīc-is unfruitful, unlucky 6D(i)
infer-ī ōrum 2m. pl. inhabitants of the Underworld, the dead 1B
ingenu-us a um free-born; frank, open 5G(iii)
inu-um ī 2n. beginning 5A(iii)
iniust-us a um unrighteous, wrongful 3B
insāni-a ae 1f. madness, frenzy 4C(ii)
insāniō 4 I am mad, rage, rave 4C(ii)
insān-us a um mad, frenzied; outrageous 1C
in-scribō 3 I write upon, inscribe 4A(ii)
integritās integritāt-is 3f. completeness; blamelessness 4B(ii)
intercessiō intercessiōn-is 3f. veto (of a tribune) 6B(vii)
inter-clūdō 3 I shut off; cut off, block; shut in, blockade 5E(ii)
inter-eō 1 perish, die 2E
inter-sum I am between; am different, (+ dat.) take part in 6B(viii)
intrō-dūcō 3 I bring inside,

introduce 5C(iii)
intro-eō 1 enter 5A(iii)
in-uadō 3 I go in, enter; rush into; fall upon, assault, attack 2A
invidi-a ae 1f. envy, ill-will; unpopularity 5A(i)
invidiōs-us a um enviable, odious, unpopular 4C(ii)
invitō 1 I invite, allure, attract 4B(iii)
ir-a ae 1f. anger, passion, wrath 6D(i)
iug-um ī 2n. yoke; pair; mountain ridge, summit; chain of mountains 6C(iii)
iust-us a um righteous, upright; lawful, rightful, equitable, due, proper 3B

L
lac lact-is 3n. milk 2E
lacrim-a ae 1f. tear 2D
lacrimor 1 dep. I shed tears, weep 4E(ii)
laetor 1 dep. I rejoice 5C(iii)
lapis lapid-is 3m. stone; milestone; precious stone 6D(i)
lassitudō lassitudin-is 3f. faintness, weariness 6C(ii)
lass-us a um faint, tired, weary 6D(iv)
lateō 2 I lie hidden, lurk, am hidden from (trans.) 1A
lauō 1 I wash (trans.) 1F
laus laud-is 3f. praise, renown; credit, distinction 6B(viii)
leniō 4 I soften; calm, soothe 2E

lētās lēnitāt-is 3f. gentleness, mildness 6C(iv)
leniō 1 I lighten; lift, console; relieve 6D(iv)

M
maeror maeror-is 3m. grief, sorrow 5G(iii)
mandāt-um ī 2n. commission, injunction 5C(i)
mātūr-us a um ripe, seasonable, timely, early, speedy 4A(ii)
mediocr-is e middling, moderate, ordinary 4C(ii)
metuō 3 I fear, dread 2F
min-ae ārum 1f. pl. threats 6D(i)
ministrō 1 I attend to, manage; furnish, supply 6D(ii)
minor 1 dep. I keep on threatening 4F(ii)
minuō 3 I diminish 5A(i)
miseri-a ae 1f. wretchedness, distress 5B(i)

mīl-is e mellow, gentle, mild 5D(i)
modesti-a ae 1f. discretion, modesty 4B(ii)
molesti-a ae 1f. irksomeness, trouble 6B(i)
molest-us a um irksome, troublesome 2E
moll-is e soft; calm, gentle; pliant, yielding; irresolute; effeminate; agreeable, pleasant 5A(ii)
mōnstrō 1 I point out, show 1A
monument-um ī 2n. memorial, monument 1D
moror 1 dep. I delay, linger, tarry; (trans.) delay, hinder 2E
mūnitio munitiōn-is 3f. fortifying; fortification, entrenchment 6C(iii)

N
nāscor 3 dep. I am born, arise, spring, am produced, occur naturally 4C(i)
neglegēs neglegent-is careless, neglectful 6A(iv)
nimium = nimis too much 6B(i)
niteō 2 I glisten, glitter, shine 2F
nōbilitās nobilitāt-is 3f. high birth, aristocracy, excellence 5A(i)
nocēns nocent-is criminal, guilty 5D(i)
nocturn-us a um by night, nightly 4F(i)
nusquam nowhere 2C

O
ob-sistō 3 (+ dat.) I obstruct, thwart 4A(i)
occult-us a um hidden, secret 5C(ii)
odor odor-is 3m. scent, smell; stench 5E(i)
ōlūm once (upon a time), long ago; some time (in the future) 3A
ōrātor orātor-is 3m. orator, speaker; spokesman 2D
orbis orb-is 3m. circle, disc, hoop, ring, orbit; *orbis terrārum* the world 4G(i)

P
pacīscor 3 dep. I bargain, contract, covenant,

make an agreement; (trans.) bargain for, betroth 2C
palm-a ae 1f. palm of hand; hand; palm-tree; palm-branch, palm, wreath; prize of victory 4E(i)
pariēs pariet-is 3m. wall (of house) 3C
pass-us ūs 4m. pace, step *mille passūs* (pl. *mīlia passuum*) mile 6C(iii)
pāstor pāstor-is 3m. shepherd 2E
patrōn-us ī 2m. defender, protector, patron, counsel for defence, advocate 4C(ii)
paucitās paucitāt-is 3f. fewness, paucity 6B(v)
peccāt-um ī 2n. sin 4B(i)
pectus pector-is 3n. bosom, breast; heart, soul 6D(iv)
pecus pecor-is 3n. herd of animals, cattle 5F(ii)
pedes pedis-is on foot; 3m. noun foot-soldier 5G(i)
pendē 2 I hang; depend 3A
perdit-us a um desperate, hopeless; abandoned, profligate 1A
per-dūcō 3 I bring along, conduct; prolong, construct; win over 5B(i)
perfug-a ae 1m. deserter 5E(i)
per-fugiō 3, 4 I desert (to the enemy) 5E(ii)
perfugi-um ī 2n. place of refuge 6D(i)
periculōs-us a um dangerous 5A(i)
perīt-us a um experienced, skilled, skilful; (+ gen.) skilled in 4D(ii)

Additional learning vocabulary: Latin-English

per-mittō 3 I entrust;
(+ dat.) allow, permit
5G(i)
perniciēs perniciē-i 5f. utter
destruction, utter ruin
4B(i)
perpetu-us a um
continuous, unbroken
6A(iv)
perspicu-us a um evident
1E
perterreō 2 I frighten
thoroughly, demoralise
5A(iii)
per-tineō 2 I extend,
stretch, belong (to),
relate (to), lead (to),
tend (to) 4F(i)
perturbatō perturbatōn-is
3f. confusion, disorder
6B(viii)
perturbō 1 I throw into
confusion, confound
5E(ii)
placō 1 I reconcile;
appease 6D(i)
plānitēs plānitē-i 5f. plain
6C(iv)
pondus ponder-is 3n.
weight; load, mass 3C
pont-us i 2m. (open) sea
6D(ii)
port-a ae 1f. gate 2A
possessio possēsiōn-is 3f.
holding, occupation,
possession 5D(iii)
poster-us a um next,
subsequent 6B(iii)
potestas potestāt-is 3f.
power; control,
magisterial power,
authority; opportunity
1D
pōtō 1 I drink; drink hard
4E(i)
prae-dicō 3 I foretell; issue
warning 6B(vii)
prae-mittō 3 I send in
advance 5A(iii)
praeterit-us a um past
6B(iii)
praetori-us a um praetor's;
general's 5G(ii)
prīvātum in a private
capacity 5B(i)
prīvāt-us a um personal,
private; not holding
office 6B(viii)
prīuō 1 I deprive, strip,
release 6C(i)
prob-us a um good,
honest, proper;
virtuous 2A
prō-cēdō 3 I advance, go
forward, (of time) pass,
make progress; come
off, turn out well
5A(iii)
procul far; from afar 2E
prōcumbō 3 I collapse, lie
down, sink to the
ground 6D(i)
prō-dō 3 I give forth,
publish; bequeath,
hand down; betray
5A(iii)
prō-dūcō 3 I lead forth;
drag out, protract 2E
profectō assuredly 6B(viii)
prō-ferō I bring forth,
bring to light; put
forward, cite, mention
1F
pro-fundō 3 I pour forth,
spill, lavish, squander
1F
propinqu-us a um near,
neighbouring; *propinqu-*
us i 2m. (noun) near
relative 4B(iii)
prōspiciō 3/4 I look out,
(+ dat.) provide for;
(trans.) look out on;
foresee 6B(ii)
prūdēns prūdēt-is discreet,
sensible 6B(vii)

publicē on behalf of the
state, at the state's
expense, officially 5B(i)
pūblic-us a um belonging
to the state, state-
official; common,
public 4E(ii)
pulvis puluer-is 3m. dust
6D(iii)

Q
quaest-us us 4m
acquisition, gain,
profit; business, trade
5A(ii)
quēt-us a um at rest,
quiet; peaceful, neutral
4B(i)
quondam once 6A(vi)

R
rādīx radic-is 3f. root,
foot-hill, (mountain)
spur 4E(i)
rār-us a um loose, thin;
here and there,
scattered, wide apart;
(pl.) in small groups,
scarce 6D(iv)
ratīs rat-is 3f. raft; (in
poetry) ship, vessel
6D(ii)
re-cidō 3 I fall back,
relapse 6B(vi)
reciperō (or *recuperō*) 1 I
regain, recover 6C(i)
recitō 1 I read out, read
aloud 4A(iv)
re-currō 3 I run back;
recur 6D(iii)
recūsatiō recūsatiōn-is 3f.
objection 6C(iv)
red-imō 3 I buy back,
repurchase; ransom;
buy, purchase; contract
for, farm (taxes), buy
off; pay for, atone for
6B(viii)

Additional learning vocabulary: Latin-English

re-ferō 1 I bring back, carry
back; repay; convey;
repeat; reproduce;
announce, relate,
report; record, set
down in writing,
ascribe, refer; (intrans.)
take back word,
report; put a motion
(e.g. before senate) 1F
rēgnō 1 I reign, rule 5D(i)
rēgn-um i 2n. kingship,
sovereignty; despotism;
kingdom, realm 4G(i)
regō 3 I direct, guide,
govern, rule 6D(ii)
re-gredior 3/4 dep. I
return; retreat 2E
religiō religiōn-is 3f.
reverence, religious
awe; religious scruple;
superstition,
conscientiousness,
holiness, sanctity 4A(ii)
remedi-um i 2n. cure,
remedy 5B(i)
remissio remissio-n-is 3f.
slackening; abatement,
relaxation 5D(ii)
re-moueō 2 I move back;
remove 4D(ii)
rēm-us i 2m. oar 4D(ii)
renouō 1 I renew, restore,
revive 6C(ii)
renūntiō 1 I bring back
word, report back;
announce, report,
announce the election
of; disclaim, renounce
4A(iv)
repudiō 1 I reject,
repudiate 5C(i)
re-quiēscō 3 I repose, rest
re-stituō 3 I set up again,
replace; rebuild; re-
establish, reform, restore,
revive, restore, give
back; reinstate 6D(iii)

reticeō 2 I keep silent;
(trans.) keep silent
about 5A(i)
re-trahō 3 I draw back,
bring back; remove,
withdraw 4F(ii)
rumpō 3 I break, burst;
break off, cut short;
break in on, interrupt
6A(vii)
ruō 3 I fall down, tumble
down; dash, hurry,
rush; (trans.) dash
down; upheave 6D(ii)
rūsus/rūsum back again,
again 1F
S
sagittāri-us i 2m. archer
6C(ii)
sal sal-is 3m. salt; brine,
sea; wit 6A(i)
sax-um i 2n. rock, large
stone 4B(iv)
scelerāt-us a um criminal,
vicious 4B(iv)
se-crētō in private 6B(ii)
sēdēs sēd-is 3f. seat; abode,
habitation; base,
foundation 6D(i)
sempitern-us a um
everlasting,
imperishable 5D(i)
senātor senator-is 3m
senator 5A(iii)
senātori-us a um senatorial
6C(iii)
sēns-us ūs 4m. feeling,
perception, sense;
emotion, opinion
4B(iv)
significō 1 I indicate, make
known; betoken,
mean, signify 6B(vii)
signō 1 I set a mark on;
mark out; stamp
(money); seal; indicate
5C(i)

singulār-is e one at a time,
single; matchless,
unique 4A(ii)
sit-us a um lying, placed,
situated 1F
societās societāt-is 3f.
alliance, association,
confederacy,
partnership 5B(i)
solitūdō solitūdīn-is 3f.
loneliness; lonely place,
desert 6B(vii)
sors sort-is 3f. lot; casting
of lots; allotted duty;
oracular response;
destiny, fate 4A(iv)
sortior 4 dep. I draw lots,
assign by lot; select by
lot; obtain by lot 4A(iv)
spargō 3 I scatter, strew,
sprinkle; bedew,
bespatter; disperse,
spread abroad 6D(i)
spectācul-um i 2n. sight,
spectacle, show 4E(iii)
speciō 1 I look at, watch
1A
speculātor speculātōr-is 3m.
spy, scout 4G(i)
spirō 1 I breathe; blow;
(trans.) breathe out,
exhale 5G(iii)
splendīd-us a um gleaming,
shining; brilliant,
illustrious, splendid
4C(i)
spoliō 1 I strip; despoil,
plunder 2E
sponte of one's own
accord, spontaneously
6C(ii)
stabilīō 4 I make firm,
make steady, establish
5D(iv)
statuō 3 I erect, set up,
establish, fix, settle;
decide, determine
4E(iii)

Additional learning vocabulary: Latin-English

statūr-a ae 1f. height, stature 3C
stat-us ūs 4m. posture; position; condition, state; state of affairs, constitution 5B(i)
strēnu-us a um active, vigorous 5G(ii)
stringō 3 I bind, draw tight; pull off, strip, draw (sword); graze, touch lightly 6C(ii)
stupeō 2 I am aghast, astounded, dazed, (trans.) am astonished at 1B
suādeō 2 I advise, recommend, urge (acc. of thing, dat. of person) 2D
sub-iciō 3/4 I thrust under; put under; subdue, subject; append, subjoin, suggest, substitute 6D(ii)
sub-igō 3 I bring under; dig up, plough up, conquer, subjugate; compel 6D(ii)
sub-sum I am under; am close at hand; am under the surface, lie concealed 6C(ii)
sum-moneō 2 I remove; drive away 6C(ii)
superbi-a ae 1f. arrogance, pride, haughtiness 5A(i)
superb-us a um arrogant, haughty, proud 6D(ii)
super-ī ōrum 2m. pl. the gods above 6D(ii)
super-sum I am over, remain, survive, (+ dat.) survive, outlive; am in abundance 6C(i)
sus-cipio 3/4 I hold up,

support; take up, undertake; beget; adopt 5A(iii)
suspiciō suspicion-is 3f. mistrust, suspicion 4A(ii)

T

tametsi although 6B(i)
temere by accident, by chance; at random; heedlessly, rashly, recklessly 6B(vii)
tenu-is e thin, slender; slight; feeble, weak, poor, trifling; fine, subtle 4G(i)
tolerō 1 I bear, endure; keep up, maintain 5A(ii)
tranquill-us a um calm, still, at peace, serene, undisturbed 2B
trāns-igō 3 I accomplish, complete, perform; (intrans.) make a settlement, come to an understanding 5D(ii)
trāns-mittō 3 I send across, send over; hand over, cross 6D(ii)
tribūn-us ī 2m. tribune 5D(iii)
tribuō 3 I allot, assign, bestow; grant, render, attribute 6B(vii)
trienni-um ī 2n. period of three years 4C(ii)
triumphō 1 I celebrate a triumph; exult, triumph 2D
tub-a ae 1f. trumpet, war-trumpet 3B
tumult-us ūs 4m. commotion, disorder, uproar; insurrection, uprising 4B(i)
tunc then 4A(iv)

turbid-us a um boisterous; disorderly, confused, troubled 6D(ii)
turpitūdō turpitudin-is 3f. baseness, disgrace, shamefulfulness 5F(ii)
turr-is 3f. tower, turret; siege-tower 2A

V

vanitas vanitat-is 3f. emptiness, deceptiveness, falsity; vainglory 5A(i)
vas vas-is 3n. (pl. *uas-a orum* 2n.) vessel; utensil 1f
vastō 1 I desert, leave empty; devastate, lay waste 5D(i)
vast-us a um empty, desert, waste; boundless; enormous, prodigious, vast 6D(ii)
venia ae 1f. favour, grace; permission, forgiveness, pardon 4C(i)
venor 1 dep. I hunt 6B(v)
uer uer-is 3n. spring 6D(iii)
uesper ī 2m. (and *uesper-is* 3m.) evening 2E
veterān-us a um veteran 5G(i)
vetust-us a um old 2B
vexatiō vexatiōn-is 3f. distress, trouble 5D(ii)
victor victor-is 3m. conqueror, victor 3B
index indic-is 3m. defender, protector, avenger 5E(i)
violō 1 I do violence to; profane; break (law etc.), outrage, violate 6C(iv)
virid-is e green; blooming, fresh 6D(ii)

Additional learning vocabulary: Latin-English

vicin- man's of
vicin- neighborhood 11 at 1v 5A(ii)
visō 3 I look at, view, go to see, visit 2C
vitium ī 2n. defect, fault, flaw, crime, offence; depravity 6B(viii)

vix scarcely 2E
ulciscor 3 dep. I take vengeance on; avenge 2F
ulterior ult- further, more 1v, 6D(ii)
uolō 1 I fly 6D(i)

urbān-us a um city-; polished, refined; witty 5A(ii)
uulgō commonly, generally 6B(ii)

INDEX OF GRAMMAR

Numbers alone refer to Running Grammar sections (adscript numbers refer to sections, superscript numbers to Notes within those e.g. 48.1, 89^b). Letters A–W (with numbers/letters following) refer to the Reference Grammar (pp. 448ff.). Page numbers are given for grammar which occurs outside these parts. For a simplified definition of terms, see the Glossary of English–Latin Grammar pp. xvii–xxiii.

- āb*, 23, 119², 155³, K
 ablative, see under 'cases'
ac (atque), see 'comparative clauses'
 accent (stress) rule, p. xv, in poetry, p. 319
 Note 2
accidit (ut), 135, F2, S2(a)3(m)
 accusative, see under 'cases'
acer, 53², J2(d)
 active verbs
 meaning, 4, 5, A Intro.(c)
 full conjugations, A1–7
 formation, see Table 1.1
 gerund, 175
 supine, 118², A7
 impersonal verbs, 154, F2
ad, 10; with gerundives, 161.3; with gerunds, 175.2
adeō . . . ut, S2(a)2
 adjectives
 meaning, 14¹
 formation, full tables, 12–3; *multus*, 14, *miser*, 21, *pulcher*, 27; *omnis*, 44; *ingēns*, 45, *audāx*, 46; *noster/uester*, 53; *celer*, 53; *3. er*, 53²; *dñus*, *pauper*, 47; *nūllus*, *alter*, 62; *hic*, 63; *ille*, 64; *is*, 70; *meus*, 17, 20; numerals, 54, comparative/superlative, 72–4
 agreement, 142^{–6}, L–V Intro.(b)2
 as nouns, 14⁷, 47
 general survey, J Intro
 adverbs, 79, J4(a); comparative/superlative, 87, J4(b); irregular, 79, J4(c)
 agent, 119², 155²; dative of agent, 161², L(c)1(iv)
 agreement: of adjectives, see 'adjectives'; of verb, L–V Intro.(b)1 and Notes
aiō, F1(b)
aliquantō, L(1)4(iv)
aliquid + gen. 'some of', L(d)2
aliquis, 102, 15
alus, 102, 16(a)
 alliteration, p. 315(i)
alter + 2, 16(c)
an. see 'active verbs', 'passive' (1st conj.)
an, 172¹, L–V Intro.(a) – see also 'utrum an?', S2(e) Note 2
 anaphora, p. 315(g)
 antecedent, 106, Q1
antequam, 165.3, T(c)
 antithesis, p. 314(b)
appāret, F2
 apposition, 17B, L–V Intro.(b) Note 3
 Archilochian see 'metre'
 assimilation, pp. 207–8
 assonance, p. 315(h)
 asyndeton, p. 314(c)
atque (ac), see 'comparative constructions'
audeō, 76, 89^b, D and D Note 3
audiō, see 'active verbs', 'passive' (4th conj.)
ausim, 153.2, D Note 3
aviu, 17 Note 2
bis, 17 Note 2
bōs, H3(f)
caelebs, J2(c) Note 2
capiō, see 'active verbs', 'passive' (3rd/4th conj.)
caput, 61
 cases
 formation, see 'nouns'

Table 1.1 Active verbs

	Indicative	Infinitive	Imperative	Subjunctive	Participles
Present	<i>amō, habeo</i> , 2, 41 3. <i>dicō</i> , 24, <i>audiō</i> , 25 <i>capiō</i> , 33		<i>amō</i> , 1; <i>habeo</i> , 2; <i>dicō</i> , 24, <i>audiō</i> , 25; <i>capiō</i> , 36, irr., 37	127	120
Future	50	97	A2 Note 1	172 ⁴ , A2 Note 2, L–V Intro.(c)	81–3
Imperfect	89			130	
Perfect	65	95		167	
Future perfect	156				
Pluperfect	104			121	

Index

- usages: full discussion, L, in general, 6
 nominative: subject, 6.2; complement, 6.4
 accusative: object, in respect of, 6.3; of time, 71; accusative and infinitive 98–9, R1, L(c)
 genitive: possession, source, 6.5; objective, 23¹ part of whole (partitive), 31, 43², 102²; of value, 69; of description, 101, L(d)
 dative: gainer, loser, 48.1; speaking to, 48.3; possession, 48.2, 88.1; sympathy, 88.2, judging, 88.3, ethic, 88.4; verbs taking dative, 88.5; of purpose, predicative, 88.6; of agent, 161², L(e)
 ablative: summary formation, 100A, *āb*, *ē/ex*, 23; description, 49; time, 67, means or instrument, 84, true ablative, locative, instrumental-accompanying, 100A, comparison, 100B.1, attendant circumstances, 100B.2, manner, 100B.3, after *ūior*, *fruior*, 100B.4, measure of difference, 100B.5; source, 108.1, cause, 108.2, absolute, with nouns 109, absolute, with present participle, 120⁶, absolute, with perfect participle passive, 150–1; agent, 119², 161²; respect, 147, after *dignus*, *frētus*, *plēnus*, L(f)5; ablative phrases, L(f)6, L(f)
 vocative, 9¹, 17A, L(b)
 locative, 30, 110, L(g)
causā (grātiā), 161.3, 175.3, K
 causal clauses, *quippe quā*, 140.2, *utpote quā*, 166; full discussion, U
celer, 53, J2(c)
 chiasmus, p. 315(d)
coepi F1(a)
 commands, L–V Intro.(a)3
 comparatives: adjectives, 72, 74, J3, adverbs, 87, J4(b), J4(c)
 comparative constructions, 52³, 72⁴, 179, J5, Q2 Note 3
 complement, 6.4
compos, J2(e) Note 2
 concessive clauses, V
 conditionals: present and imperfect subjunctive, 139; pluperfect subjunctive, 173, S1(d), full discussion, S2(c), in indirect speech, R4(b),

conjugation: defined, 4; forms, see 'active verbs', 'deponents', 'passive'

connecting relative, 107

consecutive clauses, see 'result clauses'

cōstat, F2

cornū, 178, H4(b)

correlatives, 179.2, J5(c)2, J5(a)4

crāter, H6

cum, (conjunction), 124, 141.1; full discussion, T(d), T(e), U; (with abl.) 11 Note 2

dative: formation, see 'nouns'; usages, see 'cases'

deceit, 154, F2

dēdeceit, 154, F2

defective verbs, F1

deliberative questions, 152¹, L-V Intro.(a)2, S1(b)

demonstrative pronouns, 12

deponents

- full conjugations, C1-6
- formation, see Table L2
- gerund, 175
- gerundives, 160
- supine, A7

derivations: general, p. 30, Appendix; for individual words, see 'word study'; see also 'stems', 'prefixes', 'suffixes'

deus, 16, H2(c)

dīcō, see 'active verbs', 'passive'; irregular imperative, 24, 37

dīs, 60 Note, H5 Note

dignus, with ablative, L(f)5; *dignus quī* with subjunctive, Q2 Note 1

dīnea, 47, J2(e), J Intro.(d)

domus, 30, 56, H4(c)

Table L2 Deponents

	Indicative	Infinitive	Imperative	Subjunctive	Participles
Present	58	58	58	128	120
Future	68	97	A2 Note 1	172 ⁴ , A2 Note 2, L-V Intro.(c)	81
Imperfect	90			131	
Perfect	75	96		168	77
Future perfect	157				
Pluperfect	105			122	

dōnet, T(b), T(c)

doubt, 174.2(c), S2(e)

dūcō, irregular imperative, 37

dum, 165, T(b), T(c); in indirect speech, R(d), R4(a); 'provided that', S2(g)

dummodo, 165.4, S2(g)

duo, 54, 17

ē/ex, 23, K

ecquis, L-V Intro.(a)2, I5(c)4 and Note 5

ego, 22, 11

elegiac couplet, see 'metre'

ellipsis, p. 314(a)

eō 'I go': full conjugation, E4; present indicative, imperative, compounds, 19; infinitive, 42; future, 51; perfect, 66, 84; imperfect indicative, 89⁴; used to form future infinitive passive, 118¹⁻³; passive present (compounds), 119; present participle, 120³; present subjunctive, 129³; imperfect subjunctive, 130¹; used impersonally in passive, 155¹

eō, 'for this reason', U Note 2; *eō* 'by so much', L(f)4(iv); *eō* ... *quō* + comparatives 'the more ... the more', J5(a)4; *eō* 'so much', S2(a)2

etiam, V

erū, V

faciō: irregular imperative, 37; passive, *fiō*, 119⁴

fearing, 162, S2(d)

ferō: full conjugation, E2; present indicative, 35; imperative, 37; infinitive, 42; future, 51²; perfect, 66; principal parts, 83; present passive, 119; imperfect subjunctive, 130¹

fidō, D Note 2

fifth declension, see 'nouns'

fiō: full conjugation, D; present, future, perfect indicative, 76; imperfect indicative 89⁶; as passive of *faciō*, 119⁴

first declension, see 'nouns'

fore, 97³

forem, 130², E1, A2 Note 2

fore ut with subjunctive 149, R1 Note 6

fourth declension, see 'nouns'

future tense, future perfect tense, see 'active verbs', 'deponents', 'passive'

gaudeō, D Note 2

gender, 7

generic usages, 140; Q2(a); S2(a)3(ii)

genitive: formation, see 'nouns'; usages, see 'cases', genitive plurals, 11-12, 57, H3(f) Note 3

gerunds, 175, M(a), N

gerundives: formation, 160; usages, 161, O

golden line, p. 315(e)

grātiā (*causā*), 161.3, 175.3, K, N

Greek declensions, H6

habēō, see 'active verbs', 'passive' (2nd conjugation)

hendecasyllables, see 'metre'

hexameter, see 'metre'

hic haec hoc, 63, 12(b); as noun or adjective, J Intro.(d)

historic infinitives, 146, M(d)

historic present, 112, A Intro.(c)

historic sequence, see 'sequence of tenses'

hūc 'by this amount', L(f)4(iv)

hyperbaton, p. 316(j)

i-stems: nouns, 12, 125, H3(b),(c); adjectives, 44-6, 53.2-3, 74 Note, J2(a)-(d)

idcirco, U Note 2

idem, 86, 12(A)

ille illa illud, 64, 12(c); as noun or adjective, J Intro.(d)

imperatives, see 'active verbs', 'deponents', 'passive'; irregulars: *eō* 19; *dīcō*, *sum*, *dūcō*, *ferō*, *faciō*, 37; *nōlī*(te) with infinitive, 59; future (or 'second') imperative, A2 Note 1, B2 Note

imperfect subjunctive: formation, see 'active verbs', 'deponents', 'passive'; in conditions, 139 and Note 3, S(c)2 and Note 2; in wishes, 153.1; in potentials, 153.2; generalising, L-V Intro.(a)1; deliberative, L-V Intro.(a)2; in indirect questions, R2, R3

imperfect tense, see 'active verbs', 'deponents', 'passive'; meaning, A Intro.(c)

impersonal verbs: active, 154; passive, 155; impersonal gerundives, 161², F2

in, with acc., abl., 10, K

indicative: meaning, 4, 5; formation, see 'active verbs', 'deponents', 'passive'

indirect speech: statement, 98-9, 143, M(c); question, 172; command, 134; subjunctive in, 142; *fore ut*, 149; full discussion, indirect statement, R1; indirect command, R2; indirect question, R3; subordinate clauses in indirect speech, R4

infinitive: see 'active verbs', 'deponents', 'passive'; after *uolō*, 34; after *possum*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, 52; after *nōlī*(te), 59; in indirect statement, 98-9, *esse* dropped in, 143; historic, 146; gerund, 175; full discussion, M; indirect statement, R1

ingēs, 45, J2(b)

inops, J2(e) Note 2

inquam, F1(c)

interest, F2

interrogatives: *quis/quī?*, 29; *-ne?*, 39; *nōne?*, 85; *num?*, 93; in indirect questions, 172

intransitive verbs, A Intro.(b)

ipse, 102, 12(e)

irregular verbs: full conjugations, E1-5; full principal parts list, G; see 'sum', 'nōlō', 'mālō', 'uolō', 'eō', 'ferō'; principal parts, 66, 75^{1(c)}, 83

is ea id, 70, 12(a); as noun or adjective, J Intro.(d)

iste ista istud, 91, 12(d), cf. J Intro.(d)

ita ... *ut*, S2(a)2

ubeō, 134

Iuppiter, H3(f)

jussive subjunctive: present, 152; perfect, 171, L-V Intro.(a)3, S1(a)

libet, 154, F2
licet, 88, 154, F2; 'although', V Note
locative, 30, 110; full discussion, L(g)
longus J1(a)
loquor, see 'deponents' (3rd conjugation)

mālō: present, future indicative, 52; perfect indicative, 66; imperfect indicative, 89³; present subjunctive, 129²; imperfect subjunctive, 130¹; full conjugation, E5
manus, 55, H4(a)
mare, 125, H3(e)
memini, full conjugation, F1(a)
memor, J2(e) Note 2
mentior, see 'deponents' (4th conjugation)
meridiēs, H5 Note
metre: basic principles, p. 318; hexameter, p. 319; hendecasyllables, 180; scazon, 181; Sapphic stanza, 182; hexameter in Lucretius, 183; Archilochean, 184; elegiac couplet, 185
metiō (*nē*), 162
meus vocative, 17A, I1 Note 1
miliēs, I7 Note 2
mille, 54, I7 (with Note 1)
minor, see 'deponents' (1st conjugation); with dative, 88.5, L(e)1(vii)
minor (comparative of *parvus*), 74, J3
miser, 21, J1(c)
miseret, 154, F2
modo 'provided that', S2(g)
multō, L(f)4(iv)
multus, 14; comparative and superlative, 74, J3

-ne? (question), 39, L-V Intro.(a)2
nē: indirect command, 134, purpose, 145; *nē quis* 134³, 145²; fearing (neg. *ut/nē nōn*), 162; jussive, 152², 171, L-V Intro.(a)3; prevention, S2(f)
negō (indirect speech), 99; R1 Note 3
nēmo, 86, H3(f)
neuter, I6(d) Note
nimis, 31, L(d)2
nisi, 139², S2(c) Note 3; *nisi quis*, *nisi quandō*, S2(c) Note 4
nōlī (*te*), 59, L-V Intro.(a)3
nōlō: present, future indicative, 52; perfect

indicative, 66; imperfect indicative 89³
 present subjunctive, 129²; imperfect subjunctive, 130¹; full conjugation, E5
nōmen, 26, H3(c)
nominative: formation, see 'nouns'; finding the nominative from third declension stems, 13.3, H3 Notes; usages, see 'cases'; full discussion, L(a)
nōnne?, 85, L-V Intro.(a)2
nōs, 43, I1
nōscō, F1 Note
noster, 53, I1 Note 1
nōuī, F1(a)
nouns
 defined, 6.1
 first declension: *serua*, 8, H1
 second declension, m. *seruus*, 9, H2(a); *deus*, 16, H2(c); *puer*, 28, H2(b); *culter*, 28, H2(c); *uir*, 28, H2(d); n. *somnium*, 15, H2(f)
 third declension, m. *fr̄*, *fūr*, 11, H3(a); *aedus*, 12, H3(b); n. *nōmen*, 26, H3(c); *onus*, 38, H3(d); *caput*, 61; *mare* (animal, *calcar*, *cubile*), 125, H3(e); irr. *Iuppiter*, H3(f); *bōs* H3(f); *uīs* H3(f); *nēmo* H3(f)
 fourth declension, m. *fr̄*, *manus*, 55, H4(a); n. *cornū*, 178, H4(b); irr. *domus*, 56, H4(c), see also 30
 fifth declension, *rēs*, 60, H5
 Greek declensions, H6
 gerunds, see 'gerunds'
nūllus, 62, 16(b); see also 'nēmo'
num? 'surely ... not?', 93; in indirect questions, 172¹, L-V Intro.(a)2; *num quis*, 172¹, R3 Note 1
numerals: cardinal 1-10 and 100-1,000, 54; cardinal 11-90 and ordinal 1-10, 159; full list, 17; distributive, multiplicative adjectives, numeral adverbs, I7 Note 2

objective genitive, 22³, L(d)6
ōdī, full conjugation, F1(a)
omnis, 44, J2(a)
oportet, 154, F2

paenitet, 154, F2
particeps, J2(e) Note 2
participles, formation and usage: perfect

deponent, 77-8; predicative usage, 77; translated as present, C4 Note 1; sometimes passive, 160 Note, C4 Note 2; future active/deponent, 81; present active/deponent, 120; 'a/the one --ing', 136; perfect passive, 82, 151, 163; translated as abstract noun, 163 Note; summary of participle forms, 164; full discussion, P
parum + gen., L(d)2
passive
 defined 111
 full conjugations, B1-6
 formation, see Table 1.3
 irregular (*ferō*, *-cō*), 119
 impersonal, 155, F2
paulō, L(f)4(iv)
pauper, 47, J2(e)
 perfect tense, see 'active verbs', 'deponents', 'passive'; meaning, A Intro.(c)
perficiō (*ut*), 135, S2(a)3(iii), S2(b) Note 4
 personal endings: active, 1², 3²; perfect active, 65³; deponent, 58²; passive, 111
placet, 88, 154, F2
 pluperfect tense, see 'active verbs', 'deponents', 'passive'; meaning, A Intro.(c)
plūs, 74, J3
 poetry, p. 313; see also 'prosody'
pollicor, see 'deponents' (2nd conjugation)
 possessive adjectives, I1 Note 1
possum: present, infinitive, future, 52; imperfect indicative, 89⁴; present subjunctive, 129²; imperfect subjunctive, 130¹; full conjugation, E3
postquam, 104⁴, see also 'temporal clauses'

potential subjunctive, 139⁴, 153.2, 171, L-V Intro.(a)1, S1(d)
 precaution, 162²
predicative: dative, see 'cases'; use of participles and use of adjectives, J Intro.(c)
 prefixes: *ad-*, *in-*, *cum-* (*con-*), *prae-*, *post-*, p. 32; *in-* (negative), *ējex-*, *ā-fab-*, *re(d)-*, p. 43; *trans-* (*trā-*), *prō-*, p. 65; *au-* (= *ab-*), *neg-* (= *nec-*), p. 75; *sub-* (*su-*, *sus-*), *dē-*, *per-*, p. 83; *dē-*, *ob-*, effect of prefix on short *-a-* or *-e-* in simple verb, pp. 97-8; *sub-* (*su-*, *sus-*), p. 109; *dī-* (*dis-*), *sē-*, pp. 164-5; *prae-*, p. 187; *per-*, assimilation, pp. 207-8
 prepositions: *in* with acc., abl., 10; *ad* with acc., 10; *ā/ab*, *ē(ex)* with abl., 23; full list K
 present tense: see 'active verbs', 'deponents', 'passive'; meaning, A Intro.(c)
 prevention: *quōminus*, 174.1; *quōminus*, *nē*, *quīn*, S2(f)
 primary sequence, see 'sequence of tenses'
 principal parts: general survey, A Intro.(d); full list of irregulars, G; see also 41-2, 65-6, 75 and 77, 82-3
priusquam, 165.3, T(c)
prōgredior, see 'deponents' (3rd/4th conjugation)
 prohibitions, 59 L-V Intro.(a)3, S1(a)
 prolative infinitive, M(b)
 pronominal nouns/adjectives, I
 pronunciation, p. xiv
 prosody: basic principles, pp. 318-19; word accent, p. xv
 proviso, 165.4, S2(g)

Table 1.3 Passive

	Indicative	Infinitive	Imperative	Subjunctive	Participles
Present	112	118	117	129	
Future	113	118	B2 Note		
Imperfect	114			132	
Perfect	115	118		169	82-3, 151, 163
Future perfect	158				
Pluperfect	116			123	
Gerundive					160

puer, 154, F2
puer, 28, H2(b)
pulcher, 27, J1(b)
 purpose clauses: *ut/nē* and *quī*+subjunctive, 145; *quō*, 148; *ad* with gerundive, 161 3; *ad* with gerund, 175.2, S2(b)

quā 'where', 137 3
quālis, 179 2, J5(c)2
quam 'than', 52³, 72⁴, J5(a)1; with superlative, J5(b); correlative with *tam*, 179 2, J5(c)2; 'how', L-V Intro. (a)1
quamquam, 141 2, V
quamvis, 141 2, V
quantō, L(f)4(iv); *tantō* . . . *quantō*, J5(a)4
quasi, J5(c)3
-que, 32
 questions, see 'interrogatives'; indirect questions, 172, L-V Intro. (a)2
quī interrogative adjective, 29, 14; relative pronoun, 106; connecting relative, 107; purpose, 145²; consecutive ('generic'), causal (*quippe quī*), 140 2, *utpote quī*, 166; general discussion, Q; résumé of usages, p. 311, S2(a)3(ii), S2(b) Note 1; U Note 1; = abl. form of *quī*, 13 Note and 14 Note 3; in *quīn*, S2(c) Note 1
quicumque, 15(c)5 and Note 4
quid with genitive, 40, L(d)2
quidam, 92, 15(a)
quīn, 174 2, Q2(a), S2(a)3(i)-(iv), S2(c)
quippe (*quī*), 140 2, U Note, Q2(c)
quīr: interrogative, 29, 14; indefinite, 14 and Note; *nē quis* indirect command, 134³; *nē quis* purpose, 145²; *sī quis*, 139¹, S2(c) Note 4, *nisi quis*, 139², S2(c) Note 4; *num quis*, 172¹, R Note 1
quisquam, 176, 15(c)2 and Note 3
quisque, 176, 15(c)1 and Note 2
quisquis, 15(c)3 and Note 4
quō: 'to where', 137 3; purpose, 148, Q2 Note 2, S2(b) Note 3; 'by how much', L(f)4(iv); *eō* . . . *quō*+comparatives 'the more . . . the more . . .', J5(a)4
quōminus 174.1, S2(f)
quot, 179 2, J5(c)2
reſer, F2

reflexives, 80; in indirect statement, 98²⁻⁴, R1 Note 4; in indirect command, 134², R2 Note 2; in indirect question, 172³, R3 Note 3; in purpose clauses, 145¹, S2(b) Note 2; in fearing clauses, 162², S2(d) Note
 relative, 106; genitive, 126; dative/ablative, 137; connecting, 107; with subjunctive (consecutive ('generic'), causal), 140; *quippe quī*, 140 2; *utpote quī*, 166; full discussion, Q; résumé of usages, p. 311, S2(a)3(ii), S2(b) Note 1, U Note
 reported speech, see 'indirect speech'
rēs, 60; H5
 result clauses, 144, S2(a)
 rhetorical features of Latin prose and poetry, pp. 314ff.

 Sapphic stanza, see 'metre'
satis, 31, L(d)2
 scazon, see 'metre'
sē, 80, 11(b), see also 'reflexives'
 second declension, see 'nouns'
 secondary sequence, see 'sequence of tenses'
semel, 17 Note 2
 semi-deponents, 76, 89⁶; full conjugations, D
 sequence of tenses, 134, 135, 142, 144, 145, 162, R3 Note 4; definition, L-V Intro. (c), A Intro. (a); in subordinate clauses in indirect speech, R4(a)
serua, 8, H1
seruus, 9, H2(a)
sī with present and imperfect subjunctive, 139; with pluperfect subjunctive, 173; *sī quis*, 139¹, S2(c) Note 4; full discussion, S2(c), see also *nisi*; *sī quāndō*, S2(c) Note 4; in indirect speech, R4(b)
sic . . . *ut*, S2(a)2
 simple sentences, L-V Intro. (a)
singulī, 17 Note 2
soleō, D Note 2
sōlus, 16(d) Note
sospes, J2(e) Note 2
 statements, L-V Intro. (a)1; indirect, 98-9, R1 stems
 verbs, 1st and 2nd conjugations, 3²; 1st and 2nd conjugation imperatives, 18³; *eō*.

19¹; 3rd and 4th, 24¹, 25¹; deponents, 58²; perfect deponent, 75; for derivations, pp. 32, 171, 177
 nouns, 13, H3(f) Notes 1, 2, p. 31
 adjectives, 44¹
 stress: see accent
 subjunctive
 formation: present, 127-9 (summarised 133); imperfect, 130-2 (summarised 133); pluperfect, 121-3; perfect, 167-9; 'future', 172⁴, A2 Note 2, L-V Intro. (c)
 usages: *cum*, 124, 141; indirect command, 134; *accidit/perfect ut*, 135; general usages, 138; conditional clauses, 139, 173; in relative clauses, 140, Q2 (consecutive/generic, Q2(a), causal, Q2(c)); *quamvis*, 141 2; subordinate clauses in indirect speech, 142, R4; result, 144, Q2 Note 1; purpose, 145, 148, Q2(b) and Note 2, *fore ut*, 149; deliberative, jussive, 152; wish and potential, 153, 171; fearing, 162; *dum*, *antequam*, *priusquam*, *dummodo*, 165; *utpote quī*, 166, Q2(c); indirect questions, 172, *quōminus*, *quīn*, prevention and doubt, 174; with comparatives, Q2 Note 3
 full discussion, S, Q2 and Notes
 suffixes: nouns -*or/-tor*, -*or*, -*lō/-lō/-lō*, -*lō*, -*ium*, -*men*, p. 84; verbs -*er*, -*it*, p. 118; nouns -*ia*, -*tās*, -*tūs*, -*tūdō*, adjective -*ilis*/ -*ibilis*, -*idus*, -*ōsus*, -*eus*, -*ālis*/ -*ānus*/ -*āris*/ -*ārus*/ -*icus*/ -*ilis*/ -*inus*/ -*ius*/ -*ius*, p. 130; English suffixes -*ry*, -*an*, -*ious*, -*ic*, -*ive*, -*able*/ -*ible*, -*ion*, -*ate*/ -*ite*, -*ty*, -*nce*, -*tude* (from Latin -*ris*/ -*rius*/ -*ria*, -*ānus*, -*ius*, -*icus*, -*inus*, -*ābilis*/ -*ibilis*, -*lō*, -*ātus*/ -*itus*, -*tās*, -*ntia*, -*tūdō*), p. 139; nouns -*fex*, -*ūra*, p. 176; nouns -*c(u)lums*/ -*crum*, -*lō*, p. 208; nouns -*ium*, -*tēs*, p. 221; nouns -*ia*, -*or*, adjectives -*ēnsis*, -*ānus*, p. 236; nouns/ adjectives -*culus*/ -*olus*/ -*ulus*, p. 255; adjectives -*bilis*, English suffixes -*ent*/ -*ant*, p. 269
sum: present indicative, 1; imperative, 37; infinitive, 42; future, 51; perfect, 66; principal parts, 83; imperfect indicative, 89⁴; present subjunctive, 129²; imperfect subjunctive, 130¹⁻²; full conjugation, E1
 superlatives: adjectives, 73, 74, J3; adverbs, 87, J4(b)-(c)
superstes, J2(e) Note 2
 supine, 118²; A7, S2(b) Note 5
suus, 80, 11 Note 1
 syllables, heavy and light, see 'metre' and 'accent'

tālis . . . *quālis*, 179 2, J5(c)2
tamquam, J5(c)3
tam . . . *quam*, 179 2, J5(c)2
tam . . . *ut*, S2(a)2
tantō, L(f)4(iv); *tantō* . . . *quantō*, J5(a)4
tantus . . . *quantus*, 179 2, J5(c)2
 temporal clauses: *antequam*/ *priusquam* (with subjunctive), 165 3; *cum*, 124, 141.1, *dum*, 165.1, 2; *ubi/postquam* with perfect indicative, 104⁴; full discussion, T
 tense, 4, A Intro. (c)
 third declension, see 'nouns'
 time: at, in, on (ablative), 67, L(f)2, throughout, for, during (accusative), 71, L(c)3
timeō (*nē*), 162, S2(d)
tot . . . *quot*, 179 2, J5(c)2
tōtus, 16(d) Note
 transitive verbs, A Intro. (b)
trēs, 54, 17
 tricolon, p. 315(f)
triplex, 17 Note 2
tu, 22, 11
turris, H3(b) Note
tuus, 20, 11 Note 1

ubi with perfect indicative, 104⁴, T(a)
uel, E5 Note 2
uelui, J5(c)3
uereor (*nē*), 162, S2(d)
uester, 53, 11 Note 1
uetō, 134, R2 Note 3
uirtus, J2(e) Note 2; J Intro. (d)
uideor, 119³
uir, 28, H2(d)
uis (*uirēs*), H3(f)
ūllus, 16(d) Note
ūnus, 54, 16(d) Note, 17

- uolō*: present indicative, 34; infinitive, 42; future, 52; perfect indicative, 66; imperfect indicative, 89³; present subjunctive, 129²; imperfect subjunctive, 130¹; full conjugation, E5; with subjunctive, L-V Intro.(a)4
- uōs*, 43, 11
- ut*: indirect command, 134; *accidit/perficit ut*, 135; result, 144; purpose, 145; fearing (negative), 162; correlative, 179.2; résumé of usages, p. 310; temporal, T(a); for subjunctive usages, see also *S passim*
- uter*, 16(d) *Note*
- uterque*, 177, 16(d)
- utnam*, 153 1, L-V Intro.(a)4
- utpote quī*, 166, U *Note*, Q2(c)
- utrum* . . . *an* (*annōn/necne*), 172², L-V Intro.(a)2, R3 *Note* 2
- verbs, see 'active verbs', 'deponents', 'passive', 'irregular verbs'
- vocative, 9¹, 17A, full discussion, L(b)
- wishes, 153.1, L-V Intro.(a)4, S1(c)
- word-building, see 'prefixes', 'suffixes', 'stems'
- word-order, 1⁵, 14⁶, 78; 39 *Note*; in poetry, pp. 314, 316; full discussion, W
- word study: *uestis*, *uestigium*, p. 77; *alter*, *possum*, 'sincere' (*cēra*), p. 98; *ambulō*, *diēs*, p. 110; *plānus*, p. 119; 'sinecure' (*cūra*), *aequus/equus*, *arca*, p. 131; *forum*, p. 140; *summus*, *fortis*, p. 152; *castrum*, *sequor*, p. 165; *pēs*, p. 179; *auxilium*, p. 118